unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</th>
<th>17</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Luke</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction to the Gospel of Luke</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 1</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 2</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 3</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 4</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 5</td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 6</td>
<td>295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 7</td>
<td>349</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 8</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 9</td>
<td>461</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 10</td>
<td>525</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 11</td>
<td>571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 12</td>
<td>631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 13</td>
<td>693</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 14</td>
<td>730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 15</td>
<td>766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 16</td>
<td>799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 17</td>
<td>834</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 18</td>
<td>873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 19</td>
<td>918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 20</td>
<td>967</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 21</td>
<td>1018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 22</td>
<td>1060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 23</td>
<td>1132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Luke 24</td>
<td>1189</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</th>
<th>1243</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abstract Nouns</td>
<td>1244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active or Passive</td>
<td>1246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apostrophe</td>
<td>1249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information</td>
<td>1251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Background Information</td>
<td>1254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Distance</td>
<td>1257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Money</td>
<td>1260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Volume</td>
<td>1262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biblical Weight</td>
<td>1266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecting Words and Phrases</td>
<td>1268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct and Indirect Quotations</td>
<td>1272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding</td>
<td>1274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double Negatives</td>
<td>1277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doublet</td>
<td>1279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ellipsis</td>
<td>1281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abomination, abominable</td>
<td>1391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abraham, Abram</td>
<td>1392</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abyss, bottomless pit</td>
<td>1393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accuse, accused, accuser, accusation</td>
<td>1394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adam</td>
<td>1395</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress</td>
<td>1396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adversary, enemy</td>
<td>1397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counselling</td>
<td>1398</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afflict, affliction, distress</td>
<td>1399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>age, aged</td>
<td>1400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alien, foreign, foreigner</td>
<td>1401</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alms</td>
<td>1402</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altar</td>
<td>1403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>altar of incense, incense altar</td>
<td>1404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, ...</td>
<td>1405</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amen, truly</td>
<td>1406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather</td>
<td>1407</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andrew</td>
<td>1408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>angel, archangel</td>
<td>1409</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anguish</td>
<td>1411</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annas</td>
<td>1412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anoint, anointed, anointing</td>
<td>1413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apostle, apostleship</td>
<td>1414</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appoint, appointed</td>
<td>1415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ark</td>
<td>1416</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armor, armory</td>
<td>1417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ash, ashes</td>
<td>1418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asher</td>
<td>1419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless</td>
<td>1420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting</td>
<td>1421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray</td>
<td>1422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authority</td>
<td>1423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance</td>
<td>1424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ax</td>
<td>1425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>baptize, baptized, baptism</td>
<td>1426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barabbas</td>
<td>1427</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>barren, dry</td>
<td>1428</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bartholomew</td>
<td>1429</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basket, basketfuls</td>
<td>1430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear, bearer, carry</td>
<td>1431</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beast</td>
<td>1432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beelzebul</td>
<td>1433</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beg, beggar, needy</td>
<td>1434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief</td>
<td>1435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beloved</td>
<td>1436</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

council

court, courtyard

covenant

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

create, created, creation, creator

crime, criminal

cross

crucify, crucified

cry, cry out, outcry

cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

curse, cursed, cursing

curtain

cut off

Cyrene

darkness

David

day

declare, proclaim, announce

decree, decreed

delight

demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

demon-possessed

descend, descendant

desert, wilderness

desolate, desolation, alone, deserted

devour

die, dead, deadly, death,
discern, discernment, distinguish
disciple

disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious
divorce
donkey, mule
dove, pigeon
drunk, drunkard
eagle
earth, earthen, earthly
elder, older, old
Eliakim

Elijah

Elisha

Elizabeth

endure, endurance

Enoch

envy, covet

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>evil, wicked, unpleasant</td>
<td>1542</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins</td>
<td>1544</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exalt, exalted, exaltation</td>
<td>1545</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exhort, exhortation</td>
<td>1546</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>exult, exultant</td>
<td>1547</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face, facial</td>
<td>1548</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faith</td>
<td>1549</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy</td>
<td>1550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faithless, faithlessness</td>
<td>1552</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>false prophet</td>
<td>1553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>family, household</td>
<td>1554</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>famine</td>
<td>1555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fast, fasting</td>
<td>1556</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>favor, favorable, favoritism</td>
<td>1557</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fear, afraid, dread</td>
<td>1558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feast, feasting</td>
<td>1559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>festival</td>
<td>1560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fig</td>
<td>1561</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>filled with the Holy Spirit</td>
<td>1562</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot</td>
<td>1563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firstborn</td>
<td>1564</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fishermen, fishers</td>
<td>1565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flesh</td>
<td>1566</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flock, herd</td>
<td>1567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>flood</td>
<td>1568</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fool, foolish, folly</td>
<td>1569</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>footstool</td>
<td>1570</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned</td>
<td>1571</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>found, founder, foundation</td>
<td>1573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fruit, fruitful, unfruitful</td>
<td>1574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fulfill, fulfilled, carried out</td>
<td>1576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gabriel</td>
<td>1577</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Galilee, Galilean</td>
<td>1578</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway</td>
<td>1579</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>generation</td>
<td>1580</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentile</td>
<td>1581</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gift</td>
<td>1582</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glory, glorious, glorify</td>
<td>1583</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids</td>
<td>1585</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God</td>
<td>1586</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>God the Father, heavenly Father, Father</td>
<td>1588</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best</td>
<td>1590</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>govern, government, governor, proconsul</td>
<td>1592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grace, gracious</td>
<td>1593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grain, grainfields</td>
<td>1594</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grape, grapevine</td>
<td>1595</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Page</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place</td>
<td>1596</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>guilt, guilty</td>
<td>1597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hades, Sheol</td>
<td>1598</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hand</td>
<td>1599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard, harden, hardness</td>
<td>1601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>harvest, reap</td>
<td>1602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>1603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heart</td>
<td>1604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly</td>
<td>1605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heir</td>
<td>1607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hell, lake of fire</td>
<td>1608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herod, Herod Antipas</td>
<td>1609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herod, Herod the Great</td>
<td>1610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Herodias</td>
<td>1611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high priest, chief priests</td>
<td>1612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit</td>
<td>1614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holy, holiness, unholy, sacred</td>
<td>1616</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>honor</td>
<td>1618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hope, hoped</td>
<td>1619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>horn, horned</td>
<td>1620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hour</td>
<td>1621</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hour, moment, immediately, for a while</td>
<td>1622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house</td>
<td>1623</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house of David</td>
<td>1624</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house of God, Yahweh's house</td>
<td>1625</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humble, humbled, humility</td>
<td>1626</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypocrite, hypocrisy</td>
<td>1627</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>image, carved image, cast metal images, figure, carved figure, statue</td>
<td>1628</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incense</td>
<td>1629</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inherit, inheritance, heir</td>
<td>1630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iniquity</td>
<td>1631</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interpret, interpretation, interpreter</td>
<td>1632</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaac</td>
<td>1633</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isaiah</td>
<td>1634</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel, Israeliite, Jacob</td>
<td>1635</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel, Israelites</td>
<td>1636</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it is written</td>
<td>1637</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James (son of Alphaeus)</td>
<td>1638</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>James (son of Zebedee)</td>
<td>1639</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jericho</td>
<td>1640</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jerusalem</td>
<td>1641</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesse</td>
<td>1643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus</td>
<td>1644</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jew, Jewish</td>
<td>1646</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John (the apostle)</td>
<td>1647</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>John (the Baptist)</td>
<td>1648</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Jonah 1649
Jordan River, Jordan 1650
Joseph (NT) 1651
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing 1652
Judah 1654
Judas Iscariot 1655
Judas son of James 1656
Judea 1657
judge 1658
judge, judgment 1659
judgment day 1661
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification 1662
kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman 1664
kind [NOT kindness] 1665
King of the Jews 1666
king, kingdom, kingship 1667
kingdom 1668
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven 1670
kiss 1672
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish 1673
labor, laborer, work, hard work 1675
lamb, Lamb of God 1676
Lamech 1678
lamp 1679
lampstand 1680
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law 1681
law, principle 1683
lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness 1684
leper, leprosy 1686
Levi, Levite, Levitical 1687
life, live, living, alive 1688
light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten 1690
like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if 1691
loins, waist 1692
lord, Lord, master, sir 1693
Lot 1695
lots, casting lots 1696
love, beloved 1697
majesty 1699
manager, steward, stewardship 1700
Martha 1701
Mary (sister of Martha) 1702
Mary Magdalene 1703
Mary, the mother of Jesus 1704
Matthew, Levi 1705
mediator 1706
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mercy, merciful</td>
<td>1707</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>messenger</td>
<td>1709</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>might, mighty, mighty works</td>
<td>1710</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded</td>
<td>1711</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miracle, wonder, sign</td>
<td>1712</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock</td>
<td>1714</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>month, monthly</td>
<td>1715</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moses</td>
<td>1716</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most High</td>
<td>1717</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mount of Olives</td>
<td>1718</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mourn, mourner, weeping</td>
<td>1719</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multiply, multiplied, multiplication</td>
<td>1720</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mystery, hidden truth</td>
<td>1721</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Naaman</td>
<td>1722</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nahor</td>
<td>1723</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>name</td>
<td>1724</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nathan</td>
<td>1725</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nation</td>
<td>1726</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nazareth, Nazarene</td>
<td>1727</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring</td>
<td>1728</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nineveh, Ninevite</td>
<td>1729</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noah</td>
<td>1730</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noble, nobleman, royal official</td>
<td>1731</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oath, swear, swearing, swear by</td>
<td>1732</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obey, obedient</td>
<td>1733</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oil</td>
<td>1734</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>olive</td>
<td>1735</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on high, in the highest</td>
<td>1736</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared</td>
<td>1737</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs</td>
<td>1738</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palace</td>
<td>1739</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parable</td>
<td>1740</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passover</td>
<td>1741</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>peace, peaceful, peacemakers</td>
<td>1742</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people of God</td>
<td>1743</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people, people group,</td>
<td>1744</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfect, perfected, perfection, complete</td>
<td>1746</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perish</td>
<td>1747</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue</td>
<td>1748</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persevere, perseverance</td>
<td>1749</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, ...</td>
<td>1750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas</td>
<td>1751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pharisee</td>
<td>1752</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip, the apostle</td>
<td>1753</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pierce, pierced</td>
<td>1754</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pig, pork, swine</td>
<td>1755</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Word</td>
<td>Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pilate</td>
<td>1756</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pit, pitfall, trenches</td>
<td>1757</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow</td>
<td>1758</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed</td>
<td>1759</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possess, possessed, possession, dispossess</td>
<td>1760</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>power, powerful, powerfully</td>
<td>1761</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>praise, praised, praiseworthy</td>
<td>1763</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pray, prayer</td>
<td>1764</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation</td>
<td>1765</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>priest, priesthood</td>
<td>1767</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prison, prisoner, imprison</td>
<td>1769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profit, profitable, unprofitable</td>
<td>1770</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promise, promised</td>
<td>1771</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess</td>
<td>1772</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prostitute, harlot, whored</td>
<td>1774</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prostrate, worship</td>
<td>1775</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>proud, pride, prideful</td>
<td>1776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>punish, punished, punishment, unpunished</td>
<td>1777</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pure, purify, purification</td>
<td>1778</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>purple</td>
<td>1779</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>queen</td>
<td>1780</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rage</td>
<td>1781</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up</td>
<td>1782</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness</td>
<td>1784</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rebuke</td>
<td>1785</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance</td>
<td>1786</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redeem, redeemer, redemption</td>
<td>1788</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reed</td>
<td>1789</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reign, rule</td>
<td>1790</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reject, rejected, rejection</td>
<td>1791</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>repent, repentance</td>
<td>1792</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>report, reported, reputation</td>
<td>1793</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rest, rested, restless</td>
<td>1794</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resurrection</td>
<td>1795</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>return</td>
<td>1796</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reveal, revealed, revelation</td>
<td>1797</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reward, prize, deserve,</td>
<td>1798</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>right hand</td>
<td>1799</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...</td>
<td>1800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>robe, robed</td>
<td>1802</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ruin, ruins, ruined</td>
<td>1803</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rule, ruler, ruling, overrules</td>
<td>1804</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows</td>
<td>1805</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sabbath</td>
<td>1806</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sackcloth</td>
<td>1807</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sacrifice, sacrifices, offering</td>
<td>1808</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sadducee 1810
Samaria, Samaritan 1811
sanctify, sanctification 1812
sandal 1813
Satan, devil, evil one 1814
save, saved, safe, salvation 1816
Savior, savior 1818
scribe 1819
scroll 1820
Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias 1821
seed, semen 1822
seek, search, look for 1823
seize, seizure 1824
send, sent, send out 1825
serpent, snake, viper 1826
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women 1827
Seth 1829
shadow, overshadow, shade 1830
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach 1831
Shem 1833
shepherd, chief shepherd 1834
Sidon, Sidonians 1836
sign, proof, reminder 1837
silver 1838
Simeon 1839
Simon the Zealot 1840
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 1841
sister 1843
skull 1844
snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall 1845
Sodom 1846
soldier, warrior 1847
Solomon 1848
son 1849
Son of God, the Son 1851
Son of Man, son of man 1853
sons of God, children of God 1854
soul, self 1855
spirit, spiritual 1856
staff, clubs 1858
stone, stoning 1859
strength, strengthen, strong 1860
strong drink 1862
stumble, reeling 1863
stumbling block, stone of stumbling 1864
subject, be subject to, subjection 1865
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>suffer, suffering</td>
<td>1866</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sulfur, sulfurous</td>
<td>1868</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sweep</td>
<td>1869</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sword, swordsmen</td>
<td>1870</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>synagogue</td>
<td>1871</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syria, Ashur</td>
<td>1872</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tabernacle</td>
<td>1873</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,</td>
<td>1874</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teach, teaching, untaught</td>
<td>1876</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>teacher, Teacher</td>
<td>1877</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>temple</td>
<td>1878</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempt, temptation</td>
<td>1880</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tenth, tithe</td>
<td>1881</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terah</td>
<td>1882</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic</td>
<td>1883</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>test, tested, testing, testing in the fire</td>
<td>1884</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness</td>
<td>1885</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tetrarch</td>
<td>1887</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the twelve, the eleven</td>
<td>1888</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits</td>
<td>1889</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thomas</td>
<td>1890</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thorn, thorn bush, thistle</td>
<td>1891</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throne, enthroned</td>
<td>1892</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time, untimely, date</td>
<td>1893</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to minister, ministry</td>
<td>1894</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tongue, language</td>
<td>1895</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>torment, tormented, tormentors</td>
<td>1896</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tremble, stagger</td>
<td>1897</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trial, proving</td>
<td>1898</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribe, tribal, tribesmen</td>
<td>1899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribute, contribution, fined</td>
<td>1900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...</td>
<td>1901</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true, truth</td>
<td>1902</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness</td>
<td>1904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tunic</td>
<td>1905</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn, turn away, turn back, return</td>
<td>1906</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes</td>
<td>1908</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tyre, Tyrians</td>
<td>1909</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>understand, understanding, thinking</td>
<td>1910</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unleavened bread</td>
<td>1911</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vain, vanity</td>
<td>1912</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vine</td>
<td>1913</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vineyard</td>
<td>1914</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virgin, virginity</td>
<td>1915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vision, envision</td>
<td>1916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voice</td>
<td>1917</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
walk, walked
waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak
watch (biblical time)
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
watchtower, tower
water
wheat
wine, wineskin, new wine
winnow, sift
wise, wisdom
woe
wolf, wild dogs
womb
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, ...
work, works, deeds
world, worldly
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless
wrath, fury
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful
year
yeast, leaven, unleavened
Zacchaeus
zeal, zealous
Zebedee
Zechariah (NT)
Zerubbabel

Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors
Introduction to the Gospel of Luke

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Luke

1. Introduction and purpose for writing (1:1-4)
2. Birth of Jesus and his preparation for his ministry (1:5-4:13)
3. Jesus’ ministry in Galilee (4:14-9:50)
4. Jesus’ journey to Jerusalem
5. Discipleship (9:51-11:13)
6. Conflict and Jesus’ grief (11:14-14:35)
7. Parables about things that are lost and found. Parables about honesty and dishonesty (15:1-16:31)
9. Jesus’ entry into Jerusalem (19:28–-44)
10. Jesus in Jerusalem (19:45-21:4)
11. Jesus’ teaching about his second coming (21:5--36)

What is the Gospel of Luke about?

The Gospel of Luke is one of four books in the New Testament that describe some of the life of Jesus Christ. The authors of the gospels wrote about different aspects of who Jesus was and what he did. Luke wrote his gospel for a person named Theophilus. Luke wrote an accurate description of the life of Jesus so that Theophilus would be certain of what is true. However, Luke expected the gospel to encourage all believers, not just Theophilus.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “The Gospel of Luke” or “The Gospel according to Luke.” Or they may choose a title that may be clearer, for example, “The Good News about Jesus that Luke wrote.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Who wrote the Book of Luke?

This book does not give the name of the author. The same person who wrote this book also wrote the Book of Acts. In parts of the Book of Acts, the author uses the word “we.” This indicates that the author traveled with Paul. Most scholars think that Luke was this person traveling with Paul. Therefore, since early Christian times, most Christians have thought Luke was the author of both the Book of Luke and the Book of Acts.

Luke was a medical doctor. His way of writing shows that he was an educated man. He was probably a Gentile. Luke himself probably did not witness what Jesus said and did. But he said that he talked to many people who did.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What are the roles of women in the Gospel of Luke?

Luke described women in a very positive way in his gospel. For example, he often showed women being more faithful to God than most men. (See: faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy)
Why does Luke write so much about the final week of Jesus’ life?

Luke wrote much about Jesus’ final week. He wanted his readers to think deeply about Jesus’ final week and his death on the cross. He wanted people to understand that Jesus willingly died on the cross so that God could forgive them for sinning against him. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What are the Synoptic Gospels?

The Gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke are called the Synoptic Gospels because they have many similar passages. The word “synoptic” means to “see together.”

The texts are considered “parallel” when they are the same or almost the same among two or three gospels. When translating parallel passages, translators should use the same wording and make them as similar as possible.

Why does Jesus refer to himself as the “Son of Man”?

In the gospels, Jesus called himself the “Son of Man.” It is a reference to Daniel 7:13-14. In this passage there is a person described as a “son of man.” That means the person was someone who looked like a human being. God gave authority to the son of man to rule over the nations forever. And all the people will worship him forever.

Jews of Jesus’ time did not use “Son of Man” as a title for anyone. Therefore, Jesus used it for himself to help them understand who he truly was. (See: Son of Man, son of man)

Translating the title “Son of Man” can be difficult in many languages. Readers may misunderstand a literal translation. Translators can consider alternatives, such as “The Human One.” It may also be helpful to include a footnote to explain the title.

What are the major issues in the text of the Book of Luke?

The following verses are not in the earliest manuscripts. The ULT and UST include these verses, but some other versions do not.

• “Then an angel from heaven appeared to him, strengthening him. Being in agony, he prayed more earnestly, and his sweat became like great drops of blood falling down upon the ground.” (22:43–44)
• “Jesus said, “Father, forgive them, for they do not know what they are doing.” (23:34)

The following verse is not included in many modern versions. Some versions put it into square brackets. Translators are advised not to translate this verse. However, if in the translators' region, there are older versions of the Bible that include this verse, the translators can include it. If they are translated, it should be put inside square brackets ([ ]) to indicate that it was probably not original to Luke's Gospel.

• “For he was required to release one prisoner during the feast” (23:17)

(See: Textual Variants)
Luke 1

Luke 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 1:46-55, 68-79.

Special concepts in this chapter

“He will be called John”

Most people in the ancient Near East would give a child the same name as someone in their families. People were surprised that Elizabeth and Zechariah named their son John because there was no one else in their family with that name.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Luke's language is simple and straightforward. He does not use many figures of speech.
Luke 1:1

General Information:
Luke explains why he writes to Theophilus.

concerning the things that have been fulfilled among us (ULT)
about the amazing events that have happened among us (UST)

“about those things that have happened among us” or “about those events that have happened among us”

among us (ULT)
among us (UST)

No one knows for sure who Theophilus was. If he was a Christian, the word “us” here would include him and so be inclusive, and if not, it would be exclusive. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We” and Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

ULT
1 Now many have attempted to compile an account concerning the things that have been fulfilled among us,

UST
1 Dear Theophilus, Many people have written reports about the amazing events that have happened among us.
Luke 1:2

were eyewitnesses and servants of the word (ULT) people who saw them happen...from the time everything first started happening. These people taught others about God's message (UST)

An “eyewitness” is a person who saw something happen, and a servant of the word is a person who serves God by telling people God's message. You may need to make it clear how they were servants of the word. Alternate translation: “saw what had happened and served God by telling people his message” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

servants...of the word (ULT)
These people taught others...about God's message (UST)

OccurrenceNote

Translation Words - ULT

• word
• eyewitnesses
• just as
• servants

Translation Words - UST

• message
• people who saw them happen
• heard about these things
• These people taught others
Luke 1:3

**ULT**

having...investigated

I myself have...studied

“carefully researched.” Luke was careful to find out exactly what happened. He probably talked to the different people who saw what happened to make sure that what he wrote down about these events was correct.

**most excellent Theophilus**

**noble Theophilus**

Luke said this to show honor and respect for Theophilus. This may mean that Theophilus was an important government official. This section should use the style that your culture uses to address people of high status. Some people may prefer to also put this greeting at the beginning and say, “To...Theophilus” or “Dear...Theophilus.”

**ULT**

3 So it seemed good to me also, having carefully investigated everything from the beginning, to write for you an orderly account, most excellent Theophilus,

**UST**

3 I myself have carefully studied everything that these people wrote and taught. So I decided that it would also be good for me to write for you, noble Theophilus, an accurate account of these matters.

**Translation Words - ULT**

• it seemed good

**Translation Words - UST**

• I decided that it would also be good
Luke 1:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- you have been taught
- you might know

Translation Words - UST

- you have learned
- you may know that

ULT

4 so that you might know the certainty concerning the things that you have been taught.

UST

4 I am doing this so that you may know that what you have learned about these things is true.
Luke 1:5

General Information:

Zechariah and Elizabeth are introduced. These verses give background information about them. (See: Background Information)

Connecting Statement:

The angel prophesies the birth of John.

In the days of Herod, king of Judea (ULT)
When King Herod...ruled...the province of Judea (UST)

The phrase “In the days of” is used to indicate a new event. Alternate translation: “During the time that King Herod ruled over Judea” (See: Introduction of a New Event)

there was...a certain priest (ULT)
When...ruled...there was a Jewish priest named (UST)

“there was a particular” or “there was a.” This is a way of introducing a new character in a story. Consider how your language does this. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

the division (ULT)
the group of priests (UST)

It is understood that this refers to the priests. Alternate translation: “division of priests” or “group of priests” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

of Abijah (ULT)
called the Abijah group (UST)

“who descended from Abijah.” Abijah was an ancestor of this group of priests and all of them were descended from Aaron, who was the first Israelite priest.

Now his wife was from the daughters of Aaron (ULT)
He and his wife...were both descended from Aaron (UST)

“His wife was descended from Aaron.” This means she was from the same line of priests as Zechariah. Alternate translation: “His wife was also descended from Aaron” or “Zechariah and his wife Elizabeth were both descended from Aaron” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- named
- name
- a...priest

ULT
5 In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a certain priest named Zechariah, from the division of Abijah. Now his wife was from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth.

UST
5 When King Herod ruled the province of Judea, there was a Jewish priest named Zechariah. He belonged to the group of priests called the Abijah group. He and his wife Elizabeth were both descended from Aaron.
• Judea
• of Abijah
• was Elizabeth
• of Herod, king
• of Aaron
• Zechariah
• king
• days

Translation Words - UST

• named
• Elizabeth
• there was a Jewish priest
• province of Judea
• called the Abijah group
• Elizabeth
• King Herod
• Aaron
• Zechariah
• King
• When...ruled
Luke 1:6

before God (ULT)
God considered that (UST)

“in God’s sight” or “in God’s opinion”

God...all the commandments and statutes...Lord (ULT)
God...because...without fault...everything...that...God...had commanded (UST)

“all that the Lord had commanded and required”

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous
- Lord
- commandments
- God
- blamelessly
- walking
- statutes

Translation Words - UST

- righteous
- God
- that...had commanded
- God
- without fault
- they always obeyed
- without fault
Luke 1:7

But (ULT)
But (UST)

This contrast word shows that what follows here is the opposite of what is expected. People expected that if they did what was right, God would allow them to have children. Although this couple did what was right, they did not have any children.

Translation Words - ULT

• a child
• Elizabeth
• barren
• years

Translation Words - UST

• children
• Elizabeth
• unable to bear children
• very old
Luke 1:8

Now it came about that (ULT)
One day (UST)

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story from the background information to the participants.

in his performing as priest...before God (ULT)
Zechariah...in the temple in Jerusalem...in God's presence (UST)

It is implied that Zechariah was in God's temple and that these priestly duties were part of worshiping God. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in his performing as priest (ULT)
Zechariah...in the temple in Jerusalem (UST)

This refers to Zechariah.

in...the order of his division (ULT)
was serving...as a priest in...his group's regular time of service there (UST)

“when it was his group's turn” or “when the time came for his group to serve”

Translation Words - ULT

- God

Translation Words - UST

- God's
Luke 1:9

according to the custom of the priesthood, he was chosen by lot...to burn incense (ULT)
Following their custom, the priests chose him by lot...and burn incense (UST)

This sentence gives us information about priestly duties. (See: Background Information)

the custom (ULT)
their custom (UST)

“the traditional method” or “their usual way”

he was chosen by lot (ULT)
chose him by lot (UST)

A lot was a marked stone that was thrown or rolled on the ground in order to help them decide something. The priests believed that God guided the lot to show them which priest he wanted them to choose.

to burn incense (ULT)
and burn incense (UST)

The priests were to burn sweet-smelling incense as an offering to God each morning and evening on a special altar inside the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- temple
- priesthood
- to burn incense

Translation Words - UST

- Lord’s
- temple
- priests
- and burn incense
Luke 1:10

the whole crowd...of the people (ULT)
many people were...many people were (UST)

“A large number of people” or “Many people”

outside (ULT)
in the courtyard outside the temple (UST)

The courtyard was the enclosed area surrounding the temple. Alternate translation: “outside the temple building” or “in the courtyard outside the temple” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

at the hour (ULT)
the time (UST)

“at the set time.” It is unclear if this was the morning or evening time for the incense offering.

Translation Words - ULT

• praying
• people
• incense offering
• hour

Translation Words - UST

• praying
• many people were
• for him to burn the incense
• time

ULT
10 Now the whole crowd of the people was praying outside at the hour of the incense offering.

UST
10 When the time came for him to burn the incense, many people were praying in the courtyard outside the temple.
Luke 1:11

Connecting Statement:

While Zechariah does his duty in the temple, an angel comes from God to give him a message.

Then (ULT)

Then (UST)

This word marks the beginning of the action in the story.

appeared...to him (ULT)
appeared...to him (UST)

“suddenly came to him” or “was suddenly there with Zechariah.” This expresses that the angel was present with Zechariah, and not simply a vision.

Translation Words - ULT

• altar
• of the Lord
• an angel
• altar of incense
• incense

Translation Words - UST

• altar
• the Lord
• an angel whom
• altar of incense
• incense
Luke 1:12

Zechariah was troubled...fear fell on him (ULT)
Zechariah...he was startled...became very afraid (UST)

These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize how afraid Zechariah was.

Zechariah...when he saw him (ULT)
Zechariah saw the angel (UST)

“When Zechariah saw the angel.” Zechariah was afraid because the appearance of the angel was frightening. He had not done anything wrong, so he was not afraid that the angel would punish him.

fear fell on him (ULT)
became very afraid (UST)

Fear is described as if it was something that attacked or overpowered Zechariah. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• fear
• Zechariah
• was troubled

Translation Words - UST

• became very afraid
• Zechariah
• he was startled
Luke 1:13

Do not be afraid (ULT)
do not be afraid (UST)

“Stop being afraid of me” or “You do not need to be afraid of me”

your prayer has been heard (ULT)
the Lord heard your request (UST)

This can be stated in active form. It is implied that God will give Zechariah what he has asked for. Alternate translation: “God has heard your prayer and will give you what you have asked for” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

will bear you a son (ULT)
will bear a son for you (UST)

“have a son for you” or “give birth to your son”

Translation Words - ULT

• be afraid
• you will call
• angel
• a son
• name
• prayer
• John
• Elizabeth
• Zechariah
• will bear

Translation Words - UST

• be afraid
• You must name
• angel
• a son
• You must name
• request
• John
• Elizabeth
• Zechariah
• will bear
Luke 1:14

there will be joy and gladness to you (ULT)
You will be...very happy (UST)

The words “joy” and “gladness” mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how great the joy will be. Alternate translation: “you will have great joy” or “you will be very glad” (See: Doublet)

at his birth (ULT)
will also be...because he is born (UST)

“because of his birth"

Translation Words - ULT

• joy
• will rejoice
• gladness

Translation Words - UST

• very happy
• happy
• very happy
Luke 1:15

For he will be great (ULT)
to be very important (UST)

“This is because. he will be great” Zechariah and the “many” will rejoice because John will be “great in the sight of the Lord.” The rest of verse 15 tells how God wants John to live.

he will be...great in the sight of the Lord (ULT)
to be...God will consider him...very important (UST)

“he will be a very important person for the Lord” or “God will consider him to be very important”

he must never drink (ULT)
He must never drink (UST)

The phrase must never translates two Greek words the emphasize how important it is that the child not drink wine or strong drink.

he will be filled with the Holy Spirit (ULT)
The Holy...Spirit will empower him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit will empower him” or “the Holy Spirit will guide him” Make sure it does not sound similar to what an evil spirit might do to a person. (See: Active or Passive)

from his mother’s womb (ULT)
he is born (UST)

“even while he is in his mother’s womb” or “even before he is born”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- he will be filled
- Holy
- with the Holy Spirit
- strong drink
- wine
- womb

Translation Words - UST

- God
- will empower him
- Spirit
- The Holy...Spirit
- any other alcoholic drink
- wine
- he is born
Luke 1:16

And he will turn many of the sons of Israel back to the Lord their God (ULT)
He will persuade many descendants of Israel to stop sinning and start obeying the Lord their God again (UST)

Here “be turned” is a metaphor for a person repenting and worshiping the Lord. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “He will cause many of the people of Israel to repent and worship the Lord their God” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
  • the Lord
  • sons
  • God
  • of Israel
  • he will turn...back

Translation Words - UST
  • the Lord
  • descendants
  • God
  • of Israel
  • He will persuade...to stop sinning and start obeying...again
Luke 1:17

he will go as a forerunner before the Lord (ULT)
Your son...will go in advance of the Lord as his forerunner (UST)

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them.

before the Lord (ULT)
in advance of the Lord as his forerunner (UST)

Here “the face of” someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: “the Lord” (See: Idiom)

And...in the spirit...power of Elijah (ULT)
Your son...will be powerful in his spirit like the prophet Elijah was (UST)

“with the same spirit and power that Elijah had.” The word “spirit” either refers to God's Holy Spirit or to Elijah's attitude or way of thinking. Make sure that the word “spirit” does not mean ghost or evil spirit.

to turn the hearts of fathers back to their children (ULT)
He will cause parents to love their children again (UST)

“persuade fathers to care about their children again” or “cause fathers to restore their relationships with their children”

to turn the hearts...back (ULT)
He will cause...to love...again (UST)

The heart is spoken of as if it is something that can be turned to go in a different direction. This refers to changing someone's attitude toward something. (See: Metaphor)

the disobedient (ULT)
many people who do not obey God (UST)

Here this refers to people who do not obey the Lord.

to make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him (ULT)
He will do this in order to cause many people to be ready when the Lord comes (UST)

What the people will be prepared to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “make ready for the Lord a people who are prepared to believe his message” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• of the righteous
• for the Lord
• the hearts
• power
• the wisdom
• the spirit
• their children
• of Elijah
• of fathers
• a people
• to turn...back
• the disobedient

Translation Words - UST

• and to obey him as righteous people do
• when the Lord comes
• He will cause...to love...again
• will be powerful
• live wisely
• his spirit
• their children
• like the prophet Elijah was
• parents
• many people
• He will cause...to love...again
• many people who do not obey God
Luke 1:18

How will I know this (ULT)  
So how can...believe that the things you said will really happen (UST)

“How can I know for sure that what you said will happen?” Here, “know” means to learn by experience, suggesting Zechariah was asking for a sign as proof. Alternate translation: “What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?”

Translation Words - ULT

• angel
• Zechariah
• an old man
• years
• will I know

Translation Words - UST

• angel
• Zechariah
• very old
• is also very old
• can...believe that...will really happen
Luke 1:19

So the angel answered and said to him, "I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God, and I was sent to speak to you and to bring you this good news.

This is stated as a rebuke to Zechariah. The presence of Gabriel, coming directly from God, should be enough proof for Zechariah.

I was sent to speak to you (ULT)
God sent me...to tell you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God sent me to speak to you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- angel
- God
- Gabriel
- to bring...good news
- I was sent

Translation Words - UST
- the angel said
- God's
- Gabriel
- good news about what will happen
- God sent me
Luke 1:20

**ULT**

behold (ULT)
So now (UST)

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

silent, and not able to speak (ULT)
God will cause...unable to talk (UST)

These mean the same thing, and are repeated to emphasize the completeness of his silence. Alternate translation: “completely unable to speak” or “not able to speak at all” (See: Doublet)

you did not believe my words (ULT)
you did not believe...my words (UST)

“not believe what I said”

in their proper time (ULT)
at the time God has decided (UST)

“at the appointed time”

Translation Words - ULT

* able
* you...believe
* when...take place
* will be fulfilled
* proper time
* day

Translation Words - UST

* God will cause...unable to talk
* you did not believe
* born
* will certainly happen
* time...has decided
* the day

**ULT**

20 And behold, you will be silent, and not able to speak until that day when these things take place, because you did not believe my words, which will be fulfilled in their proper time.”

**UST**

20 What I have told you will certainly happen at the time God has decided, but you did not believe my words. So now God will cause you to be unable to talk until the day your son is born!”
Luke 1:21

Now (ULT)
While Zechariah and the angel were talking in the temple (UST)

This marks a shift in the story from what happened inside the temple to what happened outside. Alternate translation: “While that was happening” or “While the angel and Zechariah were talking”

Translation Words - ULT

• temple
• Zechariah
• people
• they were wondering

Translation Words - UST

• temple
• Zechariah
• people in the courtyard
• They wondered why

ULT
21 Now the people were waiting for Zechariah, and they were wondering at his delaying in the temple.

UST
21 While Zechariah and the angel were talking in the temple, the people in the courtyard were waiting for Zechariah to come out. They wondered why he was staying in the temple for such a long time.
Luke 1:22

they realized that he had seen a vision in the temple; and he kept making signs to them, and remained unable to speak

These things probably happened at the same time, and Zechariah’s signs helped the people understand that he had had a vision. It might be helpful to your audience to change the order to show that. Alternate translation: “He kept on making signs to them and remained silent. So they realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple”

a vision (ULT)
a vision (UST)

The earlier description indicated that Gabriel actually came to Zechariah in the temple. The people, not knowing that, assumed Zechariah saw a vision.

Translation Words - ULT

• temple
• they realized
• a vision

Translation Words - UST

• temple
• they realized
• a vision
Luke 1:23

it came about that (ULT)
When (UST)

This phrase moves the story ahead to when Zechariah's service was ended.

his...he went away to...home (ULT)
Zechariah's...he left Jerusalem and went to...home (UST)

Zechariah did not live in Jerusalem, where the temple was located. He traveled to his home town.

Translation Words - ULT

- priestly service
- were fulfilled
- when
- days
- home

Translation Words - UST

- to work as a priest in the temple
- was finished
- was finished
- time
- home
Luke 1:24

Now after these days (ULT)
Some time after this (UST)

The phrase “these days” refers to the time Zechariah was serving in the temple. It is possible to state more clearly what this refers to. Alternate translation: “After Zechariah's time of serving at the temple” (See: Introduction of a New Event and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

his wife (ULT)
his wife (UST)

“Zechariah’s wife”

she kept herself hidden (ULT)
she did not go out in public (UST)

“did not leave her house” or “stayed inside by herself”

Translation Words - ULT

• Elizabeth
• for...months
• days
• conceived

Translation Words - UST

• Elizabeth
• months
• Some time after this
• became pregnant
Luke 1:25

This is what...the Lord has done for me (ULT)
to herself...The Lord has enabled me to become pregnant (UST)

This phrase refers to the fact that the Lord allowed her to become pregnant.

This is what (ULT)
to herself (UST)

This is a positive exclamation. She is very happy with what the Lord has done for her.

he looked upon me with favor (ULT)
he had compassion on me (UST)

“to look at” here is an idiom that means “to treat” or “to deal with.” Alternate translation: “regarded me kindly” or “had pity on me” (See: Idiom)

my disgrace (ULT)
the reason that...looked down on me (UST)

This refers to the shame she felt when she was not able to have children.

Translation Words - ULT

• the Lord
• disgrace
• the days

Translation Words - UST

• The Lord
• the reason that...looked down on
• In this way
Luke 1:26

General Information:

The angel Gabriel announces to Mary that she is going to be the mother of the one who is the Son of God.

in...the sixth month (ULT)
When Elizabeth had been pregnant for...almost six months (UST)

“in the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy.” It may be necessary to state this clearly if it would be confused with the sixth month of the year. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the angel Gabriel was sent from God (ULT)
God sent the angel Gabriel (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God told the angel Gabriel to go” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- angel
- God
- was named
- Nazareth
- Gabriel
- Galilee
- was sent
- month

Translation Words - UST
- angel
- God
- of Nazareth
- of Nazareth
- Gabriel
- district of Galilee
- sent
- months
Luke 1:27

a virgin engaged to a man whose name was Joseph
(ULT)
a virgin who was engaged to be married to a man
named Joseph (UST)

Mary’s parents had agreed that Mary would marry Joseph. Though
they had not had sexual relations, Joseph would have thought and
spoken of her as his wife.

of the house of David (ULT)
who was a descendant of King David (UST)

“He belonged to the same tribe as David” or “He was a descendant of
King David”

the name of the virgin was Mary (ULT)
The virgin’s...name...was Mary (UST)

This introduces Mary as a new character in the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- name (2)
- was Mary
- was Joseph
- of David
- the house of David
- a virgin
- virgin
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- named
- name (2)
- was Mary
- Joseph
- of King David
- who was a descendant...of King David
- a virgin
- virgin’s
- who was a descendant
Luke 1:28

Greetings (ULT)
Greetings (UST)

This was a common greeting. It means: “Rejoice” or “Be glad.”

favored one (ULT)
has shown great kindness to you (UST)

“you who have received great grace!” or “you who have received special kindness!”

The Lord is with you (ULT)
The Lord is with you and (UST)

“with you” here is an idiom that implies support and acceptance. Alternate translation: “The Lord is pleased with you” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• favored one
• angel
• Greetings

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• has shown great kindness to you
• The angel said to her
• Greetings
Luke 1:29

But she was troubled by his words and she was considering what kind of greeting this might be (ULT)
But Mary felt very troubled when she heard his greeting. She wondered what the angel meant by these words (UST)

Mary understood the meaning of the individual words, but she did not understand why the angel said this amazing greeting to her.

Translation Words - ULT

• was troubled

Translation Words - UST

• Mary felt very troubled
Luke 1:30

Do not be afraid, Mary (ULT)
Do not be afraid, Mary (UST)

The angel does not want Mary to be afraid of his appearance, because God sent him with a positive message.

you have found...favor with God (ULT)
you...God has looked upon...with favor (UST)

The idiom “to find favor” means to be positively received by someone. The sentence can be altered to show God as the actor. Alternate translation: “God has decided to give you his grace” or “God is showing you his kindness” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- be afraid
- favor
- angel
- God
- Mary

Translation Words - UST

- be afraid
- has looked upon...with favor
- angel
- God
- Mary

ULT

30 So the angel said to her, “Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God.

UST

30 Then the angel said to her, “Do not be afraid, Mary, for God has looked upon you with favor!”
Luke 1:31

And...you will conceive in your womb...bear a son...
Jesus (ULT)
You will become pregnant...give birth to a son...Jesus (UST)

Mary will bear “a son” who will be called “the Son of the Most High.” Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• you will call
• a son
• name
• your womb
• bear
• you will conceive

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• you must name
• a son
• you must name
• You will become pregnant
• give birth to
• You will become pregnant

ULT

31 And see, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you will call his name Jesus.

UST

31 You will become pregnant and give birth to a son, and you must name him Jesus.
Luke 1:32

the Son of the Most High (ULT)
the Son of the Most High God (UST)

Mary will bear “a son” who will be called “the Son of the Most High.” Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

will be called (ULT)
will be called (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “people will call him” or 2) “God will call him” (See: Active or Passive)

the Son of the Most High (ULT)
the Son of the Most High God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

will give to him...the throne of his father David (ULT)
will make...him...a king over his people as his ancestor David was (UST)

The throne represents the king's authority to rule. Alternate translation: “give him authority to rule as king as his ancestor David did” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• will be called
• the Lord
• of the Most High
• God
• the Son of the Most High
• the Lord God
• David
• father
• throne

Translation Words - UST

• will be called
• The Lord
• of the Most High God
• God
• the Son of the Most High God
• The Lord God
• as...David was
• ancestor
• a king over his people
Luke 1:33

there will be no end of his kingdom (ULT)
He...will rule...forever (UST)

The negative phrase “no end” emphasizes that it continues forever. It could also be stated with a positive phrase. Alternate translation: “his kingdom will never end” (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

• kingdom
• of Jacob
• he will reign
• forever
• house

Translation Words - UST

• will rule
• of Jacob
• He will rule
• forever
• descendants
Luke 1:34

How will this be (ULT)
How can this happen (UST)

Though Mary did not understand how it could happen, she did not doubt that it would happen.

I have not known a man (ULT)
I am a virgin (UST)

Mary used this polite expression to say that she had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: “I am a virgin” (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

• angel
• Mary
• I have...known

Translation Words - UST

• angel
• Mary
• I am a virgin
Luke 1:35

The Holy Spirit will come upon you (ULT)
The Holy Spirit will come to you (UST)

The process of Mary's conception would begin with the Holy Spirit coming to her.

will come upon (ULT)
will come to (UST)

“will overtake”

the power of the Most High (ULT)
the power of God (UST)

It was God's “power” that would supernaturally cause Mary to become pregnant even while she still remained a virgin. Make sure this does not imply any physical or sexual union—this was a miracle.

will overshadow you (ULT)
will cover you (UST)

“will cover you like a shadow”

Therefore, the holy one who will be born will be called the Son of God (ULT)
So the baby you will bear will be holy, and he will be called the Son of God (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “So they will call the holy one who will be born the Son of God” or “So the baby that will be born will be holy, and people will call him the Son of God” (See: Active or Passive)

the...one who...Holy (ULT)
the baby you will bear...Holy (UST)

“the holy child” or “the holy baby”

the Son of God (ULT)
the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• will be called
• of the Most High
• angel
• Holy
• holy (2)
• of God
• the Son of God
• The Holy Spirit
• the power
Translation Words - UST

- and he will be called
- of God
- The angel replied
- Holy
- will be holy (2)
- of God
- the Son of God
- The Holy Spirit
- the power
Luke 1:36

see...your relative (ULT)
listen to this...Your relative (UST)

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: your relative”

your relative Elizabeth (ULT)
Your relative Elizabeth (UST)

If you need to state a specific relationship, Elizabeth was probably Mary’s aunt or great-aunt.

And...she...has conceived a son in her old age (ULT)
And...is pregnant with...a son, even though she is very old (UST)

“Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son, even though she is already very old” or “Elizabeth, even though she is old, has also become pregnant and will bear a son.” Make sure it does not sound as though both Mary and Elizabeth were old when they conceived.

the sixth month...for her (ULT)
six...months...she (UST)

“the sixth month of her pregnancy”

Translation Words - ULT

• was called
• a son
• Elizabeth
• relative
• barren
• month
• has conceived

Translation Words - UST

• people thought that
• a son
• Elizabeth
• relative
• she could not bear children
• months
• is pregnant with
Luke 1:37

For nothing...nothing (ULT)
For...can do...anything (UST)

“Because nothing” or “This shows that nothing”

nothing will be impossible for God (ULT)
God can do anything (UST)

Elizabeth’s pregnancy was proof that God was able to do anything—even enable Mary to become pregnant without her sleeping with a man. The double negatives in this statement can be stated with positive terms. Alternate translation: “God can do anything” (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

• God

Translation Words - UST

• God
Luke 1:38

**See, I am the female servant (ULT)**
**All right, I am...servant (UST)**

“Here I am, the female servant” or “I am glad to be the female servant.” She is responding humbly and willingly.

**See, I am the female servant of the Lord (ULT)**
**All right, I am the Lord’s servant (UST)**

Choose an expression that shows her humility and obedience to the Lord. She was not boasting about being the Lord’s servant.

**May it be done to me (ULT)**
**so let God do to me (UST)**

“Let this happen to me.” Mary was expressing her willingness for the things to happen that the angel had told her were about to happen.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- of the Lord
- angel
- Mary

**Translation Words - UST**

- the Lord's
- angel
- Mary

ULT

38 Then Mary said, “See, I am the female servant of the Lord. May it be done to me according to your word.” Then the angel went away from her.

UST

38 Then Mary said, “All right, I am the Lord’s servant, so let God do to me what you have said!” Then the angel left her.
Luke 1:39

Connecting Statement:
Mary goes to visit her relative Elizabeth, who is going to give birth to John. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

arose (ULT)
got ready and (UST)
This idiom means she not only stood up, but also “got ready.” Alternate translation: “started out” or “got ready” (See: Idiom)

the hill country (ULT)
the highlands (UST)
“the hilly area” or “the mountainous part of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

• Mary
• of Judah
• arose
• days

Translation Words - UST

• Mary
• of Judea
• got ready and
• Very soon after that
Luke 1:40

she entered (ULT)
She entered (UST)

It is implied that Mary finished her journey before she went in to Zechariah's house. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “When she arrived, she went” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Elizabeth
• of Zechariah
• house

Translation Words - UST

• Elizabeth
• his
• house

ULT
40 and she entered into the house of Zechariah and greeted Elizabeth.

UST
40 She entered his house and greeted his wife Elizabeth.
Luke 1:41

Now it happened that (ULT)
As soon (UST)

The phrase is used to mark a new event in this part of the story.

in her womb (ULT)
inside Elizabeth's womb (UST)

“in Elizabeth's womb”

leaped (ULT)
leaped (UST)

moved suddenly

Translation Words - ULT

- was filled
- Holy
- with the Holy Spirit
- baby
- Mary's
- Elizabeth
- Elizabeth (2)
- womb
- when

Translation Words - UST

- guided...to start praising God
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- baby
- Mary
- Elizabeth
- Elizabeth (2)
- womb
- as
Luke 1:42

Then she exclaimed in a loud voice and said (ULT)
She exclaimed loudly to Mary (UST)

These two phrases mean the same thing, and are used to emphasize how excited Elizabeth was. They could be combined into one phrase. Alternate translation: “exclaimed loudly” (See: Doublet)

she exclaimed in a loud voice (ULT)
She exclaimed loudly to Mary (UST)

This idiom means “increased the volume of her voice” (See: Idiom)

Blessed are you among women (ULT)
God has blessed you more than he has blessed other women (UST)

The idiom “among women” means “more than any other woman” (See: Idiom)

the fruit of your womb (ULT)
the baby you will bear (UST)

Mary’s baby is spoken of as if it is the fruit that a plant produces. Alternate translation: “the baby in your womb” or “the baby you will bear” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Blessed are
• blessed is
• fruit
• in a...voice
• she exclaimed
• womb

Translation Words - UST

• God has blessed
• he has blessed
• baby
• She exclaimed loudly to Mary
• She exclaimed loudly to Mary
• will bear
Luke 1:43

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me (ULT)
How wonderful it is that you, the mother of my Lord, have come to me (UST)

Elizabeth is not asking for information. She was showing how surprised and happy she was that the mother of the Lord had come to her. Alternate translation: “How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the mother of my Lord (ULT)
the mother of my Lord (UST)

It can be made clear that Elizabeth was calling Mary “the mother of my Lord” by adding the word “you.” Alternate translation: “you, the mother of my Lord” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
Luke 1:44

For see (ULT)
As soon as (ULT)

This phrase alerts Mary to pay attention to Elizabeth’s surprising statement that follows.

as soon as the sound of your greeting reached to my ears (ULT)
As soon as...I heard you greet me (UST)

Hearing a sound is spoken of as if the sound came to the ears.
Alternate translation: “when I heard the sound of your greeting”
(See: *Metonymy*)

leaped for joy (ULT)
leaped because he was so happy that you had come (UST)

“moved suddenly with joy” or “turned forcefully because he was so happy”

Translation Words - ULT

- baby
- sound
- leaped
- womb
- as soon as
- joy

Translation Words - UST

- baby
- I heard you greet
- leaped
- womb
- As soon as
- he was so happy that you had come
Luke 1:45

And blessed is she who believed...of the things that were spoken to her from the Lord (ULT)
You are blessed because you believed...the Lord told you (UST)

Elizabeth is talking about Mary to Mary. Alternate translation: “Blessed are you who believed...that were told you from the Lord” (See: First, Second or Third Person and Active or Passive)

And blessed is she who believed (ULT)
You are blessed because you believed (UST)

The passive verb can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will bless her because she believed” (See: Active or Passive)

there would be a fulfillment of the things that were spoken (ULT)
what...told...would come true (UST)

“The things would actually happen” or “the things would come true”

of the things that were spoken to her from the Lord (ULT)
the Lord told you (UST)

The word “from” is used here instead of “by” because it was the angel Gabriel whom Mary actually heard speak (see [Luke 1:26] (../01/26.md)), but the message (“the things”) came ultimately from the Lord. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the message that she heard from the Lord” or “the Lord's message that the angel told her” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- blessed is
- the Lord
- believed
- a fulfillment

Translation Words - UST

- You are blessed
- the Lord
- believed
- come true
Luke 1:46

General Information:
Mary begins a song of praise to the Lord her Savior.

My soul magnifies (ULT)
Oh, how I praise (UST)

The word “soul” refers to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: “My inner being praises” or “I praise” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
- Lord
- soul
- magnifies
- Mary

Translation Words - UST
- Lord
- Oh, how I
- praise
- Mary

ULT
46 Then Mary said, “My soul magnifies the Lord.

UST
46 Then Mary praised God by saying: “Oh, how I praise the Lord!”
Luke 1:47

my spirit rejoices (ULT)
I...feel very joyful (UST)

Both “soul” and “spirit” refer to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: “my heart has rejoiced” or “I rejoice” (See: Synecdoche)

rejoices...in (ULT)
feel very joyful...about (UST)

“has felt very joyful about” or “was very happy about”

God my Savior

“God, the One who saves me” or “God, who saves me”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• spirit
• Savior
• rejoices

Translation Words - UST

• God
• I
• who saves
• feel very joyful
Luke 1:48

For he has looked (ULT) but he did not forget me (UST)

“This is because he”

he has looked at (ULT) I was only...lowly...he did not forget me (UST)

“looked at with concern” or “cared about”

low condition (ULT) I was only...lowly (UST)

“poverty.” Mary's family was not rich.

For see (ULT) So (UST)

This phrase calls attention to the statement that follows.

from now on (ULT) from now on (UST)

“now and in the future”

all generations (ULT) people living in all time periods (UST)

“the people in all generations”

Translation Words - ULT

• will call...blessed
• low condition
• generations

Translation Words - UST

• will say that God has blessed
• I was only...lowly
• people living in all time periods
Luke 1:49

the Mighty One (ULT)
that God, the Powerful One (UST)

“God, the Powerful One”

his name (ULT)
His name (UST)

Here “name” refers to the entire person of God. Alternate translation: “he” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• is holy
• name
• Mighty One

Translation Words - UST

• is holy
• name
• that God, the Powerful One
Luke 1:50

and his mercy (ULT)
He acts mercifully...toward (UST)

“God’s mercy”

is from generation to generation

“from one generation to the next generation” or “throughout every generation” or “to people in every time period”

Translation Words - ULT

• who fear
• mercy
• generation
• generation (2)

Translation Words - UST

• respect
• acts mercifully...toward
• one generation
• the next (2)
Luke 1:51

He has done mighty deeds with his arm (ULT)
He shows people that he is very powerful (UST)

Here “his arm” is a metonym that stands for God’s power. Alternate translation: “shown that he is very powerful” (See: Metonymy)

he has scattered...of their hearts (ULT)
He scatters...within their inner beings (UST)

“has caused those...hearts to run away in different directions”

those who are proud in the thoughts of their hearts (ULT)
those who think proudly within their inner beings (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for people's inner beings. Alternate translation: “who were proud in their thoughts” or “who were proud” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• of...hearts
• mighty deeds
• in the thoughts
• those who are proud

Translation Words - UST

• within...inner beings
• that...very powerful
• those who think proudly
• those who think proudly
Luke 1:52

He has thrown down rulers from their thrones (ULT)
He has stopped kings from ruling (UST)

A throne is a chair that a ruler sits on, and it is a symbol of his authority. If a prince is brought down from his throne, it means he no longer has the authority to reign. Alternate translation: “He has taken away the authority of princes” or “He has made rulers stop ruling” (See: Synecdoche)

he has raised up those of low condition (ULT)
he has honored people who are oppressed (UST)

In this word picture, people who are important are higher than people who are less important. Alternate translation: “has made humble people important” or “has given honor to people whom others have not honored” (See: Metaphor)

those of low condition (ULT)
people who are oppressed (UST)


Translation Words - ULT

• those of low condition
• he has raised up
• rulers
• their thrones

Translation Words - UST

• people who are oppressed
• he has honored
• kings
• ruling
Luke 1:53

He has filled the hungry with good things (ULT)
He has given good things to eat to those who are hungry (UST)

The contrast between these two opposite actions should be made clear in the translation if possible.

He has filled the hungry with good things...the rich he has sent away empty (ULT)
He has given good things to eat to those who are hungry...he has sent away rich people without giving them anything (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “given the hungry good food to eat” or 2) “given the needy good things.”

Translation Words - ULT

• with good things
• empty
• he has sent away

Translation Words - UST

• good things
• without giving them anything
• he has sent away
Luke 1:54

General Information:

The UST rearranges these verses into a verse bridge in order to keep the information about Israel together. (See: Verse Bridges)

He has helped (ULT)

“The Lord has helped”

Israel his servant (ULT)

If readers confuse this with the man named Israel, it could be translated as “his servant, the nation of Israel” or “Israel, his servants.”

remembering (ULT)

God cannot forget. When God “remembers,” it is an idiom that means God acts upon his earlier promise. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- his mercy
- Israel
- servant

Translation Words - UST

- mercy, merciful
- Israel, Israelites
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
Luke 1:55

as he spoke to our fathers (ULT)

“just as he promised our ancestors he would do.” This phrase supplies background information about God’s promise to Abraham. Alternate translation: “because he promised our ancestors he would be merciful” (See: Background Information)

to...his descendants (ULT)

“Abraham’s descendants”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- fathers
- descendants
- as
- forever

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham, Abram
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- descend, descendant
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if
- age, aged
Luke 1:56

Connecting Statement:
Elizabeth delivers her baby and then Zechariah names their baby.

then returned to her home (ULT)
she returned to her home (UST)

“Mary returned to her (Mary's) house” or “Mary returned to her own house”

Translation Words - ULT

• Mary
• months
• then returned
• home

Translation Words - UST

• Mary
• three
• she returned
• home
Luke 1:57

Now (ULT)
When (UST)

This word marks the beginning of the next event in the story.

to deliver her baby (ULT)
to bear her child (UST)

“give birth to her baby”

Translation Words - ULT

• a son
• had come
• Elizabeth
• time
• she gave birth to

Translation Words - UST

• a son
• it was time
• for Elizabeth
• it was time
• she bore
Luke 1:58

Her neighbors and her relatives

“Elizabeth's neighbors and relatives”

had shown…great…her…his…mercy to (ULT)
the Lord had been so kind…Her…the Lord had been so kind…to (UST)

“been very kind to her”

Translation Words - ULT

• the Lord
• mercy
• had shown…great
• relatives
• they rejoiced

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord had been so kind
• the Lord had been so kind
• the Lord had been so kind
• relatives
• they were happy along with

ULT
58 Then her neighbors and her relatives heard that the Lord had shown his great mercy to her, and they rejoiced with her.

UST
58 Her neighbors and relatives heard how the Lord had been so kind to her, and they were happy along with Elizabeth.
Luke 1:59

Now it happened (ULT)  
On the eighth day after this, people gathered together (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

on the eighth day (ULT)  
On the eighth day...people gathered together (UST)

Here “eighth day” refers to the time after the birth of the baby, counted from the first day, which was the day he was born. Alternate translation: “on the eighth day of the baby's life” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

that they came to circumcise the child (ULT)  
On the eighth day...people gathered together...for the ceremony to circumcise the baby (UST)

This was often a ceremony where one person circumcised the baby and friends were there to celebrate with the family. Alternate translation: “they came for the baby's circumcision ceremony” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they would have named him (ULT)  
they wanted to give the baby the...same...name (UST)

“They were going to name him” or “They wanted to give him the name”

after the name of his father (ULT)  
Since his father's name (UST)

“his father's name”

Translation Words - ULT

• they would have named
• to circumcise
• name
• child
• Zechariah
• father
• day

Translation Words - UST

• they wanted to give the baby the...name
• for the ceremony to circumcise
• name
• baby
was Zechariah
father's
On the eighth day...people gathered together
Luke 1:60

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - Ult

- he will be called
- John

Translation Words - UST

- his name must be
- John

ULT

60 But his mother answered and said, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”

UST

60 But his mother said, “No, his name must be John!”
Luke 1:61

by this name (ULT)
the name (UST)

“by that name” or “by the same name”

Translation Words - ULT
• who is called
• name
• relatives

Translation Words - UST
• the name
• the name
• relatives

ULT
61 But they said to her, “There is no one among your relatives who is called by this name.”

UST
61 So they said to her, “But John is not the name of any of your relatives!”
Luke 1:62

they made signs (ULT)
they made motions with their hands (UST)

This refers to the people who were there for the circumcision ceremony.

tythey made signs (ULT)
tythey made motions with their hands (UST)

“motioned.” Either Zechariah was unable to hear, as well as speak, or the people assumed that he could not hear.

to his father (ULT)
to his father (UST)

“to the baby’s father”

as to what he wanted him to be named (ULT)
for him to indicate what name he wanted to be given to his son (UST)

“what name Zechariah wanted to give the baby”

Translation Words - ULT

- to be named
- father

Translation Words - UST

- name...to be given
- father
Luke 1:63

So he asked for a writing tablet (ULT)
So he signaled that they should give him a tablet to write on (UST)

It may be helpful to state how Zechariah "asked," since he could not speak. Alternate translation: "His father used his hands to show the people that he wanted them to give him a writing tablet" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a writing tablet (ULT)
a tablet to write on (UST)

“something on which to write"

even...were astonished (ULT)
even were surprised (UST)

greatly surprised or amazed

Translation Words - ULT

• name
• John
• they...were astonished

Translation Words - UST

• name
• John
• were surprised
Luke 1:64

was opened...his mouth...and his tongue was freed (ULT)
Immediately Zechariah was able to speak again...
Immediately Zechariah was able to speak again (ULT)

These two phrases are word pictures that together emphasize that Zechariah was suddenly able to speak. (See: Idiom and Parallelism)

ULT 64 Then immediately his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed, and he spoke, blessing God.

UST 64 Immediately Zechariah was able to speak again, and he began praising God.

These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God opened his mouth and freed his tongue” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• blessing
• God
• tongue

Translation Words - UST

• he began praising
• God
• Immediately Zechariah was able to speak again
Luke 1:65

So fear came on all those who lived around them (ULT)
Everyone who lived nearby was completely awed by what God had done (UST)

“All who lived around Zechariah and Elizabeth were afraid.” It may be helpful to state clearly why they were afraid. Alternate translation: “All who lived around them were in awe of God because he had done this to Zechariah” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

all...those who lived around them (ULT)
was completely awed by what God had done...Everyone who lived nearby (UST)

The word “all” here is a generalization. Alternate translation: “those who lived around them” or “many who lived in that area” (See: Hyperbole)

all these matters were being talked about throughout all the hill country of Judea (ULT)
They told many other people about what had happened...the news spread all over the highlands of Judea (UST)

The phrase “these matters were spread” is a metaphor for people talking about them. The passive verb here can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “All these matters were talked about by people throughout all the hill country of Judea” or “People throughout the hill country of Judea talked about all these matters” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• fear
• Judea

Translation Words - UST

• was completely awed by what God had done
• Judea
Luke 1:66

all those who heard these things (ULT)
Everyone...who heard it (UST)

“All who heard about these matters”

stored them...in their hearts (ULT)
Everyone...kept thinking about it (UST)

Thinking often about things that have happened is spoken of as putting those things safely in their hearts. Alternate translation: “thought carefully about these matters” or “thought a lot about these events” (See: Metaphor)

hearts...saying (ULT)
kept thinking about it...They were saying (UST)

“hearts. They asked”

What then will this child become (ULT)
We wonder what work this child will do when he grows up (UST)

“What kind of great person will this baby grow up to be?” It is also possible that this question was meant to be a statement of their surprise at what they had heard about the baby. Alternate translation: “What a great man this child will be!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the hand of the Lord was with him (ULT)
that God would be helping him in a powerful way (UST)

The phrase “the hand of the Lord” refers to the Lord's power. Alternate translation: “the Lord's power was with him” or “the Lord was working in him powerfully” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- hearts
- child
- the hand
- stored them

Translation Words - UST

- that God
- kept thinking about it
- child
- helping...in a powerful way
- Everyone
Luke 1:67

Connecting Statement:
Zechariah tells what will happen with his son John.

his father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied (ULT)
the Holy Spirit began to control Zechariah and he spoke...from God (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Holy Spirit filled his father Zechariah, and Zachariah prophesied” (See: Active or Passive)

his father (ULT)
Zechariah (UST)

John's father

prophesied, saying (ULT)
he spoke these words from God (UST)

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotes in your language. Alternate translation: “prophesied and said” or “prophesied, and this is what he said” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Translation Words - ULT

• was filled
• Holy
• prophesied
• with the Holy Spirit
• Zechariah
• father

Translation Words - UST

• began to control
• Holy
• he spoke...from God
• the Holy Spirit
• Zechariah
• Zechariah
Luke 1:68

the God of Israel (ULT)
the God whom we people of Israel worship (UST)

“Israel” here refers to the nation of Israel. The relationship between God and Israel could be stated more directly. Alternate translation: “the God who reigns over Israel” or “the God whom Israel worships” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for his people (ULT)
us, his people (UST)

“God's people"

Translation Words - ULT

- his people
- Blessed be
- the Lord
- God
- redemption
- Israel
- people

Translation Words - UST

- us...his...people
- Praise
- the Lord
- God
- free
- of Israel
- us...people

ULT 68 “Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel, for he has come to help and he has accomplished redemption for his people.

UST 68 “Praise the Lord, the God whom we people of Israel worship, because he has come to set us, his people, free.
Luke 1:69

he has raised up a horn of salvation for us (ULT)
He is sending...us someone who will powerfully save us (UST)

The horn of an animal is a symbol of its power to defend itself. To raise up here is to bring into existence or to enable to act. The Messiah is spoken of as if he were a horn with the power to save Israel. Alternate translation: “He has brought to us someone with the power to save us” (See: Metaphor)

in the house of his servant David (ULT)
someone who is descended from his servant, King David (UST)

David’s “house” here represents his family, specifically, his descendants. Alternate translation: “in the family of his servant David” or “who is a descendant of his servant David” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• of salvation
• of...David
• he has raised up
• a horn
• servant
• the house

Translation Words - UST

• save us
• King David
• He is sending
• someone who will powerfully save us
• servant
• descended

ULT

69 And he has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David

UST

69 He is sending us someone who will powerfully save us, someone who is descended from his servant, King David.
Luke 1:70

as he spoke (ULT)
God caused...to say that he would do that (UST)

“just as God said”

he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago (ULT)
Long ago God caused his prophets to say (UST)

God speaking by the prophets' mouths represents God causing his prophets to say what he wanted them to say. Alternate translation: “he caused his holy prophets who lived long ago to say” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• holy
• prophets
• as

Translation Words - UST

• Long ago...prophets
• Long ago...prophets
• that he would do that
Luke 1:71

**salvation from our enemies (ULT)**

This powerful Savior will rescue us from our enemies (UST)

The abstract noun “salvation” can be expressed with the verbs “save” or “rescue.” Alternate translation: He will save us from our enemies” (See: Abstract Nouns)

**our enemies...of all those who hate us (ULT)**

our enemies...of all those who hate us (UST)

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how strongly their enemies are against them. (See: Parallelism)

**the hand (ULT)**

the power (UST)

The hand is a metonym for the power that the person uses the hand to exercise. Alternate translation: “power” or “control” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- salvation
- the hand
- enemies

Translation Words - UST

- This powerful Savior will rescue us
- the power
- enemies
Luke 1:72

to show mercy to (ULT)
because he is merciful to (UST)

“to be merciful to” or “to act according to his mercy toward”

to remember (ULT)
remembers (UST)

Here the word “remember” means to keep a commitment or fulfill something.

Translation Words - ULT

• holy
• covenant
• to show mercy
• He will do this
• fathers

Translation Words - UST

• holy
• covenant
• because he is merciful
• He has done this
• ancestors

ULT
72 He will do this to show mercy to our fathers and to remember his holy covenant,

UST
72 He has done this because he is merciful to our ancestors and remembers his holy covenant,
Luke 1:73

the oath that he swore (ULT)
which is the oath that he promised (UST)

These words refer to “his holy covenant” (verse 72).

to grant to us (ULT)
our (UST)

“to make it possible for us”

Translation Words - ULT

- Abraham
- father
- the oath
- he swore

Translation Words - UST

- Abraham
- ancestor
- which is the oath
- he promised
Luke 1:74

that we, having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies, would serve him without fear (ULT)
God promised to rescue us from the power of our enemies, and to enable us to serve him without being afraid (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that we would serve him without fear after he rescued us from the hand of our enemies” (See: Active or Passive)

out of the hand of our enemies (ULT)
from the power of our enemies, and to enable us (UST)

Here “hand” refers to the control or power a person. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “from the control of our enemies” (See: Metonymy)

without fear (ULT)
without being afraid (UST)

This refers back to the fear of their enemies. Alternate translation: “without being afraid of our enemies” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• that...having been delivered
• the hand
• of our enemies
• we...would serve

Translation Words - UST

• God promised to rescue us
• the power
• of our enemies, and to enable us
• to serve
Luke 1:75

in holiness and righteousness (ULT)
that he would cause us to be completely dedicated to him, and enable us to live righteously (UST)

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “holiness” and “righteousness.” Possible meanings are 1) we would serve God in holy and righteous ways. Alternate translation: “doing what is holy and righteous” or 2) we would be holy and righteous. Alternate translation: “being holy and righteous” (See: Abstract Nouns)

before him (ULT)
to him, and enable us to live righteously (UST)

This is an idiom which means “in his presence” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- righteousness
- holiness
- days

Translation Words - UST

- to him, and enable us to live righteously
- that he would cause us to be completely dedicated
- lives
Luke 1:76

And indeed, you, (ULT)
Then Zechariah said this to his baby son: “My child...
you (UST)

Zechariah uses this phrase to begin his direct address to his son. You may have a similar way to direct speech in your language.

you...child...a prophet...will be called (ULT)
you...My child...a prophet...they will call (UST)

People will realize that he is a prophet. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people will know that you are a prophet” (See: Active or Passive)

of the Most High (ULT)
of the Most High God (UST)

These words are a euphemism for God. Alternate translation: “who serves the Most High” or “who speaks for God Most High” (See: Euphemism)

you will go...before the Lord (ULT)
You will go ahead...You will go ahead...of the Lord (UST)

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them. See how you translated this in Luke 1:17.

before the Lord (ULT)
You will go ahead...of the Lord (UST)

“the face of” someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person’s presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: “the Lord” See how you translated this in Luke 1:17. (See: Idiom)

to prepare his paths (ULT)
to prepare a people to be ready when he comes (UST)

This is a metaphor that means that John will prepare the people to listen to and believe the Lord's message. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- will be called
- the Lord
- of the Most High
- a prophet
- child

Translation Words - UST

- they will call
- of the Lord
- of the Most High God
• a prophet
• My child
Luke 1:77

to give the knowledge of salvation...through the forgiveness of their sins (ULT)
You will tell...and save...from being punished...that he is able to forgive them...for their sins (UST)

The phrase “give knowledge” is a metaphor for teaching. The abstract nouns “salvation” and “forgiveness” can be expressed with the verbs “save” and “forgive.” Alternate translation: “to teach his people salvation through the forgiveness of their sins” or “to teach his people how God saves people by forgiving their sins” (See: Metonymy and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• of salvation
• his people
• of...sins
• the forgiveness
• people
• knowledge

Translation Words - UST

• and save...from being punished
• God's people...them
• for...sins
• to forgive them
• God's people
• You will tell
Luke 1:78

This will happen because of the tender mercy of our God (ULT)
God will forgive us because he is kind and merciful to us (UST)

It might be helpful to state that God's mercy helps people. Alternate translation: “because God is compassionate and merciful to us” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the sunrise from on high (ULT)
is like the rising sun...from heaven to help us (UST)

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the spiritual truth the Savior will provide is spoken of as if it is a sunrise that lights up the earth. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• the tender mercy
• of...God
• on high

Translation Words - UST

• is kind and merciful
• he
• heaven to help us
Luke 1:79

to shine (ULT)
He will shine (UST)

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the spiritual truth that the Savior will provide is spoken of as if it is a sunrise that lights up the earth (verse 78). (See: Metaphor)

to shine (ULT)
He will shine (UST)

“give knowledge to” or “give spiritual light to”

on those...in darkness...who sit (ULT)
on people...in spiritual darkness...who live (UST)

Darkness is here a metaphor for the absence of spiritual truth. Here, people who lack spiritual truth are spoken of as if they are sitting in darkness. Alternate translation: “people who do not know the truth” (See: Metaphor)

in darkness and in the shadow of death (ULT)
in spiritual darkness and in the fear of death (UST)

These two phrases work together to emphasize the deep spiritual darkness of people before God shows them mercy. (See: Doublet)

in the shadow of death (ULT)
in the fear of death (UST)

The shadow often represents something that is about to happen. Here, it refers to approaching death. Alternate translation: “who are about to die” (See: Idiom)

to guide...our feet into the path of peace (ULT)
He will guide...us so that we will live peacefully (UST)

Here “guide” is a metaphor for teaching, and “path of peace” is a metaphor for living at peace with God. The phrase “our feet” is a synecdoche that represents the whole person. Alternate translation: “teach us how to live at peace with God” (See: Metaphor and Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• in the shadow
• darkness
• of death
• of peace

Translation Words - UST

• in the fear
• spiritual darkness
• of death
• peacefully
Luke 1:80

General Information:

This tells briefly about John's growing years.

Now (ULT)
Over time (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Luke quickly moves from the birth of John to the beginning of his ministry as an adult.

became strong in spirit (ULT)
became spiritually strong (UST)

“became spiritually mature” or “strengthened his relationship with God”

he was in the wilderness (ULT)
he lived in a desolate region (UST)


until (ULT)
and was still living there when (UST)

This does not necessarily mark a stopping point. John continued to live out in the desert even after he started preaching publicly.

the day of his public appearance (ULT)
he began to preach publicly (UST)

“when he began to preach in public”

the day (ULT)
began to preach publicly (UST)

This is used here in the general sense of “the time” or “the occasion.”

Translation Words - ULT

* in spirit
* Israel
* child
* wilderness
* became strong
* the day

Translation Words - UST

* spiritually
* Israel
• baby boy
• desolate region
• became...strong
• began to preach publicly
Luke 2

Luke 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 2:14, 29-32.
Luke 2:1

General Information:

This gives background to show why Mary and Joseph have to move at the time of Jesus’ birth.

Now (ULT)
Around that time (UST)

This word marks the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

it came about that (ULT)
Around that time (UST)

This phrase is used to show that this is the beginning of an account. If your language has a way of showing the start of an account, you may use that. Some versions do not include this phrase.

Caesar Augustus (ULT)
Caesar...Augustus (UST)

“King Augustus” or “Emperor Augustus.” Augustus was the first emperor of the Roman Empire. (See: How to Translate Names and Introduction of New and Old Participants)

a decree went out (ULT)
sent out an official order (UST)

This command was probably carried by messengers throughout the empire. Alternate translation: “sent messengers with a decree ordering” (See: Idiom)

for all the world to be registered (ULT)
that every person living under Roman rule must register in a public record (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that they register all the people living in the world” or “that they count all the people in the world and write down their names” (See: Active or Passive)

the world (ULT)
under Roman rule (UST)

Here the word “world” represents only the part of the world that Caesar Augustus ruled. Alternate translation: “the Empire” or “the Roman world” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- world
- Caesar
- days
- a decree

Translation Words - UST

- under Roman rule
• Caesar
• Around that time
• an official order
Luke 2:2

Quirinius (ULT)
Quirinius (UST)

Quirinius was appointed to be the governor of Syria. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Syria
• while...was governing

Translation Words - UST

• province of Syria
• during the time that...was governing

ULT
2 This first registration happened while Quirinius was governing Syria.

UST
2 This first happened during the time that Quirinius was governing the province of Syria.
Luke 2:3

everyone went (ULT)
everyone had to go...to register (UST)

“everyone started off” or “everyone was going”

his own city (ULT)
his family's hometown (UST)

This refers to the cities where people's ancestors lived. People may have lived in a different city. Alternate translation: “the city in which his ancestors lived” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to be registered (ULT)
everyone...to register (UST)

“to have their names written in the register” or “to be included in the official count”
Luke 2:4

General Information:

The UST rearranges these two verses into a verse bridge in order to make it easier to shorten the sentences. (See: Verse Bridges)

Joseph also (ULT)

This introduces Joseph as a new participant in the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

to the city of David which is called Bethlehem (ULT)

The phrase “the city of David” was a name for Bethlehem that tells why Bethlehem was important. Although it was a small town, King David was born there, and there was a prophecy that the Messiah would be born there. Alternate translation: “to Bethlehem, the city of King David” or “to Bethlehem, the town where King David was born” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

also...because he was of the house...family line of David (ULT)

“because Joseph was a descendant of David”

Translation Words - ULT

- is called
- Joseph
- of Nazareth
- Judea
- the city of David
- Galilee
- of David
- Bethlehem
- family line
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- call, call out
- Joseph (NT)
- Nazareth, Nazarene
- Judea
- city of David
- Galilee, Galilean
- David
- Bethlehem, Ephrathah
- family, household
- house
Luke 2:5

He went to register (ULT)

This means to report to the officials there so they could include him in the count. Use a term for an official government count if possible.

with Mary (ULT)

Mary traveled with Joseph from Nazareth. It is likely that women were also taxed, so Mary would have needed to travel and be registered as well. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

who was engaged to him (ULT)

“his fiancee” or “who was promised to him.” An engaged couple was considered legally married, but there would not have been physical intimacy between them.

Translation Words - ULT

• Mary

Translation Words - UST

• Mary, the mother of Jesus
Luke 2:6

General Information:
The UST rearranges these verses into a verse bridge in order to keep together the details about the place they stayed. (See: Verse Bridges)

Connecting Statement:
This tells of the birth of Jesus and the announcement by the angels to the shepherds.

Now it came about that (ULT)
This phrase marks the beginning of the next event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

while they were there (ULT)
“while Mary and Joseph were in Bethlehem”

the time came for the birth of her baby (ULT)
“It was time to give birth to her baby”

Translation Words - ULT

• came
• time

Translation Words - UST

• fulfill, fulfilled, carried out
• day
Luke 2:7

she wrapped him in strips of cloth (ULT)

In some cultures mothers comfort their babies by wrapping them tightly in cloth or a blanket. Alternate translation: “wrapped cloths firmly around him” or “wrapped him tightly in a blanket” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information).

him...laid...in a manger (ULT)

This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. It was most likely clean and may have had something soft and dry like hay in it as a cushion for the baby. Animals were often kept near the home to keep them secure and to feed them easily. Mary and Joseph stayed in a room that was used for animals.

there was no room for them in the inn (ULT)

“there was no space for them to stay in the guest room.” This was probably because so many people went to Bethlehem to register. Luke adds this as background information. (See: Background Information).

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• firstborn

Translation Words - UST

• son
• firstborn
Luke 2:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- shepherds
- flock
- watch

Translation Words - UST

- some shepherds
- sheep
- That night...That night...who were taking care

ULT
8 Now there were shepherds in that region, who were staying in the fields and keeping watch over their flock at night.

UST
8 That night, >>>>>>> Stashed changes there were some shepherds who were taking care of their sheep in the fields near Bethlehem.
Luke 2:9

an angel of the Lord (ULT)
an angel of the Lord (UST)

“An angel from the Lord” or “An angel who served the Lord”
appeared to them (ULT)
appeared to them (UST)

“came to the shepherds”
of the Lord...the glory (ULT)
of the Lord...A bright light...showing...glory (UST)

The source of the bright light was the glory of the Lord, which appeared at the same time as the angel.

Translation Words - ULT

• they were...afraid
• of the Lord
• of the Lord (2)
• an angel
• the glory

Translation Words - UST

• they became...afraid
• of the Lord
• the Lord's (2)
• an angel
• A bright light...showing...glory
Luke 2:10

Do not be afraid (ULT)
Do not be afraid (UST)

“Stop being afraid”

great joy, which will be to all the people (ULT)
which will benefit all people and will make you all very happy (UST)

“that will make all the people very happy”

to all the people (ULT)
all people (UST)

Some understand this to refer to the Jewish people. Others understand it to refer to all people.

Translation Words - ULT

- be afraid
- angel
- people
- I bring
- joy

Translation Words - UST

- be afraid
- angel
- people
- I have come to tell...good news
- and will make you all...happy

ULT

10 Then the angel said to them, “Do not be afraid, for behold, I bring you great joy, which will be to all the people.

UST

10 But the angel said to them, “Do not be afraid! I have come to tell you good news, which will benefit all people and will make you all very happy!”
Luke 2:11

the city of David (ULT)
the city of David (UST)

This refers to Bethlehem.

Translation Words - ULT

• the Lord
• a Savior
• Christ
• the city of David
• of David

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord
• a baby
• the Messiah
• the city of David
• of David

ULT
11 For today has been born for you in the city of David a Savior, who is Christ the Lord!

UST
11 Today, in the city of David, a baby has been born who will save you from your sins! He is the Messiah, the Lord!
Luke 2:12

And this will be the sign to you (ULT)
This is how you will recognize him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will give you this sign” or “You will see this sign from God” (See: Active or Passive)

the sign (ULT)
is how...will recognize him (UST)

“the proof.” This could either be a sign to prove that what the angel was saying was true, or it could be a sign that would help the shepherds recognize the baby.

wrapped in strips of cloth (ULT)
wrapped in strips of cloth (UST)

This was the normal way that mothers protected and cared for their babies in that culture. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7. Alternate translation: “wrapped firmly in a warm blanket” or “wrapped comfortably in a blanket” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

lying in a manger (ULT)
lying in a feeding place for animals (UST)

This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.

Translation Words - ULT

• sign
• a baby

Translation Words - UST

• is how...will recognize him
• a baby
Luke 2:13

a multitude of the heavenly army (ULT)
a large group...from heaven (UST)

These words could refer to a literal army of angels, or it could be a metaphor for an organized group of angels. Alternate translation: “a large group of angels from heaven” (See: Metaphor)

praising God (ULT)
They all praised God (UST)

“giving praise to God”

Translation Words - ULT

• heavenly
• angel
• God
• praising

Translation Words - UST

• from heaven
• of angels
• God
• They all praised
Luke 2:14

Glory to God in the highest (ULT)
May all the angels in the highest heaven praise God (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “Give honor to God in the highest place” or 2) “Give the highest honor to God.”

in...on earth, peace...people with whom he is pleased (ULT)
May all the angels in...may there be peace on earth...people who are pleasing to God (UST)

“may those people on earth with whom God is pleased have peace”

Translation Words - UST

• God
• praise
• are pleasing to God
• May all the angels in the highest heaven
• may there be peace
• earth
Luke 2:15

Now it came about that (ULT)
After...left (UST)

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story to what the shepherds did after the angels left.

from them (ULT)
them (UST)

“from the shepherds”

to each other (ULT)
to each other (UST)

“to one another”

Let us...go over...to us (ULT)
We...go...us (UST)

Since the shepherds were speaking to one another, languages that have inclusive forms for “we” and “us” should use the inclusive form here. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

Let us...go over (ULT)
We...go (UST)

“We should”

this thing that has happened

This refers to the birth of the baby, and not to the appearance of the angels.

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- Lord
- angels
- Bethlehem
- shepherds
- when
- has made known

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- Lord
- angels
- Bethlehem
- shepherds
- After...left
- has told...about
Luke 2:16

who was lying in the manger (ULT)
lying in a feeding place for animals (UST)

A manger is a box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.

Translation Words - ULT

• baby
• Mary
• Joseph

Translation Words - UST

• baby
• Mary
• Joseph

ULT

16 So they hurried there and found both Mary and Joseph, and the baby, who was lying in the manger.

UST

16 So they went quickly and when they had found the place where Mary and Joseph were staying, they saw the baby lying in a feeding place for animals.
Luke 2:17

the message that had been told to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the angels had told the shepherds" (See: Active or Passive)

the...this...child (ULT)
what...this...child (UST)

“the baby”

Translation Words - ULT

- child
- they made known

Translation Words - UST

- child
- they told everyone
Luke 2:18

the things that were spoken to them by the shepherds (ULT)
what...the shepherds said to them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the shepherds told them" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• shepherds
• were amazed

Translation Words - UST

• shepherds
• were amazed
Luke 2:19

pondering them in her heart (ULT) and carefully remembered them (UST)

A person who thinks is something is very valuable or precious is “treasuring” it. Mary considered the things she was told about her son to be very precious. Alternate translation: “carefully remembering them” or “joyfully remembering them” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Mary

Translation Words - UST

- carefully
- Mary

ULT

19 But Mary treasured up all these things, pondering them in her heart.

UST

19 But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard and carefully remembered them.
Luke 2:20

the shepherds returned (ULT)
The shepherds...returned to the fields where their sheep were (UST)

“shepherds went back to the sheep”

glorifying and praising God (ULT)
They kept talking about how great God is and praising him (UST)

These are very similar and emphasize how excited they were about what God had done. Alternate translation: “talking about and praising God’s greatness” (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- glorifying
- shepherds
- praising
- returned
- just as

Translation Words - UST

- God is
- They kept talking about how great
- shepherds
- praising him
- returned to the fields where their sheep were
- because everything happened exactly like

ULT
20 Then the shepherds returned, glorifying and praising God for everything that they had heard and seen, just as it had been spoken to them.

UST
20 The shepherds returned to the fields where their sheep were. They kept talking about how great God is and praising him for all the things that they had heard and seen, because everything happened exactly like the angels had told them.
Luke 2:21

General Information:

The laws God gave the Jewish believers told them when to circumcise a boy baby and what sacrifice the parents had to bring.

when eight days had passed (ULT) Eight days...later (UST)

This phrase shows the passing of time before this new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

eight days had passed (ULT) Eight days (UST)

“the end of the eighth day of his life.” The day he was born was counted as the first day.

his name was called (ULT) they gave him the name (UST)

Joseph and Mary gave him his name.

which he had been called by the angel (ULT) This was the name the angel had told them to give him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the name the angel had called him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• was called
• he had been called
• angel
• when...was circumcised
• name
• womb
• days
• was conceived

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• they gave
• was the name...had told them to give him
• angel
• when...was circumcised
• name
• Mary had become pregnant with him
• days
• Mary had become pregnant with him
Luke 2:22

when the days of their purification had passed (ULT)
When...the required number of days for their purification had gone by (UST)

This shows the passing of time before this new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

the days of their purification (ULT)
the required number of days for their purification (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the number of days that God required” (See: Active or Passive)

of their purification (ULT)
for their purification (UST)

“for them to become ceremonially clean.” You can also state God’s role. Alternate translation: “for God to consider them to be clean again” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to present him to the Lord (ULT)
to dedicate...to the Lord (UST)

“to bring him to the Lord” or “to bring him into the Lord’s presence.” This was a ceremony acknowledging God’s claim on the firstborn children who were male.

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- law of Moses
- purification
- of Moses
- Jerusalem
- law
- days

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- law of Moses
- for...purification
- of Moses
- Jerusalem
- law
- required number of days
Luke 2:23

as it is written (ULT)
It had been written (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “As Moses wrote” or “They did this because Moses wrote” (See: Active or Passive)

Every...male who opens the womb (ULT)
the...every male offspring...that is...first to be born (UST)

“open the womb” here is an idiom that refers to the first baby coming out of the womb. This referred to both animals and people. Alternate translation: “Every firstborn offspring who is a male” or “Every firstborn son” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• will be called
• of the Lord
• Lord
• holy
• the law of the Lord
• the law
• the womb
• as
• it is written

Translation Words - UST

• You must set apart
• of the Lord
• Lord
• to be holy
• the law of the Lord
• the law
• the...that is...first to be born
• It had been written
• It had been written
Luke 2:24

what was said in the law of the Lord (ULT)
The law of the Lord...also said (UST)

“that which the law of the Lord also says.” This is a different place in the law. It refers to all males, whether firstborn or not.

Translation Words - ULT

• of the Lord
• law of the Lord
• law
• a sacrifice
• pigeons

Translation Words - UST

• of the Lord
• law of the Lord
• law
• as a sacrifice
• pigeons
Luke 2:25

Connecting Statement:

When Mary and Joseph are at the temple, they meet two people: Simeon, who praises God and gives a prophecy about the child, and the prophetess Anna.

see (ULT)
At that time (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Now...was righteous...devout (ULT)
At that time...did what was pleasing to God...obeyed God’s laws (UST)

These abstract terms can be expressed as actions. Alternate translation: “did what was right and feared God” or “obeyed God's laws and feared God”

the consolation of Israel (ULT)
to encourage the Israelite people (UST)

The word “Israel” is a metonym for the people of Israel. To “console” someone is to give them comfort, or “consolation.” The words “consolation of Israel” are a metonym for the Christ or Messiah who would comfort or bring consolation to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “the one who would comfort the people of Israel” (See: Metonymy)

there was...the Holy Spirit...upon him (ULT)
there was...the Holy Spirit...directing him (UST)

“the Holy Spirit was with him.” God was with him in a special way and gave him wisdom and direction in his life.

Translation Words - ULT

- was righteous
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit was
- name
- Israel
- was Simeon
- Jerusalem
- the consolation

Translation Words - UST

- did what was pleasing to God
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit was
- name
- Israelite people
was Simeon
Jerusalem
to encourage
Luke 2:26

Now it had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit (ULT)
The Holy Spirit had previously revealed to him that (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Holy Spirit had shown him” or “The Holy Spirit had told him” (See: Active or Passive)

that he would not see death before he had seen the Lord’s Christ (ULT)
he would see the Lord’s promised Messiah before he died (UST)

“he would see the Lord’s Messiah before he died”

Translation Words - ULT

• revealed
• Lord’s
• Holy
• Holy Spirit
• Christ
• death

Translation Words - UST

• previously revealed...that
• Lord’s
• Holy
• Holy Spirit
• promised Messiah
• he died
Luke 2:27

**ULT**

So he came in the Spirit (ULT)
the Spirit led Simeon to enter (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “As the Holy Spirit directed him” (See: Active or Passive)

he came (ULT)
Simeon to enter (UST)

Some languages may say “went.”

into the temple (ULT)
the temple courtyard (UST)

“into the temple courtyard.” Only priests could enter the temple building. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the parents (ULT)
Joseph and Mary (UST)

“Jesus’ parents”

the...to do...was the custom...law (ULT)
in order to perform...God had commanded...laws...the temple courtyard (UST)

“the custom of the law of God”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- law
- Spirit
- child
- temple

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- laws
- the Spirit led
- baby
- the temple courtyard
Luke 2:28

he took him into his arms (ULT)
he took Jesus up in his arms (UST)

“Simeon took the infant Jesus into his arms” or “Simeon held Jesus in his arms”

Translation Words - ULT

- praised
- God
- took

Translation Words - UST

- praised
- God
- took

ULT
28 then he took him into his arms and praised God, and he said,

UST
28 Then he took Jesus up in his arms and praised God, saying,
Luke 2:29

Now let your servant depart...in peace (ULT)
I can now die...in peace (UST)

“I am your servant; let me depart in peace.” Simeon was referring to himself.

let...depart (ULT)
can...die (UST)

This is a euphemism meaning “die” (See: Euphemism)

according to your word (ULT)
according to your promise (UST)

“Word” here is a metonym for “promise.” Alternate translation: “as you have promised” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• peace
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• Lord, you have made me content and
• peace
• I
Luke 2:30

my eyes have seen (ULT)
I...have seen (UST)

This expression means, “I have personally seen” or “I, myself, have seen” (See: Synecdoche)

your salvation (ULT)
the one whom you sent to save people (UST)

This expression refers to the person who would bring salvation—the infant Jesus—whom Simeon was holding. Alternate translation: “the savior whom you sent” or “the one whom you sent to save” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- salvation

Translation Words - UST

- sent to save people
Luke 2:31

which you have prepared (ULT)
the one you prepared (UST)

Depending on how you translate the previous phrase, this may need to be changed to “whom you.”

you have prepared (ULT)
you prepared (UST)

“have planned” or “caused to happen”

Translation Words - ULT
  • peoples
  • the presence

Translation Words - UST
  • people
  • for...to see
Luke 2:32

A light for revelation to the Gentiles (ULT)
He will be like a light that will reveal your truth to the Gentiles (UST)

This metaphor means that the child will help people to understand God's will. The Gentiles understanding God's will is spoken of as if it were people using physical light to see a solid object. You may need to make explicit what it is that the Gentiles will see. Alternate translation: “This child will enable the Gentiles to understand God's will as light allows people to see clearly” (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for revelation (ULT)
that will reveal your truth (UST)

It may be necessary to state what is to be revealed. Alternate translation: “that will reveal God's truth” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

glory to your people Israel (ULT)
he will bring honor to the Israelite people (UST)

“he will be the reason that glory will come to your people Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

• revelation
• to your people Israel
• to the Gentiles
• glory
• Israel
• to...people
• A light

Translation Words - UST

• that will reveal your truth
• to the Israelite people
• to the Gentiles
• he will bring honor
• Israelite
• to the...people
• He will be like a light
Luke 2:33

what was said about him (ULT)
what Simeon said about him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the things that Simeon said about him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- father
- amazed

Translation Words - UST
- father
- very amazed

ULT
33 Now his father and mother [1] were amazed at what was said about him.

UST
33 Jesus’ father and mother were very amazed at what Simeon said about him.
Luke 2:34

said to Mary, his mother (ULT)
said to Jesus’ mother, Mary (UST)

“said to the child’s mother, Mary.” Make sure it does not sound like Mary is the mother of Simeon.

Behold (ULT)
This child (UST)

Simeon used this expression to tell Mary that what he is about to say is extremely important to her.

this one is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many in Israel (ULT)
This child...is chosen by God to destroy and to save many in Israel (UST)

The words “downfall” and “rising up” express turning away from God and drawing closer to God. Alternate translation: “this child will cause many people in Israel to fall away from God or to rise closer to God” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

this one (ULT)
This child (UST)

This refers to the baby Jesus. Alternate translation: "this child"

of many (ULT)
many (UST)

of many people

Translation Words - ULT

• a sign
• blessed
• is appointed
• Israel
• Mary
• Simeon
• rising up

Translation Words - UST

• a sign from God
• blessed
• is chosen by God to destroy
• in Israel
• Mary
• Simeon
• to save
Luke 2:35

the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed (ULT)
God will make the thoughts of many people evident (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for people's inner beings. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he may reveal the thoughts of many people” or “he may reveal what many people secretly think” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- may be revealed
- hearts
- soul
- a sword
- will...pierce

Translation Words - UST

- God will make...evident
- the thoughts
- soul
- A sword
- will...pierce

ULT

35 and a sword will also pierce your own soul—so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed."

UST

35 As a result, God will make the thoughts of many people evident. A sword will also pierce your own soul."
Luke 2:36

Anna was also there, a prophetess (ULT)
There was also in the temple courtyard a prophetess named Anna (UST)

This introduces a new participant into the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

of Phanuel (ULT)
Her father Phanuel (UST)

This is a man's name. (See: How to Translate Names)

for seven years (ULT)
for seven years (UST)

“7 years” (See: Numbers)

after her virginity (ULT)
and then her husband died (UST)

“after she married him”

Translation Words - ULT

• having lived
• a prophetess
• of Asher
• for...years
• years
• the tribe

Translation Words - UST

• She had been married
• a prophetess named
• of Asher
• years
• who was very old
• of the tribe

ULT
36 Anna was also there, a prophetess, the daughter of Phanuel from the tribe of Asher. She was very advanced in years, having lived with her husband for seven years after her virginity,

UST
36 There was also in the temple courtyard a prophetess named Anna who was very old. Her father Phanuel was a member of the tribe of Asher. She had been married for seven years and then her husband died.
Luke 2:37

was a widow for eighty-four years (ULT)
lived eighty-four more years as a widow (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) she had been a widow for 84 years or 2) she was a widow and was now 84 years old. (See: Numbers)

never left the temple (ULT)
was always serving in the temple area (UST)

This is probably an exaggeration meaning that she spent so much time in the temple that it seemed as though she never left it. Alternate translation: “was always at the temple” or “was often at the temple” (See: Hyperbole)

and...with fastings...prayers (ULT)
After that...She often fasted...prayed (UST)

“by abstaining from food on many occasions and by offering many prayers”

Translation Words - ULT

• prayers
• temple
• years
• with fastings
• day
• serving

Translation Words - UST

• prayed
• temple area
• years
• She often fasted
• day
• and worshiped God
Luke 2:38

coming up to them (ULT)
Anna came up to them (UST)

“approached them” or “went to Mary and Joseph”

the redemption of Jerusalem (ULT)
God to redeem Jerusalem (UST)

Here the word “redemption” is used to refer to the person who would do it. Alternate translation: “the one who would redeem Jerusalem” or “the person who would bring God’s blessings and favor back to Jerusalem” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• the redemption
• of Jerusalem
• she began giving thanks
• hour

Translation Words - UST

• God
• God to redeem
• Jerusalem
• and began thanking...for the baby
• moment

ULT
38 Now coming up to them at that very hour, she began giving thanks to God and speaking about the child to all those who had been waiting for the redemption of Jerusalem.

UST
38 At that very moment, Anna came up to them and began thanking God for the baby. Then she spoke about Jesus to many people who were expecting God to redeem Jerusalem.
Luke 2:39

Connecting Statement:

Mary, Joseph, and Jesus leave the town of Bethlehem and return to the city of Nazareth for his childhood.

that was according to the law of the Lord (ULT)
by the laws of the Lord (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the law of the Lord required them to do” (See: Active or Passive)

their own town of Nazareth (ULT)
their own town, Nazareth (UST)

This phrase means they lived in Nazareth. Make sure it does not sound like they owned the town. Alternate translation: “the town of Nazareth, where they lived” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• of the Lord
• law of the Lord
• of Nazareth
• Galilee
• law
• they returned

Translation Words - UST

• of the Lord
• laws of the Lord
• Nazareth
• of Galilee
• laws
• they returned
Luke 2:40

being filled with wisdom (ULT)
and very wise (UST)

“becoming more wise” or “learning what was wise”

the grace of God was upon him (ULT)
God was very pleased with him (UST)

“God blessed him” or “God was with him in a special way”

Translation Words - ULT

• the grace
• of God
• with wisdom
• child
• became strong

Translation Words - UST

• very pleased
• God
• and very wise
• child
• he became strong

ULT
40 And the child grew and became strong, being filled with wisdom, and the grace of God was upon him.

UST
40 As the child grew up, he became strong and very wise, and God was very pleased with him.
Luke 2:41

Connecting Statement:
When Jesus is 12 years old, he goes to Jerusalem with his family. While he is there, he asks and answers questions of the temple teachers.

his parents went...at the Feast of the Passover (ULT)
Jesus’ parents...went...to celebrate the Passover (UST)

This is background information. (See: Background Information)

his parents (ULT)
Jesus’ parents (UST)

“Jesus’ parents”

Translation Words - ULT
• Passover
• Jerusalem
• year
• Feast

Translation Words - UST
• to celebrate the Passover
• Jerusalem
• Every year
• to celebrate the Passover
Luke 2:42

they again went up (ULT)
they went up to Jerusalem (UST)

Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

at the customary time (ULT)
as they always did (UST)

“at the normal time” or “as they did every year”

for the feast (ULT)
for the festival (UST)

This was another name for the Festival of the Passover, since it involved eating a ceremonial meal.

Translation Words - ULT

• years old
• feast

Translation Words - UST

• years old
• festival
Luke 2:43

But after the days were finished (ULT)
When all the days for the festival had ended (UST)

“When the entire time for celebrating the feast was over” or “After celebrating the feast for the required number of days”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jerusalem
- after...were finished
- were returning home
- days
- know it

Translation Words - UST

- but Jesus
- Jerusalem
- When...had ended
- started to return home
- all the days for the festival
- know he was still there

ULT

43 But after the days were finished, as they were returning home, the boy Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem. Now his parents did not know it.

UST

43 When all the days for the festival had ended, his parents started to return home, but Jesus stayed behind in Jerusalem. His parents did not know he was still there.
Luke 2:44

thinking that (ULT)
They assumed (UST)

“They thought”

they went a day’s journey (ULT)
After walking a whole day’s jouney (UST)

“They traveled one day” or “they went as far as people walk in one day”

Translation Words - ULT
- relatives
- a day’s

Translation Words - UST
- relatives
- a whole day’s
Luke 2:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- searching
- they returned

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- to search for
- they returned

ULT
45 But when they did not find him, they returned to Jerusalem searching for him.

UST
45 When they did not find him, they returned to Jerusalem to search for him.
Luke 2:46

Now it came about that (ULT)
After (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the temple (ULT)
in the temple courtyard (UST)

This refers to the courtyard around the temple. Only the priests were allowed in the temple. Alternate translation: “in the temple courtyard” or “at the temple” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in...the midst (ULT)
in...the midst (UST)

This does not mean the exact center. Rather, it means “among” or “together with” or “surrounded by.”

of the teachers (ULT)
of the Jewish religious teachers (UST)

“the religious teachers” or “those who taught people about God”

Translation Words - ULT

• temple
• teachers
• days

Translation Words - UST

• temple courtyard
• Jewish religious teachers
• days

ULT
46 Now it came about that after three days, they found him in the temple, sitting in the midst of the teachers, and listening to them, and asking them questions.

UST
46 After three days, they found him in the temple courtyard, sitting in the midst of the Jewish religious teachers. He was listening to them teach, and he was asking them questions.
Luke 2:47

And all those who heard him were amazed (ULT)
All the people who heard what he said were amazed (UST)

They could not understand how a twelve-year-old boy with no religious education could answer so well.

at his understanding (ULT)
at how much he understood (UST)

“at how much he understood” or “that he understood so much about God”

him...answers (ULT)
he...how well...answered the questions that the teachers asked (UST)

“at how well he answered them” or “that he answered their questions so well”

Translation Words - ULT

• were amazed
• understanding

Translation Words - UST

• were amazed
• he understood
Now when they saw him, they were astonished, and his mother said to him, "Son, why have you treated us this way? Look, your father and I have been anxiously searching for you."

This was an indirect rebuke because he had not gone with them on the way back home. This caused them to worry about him. Alternate translation: "you should not have done this to us!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Look (ULT)
father (UST)

This word is often used to show the beginning of a new or important event. It also can be used to show where the action begins. If your language has a phrase that is used in this way, consider whether it would be natural to use it here.

Translation Words - ULT
- Son
- father
- they were astonished
- have been...searching for

Translation Words - UST
- My son
- father
- they were very surprised
- as we have been searching for
Luke 2:49

Why is it that you were searching for me (ULT)
Why were you searching for me (UST)

Jesus uses two questions to mildly rebuke his parents, and to begin to tell them that he had a purpose from his heavenly Father that they did not understand. Alternate translation: “You did not need to be concerned about me” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Did you not know...I must be (ULT)
Did you not know...I needed to be (UST)

Jesus uses this second question to try to say that his parents should have known about the purpose for which his Father sent him. Alternate translation: “You should have known...business” (See: Rhetorical Question)

in my Father’s house (ULT)
involved in what my Father does (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus meant these words literally, to indicate that he was doing the work that his Father had given him, or 2) these words are an idiom that indicate where Jesus was, “in my Father’s house.” Since the next verse says that his parents did not understand what he was telling them, it would be best not to explain it more.

my Father’s house (ULT)
involved in what...my Father does (UST)

At age 12, Jesus, the Son of God, understood that God was his real Father (not Joseph, Mary’s husband). (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• Father’s
• you were searching for
• you...know

Translation Words - UST

• Father does
• were you searching for
• you...know
Luke 2:50

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- understand

Translation Words - UST

- understand

ULT

50 But they did not understand the statement that he spoke to them.

UST

50 But they did not understand the meaning of what he said to them.
Luke 2:51

Then he went down with them (ULT)
Then he returned with them (UST)

“Jesus went back home with Mary and Joseph”

was submitting to them (ULT)
he always obeyed them (UST)

“obeyed them” or “was always obeying them”

treasured all these things in her heart (ULT)
kept thinking deeply about all those things (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being.
Alternate translation: “carefully remembered all these things” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• heart
• Nazareth
• submitting

Translation Words - UST

• deeply
• Nazareth
• he always obeyed
Luke 2:52

And...continued to increase in wisdom...stature (ULT)
As the years passed...continued to become wiser...he grew taller (UST)

“become wiser and stronger.” These refer to mental and physical growth.

And...continued to increase in wisdom...stature (ULT)
As the years passed...continued to become wiser...he grew taller (UST)

This refers to spiritual and social growth. These could be stated separately. Alternate translation: “God blessed him more and more, and people liked him more and more”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• in favor
• God
• wisdom

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• continued to approve of him more and more
• God
• wiser

ULT
52 And Jesus continued to increase in wisdom and stature, and in favor with God and people.
2:33 [1] Some ancient copies add to the text the name of his father, Joseph; and some do not have the mention of the mother. The most reliable copies have .

UST
52 As the years passed, Jesus continued to become wiser and he grew taller.
God and people continued to approve of him more and more.
Luke 3

Luke 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 3:4-6, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Justice

John's instructions to the soldiers and tax collectors in this chapter are not complicated. They are things that should have been obvious to them. He instructed them to live justly. (See: just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification and Luke 3:12-15)

Genealogy

A genealogy is a list which records a person's ancestors or descendants. Such lists were very important in determining who had the right to be king, because the king's authority was usually passed down or inherited from his father. It was also common for other important people to have a recorded genealogy.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Prophecy often involves the use of metaphors to express its meaning. Spiritual discernment is needed for proper interpretation of the prophecy. The prophecy of Isaiah is an extended metaphor describing the ministry of John the Baptist (Luke 3:4-6). Translation is difficult. It is suggested that the translator treat each line of the ULT as a separate metaphor. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess and Metaphor)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“(Herod) had John locked up in prison”

This event can cause confusion because the author says John was imprisoned and then says he was baptizing Jesus. The author probably uses this phrase in anticipation of Herod’s imprisonment of John. This would mean that this statement is still in the future at the time of the narrative.
Luke 3:1

General Information:

These verses give background information to tell what is happening when Jesus' cousin John begins his ministry.

Connecting Statement:

As the prophet Isaiah had foretold, John begins to preach good news to the people.

Philip...Lysanias (ULT)
Philip...Lysanius (UST)

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

of Ituraea and Trachonitis...of Abilene (ULT)
the regions of Iturea and Trachonitis...the...of Abilene (UST)

These are names of territories. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• brother
• was tetrarch
• was tetrarch (2)
• was tetrarch (3)
• Pontius Pilate
• Judea
• Herod
• Caesar
• Galilee
• the...year
• reign
• while...was governor

Translation Words - UST

• brother
• was ruling
• was ruling (2)
• was ruling (3)
• Pontius Pilate
• province of Judea
• Herod Antipas
• Caesar
• of Galilee
• years
• had been ruling the Roman Empire
• was the governor

ULT

1 Now in the fifteenth year of the reign of Tiberius Caesar—while Pontius Pilate was governor of Judea, and Herod was tetrarch of Galilee, and his brother Philip was tetrarch of the region of Ituraea and Trachonitis, and Lysanias was tetrarch of Abilene,

UST

1 When Tiberius Caesar had been ruling the Roman Empire for about fifteen years, Pontius Pilate was the governor of the province of Judea, Herod Antipas was ruling the district of Galilee, his brother Philip was ruling the regions of Iturea and Trachonitis, and Lysanius was ruling the region of Abilene.
Luke 3:2

during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas (ULT)
During that time, when Annas and Caiaphas were the high priests in Jerusalem (UST)

“while Annas and Caiaphas were serving together as the high priest.” Annas was the high priest, and the Jews continued to recognize him as such even after the Romans appointed his son-in-law, Caiaphas, to replace him as high priest.

the word of God came (ULT)
God spoke (UST)

The writer speaks of God's message as though it were a person who moved toward those who heard it. Alternate translation: “God spoke his message” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• of God
• the word of God
• the high priesthood
• John
• Caiaphas
• Zechariah
• of Annas
• wilderness

Translation Words - UST

• son
• God
• God...spoke
• were the high priests in Jerusalem
• John
• Caiaphas
• Zechariah's
• Annas
• wilderness
Luke 3:3

preaching a baptism of repentance (ULT)
He kept telling people...you must repent; then I will baptize you (UST)

The terms "baptism" and "repentance" could be stated as actions. Alternate translation: “and he preached that people should be baptized to show that they were repenting” (See: Abstract Nouns)

for the forgiveness of sins (ULT)
If you want God to forgive your sins (UST)

They would repent so that God would forgive their sins. The term “forgiveness” can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “so that their sins would be forgiven” or “so that God would forgive their sins” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• a baptism
• of sins
• the forgiveness
• of repentance
• Jordan
• preaching

Translation Words - UST

• then I will baptize you
• your sins
• If you want God to forgive
• you must repent
• Jordan River
• He kept telling people
Luke 3:4

General Information:

The author, Luke, quotes a passage from Isaiah the prophet concerning John the Baptist.

As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet (ULT)
The prophet Isaiah wrote these words on a scroll long ago (UST)

These words introduce a quotation from the prophet Isaiah. They can be stated in active form, and the missing words can be supplied. Alternate translation: “This happened as Isaiah the prophet had written in the book that contains his words” or “John fulfilled the message that the prophet Isaiah had written in his book” (See: Active or Passive and Ellipsis)

in...A voice of one calling out...the wilderness (ULT)
on...the wilderness, someone will be calling out (UST)

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: “The voice of one calling out in the wilderness is heard” or “They hear the sound of someone calling out in the wilderness”

Make ready the way of the Lord, make his paths straight (ULT)
Prepare the way of the Lord, Make straight paths for him (UST)

The second command explains or adds more detail to the first.

Make ready the way of the Lord (ULT)
Prepare the way of the Lord (UST)

“Get the road ready for the Lord.” Doing this represents preparing to hear the Lord’s message when he comes. People do this by repenting of their sins. Alternate translation: “Prepare to hear the Lord’s message when he comes” or “Repent and be ready for the Lord to come” (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the way (ULT)
the way (UST)

“the path” or “the road”

Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- prophet
- of Isaiah
- wilderness
- A voice
- of one calling out
- As
• it is written

**Translation Words - UST**

• of the Lord
• prophet
• Isaiah
• wilderness
• someone will be calling out
• someone will be calling out
• wrote...long ago
• wrote...long ago
Luke 3:5

Every valley will be filled, and every mountain and hill will be made low (ULT)
Just like people fill all the ravines and just like they level off all the places where the land rises (UST)

When people prepare the road for an important person who is coming, they cut down the high places and fill in the low places so that the road will be level. This is part of the metaphor started in the previous verse. (See: Metaphor)

Every valley will be filled (ULT)
Just like people fill all the ravines (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They will fill in every low place in the road” (See: Active or Passive)

every mountain and hill will be made low (ULT)
just like they level off all the places where the land rises (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will level every mountain and hill” or “they will remove every high place in the road” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• crooked roads

Translation Words - UST

• wherever it is crooked
Luke 3:6

will see...the salvation of God (ULT)
will see...God's way of saving people (UST)

This can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “learn how God saves people from sin” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- salvation
- God
- flesh

Translation Words - UST

- way of saving people
- God's
- everyone

ULT
6 and all flesh will see the salvation of God.

UST
6 Then everyone will see God's way of saving people.
Luke 3:7

to be baptized by him (ULT)
to be baptized by him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for John to baptize them” (See: Active or Passive)

You offspring of vipers (ULT)
You people are evil like poisonous snakes (UST)

This is a metaphor. Here “offspring” means “having the characteristic of.” Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. Alternate translation: “You evil poisonous snakes” or “You are evil, like poisonous snakes (See: Metaphor)

Who warned you to run away from the wrath that is coming (ULT)
No one warned you that one day God will punish everyone who sins, did they? Do not think that you can escape from him (UST)

He was not really expecting them to answer. John was rebuking the people because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: “You cannot flee from God's wrath like this!” or “You cannot escape from God's wrath just by being baptized!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

from the wrath that is coming (ULT)
that one day God will punish everyone who sins, did they...from him (UST)

The word “wrath” is used here to refer to God's punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: “from the punishment that God is sending” or “from God's wrath on which he is about to act” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• to be baptized
• wrath
• You offspring
• of vipers

Translation Words - UST

• to be baptized
• that one day God will punish everyone who sins, did they
• You people are evil like
• poisonous snakes
Luke 3:8

produce...fruits that are worthy of repentance (ULT)
Do...the things that show that you have truly turned away from your sinful behavior (UST)

In this metaphor, a person's behavior is compared to fruit. Just as a plant is expected to produce fruit that is appropriate for that kind of plant, a person who says that he has repented is expected to live righteously. Alternate translation: "produce the kind of fruit that shows that you have repented" or "do the good things that show that you have turned away from your sin" (See: Metaphor)

to say within yourselves (ULT)
saying to yourself (UST)

"saying to yourselves" or "thinking"

We have Abraham for our father (ULT)
We are descendants of Abraham (UST)

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are Abraham's descendants." If it is unclear why they would say this, you may also add the implied information: "so God will not punish us." (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Abraham...to raise up children for (ULT)
Abraham...make...become descendants of (UST)

"create children for Abraham"

from these stones (ULT)
even these stones (UST)

John was probably referring to the actual stones along the Jordan River.

Translation Words - ULT

• that are worthy
• God
• is able
• children
• repentance
• Abraham
• Abraham (2)
• for our father
• fruits
• to raise up

Translation Words - UST

• the things that show that you have truly
• God
• could
• descendants
• turned away from your sinful behavior
• Abraham
• Abraham (2)
• We are descendants
• the things that show that you have truly
• make...become
Luke 3:9

the ax is...set against the root of the trees (ULT)
God is ready to punish you if you do not turn away from your...sinful behavior, just like a man lays his axe at the roots of a fruit (UST)

The ax that is in position so it can cut the roots of a tree is a metaphor for the punishment that is about to begin. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God is like the man who has placed his ax against the root of the trees” (See: Active or Passive and Metaphor)

every...tree...is chopped down and thrown into the fire (ULT)
tree...tree...to chop it down and throw it into the fire (UST)

“fire” here is a metaphor for punishment. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he chops down every tree...and throws it into the fire” (See: Active or Passive and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- good
- fruit
- is chopped down
- the fire
- ax

Translation Words - UST

- good
- fruit
- to chop it down
- the fire
- sinful behavior, just like a man...his axe
Luke 3:10

Connecting Statement:

John begins to respond to questions that people in the crowd ask him.

kept asking him...saying (ULT)
some of the people in the crowd asked him...some of the people in the crowd asked him (UST)

“asking him and said” or “asking John”

ULT
10 Then the crowds kept asking him, saying, “What then should we do?”

UST
10 Then some of the people in the crowd asked him, “What, then, should we do?”
Luke 3:11

he answered...and said to them (ULT)
He answered...He answered...them (UST)

“answered them, saying” or “answered them” or “said”

must do the same (ULT)
you should give some to those who do not have food (UST)

“share extra food just as you shared the extra tunic.” This refers back to giving food to those in need. Alternate translation: “give food to someone who does not have any” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• tunics
• the same

Translation Words - UST

• shirts
• you should give some to those who do not have food
Luke 3:12

to be baptized (ULT)
to be baptized (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for John to baptize them” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
  • to be baptized
  • tax collectors
  • Teacher

Translation Words - UST
  • to be baptized
  • Some tax collectors
  • Teacher

ULT
12 Now tax collectors also came to be baptized, and they said to him, “Teacher, what should we do?”

UST
12 Some tax collectors also came to John to be baptized. They asked him, “Teacher, what should we do?”
Luke 3:13

no more...Collect (ULT)
Do not collect from the people more money...to collect (UST)

“He said to them, “Collect no more than what you have been ordered to do.”” Tax collectors had been collecting more money than they should have been collecting. John tells them to stop doing that.

what you have been ordered to do (ULT)
the Roman government tells you (UST)

This is passive to show that the tax collector’s authority comes from Rome. Alternate translation: “than what the Romans have authorized you to take” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• have been ordered to do

Translation Words - UST

• Roman government tells
Luke 3:14

And what should we do (ULT)
And us? What should we do (UST)

“How about us soldiers, what must we do?” John is not included in the words “us” and “we.” The soldiers have implied that John had told the crowd and the tax collector what they must do and want to know what they as soldiers are to do. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

nor by accusing falsely (ULT)
and do not falsely accuse anyone of doing something wrong (UST)

It seems that the soldiers were making false charges against people in order to get money. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “in the same way, do not accuse anyone falsely in order to get money from them” or “do not say that an innocent person has done something illegal”

be content with your wages (ULT)
Be content...with the amount of money you earn (UST)

“Be satisfied with your pay”

Translation Words - ULT

• some who were soldiers
• by accusing falsely

Translation Words - UST

• Some soldiers asked him
• falsely accuse anyone of doing something wrong
Luke 3:15

Now the people (ULT)
People...were getting very hopeful that the Messiah might be coming soon (UST)

“because the people.” This refers to the same people who came to John.

the...were all wondering in their hearts concerning...
John...whether he might be the Christ (ULT)
People...many of them were wondering if John might be the Messiah (UST)

“everyone was unsure what to think about John; they asked themselves, ‘Could he be the Christ?’” or “no one was sure what to think about John because they were wondering whether he might be the Christ.”

Translation Words - ULT

- hearts
- Christ
- John
- people

Translation Words - UST

- many of them were wondering if
- Messiah
- John
- People
Luke 3:16

John answered, saying to them all (ULT)
But John replied to them all, “No, I am not (UST)

John's answer about a greater person coming clearly implies that John is not the Christ. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience. Alternate translation: “John clarified that he was not the Christ by saying to them all” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

baptize you with water (ULT)
When...baptized you...I used only water (UST)

“I baptize using water” or “I baptize by means of water”

I am not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals (ULT)
I am not worthy even to untie the straps of his sandals (UST)

“not important enough even to loosen the straps of his sandals.” Untying the straps of sandals was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy enough to be his slave.

He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire (ULT)
the Messiah...he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire (UST)

This metaphor compares literal baptism that brings a person into contact with water to a spiritual baptism that brings them into contact with the Holy Spirit and with fire. (See: Metaphor)

with fire (ULT)
with fire (UST)

Here the word “fire” may refer to 1) judgment or 2) purification. It is preferred to leave it as “fire” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- worthy
- baptize
- will baptize
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- John
- more powerful
- with water
- with fire
- sandals

Translation Words - UST

- worthy even
• When...baptized
• he will baptize
• Holy
• the Holy Spirit
• John
• The Messiah is far greater
• I used only water
• with fire
• sandals
Luke 3:17

His winnowing fork is in his hand (ULT)
A winnowing fork is in his hand (UST)

“He is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready.” John speaks of the Christ coming to judge people as if he were a farmer who is ready to separate wheat grain from chaff. Alternate translation: “He is ready to judge people like a farmer who is ready” (See: Metaphor)

winnowing fork (ULT)
A winnowing fork (UST)

This is a tool for tossing wheat into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind. It is similar to a pitchfork.

his...to thoroughly clear off...threshing floor (ULT)
his...ready to separate good grain from the useless chaff (UST)

The threshing floor was the place where wheat was stacked in preparation for threshing. To “clear off” the floor is to finish threshing the grain. Alternate translation: “to finish threshing his grain”

to gather the wheat (ULT)
He will store...the grain...safely (UST)

The wheat is the acceptable harvest that is kept and stored.

winnowing fork...he will burn up...chaff (ULT)
A winnowing fork...will burn up...chaff (UST)

The chaff is not useful for anything, so people burn it up.

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• chaff
• with...fire
• wheat

Translation Words - UST

• hand
• chaff
• in a fire
• grain
Luke 3:18

General Information:

The story tells what is going to happen to John but has not happened at this time. (See: Background Information)

Therefore, also exhorted many other things (ULT)
In many different ways like this, John urged...to repent and turn back to God (UST)

“With many other strong urgings”

Translation Words - ULT

- exhorted
- people
- he preached the gospel

Translation Words - UST

- John urged...to repent and turn back to God
- people
- as he kept telling them the good message from God
Luke 3:19

Herod was a tetrarch, not a king. He had only limited rule over the region of Galilee.

centering Herodias, the wife of his brother (ULT) for marrying his brother’s wife, Herodias (UST)

“because Herod married Herodias, his own brother’s wife.” This was evil because Herod’s brother was still alive. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “because he married his brother’s wife, Herodias, while his brother was still alive” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- tetrarch
- the evil things
- Herod
- Herod (2)
- Herodias
- having been rebuked

Translation Words - UST

- brother’s
- King
- evil
- Herod
- evil (2)
- Herodias
- He also rebuked

ULT

19 But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by John concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and concerning all the evil things that Herod had done,

UST

19 He also rebuked King Herod for marrying his brother’s wife, Herodias, while his brother was still alive, and for doing many other evil things.
Luke 3:20

he locked John up in prison (ULT)
Then Herod had his soldiers put John in prison (UST)

Because Herod was tetrarch, he probably locked John up by ordering his soldiers to lock John up. Alternate translation: “he had his soldiers lock John up in prison” or “he told his soldiers to put John in prison” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• John
• prison

Translation Words - UST

• John
• prison

ULT
20 he even added this to them all: he locked John up in prison.

UST
20 Then Herod had his soldiers put John in prison, which was another very evil thing.
Luke 3:21

General Information:
The previous verse says that Herod put John in prison. It might be helpful to make it clear that the account starting in verse 21 happened before John was arrested. The UST does this by starting verse 21 with “But before John was put in prison.” (See: Order of Events)

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins his ministry with his baptism.

Now it came about (ULT)
But before John was put in prison (UST)

This phrase marks the beginning of a new event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

when...all the people...were baptized (ULT)
when...many people...were being baptized (UST)

“while John baptized all the people.” The phrase “all the people” refers to the people present with John. (See: Active or Passive)

Jesus also was baptized (ULT)
John also baptized Jesus (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “John baptized Jesus also” (See: Active or Passive)

the...heavens were opened (ULT)
people...sky opened (UST)

“the sky opened” or “the sky became open.” This is more than a simple clearing of clouds, but it’s not clear what it means. It possibly means that a hole appeared in the sky.

Translation Words - ULT
- heavens
- Jesus
- when...were baptized
- was baptized
- while he was praying
- people

Translation Words - UST
- sky
- Jesus
- when...were being baptized
- John...baptized
- while Jesus was praying
• people
Luke 3:22

the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove

“in physical form the Holy Spirit came down like a dove onto Jesus”

a voice came from heaven (ULT)
God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying (UST)

Here “a voice came from heaven” represents people on earth hearing God in heaven speaking. It can be made clear that God spoke to Jesus. Alternate translation: “a voice from heaven said” or “God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying” (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

my Son (ULT)
my Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- Holy
- Son
- in bodily
- Holy Spirit
- I love
- a voice
- I am pleased
- a dove
- like

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, saying
- Holy
- Son
- resembling
- Holy Spirit
- I love dearly
- God spoke to Jesus
- I am very pleased
- a dove
- resembling
Luke 3:23

General Information:

Luke lists the ancestors of Jesus through the line of his supposed father, Joseph.

Now (ULT)
he (UST)

This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. (See: Background Information)

thirty years old (ULT)
thirty years old (UST)

“30 years old” (See: Numbers)

He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph (ULT)
He was the son of Joseph (or so it was thought). Joseph was (UST)

“It was thought that he was the son of Joseph” or “People assumed that he was the son of Joseph”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• the son
• of Joseph
• years old
• as

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• the son of Joseph
• Joseph was
• years old
• or so it was thought
Luke 3:24

of Matthat, of Levi, of Melchi, of Jannai, of Joseph (ULT)
Heli was the son of Matthat. Matthat was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Melchi. Melchi was the son of Jannai. Jannai was the son of Joseph (ULT)

This continues the list that begins with the words “He was the son… of Joseph, the son of Heli” in verse 24. Consider how people normally list ancestors in your language. You should use the same wording throughout the whole list. Possible formats are 1) “He was the son… of Joseph, the son of Heli, who was the son of Matthat, who was the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph” or 2) “He was the son…of Joseph. Joseph was the son of Heli. Heli was the son of Matthat. Matthat was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Melchi. Melchi was the son of Jannai. Jannai was the son of Joseph” or 3) “His father…was Joseph. Joseph’s father was Heli. Heli’s father was Matthat. Matthat’s father was Levi. Levi’s father was Melchi. Melchi’s father was Jannai. Jannai’s father was Joseph” (See: How to Translate Names)
Luke 3:25

of Mattathias, of Amos...Naggai (ULT)
Joseph was the son of Mattathias. Mattathias was the son of Amos...of Naggai (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus’ ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)
Luke 3:26

of Maath...Joda (ULT)
Naggai was the son of Maath...of Joda (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus’ ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

26 of Maath, of Mattathias, of Semein, of Josech, of Joda,

UST

26 Naggai was the son of Maath. Maath was the son of Mattathias. Mattathias was the son of Semein. Semein was the son of Josech. Josech was the son of Joda.
Luke 3:27

of Joanan…Neri (ULT)
Joda was the son of Joanan…of Neri (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus' ancestors that begins in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

of Joanan…Salathiel (ULT)
Joda was the son of Joanan…of Shealtiel (UST)

The name Salathiel may be a different spelling of the name Shealtiel (as some versions have it), but identification is difficult.

Translation Words - ULT
  • Zerubbabel

Translation Words - UST
  • of Zerubbabel
Luke 3:28

of Melchi...Er (ULT)
Neri was the son of Melchi...Er (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus' ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)
Luke 3:29

of Joshua...Levi (ULT)
Er was the son of Joshua...of Levi (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus' ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)
Luke 3:30

of Simeon...Eliakim (ULT)
Levi was the son of Simeon...of Eliakim (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus’ ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Eliakim

Translation Words - UST

• of Eliakim

ULT

30 of Simeon, of Judah, of Joseph, of Jonam, of Eliakim.

UST

30 Levi was the son of Simeon. Simeon was the son of Judah. Judah was the son of Joseph. Joseph was the son of Jonam. Jonam was the son of Eliakim.
Luke 3:31

of Melea…David (ULT)
Eliakim was the son of Melea…of David (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus' ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• David
• Nathan

Translation Words - UST

• of David
• of Nathan
Luke 3:32

of Jesse…Nahshon (ULT)
David was the son of Jesse…of Nahshon (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus’ ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Boaz
• Jesse

Translation Words - UST

• of Boaz
• of Jesse
Luke 3:33

of Amminadab...Judah (ULT)
Nahshon was the son of Amminadab...of Judah (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus’ ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- of Judah

ULT

33 of Amminadab, of Admin, of Arni, of Hezron, of Perez, of Judah.

UST

33 Nahshon was the son of Amminadab. Amminadab was the son of Admin. Admin was the son of Arni. Arni was the son of Hezron. Hezron was the son of Perez. Perez was the son of Judah.
Luke 3:34

of Jacob...Nahor (ULT)
Judah was the son of Jacob...of Nahor (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus’ ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- Abraham
- Nahor
- Terah
- Isaac
- Jacob

Translation Words - UST
- of Abraham
- of Nahor
- of Terah
- of Isaac
- of Jacob

ULT
34 of Jacob, of Isaac, of Abraham, of Terah, of Nahor.

UST
34 Judah was the son of Jacob. Jacob was the son of Isaac. Isaac was the son of Abraham. Abraham was the son of Terah. Terah was the son of Nahor.
Luke 3:35

of Serug...Shelah (ULT)
Nahor was the son of Serug...of Shelah (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus' ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)
Luke 3:36

of Cainan...Lamech (ULT)
Sheelah was the son of Cainan...of Lamech (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus' ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- Noah
- Shem
- Lamech

Translation Words - UST
- of Noah
- of Shem
- of Lamech
Luke 3:37

of Methuselah...Cainan (ULT)
Lamech was the son of Methuselah...of Cainan (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus' ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
  • Enoch

Translation Words - UST
  • of Enoch

ULT
37 of Methuselah, of Enoch, of Jared, of Mahalaleel, of Cainan,

UST
37 Lamech was the son of Methuselah. Methuselah was the son of Enoch. Enoch was the son of Jared. Jared was the son of Mahalalel. Mahalalel was the son of Cainan.
Luke 3:38

of Enos...Adam (ULT)
Cainan was the son of Enos...of Adam (UST)

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus' ancestors that began in Luke 3:23. Use the same format as you used in the previous verses. (See: How to Translate Names)

of...Adam...God (ULT)
Cainan was the son...of Adam...of God, the man God created (UST)

“Adam, created by God” or “Adam, who was from God” or “Adam, the son, we could say, of God”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Seth
- Adam

Translation Words - UST

- of God, the man God created
- of Seth
- of Adam
Luke 4

Luke 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 4:10-11, 18-19, which are words from the Old Testament.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Jesus was tempted by the devil

While it is true that the devil sincerely believed that he could persuade Jesus to obey him, it is important not to imply that Jesus actually ever really wanted to obey him.
Luke 4:1

Connecting Statement:
Jesus fasts for 40 days, and the devil meets him to try to persuade him to sin.

Then Jesus (ULT)
As Jesus (UST)
After John had baptized Jesus. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

was led by the Spirit (ULT)
the Holy Spirit led him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Spirit led him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Holy
- of the Holy Spirit
- Spirit
- Jordan River
- wilderness
- returned

Translation Words - UST

- As Jesus
- Holy
- the Holy Spirit
- Holy Spirit
- Jordan River Valley
- wilderness
- left
Luke 4:2

where for forty days he was tempted (ULT)
The Holy Spirit led him around in the wilderness for forty days. While he was there...kept tempting him (UST)

Most versions say that the temptation was throughout the forty days. The UST states “While he was there, the devil kept tempting him” to make this clear.

for forty days (ULT)
The Holy Spirit led him around in the wilderness for forty days (UST)

“40 days” (See: Numbers)

where...he was tempted by the devil (ULT)
While he was there, the devil kept tempting him (UST)

This can be stated in active form, and you can make explicit what it was the devil tempted him to do. Alternate translation: “the devil tried to persuade him disobey God” (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Now he did not eat anything (ULT)
he did not eat anything (UST)

The word “he” refers to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

• where...he was tempted
• devil
• for...days
• days

Translation Words - UST

• While he was there...kept tempting him
• the devil
• The Holy Spirit led him around in the wilderness for forty days
• the entire time Jesus was in the wilderness
Luke 4:3

If you are the Son of God (ULT)
If you really are the Son of God (UST)

The devil challenges Jesus to do this miracle in order to prove that he is “the Son of God” (See: Translating Son and Father)

to this stone (ULT)
these stones (UST)

The devil either holds a stone in his hand or points to a nearby stone.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the Son
- devil
- bread

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the Son
- devil
- bread for you to eat

ULT
3 Then the devil said to him, “If you are the Son of God, speak to this stone so that it might become bread.”

UST
3 Then the devil said to Jesus, “If you really are the Son of God, command these stones to become bread for you to eat!”
Luke 4:4

But Jesus answered him, “It is written, ‘Man does not live on bread alone.’”

Jesus replied, “No, I will not do that, because it is written in the scriptures, ‘People need more than just food in order to live.’”

Jesus’ rejection of the devil’s challenge is clearly implied in his answer. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience, as the UST does. Alternate translation: “Jesus replied, ‘No, I will not do that because it is written…alone.’” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

It is written (ULT)

it is written in the scriptures (UST)

The quotation is from Moses’ writings in the Old Testament. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses has written in the scriptures” (See: Active or Passive)

Man...does not...live on bread alone (ULT)

No, I will not do that...People need more than just food in order to live (UST)

The word “bread” refers to food in general. Food as compared to God, by itself, is not enough to sustain a person. Jesus quotes the scripture to say why he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: “People cannot live on just bread” or “It is not just food that makes a person live” or “God says there are more important things than food” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• live
• Jesus
• bread
• It is written

Translation Words - UST

• in order to live
• Jesus
• need more than just food
• it is written in the scriptures
Luke 4:5

the devil led him up (ULT)
the devil took Jesus up to the top of a high mountain (UST)

He led Jesus up a mountain. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in an instant of time (ULT)
in an instant (UST)

“in an instant” or “instantly”

Translation Words - ULT

• world
• of time
• kingdoms

Translation Words - UST

• world
• an instant
• nations
Luke 4:6

they have been given to me (ULT)
God has permitted...me to...control them all (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are that “them” refers to 1) the authority and splendor of the kingdoms or 2) the kingdoms. Alternate translation: “God has given them to me” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- authority
- glory
- devil

Translation Words - UST
- right to rule
- all...splendor and wealth
- he

ULT
6 Then the devil said to him, “I will give to you all this authority and their glory, for they have been given to me, and I can give it to anyone I want.

UST
6 Then he said to Jesus, “I will give you the right to rule all these nations and you will possess all their splendor and wealth. God has permitted me to control them all, and so I can do whatever I want to do with them.
Luke 4:7

if...will bow in worship before me (ULT)
if...worship me (UST)

These two phrases are very similar. They can be combined. Alternate translation: “if you will bow down in worship to me” (See: Doublet)

it will...be yours (ULT)
I will let you rule (UST)

“I will give you all these kingdoms, with their splendor”

Translation Words - ULT

• will bow in worship

Translation Words - UST

• worship
Luke 4:8

It is written (ULT) because it is written in the scriptures (UST)

Jesus refused to do what the devil asked. It may be helpful to state this clearly. Alternate translation: “No, I will not worship you, because it is written” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

answering...said to him (ULT)
Jesus replied, “No, I will not worship you...Jesus replied...No, I will not worship you (UST)

“responded to him” or “replied to him”

It is written (ULT) because it is written in the scriptures (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses has written in the scriptures” (See: Active or Passive)

You will worship the Lord your God (ULT)
You must only worship the Lord, your God (UST)

Jesus was quoting a command from the scriptures to say why he would not worship the devil.

You will worship (ULT)
You must only worship (UST)

This refers to the people in the Old Testament who received God's Law. You could use the singular form of 'you' because each person was to obey it, or you could use the plural form of 'you' because all of the people were to obey it. (See: Forms of You)

to him (ULT)
Jesus replied...No, I will not worship you (UST)

The word “him” refers to the Lord God.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- the Lord
- God
- You will worship
- It is written
- you will serve

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus replied...No, I will not worship you
- the Lord
- God
- You must only worship
- because it is written in the scriptures
• you may serve
Luke 4:9

the very highest point (ULT)
the highest part (UST)

This was the corner of the temple roof. If someone fell from there, they would be seriously injured or die.

of the...If you are the Son...God (ULT)
of the...If you really are the Son...God (UST)

The devil is challenging Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

the Son...of God (ULT)
the Son...of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

throw yourself...down (ULT)
jump...down (UST)

“jump down to the ground”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the Son
- temple
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the Son
- temple
- Jerusalem

ULT

9 Then he led Jesus to Jerusalem and put him on the very highest point of the temple, and said to him, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down from here.

UST

9 Then the devil took Jesus to Jerusalem. He set him on the highest part of the temple and said to him, “If you really are the Son of God, jump down from here.”
Luke 4:10

For it is written (ULT)
You will not be hurt, because it is written in the scriptures (UST)

The devil implies that his quote from the Psalms means Jesus will not be hurt if he is the Son of God. This can be stated clearly, as the UST does. Alternate translation: “You will not be hurt, because it is written” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

it is written (ULT)
it is written in the scriptures (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the writer has written” (See: Active or Passive)

He will give orders (ULT)
God will command (UST)

“He” refers to God. The devil partially quoted from the Psalms in an effort to persuade Jesus to jump off the building.

Translation Words - ULT

• angels
• it is written

Translation Words - UST

• angels
• it is written in the scriptures
Luke 4:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- their hands
- They will lift...up

Translation Words - UST

- their hands
- They will lift...up...when you are falling

ULT

11 and, They will lift you up in their hands, so that you will not strike your foot against a stone.”

UST

11 And it also says, They will lift you up in their hands when you are falling, so that you will not get hurt. You will not even strike your foot on a stone.”
Luke 4:12

It is said (ULT)
No, I will not do that, because it is written in the scriptures (UST)

Jesus tells the devil why he will not do what the devil told him to do. His refusal to do it can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “No, I will not do that, because it is said” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

It is said (ULT)
No, I will not do that, because it is written in the scriptures (UST)

Jesus quotes from the writings of Moses in Deuteronomy. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses has said” or “Moses has said in the scriptures” (See: Active or Passive)

Do not put the Lord your God to the test (ULT)
Do not try to test the Lord your God (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus should not test God by jumping off the temple, or 2) the devil should not test Jesus to see if he is the Son of God. It is best to translate the verse as stated rather than to try to explain the meaning.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• the Lord
• God
• put...to the test

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• the Lord
• God
• try to test
Luke 4:13

until an opportune time (ULT)
until a later time (UST)

“until another occasion”

had finished every temptation (ULT)
after...had finished trying to tempt Jesus in many ways (UST)

This does not imply that the devil was successful in his temptation—Jesus resisted every attempt. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “had finished trying to persuade Jesus to sin” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• temptation
• devil
• an opportune time

Translation Words - UST

• trying to tempt Jesus
• devil
• a later time
Luke 4:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus returns to Galilee, teaches in the synagogue, and tells the people there that he is fulfilling scripture of Isaiah the prophet.

Then Jesus returned (ULT)
After this, Jesus left the wilderness and returned (UST)

This begins a new event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

in the power of the Spirit (ULT)
The Holy Spirit was empowering him (UST)

“and the Spirit was giving him power.” God was with Jesus in a special way, enabling him to do things that humans usually could not.

news...spread...about him (ULT)
people heard about Jesus and told others...about him (UST)

“people spread the news about Jesus” or “people told other people about Jesus” or “knowledge about him was passed on from person to person.” Those who heard Jesus told other people about him, and then those other people told even more people about him.

throughout the entire surrounding region (ULT)
Throughout that region (UST)

This refers to the areas or places around Galilee.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Spirit
- power
- Galilee
- news
- returned

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Holy Spirit
- was empowering him
- of Galilee
- people heard about Jesus and told others
- left the wilderness and returned
Luke 4:15

being praised by all (ULT)
and they all spoke highly of him because of his teaching (UST)

“everyone said great things about him” or “all the people spoke about him in a good way”

Translation Words - ULT

• synagogues
• being praised
• began to teach

Translation Words - UST

• synagogues
• spoke highly of him because of his teaching
• taught

ULT
15 And he began to teach in their synagogues, being praised by all.

UST
15 He taught people in their synagogues and they all spoke highly of him because of his teaching.
Luke 4:16

where he had been raised (ULT)
the town where he grew up (UST)

“where his parents had raised him” or “where he lived when he was a child” or “where he grew up”

according to his custom (ULT)
as he usually did (UST)

“as he did each Sabbath.” It was his usual practice to go to the synagogue on the Sabbath day.

Translation Words - ULT

• synagogue
• Sabbath
• Nazareth
• he stood up
• day

Translation Words - UST

• synagogue
• the Sabbath
• Nazareth
• He stood up
• the Sabbath

ULT
16 Now he came to Nazareth, where he had been raised, and according to his custom, he entered into the synagogue on the Sabbath day, and he stood up to read aloud.

UST
16 Then Jesus went to Nazareth, the town where he grew up. On the Sabbath he went to the synagogue, as he usually did. He stood up to read aloud something from the scriptures.
Luke 4:17

Then the scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him (ULT)
A synagogue attendant handed him a scroll containing the words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Someone gave him the scroll of the prophet Isaiah” (See: Active or Passive)

the scroll of the prophet Isaiah (ULT)
a scroll containing the words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago (UST)

This refers to the book of Isaiah written on a scroll. Isaiah had written the words many years before, and someone else had copied them onto a scroll.

the place where it was written (ULT)
the place where these words were written (UST)

“the place in the scroll with these words.” This sentence continues on into the next verse.

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- Isaiah
- the scroll
- scroll (2)
- written

Translation Words - UST

- containing the words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago
- containing the words that the prophet Isaiah had written long ago
- a scroll
- scroll (2)
- written
Luke 4:18

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me (ULT)
The Spirit of the Lord is in me (UST)

“The Holy Spirit is with me in a special way.” When someone says this, he is claiming to speak the words of God.

he anointed me (ULT)
He has appointed...me (UST)

In the Old Testament, ceremonial oil was poured on a person when they were given power and authority to do a special task. Jesus uses this metaphor to refer to the Holy Spirit being on him to prepare him for this work. Alternate translation: “the Holy Spirit is upon me to empower me” or “the Holy Spirit gave me power and authority” (See: Metaphor)

to the poor (ULT)
to people who are poor (UST)

“the poor people”

to proclaim freedom to the captives (ULT)
to proclaim that the captives will go free (UST)

“tell people who are being held captive that they can go free” or “set free the prisoners of war”

recovery of sight to the blind (ULT)
those who are blind that they will see again (UST)

“give sight to the blind” or “make the blind be able to see again”

to set free those who are oppressed (ULT)
I will free people who have been oppressed (UST)

“set free those who are treated harshly”

Translation Words -ULT

- of the Lord
- The Spirit
- freedom
- free
- he anointed
- to the captives
- to preach the gospel
- to proclaim
- He has sent
- to set
Translation Words - UST

• of the Lord
• The Spirit
• will go free
• I will free
• He has appointed
• the captives
• to declare God’s good news
• to proclaim that
• He has sent...here
• people who have been oppressed
Luke 4:19

to proclaim the year of the Lord’s favor (ULT)
He sent me here to declare that now is the time when
the Lord will act favorably toward people (UST)

“tell everyone that the Lord is ready to bless his people” or
“announce that this is the year that the Lord will show his kindness”

Translation Words - ULT

• of the Lord’s
• favor
• to proclaim
• the year

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord
• will act favorably toward people
• He sent me here to declare that
• now is the time when
**Luke 4:20**

**ULT**
20 Then he rolled up the **scroll**, gave it back to the attendant, and sat down. Now the eyes of all in the **synagogue** were fixed on him.

**UST**
20 Then he rolled up the **scroll** and gave it back to the attendant, and sat down. Everyone in the **synagogue** was looking intently at him.

**Translation Words - ULT**
- synagogue
- scroll

**Translation Words - UST**
- in the synagogue was looking intently
- scroll

A scroll was closed by rolling it like a tube to protect the writing inside it.

This refers to a synagogue worker who brought out and put away with proper care and reverence the scrolls containing the scriptures.

This idiom means “were focused on him” or “were looking intently at him” (See: Idiom)
Luke 4:21

this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing (ULT)
this scripture passage was fulfilled as you heard it
(UST)

Jesus was saying that he was fulfilling that prophecy by his actions and speech at that very time. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I am fulfilling what this scripture said right now as you are listening to me” (See: Active or Passive)

in your hearing (ULT)
as you heard it (UST)

This idiom means “while you are listening to me” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• scripture
• has been fulfilled

Translation Words - UST

• scripture passage
• was fulfilled
Luke 4:22

they were amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth

“surprised about the gracious things that he was saying.” Here “gracious” may refer to 1) how well or how persuasively Jesus spoke, or 2) that Jesus spoke words about God’s grace.

Is this not the son of Joseph (ULT)
This man is only Joseph’s son, right (UST)

People thought that Joseph was Jesus’ father. Joseph was not a religious leader, so they were surprised that his son would preach what he did. Alternate translation: “This is just Joseph’s son!” or “His father is only Joseph!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• gracious
• the son
• spoke well
• of Joseph
• they were amazed

Translation Words - UST

• how well
• son
• there heard what...said
• Joseph’s
• marveled at him, and they were amazed

ULT
22 And all spoke well of him and they were amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth, and they asked, “Is this not the son of Joseph?”

UST
22 Everyone there heard what he said and marveled at him, and they were amazed at how well he spoke. But some of them said, “This man is only Joseph’s son, right?”
Luke 4:23

General Information:

Nazareth is the town in which Jesus grew up.

Surely (ULT)
Surely some of (UST)

“Certainly” or “There is no doubt that”

Doctor, heal yourself (ULT)
Doctor, heal yourself (UST)

If someone claims to be able to heal diseases that he himself has, there is no reason to believe he is really a doctor. People will speak this proverb to Jesus to say that they will only believe he is a prophet if they see him do what they have heard that he did in other places. (See: Proverbs)

Whatever we heard...Then...do the same in your hometown (ULT)
that you did...He said...Do here in your hometown the same kind of miracles (UST)

The people of Nazareth do not believe Jesus is a prophet because of his low status as Joseph's son. They will not believe unless they personally see him do miracles.

Translation Words - ULT

• proverb
• Capernaum
• heal

Translation Words - UST

• the proverb that says
• Capernaum
• heal
Luke 4:24

Truly I say to you (ULT)
Then he said...It is certainly true (UST)

“It is certainly true.” This is an emphatic statement about what follows.

no...prophet is received in his hometown (ULT)
the people in a prophet’s own hometown do not accept his message (UST)

Jesus makes this general statement in order to rebuke the people. He means that they are refusing to believe the reports of his miracles in Capernaum. They think they already know all about him. (See: Proverbs)

his hometown (ULT)
own hometown (UST)

“homeland” or “native city” or “country where he grew up”

Translation Words - ULT

• prophet
• Truly

Translation Words - UST

• a prophet's...his message
• Then he said...It is certainly true
Luke 4:25

General Information:

Jesus reminds the people who are listening to him in the synagogue about Elijah and Elisha, who were prophets about whom they knew. (See: Background Information)

But in truth I tell you that (ULT)
But think about this (UST)

“I tell you truthfully.” Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance, truth, and accuracy of the statement that follows.

widows (ULT)
widows (UST)

Widows are women whose husbands have died.

during the time of Elijah (ULT)
during the time when the prophet Elijah lived (UST)

The people to whom Jesus was speaking would have known that Elijah was one of God's prophets. If your readers would not know that, you can make this implicit information explicit as in the UST. Alternate translation: “when Elijah was prophesying in Israel” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

when the sky was shut up (ULT)
when...because there had been no rain (UST)

This is a metaphor. The sky is pictured as a ceiling that was closed, and so no rain would fall from it. Alternate translation: “when no rain fell down from the sky” or “when there was no rain at all” (See: Metaphor)

a great famine (ULT)
a great famine (UST)

“a serious lack of food.” A famine is a long period of time when the crops do not produce enough food for the people.

Translation Words - ULT

• sky
• truth
• Israel
• of Elijah
• years
• months
• when
• a...famine
• time

Translation Words - UST

• because there had been no rain
• But think about this
• Israel
• when the prophet Elijah lived
• years
• half
• there was
• a...famine
• time
Luke 4:26

to Zarephath...to a widow woman (ULT)
to the town of Zarephath...to help a widow (UST)

The people living in the town of Zarephath were Gentiles, not Jews. The people listening to Jesus would have understood that the people of Zarephath were Gentiles. Alternate translation: “to a Gentile widow living in Zarephath” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• Sidon
• Elijah
• was sent

Translation Words - UST

• city of Sidon
• Elijah
• God...send

ULT
26 But Elijah was sent to none of them, except to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow woman.

UST
26 But God did not send Elijah to help any of those Israelite widows. God sent him to the town of Zarephath near the city of Sidon, to help a widow.
Luke 4:27

Naaman the Syrian (ULT)
Naaman, a man from Syria (UST)

A Syrian is a person from the country of Syria. The people of Syria were Gentiles, not Jews. Alternate translation: “the Gentile Naaman from Syria” (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet
- were healed
- Israel
- the time of Elisha
- Syrian
- Naaman
- lepers

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- heal
- Israel
- Elisha
- from Syria
- Naaman
- Israelite lepers

ULT
27 And there were many lepers in Israel during the time of Elisha the prophet, but none of them were healed except Naaman the Syrian.”

UST
27 There were also many Israelite lepers in Israel during the time when the prophet Elisha lived. But Elisha did not heal any of them. He healed only Naaman, a man from Syria.”
Luke 4:28

Then all in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things (ULT)
When all the people in the synagogue heard him say that, they were very angry (UST)

The people of Nazareth were deeply offended that Jesus had cited scriptures where God had helped Gentiles instead of Jews.

Translation Words - ULT
• synagogue

Translation Words - UST
• synagogue
Luke 4:29

forced him out of the town (ULT)
and shoved him out of the city (UST)

“forced him to leave the town” or “shoved him out of the city”

the edge of the hill (ULT)
the top of the hill (UST)

“edge of the cliff”

Translation Words - ULT

• forced
• they got up

Translation Words - UST

• and shoved
• they all got up

ULT
29 So they got up, forced him out of the town, and led him to the edge of the hill on which their town was built, so as to throw him off.

UST
29 So they all got up and shoved him out of the city. They took him to the top of the hill outside their city in order to throw him off the cliff and kill him.
Luke 4:30

But passing through the midst of them, he (ULT)
But he simply walked through their midst (UST)

“through the middle of the crowd” or “between the people who were trying to kill him.”

went on his way (ULT)
and went away (UST)

“he went away” or “he went on his way” Jesus went where he had planned to go instead of where the people were trying to force him to go.
Luke 4:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus then goes to Capernaum, teaches the people in the synagogue there, and commands a demon to leave a man.

Then he went down (ULT)
One day he went down (UST)

“Then Jesus.” This indicates a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

he went down to Capernaum (ULT)
he went down to Capernaum (UST)

The phrase “went down” is used here because Capernaum is lower in elevation than Nazareth.

Capernaum, a city in Galilee (ULT)
Capernaum, a city in the district of Galilee (UST)

“Capernaum, another city in Galilee”

Translation Words - ULT

- Sabbath
- Capernaum
- in Galilee
- to teach

Translation Words - UST

- Sabbath
- Capernaum
- of Galilee
- he taught
Luke 4:32

And they were astonished (ULT)
They were continually amazed (UST)

greatly surprised, greatly amazed

his...message was with authority (ULT)
he...spoke as people speak who have the right to command others what to do (UST)

“he spoke as one with authority” or “his words had great power”

Translation Words - ULT

• authority
• teaching
• they were astonished

Translation Words - UST

• as people speak who have the right to command others what to do
• what...was teaching
• They were continually amazed

ULT
32 And they were astonished at his teaching, because his message was with authority.

UST
32 They were continually amazed at what he was teaching, because he spoke as people speak who have the right to command others what to do.
Luke 4:33

Now...there was a man (ULT)
That day...there was a man (UST)

This phrase is used to mark the introduction of a new character into the story; in this case, a demon-possessed man. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

who had a spirit of an unclean demon (ULT)
and an evil spirit controlled that man (UST)

“who was possessed by an unclean demon” or “who was controlled by an evil spirit”

he cried out with a loud voice (ULT)
He shouted...very loudly (UST)

“he shouted loudly”

Translation Words - ULT

- synagogue
- unclean
- a spirit
- a spirit of an unclean demon
- with a...voice
- he cried out

Translation Words - UST

- synagogue
- evil
- an...spirit
- an evil spirit
- very loudly
- He shouted
Luke 4:34

What do we have to do with you (ULT)
Evil spirits have nothing to do with you (UST)

This belligerent response is an idiom that means: “What do we have in common?” or “What right do you have to bother us?” (See: Idiom)

What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth (ULT)
Jesus, from Nazareth! Evil spirits have nothing to do with you (UST)

This question could be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “What do you, Jesus of Nazareth, have to do with us!” or “We have nothing to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth!” or “You have no right to bother us, Jesus of Nazareth!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Holy One
• God
• of Nazareth
• I know

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• Holy One
• God
• from Nazareth
• I know
Luke 4:35

Jesus rebuked him, saying (ULT)
Jesus...rebuked...the evil spirit, saying (UST)

“Jesus scolded the demon, saying” or “Jesus sternly said to the demon”

come out of him (ULT)
come out of him (UST)

He commanded the demon to stop controlling the man. Alternate translation: “leave him alone” or “do not live in this man any longer”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• demon
• rebuked

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• demon
• rebuked

ULT
35 Then Jesus rebuked him, saying, “Be silent, and come out of him!” So when the demon had thrown the man down in their midst, he came out of him, not hurting him at all.

UST
35 Jesus rebuked the evil spirit, saying, “Be quiet and come out of him!” The demon threw the man down on the ground in the midst of the people and came out of him without harming him.
Luke 4:36

What is this message (ULT)
He...speaks (UST)

The people were expressing how amazed they were that Jesus had the authority to command demons to leave a person. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “These are amazing words!” or “His words are amazing!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

So...he commands the unclean spirits with authority... power (ULT)
were very amazed...with...confidence...his words have so much power! Even evil spirits obey him (UST)

“He has authority and power to command the unclean spirits”

Translation Words - ULT

- he commands
- power
- unclean
- authority
- spirits
- unclean spirits
- astonishment

Translation Words - UST

- obey him
- his words have so much power
- evil
- confidence
- spirits
- evil spirits
- were very amazed
Luke 4:37

So news about him began to spread...of the surrounding region (ULT)
And...people kept talking about what Jesus had done... the surrounding (UST)

This is a comment about what happened after the story that was caused by the events within the story itself. (See: End of Story)

news about him began to spread (ULT)
people kept talking about what Jesus had done (UST)

“reports about Jesus began to spread” or “people began to spread the news about Jesus”

Translation Words - Ult

• news

Translation Words - UST

• people kept talking
Luke 4:38

Connecting Statement:

Jesus is still in Capernaum, but he is now at the house of Simon, where he heals Simon’s mother-in-law and many people.

Then getting up (ULT)
Then Jesus left (UST)

This introduces a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

mother-in-law...of Simon...Simon’s (ULT)
mother-in-law...Simon’s...Simon’s (UST)

“the mother of Simon’s wife”

was suffering with (ULT)
was sick (UST)

This is an idiom that means “was very sick with” (See: Idiom)

a high fever (ULT)
and had a high fever (UST)

“very hot skin”

they asked him concerning her (ULT)
Some people who were there asked...Jesus to heal her (UST)

This means they asked Jesus to heal her from the fever. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “asked Jesus to heal her from the fever” or “asked Jesus to cure her fever” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• synagogue
• of Simon
• Simon’s (2)
• getting up
• house

Translation Words - UST

• synagogue
• Simon’s
• Simon’s (2)
• Jesus left
• house
Luke 4:39

So standing (ULT)
So he bent (UST)

The word “So” makes it clear that he did this because the people pleaded with him on behalf of Simon's mother-in-law.

standing over her (ULT)
he bent over her (UST)

“went to her and leaned over her”

he rebuked the fever, and it left her (ULT)
and commanded the fever to leave her...she became well (UST)

“spoke sternly to the fever, and it left her” or “commanded the fever to leave her, and it did.” It may be helpful to state clearly what he told the fever to do. Alternate translation: “commanded that her skin should become cool, and it did” or “commanded the sickness to leave her, and it did” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he rebuked the fever (ULT)
and commanded the fever to leave her (UST)

“rebuked the hotness”

and started serving them (ULT)
and served them some food (UST)

Here this means she began to prepare food for Jesus and the other people in the house.

Translation Words - ULT

• and started serving
• she got up
• he rebuked

Translation Words - UST

• and served...some food
• She got up
• and commanded...to leave her
Luke 4:40

on...laying his hands (ULT)
on all of them...put his hands (UST)

“placed his hands on” or “touched”

Translation Words - ULT
  • hands
  • was healing

Translation Words - UST
  • hands
  • and healed

ULT
40 Now when the sun was setting, everyone who had any who were sick with various diseases brought them to him, and laying his hands on each one of them, he was healing them.

UST
40 When the sun was setting that day, many people brought to Jesus their friends or relatives who were sick with various diseases. He put his hands on all of them and healed them.
Luke 4:41

came out...demons also (ULT)
He...was forcing...to come out...also...evil spirits (UST)

It is implied that Jesus made the demons leave the demon-possessed people. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Jesus also forced demons to come out” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

crying out, and saying (ULT)
As the evil spirits left those people, they shouted to Jesus (UST)

These mean about the same thing, and probably refer to cries of fear or anger. Some translations use only one term. Alternate translation: “screaming” or “shouting” (See: Doublet)

the Son of God (ULT)
the Son of God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

he rebuked them (ULT)
he commanded those evil spirits (UST)

“spoke sternly to the demons”

and would not permit them (ULT)
not to tell people about him (UST)

“did not allow them to”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Son of God
- demons
- Christ
- crying out
- he rebuked them
- they knew that

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Son of God
- evil spirits
- Messiah
- As the evil spirits left those people
- he commanded those evil spirits
- they knew that
Luke 4:42

Connecting Statement:
Though the people want Jesus to stay in Capernaum, he goes to preach in other Judean synagogues.

it happened that...when daybreak came (ULT)
The next...morning Jesus went out (UST)

“At sunrise” or “At dawn”

a solitary place (ULT)
an uninhabited place (UST)

“a deserted place” or “a place where there were no people”

Translation Words - ULT

• a solitary
• were looking for
• daybreak

Translation Words - UST

• an uninhabited
• were looking for
• morning
Luke 4:43

to many other cities (ULT)
in other cities (UST)

“to the people in many other cities”

this reason I was sent (ULT)
that…I was sent to do (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “this is the reason God sent me here” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- kingdom of God
- preach the gospel
- I was sent
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- how...God...is going to rule everyone
- I must tell people...the message about
- I was sent to do
- how...is going to rule everyone

ULT

43 But he said to them, “I must also preach the gospel about the kingdom of God to many other cities, because for this reason I was sent.”

UST

43 But he said to them, “I must tell people in other cities also the message about how God is going to rule everyone, because that is what I was sent to do.”
Luke 4:44

in Judea (ULT)
in various towns in the province of Judea (UST)

Since Jesus had been in Galilee, the term “Judea” here probably refers to the entire region where the Jews lived at that time. Alternate translation: “where the Jews lived”

Translation Words - ULT

• synagogues
• Judea
• to preach

Translation Words - UST

• synagogues
• of Judea
• preaching

ULT
44 Then he continued to preach in the synagogues in Judea.

UST
44 So he kept preaching in the synagogues in various towns in the province of Judea.
Luke 5

Luke 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“You will catch men”

Peter, James, and John were fishermen. When Jesus told them that they would catch men, he was using a metaphor to tell them he wanted them to help people believe the good news about him. (See: disciple and Metaphor)

Sinners

When the people of Jesus’ time spoke of “sinners,” they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call “sinners,” he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as “sinners.” (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast, fasting)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hypothetical Situation

Jesus uses a hypothetical situation to condemn the Pharisees. This passage includes “people in good health” and “righteous people.” This does not mean that there are people who do not need Jesus. There are no “righteous people,” everybody needs Jesus. (See: Hypothetical Situations and Luke 5:31-32)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Implicit information

In several parts of this chapter the author left some information implicit that his original readers would have understood and thought about. Modern readers might not know some of those things, so they might have trouble understanding all that the author was communicating. The UST often shows how that information can be presented so that modern readers will be able to understand those passages. (See: Translate Unknowns and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Past Events

Parts of this chapter are sequences of events that have already happened. In a given passage, Luke sometimes writes as if the events have already happened while other events are still in progress (even though they are complete at the time he writes). This can cause difficulty in translation by creating an illogical order of events. It may be necessary to make these consistent by writing as if all the events have already happened.
“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 5:24). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)
Luke 5:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus preaches from Simon Peter’s boat at the lake of Gennesaret.

Now it happened that (ULT)
One day (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

the...listening...word of God (ULT)
many people...listening to him teach God's...message (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “listening to the message God wanted them to hear” or 2) “listening to Jesus’ message about God”

the lake of Gennesaret (ULT)
Lake Gennesaret (UST)

These words refer to the Sea of Galilee. Galilee was on the west side of the lake, and the land of Gennesaret was on the east side, so it was called by both names. Some English versions translate this as the proper name of the body of water, “the Lake of Gennesaret.”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• word of God
• lake of Gennesaret

Translation Words - UST

• God’s
• God’s...message
• Lake...Gennesaret
Luke 5:2

and were washing their nets (ULT)
and were washing their fishing nets (UST)

They were cleaning their fishing nets in order to use them again to catch fish.

Translation Words - ULT
- lake
- fishermen

Translation Words - UST
- lake
- fishermen

ULT
2 Then he saw two boats standing by the lake, but the fishermen had gotten out of them and were washing their nets.

UST
2 He saw two fishing boats there at the edge of the lake. The fishermen had left the boats and were washing their fishing nets.
Luke 5:3

one of the boats, which was Simon's (ULT)
into one of the two boats. (This boat belonged to Simon (UST)

“the boat belonging to Simon”

and asked him to put it out a short distance from the land (ULT)
Jesus asked Simon to push the boat out a short distance from the shore (UST)

“asked Simon to move the boat farther from the shore”

he sat down...and taught...the crowds (ULT)
Jesus sat in the boat...and continued to teach...the crowds (UST)

Sitting was the normal position for a teacher.

and taught the crowds from the boat (ULT)
and continued to teach the crowds from there (UST)

“taught the people while he sat in the boat.” Jesus was in the boat a short distance from the shore and he was speaking to the people who were on the shore.

Translation Words - ULT

• Simon's
• and taught

Translation Words - UST

• to Simon
• and continued to teach
Luke 5:4

Now when he had finished speaking (ULT)
After he finished teaching them (UST)

“When Jesus had finished teaching the people”

Translation Words - ULT
• Simon

Translation Words - UST
• Simon

ULT
4 Now when he had finished speaking, he said to Simon, “Put out into the deeper water and let down your nets for a catch.”

UST
4 After he finished teaching them, he said to Simon, “Take the boat out to deeper water and let your nets down into the water to catch some fish.”
Luke 5:5

but at your word (ULT)
But...because you told me to (UST)

“because you have told me to do this”

Translation Words - ULT

• Master
• Simon
• we worked

Translation Words - UST

• Master
• Simon
• we worked hard

ULT
5 But Simon answered and said, “Master, we worked through the entire night and caught nothing, but at your word, I will let down the nets.”

UST
5 Simon replied, “Master, we worked hard through the whole night, and yet we did not catch any fish. But I will let down the nets again, because you told me to.”
Luke 5:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
6 When they had done this, they gathered a very large number of fish, and their nets were breaking.

UST
6 So Simon and his men let down their nets and they caught so many fish that their nets began to break.
Luke 5:7

they motioned (ULT)
They motioned (UST)

They were too far from shore to call, so they made gestures, probably by waving their arms.

they began to sink (ULT)
they began to sink (UST)

“the boats began to sink.” The reason could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “the boats began to sink because the fish were so heavy” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
• partners

Translation Words - UST
• fishing partners
Luke 5:8

he fell down at the knees of Jesus (ULT)
bowed down before Jesus (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “knelt down before Jesus” or 2) “bowed down at Jesus’ feet” or 3) “lay down on the ground at Jesus’ feet.” Peter did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus. (See: Symbolic Action)

a sinful man (ULT)
a sinful man (UST)

The word here for “man” means “adult male” and not the more general “human being.”

Translation Words - ULT

- of Jesus
- Lord
- sinful
- Simon Peter
- he fell down

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord
- sinful
- Simon Peter
- bowed down before
Luke 5:9

the catch of fish (ULT)
the huge number of fish (UST)

“the large number of fish”

Translation Words - ULT

• amazement
• had seized

Translation Words - UST

• marveled
• He said this because

ULT
9 For amazement had seized him, and all those with him, at the catch of fish which they had taken,

UST
9 He said this because he marveled at the huge number of fish that they had caught. All the men who were with him also marveled.
Luke 5:10

partners with Simon (ULT)
of...who were Simon’s partners, were among those who were amazed (UST)

“Simon's partners in his fishing business”

you will be catching men (ULT)
you will gather in people to become my disciples (UST)

The image of catching fish is being used as a metaphor for gathering people to follow Christ. Alternate translation: “you will fish for people” or “you will gather people for me” or “you will bring people to be my disciples” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- be afraid
- sons
- Simon
- Simon
- of Zebedee
- John
- James
- likewise

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- be afraid
- the two sons
- of...who were Simon's partners, were among those who were amazed
- Simon
- Zebedee
- John
- James
- Until now you gathered in fish, but

ULT

10 and likewise also James and John, sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon. Then Jesus said to Simon, “Do not be afraid; from now on you will be catching men.”

UST

10 James and John, the two sons of Zebedee, who were Simon's partners, were among those who were amazed. But Jesus said to Simon, “Do not be afraid! Until now you gathered in fish, but from now on you will gather in people to become my disciples.”
Luke 5:11

the land (ULT)
the shore (UST)

the shore

ULT
11 When they had brought their boats to the land, they left everything and followed him.

UST
11 So after the men brought the boats to the shore, they left their fishing business and everything else and went with Jesus.
Luke 5:12

Connecting Statement:
Jesus heals a leper in a different city that is not named.

12 Now it came about that he was in one of the cities, and there was a man full of leprosy. And now seeing Jesus and falling on his face, he begged him, saying, "Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean."

A man full of leprosy (ULT)
A man there who was covered with a skin disease called leprosy (UST)

"a man who was covered with leprosy." This introduces a new character in the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

and falling on his face (ULT)
he bowed down to the ground in front of him (UST)

Here "fell on his face" is an idiom that means to bow down. Alternate translation: "he knelt and touched the ground with his face" or "he bowed down to the ground" (See: Idiom)

if you are willing (ULT)
if you are willing (UST)

"if you want to"

you can make me clean (ULT)
because you are able to heal me (UST)

It is understood that he was asking Jesus to heal him. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "please make me clean, because you are able" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

make me clean (ULT)
to heal me (UST)

This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "heal me from leprosy so I will be clean" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Lord
- you can
- make...clean
- of leprosy
- he begged
- his face
and falling

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Lord, please heal me
- because you are able
- to heal
- a skin disease called leprosy
- and pleaded with him
- in front of him
- he bowed down
Luke 5:13

Then he reached out his hand and touched him (ULT)
Then Jesus reached out his hand and touched the man (UST)

Then Jesus reached out his hand and touched the man

Be clean (ULT)
and I heal you now (UST)

This was not a command that the man was supposed to obey. Instead, this was a command that directly caused the man to be healed. (See: Imperatives - Other Uses)

him...the leprosy went away from (ULT)
the man...He no longer had leprosy (UST)

“he no longer had leprosy”

Translation Words - ULT

• Be clean
• hand
• leprosy

Translation Words - UST

• and I heal you now
• hand
• leprosy

ULT
13 Then he reached out his hand and touched him, saying, “I am willing. Be clean.” And immediately the leprosy went away from him.

UST
13 Then Jesus reached out his hand and touched the man. He said, “I am willing to heal you, and I heal you now!” Immediately the man was healed. He no longer had leprosy!
Luke 5:14

to tell no one (ULT)
Make sure that you do not immediately tell people that I healed you (UST)

This can be translated as a direct quote: “Do not tell anyone” There is implied information that can also be stated explicitly (AT): “do not tell anyone that you have been healed” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations and Ellipsis)

offer a sacrifice for your cleansing (ULT)
take to the priest the offering that...commanded people who no longer have leprosy to offer (UST)

The law required a person to make a specific sacrifice after they were healed. This allowed the person to be ceremonially clean, and able to again participate in religious rituals.

for a testimony (ULT)
and see that you no longer have leprosy (UST)

“as proof of your healing”

to them (ULT)
and see that you no longer have leprosy (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “to the priests” or 2) “to all the people.”

Translation Words - ULT

• instructed
• what...commanded
• a testimony
• cleansing
• priest
• Moses
• according to

Translation Words - UST

• told
• commanded
• and see that you no longer have leprosy
• people who no longer have leprosy to offer
• priest in Jerusalem...so that he can examine you
• Moses
• commanded
Luke 5:15

the report about him (ULT)
But many people heard about how...Jesus...had healed the man (UST)

“the news about Jesus.” This could mean either “the report about Jesus' healing the man with leprosy” or “the report about Jesus' healing people.”

spread...the report about him...even farther (ULT)
But many people heard about how...had healed the man...But many people heard about how...Jesus...had healed the man (UST)

“the report about him went out even farther.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people kept telling the news about him in other places” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• to be healed
• came together
• report

Translation Words - UST

• to have him heal them
• came to Jesus
• But many people heard about how...had healed the man
Luke 5:16

the deserted places (ULT)
isolated areas (UST)

“lonely places” or “places where there were no other people”

Translation Words - ULT

• prayed
• deserted places

Translation Words - UST

• pray
• isolated areas

ULT

16 But he often withdrew into the deserted places and prayed.

UST

16 But he often would go away from them to isolated areas and pray.
Luke 5:17

Connecting Statement:

One day when Jesus was teaching in a building, some men brought a paralyzed man for Jesus to heal.

it came about (ULT)
One (UST)

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the Lord
- power
- Pharisees
- Judea
- Galilee
- from Jerusalem
- teaching
- to heal
- teachers of the law
- days

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord
- power
- some men from the Pharisee sect
- other cities in the province of Judea
- of Galilee
- from Jerusalem
- teaching
- to heal
- Some of them were expert teachers of the Jewish laws
- day

ULT

17 Now it came about on one of those days that he was teaching, and there were Pharisees and teachers of the law sitting there who had come from every village of Galilee and Judea, and from Jerusalem, and power of the Lord was upon him to heal.

UST

17 One day when Jesus was teaching, some men from the Pharisee sect were sitting nearby. Some of them were expert teachers of the Jewish laws. They had come from many villages in the district of Galilee and also from Jerusalem and other cities in the province of Judea. At that same time, the Lord was giving Jesus power to heal people.
Luke 5:18

Now there were some men (ULT)
While Jesus was there, several men (UST)

These are new people in the story. Your language may have a way of showing that these are new people. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

a mat (ULT)
a sleeping pad (UST)
sleeping pad or bed or stretcher

was paralyzed (ULT)
was paralyzed (UST)

“could not move himself”

in front of him (ULT)
in front of Jesus (UST)

Translation Words - ULT

• they were seeking

Translation Words - UST

• tried
Luke 5:19

When they could not find a way to bring him in because of the crowd (ULT)
But they were not able to bring him in because there was such a large crowd of people in the house (UST)

In some languages it might be more natural to reorder this. Alternate translation: “But because of the crowd of people, they could not find a way to bring the man inside. So”

because of the crowd (ULT)
because there was such a large crowd of people in the house (UST)

It is clear that the reason they could not enter was that the crowd was so large that there was no room for them. (See: Ellipsis)

they went up to the housetop (ULT)
so they went up the outside steps onto the roof (UST)

Houses had flat roofs, and some houses had a ladder or staircase outside to make it easy to go up there. This can be stated. Alternate translation: “they went up to the flat roof of the house” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

him...and let...down (ULT)
him...They lowered...through the opening (UST)

and lowered the man down

in front of Jesus (ULT)
and put him down right in front of Jesus (UST)

“directly in front of Jesus” or “immediately in front of Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
Luke 5:20

Now seeing their faith, he said (ULT)
When Jesus perceived that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to him (UST)

It is understood that they believe Jesus can heal the paralyzed man. This can be stated. Alternate translation: “When Jesus perceived that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to him” (See: Ellipsis)

Man (ULT)
Friend (UST)

This is a general word that people used when speaking to a man whose name they did not know. It was not rude, but it also did not show special respect. Some languages might use a word like “friend” or “sir.”

your sins are forgiven you (ULT)
I forgive your sins (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you are forgiven” or “I forgive your sins” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• are forgiven
• faith

Translation Words - UST

• sins
• I forgive
• believed that he could heal the man
Luke 5:21

to debate (ULT)
to think to themselves (UST)

“discuss this” or “reason about this.” What they questioned can be stated. Alternate translation: “discuss whether or not Jesus had authority to forgive sins” (See: Ellipsis)

Who is this who speaks blasphemies (ULT)
This man is proud and insults God...by saying that! We all know that (UST)

This question shows how shocked and angry they were at what Jesus said. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “This man is blaspheming God!” or “He blasphemes God by saying that!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Who can forgive sins but God alone (ULT)
nobody except God can forgive sins (UST)

The implied information is that if a person claims to forgive sins he says he is God. This can be written as a clear statement. Alternate translation: “No one can forgive sins but God alone!” or “God is the only one who can forgive sins!” (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
• scribes
• sins
• God
• forgive
• can
• Pharisees
• blasphemies

Translation Words - UST
• men who were expert teachers of the Jewish laws
• sins
• God
• forgive
• can
• Pharisees
• This man is proud and insults God
Luke 5:22

Knowing...thoughts (ULT)
Knew...what...were thinking (UST)

This phrase indicates that they were reasoning silently, so that Jesus sensed rather than heard what they were thinking.

Why are you debating in your hearts (ULT)
You should not question within yourselves about what I said! Consider this (UST)

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should not argue about this in your hearts.” or “You should not doubt that I have the authority to forgive sins.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

In your hearts (ULT)
Within yourselves (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for people’s minds or inner beings. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- yourselves
- knew

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- hearts
- knowing
Luke 5:23

Which is easier to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say 'Get up and walk (ULT)
It is easy to say, 'Your sins are forgiven' because no one can see whether or not the person was really forgiven. But it is not easy to say 'Get up and walk' because people can immediately see whether or not he was healed (UST)

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: “I just said 'Your sins are forgiven you.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal the man will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or “You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'" (See: Rhetorical Question)

easier to say (ULT)
easy to say (UST)

The unspoken implication is that one thing is “easier to say because no one will know what has happened,” but the other thing is “harder to say because everyone will know what has happened.” People could not see if the man's sins were forgiven, but they would all know he was healed if he got up and walked. (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• are forgiven
• Get up
• walk

Translation Words - UST

• sins
• are forgiven' because no one can see whether or not the person was really forgiven
• Get up
• walk' because people can immediately see whether or not he was healed
Luke 5:24

you may know (ULT)
you will know (UST)

Jesus was speaking to the scribes and Pharisees. The word "you" is plural. (See: Forms of You)

the Son of Man (ULT)
the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus was referring to himself.

I tell you (ULT)
To you I say (UST)

Jesus was saying this to the paralyzed man. The word "you" is singular.

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• to forgive
• authority
• Son of Man
• get up
• earth
• house
• you may know

Translation Words - UST

• their sins
• to forgive people
• permission
• Son of Man
• get up
• earth
• home
• you will know

ULT
24 But so that you may know that the Son of Man has authority on the earth to forgive sins,"—he said to the one who was paralyzed—"I tell you, get up, and pick up your mat, and go to your house."

UST
24 So I will heal this man so that you will know that God has also given to me, the Son of Man, permission to forgive people on earth their sins." Then he said to the man who was paralyzed, "To you I say, get up, pick up your sleeping pad, and go home!"
Luke 5:25

So immediately he got up (ULT)
Immediately the man was healed! He got up (UST)

“At once he got up” or “Right away he got up”

he got up (ULT)
He got up (UST)

It may be helpful to clearly say that he was healed. Alternate translation: “the man was healed! He got up”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• glorifying
• he got up
• house

Translation Words - UST

• God
• praising
• He got up
• home

ULT
25 So immediately he got up in front of them, picked up that on which he was lying, and went away to his house, glorifying God.

UST
25 Immediately the man was healed! He got up in front of them all. He picked up the sleeping pad on which he had been lying, and he went home, praising God.
Luke 5:26

were filled with fear (ULT)
were completely amazed at what they saw Jesus do (UST)

“very afraid” or “filled with awe”
extraordinary things (ULT)

wonderful things (UST)

“amazing things” or “strange things”

Translation Words - ULT

• with fear
• God
• they glorified
• amazement

Translation Words - UST

• were completely amazed at what they saw Jesus do
• God
• They praised
• All the people there were astonished

ULT

26 Then amazement took hold of them all, and they glorified God, and were filled with fear, saying, “We have seen extraordinary things today.”

UST

26 All the people there were astonished! They praised God and were completely amazed at what they saw Jesus do. They kept saying, “We have seen wonderful things today!”
Luke 5:27

Connecting Statement:
When Jesus leaves the house, he calls Levi, the Jewish tax collector, to follow him. Jesus annoys the Pharisees and scribes because he attends a big meal that Levi prepares for him.

Now after these things (ULT)
Then (UST)

The phrase “these things” refers to what happened in the previous verses. This signals a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

he went out (ULT)
Jesus left that place (UST)

Jesus left there

saw a tax collector (ULT)
saw a man...who collected taxes for the Roman government (UST)

“looked at a tax collector with attention” or “looked carefully at a tax collector”

Follow me (ULT)
Come with me and become my disciple (UST)

To “follow” someone is to become that person’s disciple. Alternate translation: “Be my disciple” or “Come, follow me as your teacher” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- named
- Levi
- a tax collector
- tax collector's tent

Translation Words - UST

- named
- Levi
- a man...who collected taxes for the Roman government
- booth where the people came to pay him the taxes that the government required
Luke 5:28

leaving everything behind (ULT)
Levi left his work (UST)

“left his work as a tax collector”

leaving everything behind, he got up

It may be more natural rearrange the order as, "he got up and left everything."

he got up and began to follow him (ULT)
Levi left his work...and went with Jesus (UST)

Levi tot up and began to follow Jesus

Translation Words - ULT

• he got up

Translation Words - UST

• Levi left his work
Luke 5:29

Connecting Statement:
At the meal, Jesus speaks with the Pharisees and scribes.

in his house (ULT)
in his own house (UST)

“in Levi’s house”

reclining at the table (ULT)
eating together (UST)

The Greek style of eating at a feast was to lie on a couch and prop oneself up with the left arm on some pillows. Alternate translation: “eating together” or “eating at the table” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Levi
• of tax collectors
• a...banquet
• house

Translation Words - UST

• Levi
• of tax collectors
• a...feast
• house

ULT
29 Then Levi made a great banquet in his house for him, and there was a large crowd of tax collectors and others who were reclining at the table with them.

UST
29 Later on, Levi prepared a big feast in his own house for Jesus and his disciples. There was a large group of tax collectors and others eating together with them.
Luke 5:30

to his disciples (ULT)
Jesus...disciples (UST)

“to Jesus’ disciples”

Why do...you eat...sinners...drink (ULT)
with...You should not be eating...other terrible sinners...You should not be eating (UST)

The Pharisees and scribes ask this question to express their disapproval that Jesus’ disciples are eating with sinners. Alternate translation: “You should not eat with sinners!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

sinners (ULT)
other terrible sinners (UST)

people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

with...you eat and drink...sinners (ULT)
with...You should not be eating...other terrible sinners (UST)

The Pharisees and scribes believed that religious people should separate themselves from people they consider to be sinners. The word “you” is plural. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• sinners
• disciples
• Pharisees
• tax collectors

Translation Words - UST

• taught Jewish laws
• other terrible sinners
• disciples
• Some men who belonged to the Pharisee sect
• tax collectors
Luke 5:31

People who are well...those who have sickness (ULT)
not those who think they are well...who...are sick (UST)

Jesus uses this proverb to begin to tell them that he calls sinners to repentance the way a physician calls sick people to be healed. (See: Proverbs)

of a physician (ULT)
a doctor (UST)

but those who have sickness (ULT)
who are sick (UST)

You may need to supply the words that have been omitted. Alternate translation: “only those who are sick need a physician” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus said
Luke 5:32

I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance (ULT)
Similarly, I did not come from heaven to invite those who think they are righteous to come to me. On the contrary, I came to invite those who know that they are sinners, to turn from their sinful behavior and come to me (UST)

Anyone who wants to follow Jesus has to think of himself as a sinner, not as righteous.

the righteous (ULT) those who think they are righteous (UST)

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: “righteous people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

• the righteous
• to call
• sinners
• repentance

Translation Words - UST

• those who think they are righteous
• to invite...to come to me
• those who know that they are sinners
• turn from their sinful behavior and come to me
Luke 5:33

they...said to him (ULT)
Those Jewish leaders...said...to Jesus (UST)

“The religious leaders said to Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• disciples
• prayers
• Pharisees
• of John
• do the same
• fast

Translation Words - UST

• disciples
• pray
• Pharisees
• of John the Baptist
• too
• abstain from food

ULT
33 Then they said to him, “The disciples of John often fast and make prayers, and the disciples of the Pharisees do the same. But those of yours eat and drink.”

UST
33 Those Jewish leaders said to Jesus, “The disciples of John the Baptizer often abstain from food and pray, and the disciples of the Pharisees do that, too. But your disciples keep on eating and drinking! Why do they not fast like the others?”
Luke 5:34

You cannot...can you...make...fast...is with them (ULT)
You do not tell...do you...to fast...he is still with them...
No, no one would do that (UST)

Jesus uses this question to cause the people to think about a situation that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one tells the wedding attendants of the bridegroom to fast while he is still with them" (See: Rhetorical Question)

wedding attendants (ULT)
friends (UST)

“guests” or “friends.” These are friends who celebrate with a man who is getting married.

the wedding attendants...fast (ULT)
the friends...to fast (UST)

Fasting is a sign of sadness. The religious leaders understood that the wedding attendants would not fast while the bridegroom was with them. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• wedding attendants
• fast
• bridegroom

Translation Words - UST

• friends
• to fast
• of the bridegroom
Luke 5:35

But the days will indeed come when (ULT)
But some day (UST)

“soon” or “some day”

the bridegroom will be taken away from them (ULT)
the bridegroom will be taken away from his friends (UST)

Jesus is comparing himself to the bridegroom, and the disciples to the wedding attendants. He does not explain the metaphor, so the translation should explain it only if necessary. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• they will fast
• bridegroom
• the days
• days

Translation Words - UST

• they will abstain from food
• bridegroom
• But some day
• at that time

ULT
35 But the days will indeed come when the bridegroom will be taken away from them. Then, in those days, they will fast.”

UST
35 But some day the bridegroom will be taken away from his friends. Then, at that time, they will abstain from food.”
Luke 5:36

General Information:

Jesus tells a story to the scribes and pharisees who were at Levi's house. (See: Parables)

No one...having torn...sews it onto...also...he did that...will tear (ULT)
He said, “People never...tear...and attach it to...to mend it...other examples to explain what he meant...If they did that...they would ruin...by tearing it (UST)

“No one rips...uses it...he...he” or “People never tear...use it...they...they”

sews it (ULT)
and attach it...to mend it (UST)

repair

if...he did that (ULT)
If they did that...If they did that...the (UST)

This hypothetical statement explains the reason why a person would not actually mend a garment in that way. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

will not match (ULT)
would not match (UST)

“would not match” or “would not be the same as”

Translation Words - ULT

• a parable
• a...garment
• an...garment

Translation Words - UST

• other examples to explain what he meant
• a...garment
• an...garment
Luke 5:37

new wine (ULT)
newly squeezed wine (UST)

“grape juice.” This refers to wine that has not yet fermented.

wineskins (ULT)
skin bags to store it (UST)

These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called “wine bags” or “bags made of skin.”

the new wine will burst the wineskins (ULT)
the skin bags would tear open because they would not stretch when the new wine fermented and expanded (UST)

When the new wine ferments and expands, it breaks the old skins because they can no longer stretch out. Jesus’ audience would have understood the information about the wine’s fermenting and expanding. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

it will be spilled out (ULT)
the wine would also be ruined because it would spill out (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the wine would spill out of the bags” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• will be destroyed
• wine
• wineskins
• old
• wine
• wineskins
• wineskins

Translation Words - UST

• would be ruined
• wine
• skin bags to store it
• old
• wine fermented and expanded
• skin bags
• skin bags
Luke 5:38

fresh wineskins (ULT)
new skin bags (UST)

“new wineskins” or “new wine bags.” This refers to new wineskins, unused.

Translation Words - ULT

• wine
• wineskins

Translation Words - UST

• wine
• skin bags

ULT
38 But new wine must be put into fresh wineskins.

UST
38 On the contrary, new wine must be put into new skin bags.
Luke 5:39

after drinking old wine, wants the new (ULT)
those who have drunk only old wine are content with
that...want to drink the new wine (UST)

This metaphor contrasts the old teaching of the religious leaders
against the new teaching of Jesus. The point is that people who are
used to the old teaching are not willing to listen to the new things
that Jesus is teaching. (See: Metaphor)

for he says, 'The old is better (ULT)
because they say, 'The old wine is good (UST)

It may be helpful to add: “and he is therefore not willing to try the
new wine” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• old wine

Translation Words - UST

• only old wine are content with that
Luke 6

Luke 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Luke 6:20-49 contains many blessings and woes that appear to correspond to Matthew 5-7. This part of Matthew has traditionally been called the “Sermon on the Mount.” In Luke, they are not as connected to a teaching on the kingdom of God as they are in Matthew's gospel. (See: kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven)

Special concepts in this chapter

“Eating the grain”

When the disciples plucked and ate the grain in a field they were walking through on the Sabbath (Luke 6:1), the Pharisees said that they were breaking the law of Moses. The Pharisees said that the disciples were doing work by picking the grain and so disobeying God's command to rest and not work on the Sabbath.

The Pharisees did not think the disciples were stealing. That is because the law of Moses required farmers to allow travelers to pluck and eat small amounts of grain from plants in fields they traveled through or near. (See: law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law and work, works, deeds and Sabbath)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. Jesus used a metaphor of a generous grain merchant to teach his people to be generous (Luke 6:38). (See: Metaphor)

Rhetorical Questions

Rhetorical questions are questions to which the speaker already knows the answer. The Pharisees scolded Jesus by asking him a rhetorical question when they thought he was breaking the Sabbath (Luke 6:2). (See: Rhetorical Question)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When Luke wrote that the disciples were rubbing the heads of grain between their hands, he expected his reader to know that they were separating the part they would eat from what they would throw away (Luke 6:1). (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:
Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.
Luke 6:1

General Information:
The word “you” here is plural, and refers to the disciples. (See: Forms of You)

Connecting Statement:
While Jesus and his disciples are walking through grainfields, some Pharisees begin to question the disciples about what they are doing on the Sabbath, which, in God’s law, has been set aside for God.

Now it happened...that (ULT)
One Sabbath day (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you can consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

the grainfields (ULT)
some grain fields (UST)

In this case, these are large sections of land where the people had scattered wheat seed to grow more wheat.

heads of grain (ULT)
grain (UST)

This is the topmost part of the grain plant, which is a kind of large grass. It holds the mature, edible seeds of the plant.

rubbing them in their hands (ULT)
They rubbed them in their hands to separate the grains from the husks (UST)

They did this to separate the grain seeds. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “They rubbed them in their hands to separate the grains from the husks” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- a Sabbath
- hands
- heads of grain

Translation Words - UST

- disciples
- One Sabbath day
- hands
- grain
Luke 6:2

Why are you doing that which is not lawful on the Sabbath day (ULT)
You should not be doing work; our laws forbid us to do work on the Sabbath day (UST)

They asked this question to accuse the disciples of breaking the law. It can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “Picking grain on the Sabbath is against God’s law!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

are you doing that which (ULT)
You should not be doing work...our laws (UST)

The Pharisees considered even the small action of rubbing a handful of grain to be unlawful work. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “doing work” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- Sabbath day
- is...lawful

Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees who were watching this
- Sabbath day
- forbid us to do work
Luke 6:3

Have you not even read...who were with him (ULT)
Certainly you have read...with him were (UST)

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees for not learning from the scriptures. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should learn from what you have read...him!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• David

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• David

ULT
3 And answering them, Jesus said, “Have you not even read what David did when he was hungry, he and the men who were with him?

UST
3 Jesus replied to the Pharisees, “Certainly you have read what is written in the scriptures about what David did (before he was king), when he and the men with him were hungry!”
Luke 6:4

the bread of the presence (ULT)
the bread that had been on display before God. In one of Moses’ laws God had said that (UST)

“the holy bread” or “the bread that was offered to God”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- house of God
- priests
- bread
- is...lawful
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the tabernacle
- the tabernacle
- priests
- bread
- to eat that bread
- the tabernacle

ULT

4 He entered into the house of God, and took the bread of the presence and ate it, and gave it to those with him, which is not lawful to eat, except only for the priests.”

UST

4 As you know, David entered the tabernacle and asked for some food. The priest gave him the bread that had been on display before God. In one of Moses’ laws God had said that only the priests were permitted to eat that bread. But even though David and his men were not priests, he ate some of the bread, and also gave some to the men who were with him!”
Luke 6:5

The Son...Man...of the (ULT)
the Son...Man...on the (UST)

Jesus was referring to himself. This can be stated: Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man”

is Lord of the Sabbath (ULT)
has the authority to determine what is right for people to do on the Sabbath (UST)

The title “Lord” here emphasizes his authority over the Sabbath. Alternate translation: “has the authority to determine what is right for people to do on the Sabbath!”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• Son of Man
• Sabbath

Translation Words - UST

• has the authority to determine what is right for people to do
• Son of Man
• Sabbath
Luke 6:6

General Information:
It is now another Sabbath day and Jesus is in the synagogue.

Connecting Statement:
The scribes and Pharisees watch as Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath.

Now it happened that (ULT)
On (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

and there was a man there (ULT)
and a man was there (UST)

This introduces a new character in the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

his right hand was withered

The man's hand was damaged in such a way that he could not stretch it. It was probably bent into almost a fist, making it look smaller and wrinkled.

Translation Words - ULT
- synagogue
- right
- Sabbath
- hand
- taught

Translation Words - UST
- synagogue
- right
- Sabbath day
- hand
- Jesus was teaching
Luke 6:7

were watching...closely...him (ULT)
were watching...closely...Jesus (UST)

“were watching Jesus carefully”

so that they might find (ULT)
then they would accuse...of disobeying their laws about not working (UST)

“because they wanted to find”

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• Pharisees
• Sabbath
• he would heal someone
• a reason to accuse
• were watching...closely

Translation Words - UST

• men who taught the Jewish laws
• Pharisees who were there
• Sabbath
• he would heal the man, and
• they would accuse...of disobeying their laws about not working
• were watching...closely
Luke 6:8

in the midst of us (ULT)
here in front of everyone (UST)

“in front of everyone.” Jesus wanted the man to stand where everyone there could see him.

Translation Words - ULT

- hand
- Get up
- the man got up
- knew

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- Come
- the man got up
- knew

ULT
8 But he knew what they were thinking and he said to the man who had the withered hand, “Get up, and stand in the midst of us.” So the man got up and stood there.

UST
8 But Jesus knew what they were thinking. So he said to the man with the withered hand, “Come and stand here in front of everyone!” So the man got up and stood there.
Luke 6:9

to them (ULT)
to them (UST)

“to the Pharisees”

I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a soul or to destroy it (ULT)
I ask you this: Do the laws that God gave Moses command people to do good on the Sabbath, or to do harm? To save a life on the Sabbath, or destroy it (UST)

Jesus asks this question to force the Pharisees to admit that he was right to heal on the Sabbath. The intent of the question is thus rhetorical: to get them to admit what they all know is true rather than to obtain information. However, Jesus says, “I ask you,” so this question is not like other rhetorical questions that might need to be translated as statements. This should be translated as a question. (See: Rhetorical Question)

to do good or to do harm (ULT)
to do good...or to do harm (UST)

“to help someone or to harm someone”

Translation Words - ULT

• to save
• a soul
• Jesus
• to do good
• Sabbath
• to do harm
• lawful

Translation Words - UST

• To save
• a life on the Sabbath
• Jesus
• to do good
• Sabbath
• to do harm
• Do the laws that God gave Moses command people
Luke 6:10

he looked around at them all and said to him (ULT)
so he looked around at them all and then said to the
man (UST)

Jesus looked around and at them all and said to the man

Stretch out your hand (ULT)
Stretch out your withered hand (UST)

“Hold out your hand” or “Extend your hand”

was restored (ULT)
became completely well again (UST)

healed

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• hand

Translation Words - UST

• withered hand
• hand
Luke 6:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- with anger

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- were very angry

ULT

11 But they were filled with anger and they talked to each other about what they might do to Jesus.

UST

11 But the religious leaders were very angry, and they discussed with one another about what they could do to get rid of Jesus.
Luke 6:12

**General Information:**

Jesus chooses twelve apostles after he prays all night.

**Now it happened that in those days (ULT)**
One day, some time after that (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

**in those days (ULT)**
One day, some time after that (UST)

“around that time” or “not long after” or “one day around then”

**he went out (ULT)**
Jesus went up (UST)

“Jesus went up”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- God
- to pray
- prayer
- days

**Translation Words - UST**

- God
- to pray
- He prayed
- One day, some time after that
Luke 6:13

Now when it became day (ULT)
The next day (UST)

“When it was morning” or “The next day”

he chose twelve of them (ULT)
From them...he chose...twelve men (UST)

“he chose twelve of the disciples”

Now...whom he...named apostles (ULT)
The next day...whom he...called apostles (UST)

“whom he also made apostles” or “and he appointed them to be apostles”

Translation Words - ULT

• he called...to him
• twelve
• he chose
• disciples
• apostles
• he...named
• day

Translation Words - UST

• he summoned...to come near him
• twelve men
• he chose
• all...disciples
• apostles
• he...called
• The next day

ULT
13 Now when it became day, he called his disciples to him, and he chose twelve of them, whom he also named apostles:

UST
13 The next day he summoned all his disciples to come near him. From them he chose twelve men whom he also called apostles.
Luke 6:14

his brother Andrew (ULT)
Andrew...Peter's younger brother (UST)

“Simon’s brother, Andrew”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- he...named
- Andrew
- Bartholomew
- Philip
- Simon
- Peter
- John
- James

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- he gave the new name
- Andrew
- Bartholomew
- Philip
- These men were: Simon
- Peter
- John
- James

ULT
14 Simon (whom he also named Peter) and his brother Andrew; and James and John; and Philip and Bartholomew;

UST
14 These men were: Simon, to whom he gave the new name, Peter; Andrew, Peter's younger brother James, and his younger brother, John; Philip; Bartholomew;
Luke 6:15

the Zealot (ULT)
the Zealot (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “the Zealot” is a title that indicates he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: “the patriot” or “the nationalist” or 2) “the Zealot” is a description that indicates he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: “the passionate one”

Translation Words - ULT

• was called
• the Zealot
• Simon who was called the Zealot
• James son of Alphaeus
• Thomas
• Matthew

Translation Words - UST

• the Zealot
• the Zealot
• Simon...the Zealot
• James, the son of Alphaeus
• Thomas
• Matthew, whose other name was Levi
Luke 6:16

became a traitor (ULT)
later betrayed Jesus (UST)

It may be necessary to explain what “traitor” means in this context. Alternate translation: “betrayed his friend” or “turned his friend over to enemies” (usually in return for money paid) or “exposed a friend to danger by telling enemies about him” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Judas son of James
• Judas Iscariot
• a traitor

Translation Words - UST

• Judas, the son…of a different man named James
• Judas Iscariot
• betrayed Jesus
Luke 6:17

Connecting Statement:

Though Jesus especially addresses his disciples, there are many people around who listen.

with them (ULT)
with his disciples (UST)

“with the twelve he had chosen” or “with his twelve apostles”

from all (ULT)
from...and from many other places (UST)

This is a generalization. A large number of people came from each of the cities and regions that Luke lists here. Alternate translation: “from all over” (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

• of...disciples
• Judea
• Sidon
• of Tyre
• Jerusalem
• people

Translation Words - UST

• of...disciples there
• of Judea
• Sidon
• of Tyre
• Jerusalem
• a...group of people
Luke 6:18

to be healed (ULT)
heal them (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for Jesus to heal them” (See: Active or Passive)

Those who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed (ULT)
He also healed those whom evil spirits had troubled (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Jesus also healed people who were troubled with unclean spirits” (See: Active or Passive)

of...Those who were troubled...unclean spirits (ULT)
from...those whom evil...spirits...had troubled (UST)

“bothered by unclean spirits” or “controlled by evil spirits”

Translation Words - ULT

• unclean
• spirits
• unclean spirits
• to be healed
• were...healed
• were troubled

Translation Words - UST

• evil
• spirits
• evil...spirits
• heal them
• He...healed
• had troubled
Luke 6:19

Now...him...power was coming out from...healing (ULT)
Everyone...him...he was healing...by...power (UST)

“he had power to heal people” or “he was using his power to heal people”

Translation Words - ULT

• power
• healing
• kept trying

Translation Words - UST

• power
• he was healing
• tried

ULT

19 Now the whole crowd kept trying to touch him because power was coming out from him and healing them all.

UST

19 Everyone in the crowd tried to touch him, because he was healing everyone by his power.
Luke 6:20

**Blessed are (ULT)**

It is very good (UST)

This phrase is repeated three times. Each time, it indicates that God gives favor to certain people or that their situation is positive or good.

**Blessed are the poor (ULT)**

It is very good for you who are poor (UST)

“You who are poor receive God's favor” or “You who are poor benefit”

for yours is the kingdom of God (ULT)

because God is ruling you (UST)

Languages that do not have a word for kingdom might say, “for God is your king” or “because God is your ruler.”

yours is the kingdom of God (ULT)

God is ruling you (UST)

“the kingdom of God belongs to you.” This could mean 1) “you belong to God's kingdom” or 2) “you will have authority in God's kingdom.”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Blessed are
- God
- disciples
- kingdom of God
- kingdom

**Translation Words - UST**

- It is very good
- God
- disciples
- God...ruling
- ruling
Luke 6:21

you will laugh (ULT)
God will someday make you laugh with joy (UST)

“you will laugh with joy” or “you will be joyful”

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed are
- Blessed are (2)
- weep

Translation Words - UST

- It is very good
- It is very good (2)
- are grieving

ULT
21 Blessed are those who hunger now, for you will be filled. Blessed are those who weep now, for you will laugh.

UST
21 It is very good for you who are hungry now, because God will give you everything you need. It is very good for you who are grieving now, because God will someday make you laugh with joy.
Luke 6:22

Blessed are you (ULT)
It is very good (UST)

“You receive God’s favor” or “You benefit” or “How good it is for you”

you...they exclude (ULT)
you...they reject (UST)

“reject you”

because of the Son of Man

“because you associate with the Son of Man” or “because they reject the Son of Man”

Translation Words - ULT

• Blessed
• name
• Son of Man
• evil
• reject
• insult you
• as

Translation Words - UST

• It is very good
• say that you are
• Son of Man
• evil
• say that you are
• when they insult you
• evil

ULT

22 Blessed are you when people hate you, and when they exclude you and insult you and reject your name as evil because of the Son of Man.

UST

22 It is very good when other people hate you, when they reject you, when they insult you and say that you are evil because you follow me, the Son of Man.
Luke 6:23

in that day (ULT)
When that happens (UST)

“when they do those things” or “when that happens”

leap for joy (ULT)
Jump up and down (UST)

This idiom means “be extremely joyful” (See: Idiom)

your reward...is great (ULT)
you a great reward (UST)

“a large payment” or “good gifts”

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• prophets
• fathers
• Rejoice
• reward
• their
• day

Translation Words - UST

• heaven
• prophets long ago
• ancestors
• rejoice
• a...reward
• their
• When that happens

ULT
23 Rejoice in that day and leap for joy, for see, your reward in heaven is great. For their fathers treated the prophets in the same way.

UST
23 When that happens, rejoice! Jump up and down because you are so happy! God will give you a great reward in heaven! Do not forget that their ancestors did similar things to God’s prophets long ago!
Luke 6:24

woe to you (ULT)
how sad for you (UST)

“how terrible it is for you.” This phrase is repeated three times. It is the opposite of “blessed are you.” Each time, it indicates that God’s anger is directed at the people, or that something negative or bad awaits them.

woe to you who are rich (ULT)
how sad for you who are rich (UST)

“how terrible it is for you who are rich” or “trouble will come to you who are rich”

your comfort (ULT)
have already received all the comfort you will get (UST)

“what comforts you” or “what satisfies you” or “what makes you happy”

Translation Words - ULT

- woe
- you have already received
- comfort

Translation Words - UST

- how sad
- your...from your riches
- comfort
Luke 6:25

who are full now (ULT)
who think that you have everything that you need now (UST)

“whose stomachs are full now” or “who eat much now”

who...now...laugh (ULT)
who...now...are joyful (UST)

“who are happy now”

Translation Words - ULT

• Woe
• Woe
• you will mourn
• weep

Translation Words - UST

• How sad
• How sad
• you will grieve
• be very sad
Luke 6:26

**ULT**

Woe to you (ULT)
How sad it is (UST)

“How terrible it is for you” or “How sad you should be”

when...all men speak (ULT)
when...everyone says (UST)

Here “men” is used in the generic sense the includes all people.
Alternate translation: “when all people speak” or “when everyone speaks” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

in the same way...men...their...ancestors...treated the false prophets (ULT)

In the same way...everyone...their...ancestors...used to say good things about men who falsely claimed to be God's prophets (UST)

“their ancestors also spoke well of the false prophets”

**Translation Words - ULT**

* Woe to you
* well
* ancestors
* false prophets
* their

**Translation Words - UST**

* How sad it is
* good things
* ancestors
* men who falsely claimed to be God's prophets
* their

ULT

26 Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their ancestors treated the false prophets in the same way.

UST

26 How sad it is when everyone says good things about you. In the same way, their ancestors used to say good things about men who falsely claimed to be God's prophets.
Luke 6:27

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to his disciples and the crowd who is listening to him as well.

to you...who are listening (ULT)
to each of you...who are listening to what I say (UST)

Jesus now begins to speak to the entire crowd, rather than just to his disciples. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

love...and do good (ULT)
Love...Do good things (UST)

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

love your enemies (ULT)
Love your enemies, not only your friends (UST)

This does not mean they were to only love their enemies and not their friends. This can be stated. Alternate translation: “Love your enemies, not only your friends” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• love
• good
• enemies

Translation Words - UST

• Love
• good things
• enemies, not only your friends
Luke 6:28

Bless...and pray (ULT)
Ask God to bless...Pray (UST)

Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

Bless those who curse (ULT)
Ask God to bless those who curse (UST)

God is the one who blesses. This can made explicit. Alternate translation: “Ask God to bless those” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

those who curse you (ULT)
those who curse you (UST)

“those who habitually curse you”

you...those who mistreat (ULT)
you...those who treat...badly (UST)

“those who habitually mistreat you”

Translation Words - ULT
- Bless
- curse
- and pray
- mistreat

Translation Words - UST
- Ask God to bless
- curse
- Pray
- treat...badly
Luke 6:29

To him who strikes you (ULT)
If someone insults you by striking you (UST)

“If anyone hits you”

on the one cheek (ULT)
on one of your cheeks (UST)

“on one side of your face”

offer him also the other (ULT)
turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek also (UST)

It may be helpful to state what the attacker will do to the person. Alternate translation: “turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek also” (See: Ellipsis)

do not withhold (ULT)
let him...have (UST)

“do not prevent him from taking”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- tunic
- cloak

**Translation Words - UST**

- shirt
- coat
Luke 6:30

Give to everyone who asks you (ULT)
Give something to everyone who asks you (UST)

“If anyone asks you for something, give it to him”

do not ask for it back (ULT)
do not ask him to return them (UST)

“do not require him to give” or “do not demand that he give”

ULT
30 Give to everyone who asks you, and from the one who takes away what is yours, do not ask for it back.

UST
30 Give something to everyone who asks you. If someone asks you to give him things that belong to you, do not ask him to return them.
Luke 6:31

And as you desire that people would do to you, do the same to them (ULT)
In whatever way you want others to act toward you, that is the way that you should act toward them (UST)

In some languages it may be more natural to reverse the order. Alternate translation: “You should do to people the same as what you want them to do to you” or “Treat people they way you want them to treat you”

Translation Words - ULT

• as
• the same

Translation Words - UST

• In whatever way
• that is the way that

ULT
31 And as you desire that people would do to you, do the same to them.

UST
31 In whatever way you want others to act toward you, that is the way that you should act toward them.
Luke 6:32

what credit is that to you (ULT)
do not expect God to praise you for doing that (UST)

“For if you love those who love you, what credit is that to you? For even sinners love those who love them. If you love only those who love you, do not expect God to praise you for doing that, because even sinners love those who love them.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- credit
- sinners
- you love
- love
- love (2)
- love

Translation Words - UST

- do not expect God to praise you for doing that
- sinners
- you love
- love
- love (2)
- love

ULT

32 For if you love those who love you, what credit is that to you? For even sinners love those who love them.

UST

32 If you love only those who love you, do not expect God to praise you for doing that, because even sinners love those who love them.
Luke 6:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• credit
• sinners
• you do good
• do good

Translation Words - UST

• do not expect God to reward you for doing that
• sinners
• you do good things
• do good things

ULT
33 For if indeed you do good to those who do good to you, what credit is that to you? Even sinners do the same.

UST
33 If you do good things only for those who do good things for you, do not expect God to reward you for doing that, because even sinners do that.
Luke 6:34

to receive back the same (ULT)
because they expect them to pay everything back (UST)

The law of Moses commanded the Jews not to receive interest on
money they loaned to each other. (See: Assumed Knowledge and
Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- credit
- sinners
- to sinners
- to be repaid
- receive back

Translation Words - UST

- do not expect that God will reward you for doing that
- sinners
- to other sinners
- only to those who will give it back to you
- they expect them to pay...back

ULT
34 And if you lend to those from whom you expect to be repaid, what credit is
that to you? Even sinners lend to sinners, to receive back the same.

UST
34 If you lend money or property only to those who will give it back to you, do
not expect that God will reward you for doing that! Even sinners lend to other
sinners, because they expect them to pay everything back.
Luke 6:35

expecting nothing in return (ULT)  
and do not expect them to pay anything back (UST)

“not expecting the person to return what you have given him” or “not expecting the person to give you anything”

your...reward will be great (ULT)  
your...God will give...a great reward (UST)

“you will receive a great reward” or “you will receive good payment” or “you will get good gifts because of it”

you will be sons of the Most High (ULT)  
you will be children of God the Most High (UST)

It is best to translate “sons” with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

sons of the Most High (ULT)  
children of God the Most High (UST)

Make sure that the word “sons” is plural so it is not confused with Jesus’ title “The Son of the Most High.”

the unthankful and evil (ULT)  
people who are unthankful and wicked (UST)

The words "unthankful" and "evil" are plural abstract nouns. They can be stated as actions. Alternate translation: “people who do not thank him and who are evil” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• of the Most High  
• love  
• sons  
• do good to them  
• evil  
• enemies  
• reward  
• kind

Translation Words - UST

• of God the Most High  
• love  
• children  
• Do good things for them  
• wicked  
• enemies  
• a...reward  
• kind
Luke 6:36

your Father (ULT)
your Father in heaven (UST)

This refers to God. It is best to translate “Father” with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

Translation Words - ULT

• merciful
• merciful
• Father
• just as

Translation Words - UST

• merciful toward other people
• mercifully toward people
• Father in heaven
• just like

ULT

36 Be merciful, just as your Father is merciful.

UST

36 So you should act mercifully toward other people, just like your Father in heaven acts mercifully toward people.
Luke 6:37

And do not judge (ULT)
Do not harshly criticize people (UST)

“Do not judge people” or “Do not harshly criticize people”

you will not be judged (ULT)
God will not harshly criticize you (UST)

Jesus does not say who would not judge. Possible meanings are 1) “God will not judge you” or 2) “no one will judge you” (See: Active or Passive)

And do not...condemn (ULT)
Do not...condemn other people (UST)

“Do not condemn people”

you will not be condemned (ULT)
he will not condemn you (UST)

Jesus does not say who would not condemn. Possible meanings are 1) “God will not condemn you” or 2) “no one will condemn you” (See: Active or Passive)

you will be forgiven (ULT)
God will forgive you (UST)

Jesus does not say who would forgive. Possible meanings are 1) “God will forgive you” or 2) “people will forgive you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• condemn
• you will...be condemned
• you will be forgiven
• judge
• you will...be judged

Translation Words - UST

• condemn other people
• he will...condemn you
• God will forgive you
• harshly criticize people
• God will...harshly criticize you
Luke 6:38

it will be given to you (ULT)
God will give good things to you (UST)

Jesus does not say exactly who will give. Possible meanings are 1) “someone will give it to you” or 2) “God will give it to you” (See: Active or Passive)

a good measure—pressed down, shaken together, spilling over—they will pour into your lap (ULT)
It will be like he is giving you a generous amount of grain, pressing it down in a basket and shaking the basket to make sure it is completely full, to the point that some of the grain even spills over (UST)

Jesus speaks either of God or of people giving generously as if he were speaking of a generous grain merchant. Alternate translation: “God will pour into your lap a generous amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over” or “Like a generous grain merchant who presses down the grain and shakes it together and pours in so much grain that it spills over, they will give generously to you” (See: Metaphor)

a good measure (ULT)
a generous amount of grain (UST)

“A large amount"

it will be measured back to you (ULT)
will be the standard God uses to judge or bless you (UST)

Jesus does not say exactly who will measure. Possible meanings are 1) “they will measure things back to you” or 2) “God will measure things back to you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• good

Translation Words - UST

• generous
Luke 6:39

Connecting Statement:

Jesus includes some examples to make his point. (See: Parables)

A blind man is not able to guide a blind man, is he (ULT)
A blind man should not try to lead another blind man (UST)

Jesus used this question to get the people to think about something that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “We all know that a blind person cannot guide another blind person.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

A blind man (ULT)
A blind man (UST)

The person who is “blind” is a metaphor for a person who has not been taught as a disciple. (See: Metaphor)

Would both not fall into a pit (ULT)
If he did, they both would fall into a hole (UST)

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “both of them would fall into a hole.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• a parable
• a pit

Translation Words - UST

• this parable
• a hole
Luke 6:40

A disciple is not greater than his teacher (ULT)
A disciple is not greater than his teacher (UST)

“A disciple does not surpass his teacher.” Possible meanings are 1) “A disciple does not have more knowledge than his teacher” or 2) “A disciple does not have more authority than his teacher.”

fully trained...everyone, when he is (ULT)
when he is fully trained...he will become (UST)

“every disciple who has been trained well” or “every disciple whose teacher has fully taught him”

Translation Words - ULT

• A disciple
• teacher
• teacher
• will be like

Translation Words - UST

• A disciple
• teacher
• teacher. So you should become like me
• like

ULT
40 A disciple is not greater than his teacher, but everyone, when he is fully trained, will be like his teacher.

UST
40 A disciple is not greater than his teacher. But when he is fully trained, he will become like his teacher. So you should become like me.
Luke 6:41

And why do you look at the tiny piece of straw that is in the eye of your brother, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye (ULT)

None of you should be concerned about someone else's small faults. That is like noticing a speck of straw in that person's eye while not noticing a huge wooden plank in your own eye (UST)

Jesus uses this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "Do not look...brothers eye while you ignore the log that is in your own eye." (See: Rhetorical Question)

at the tiny piece of straw that is in the eye of your brother (ULT)
a speck of straw in that person's eye (UST)

This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer. (See: Metaphor)

tiny piece of straw (ULT)
a speck of straw (UST)

“speck" or “splinter” or “bit of dust.” Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

of...brother (ULT)
that person's (UST)

Here “brother” refers to a fellow Jew or a fellow believer in Jesus.

the...log that is in your own eye (ULT)
a huge wooden plank...a huge wooden plank...in your own eye (UST)

This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults. (See: Metaphor and Hyperbole)

log (ULT)
a huge wooden plank (UST)

“beam" or “plank”

Translation Words - ULT

• brother

Translation Words - UST

• that person's
Luke 6:42

How can you say...when you...do not see...log...in your own eye (ULT)
You should not say...when you do not notice...log in your own eye (UST)

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: “You should not say...eye.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
• brother
• Brother
• brother
• You hypocrite
• me take out
• take out
• to take out

Translation Words - UST
• Friend
• Friend
• others
• If you do that, you are a hypocrite
• take out
• That will be like removing
• to help...get rid of

ULT
42 How can you say to your brother, ‘Brother, let me take out the piece of straw that is in your eye,’ when you yourself do not see the log that is in your own eye? You hypocrite! First take out the log from your own eye, and then you will see clearly to take out the piece of straw that is in the eye of your brother.

UST
42 You should not say, ‘Friend, let me take out that speck in your eye!’ when you do not notice the log in your own eye! If you do that, you are a hypocrite! You should first stop committing your own sins. That will be like removing the plank from your own eye. Then, as a result, you will have the spiritual insight you need to help others get rid of the faults that are like specks in their eyes.”
Luke 6:43

**General Information:**

People can tell if a tree is good or bad, and what type of tree it is, by the fruit it produces. Jesus uses this as an unexplained metaphor—we know what kind of person someone is when we see his actions. (See: Metaphor)

For there is (ULT)
Everyone knows that (UST)

“This is because there is.” This indicates that what follows is the reason why we should not judge our brother.

good tree (ULT)
healthy trees (UST)

“healthy tree”

rotten fruit (ULT)
bad fruit (UST)

fruit that is decaying or bad or worthless

**Translation Words - ULT**

- good
- good
- fruit
- fruit (2)
- rotten
- rotten

**Translation Words - UST**

- healthy
- good
- fruit
- fruit (2)
- bad
- unhealthy
Luke 6:44

each...tree...is known (ULT)
what kind...it is...of tree...anyone can tell (UST)

People recognize the kind of tree by the fruit it bears. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people know the type of a tree” or “people recognize a tree” (See: Active or Passive)

a thornbush (ULT)
a thornbush (UST)
a plant or shrub that has thorns

a briar bush (ULT)
a bramble bush (UST)
a vine or shrub that has thorns

Translation Words - ULT

• fruit
• a thornbush
• figs
• grapes
• is known

Translation Words - UST

• of fruit
• a thornbush
• figs
• grapes. In the same way it is easy to
• anyone can tell
Luke 6:45

General Information:

Jesus compares the thoughts of a person to his good or evil treasure. When a good person has good thoughts, he engages in good actions. When an evil person thinks evil thoughts, he engages in evil actions. (See: Metaphor)

The good man (ULT)
Good people (UST)

The word "good" here means righteous or moral.

good man (ULT)
Good...people (UST)

The word “man” here refers to a person, male or female. Alternate translation: “good person” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

the good treasure of his heart (ULT)
they think good thoughts (UST)

Here the good thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they are treasures stored in the heart of that person, and “his heart” is a metonym for the person's inner being. Alternate translation: “the good things he keeps deep inside himself” or “the good things he values very intensely” (See: Metaphor and Metonymy)

produces what is good (ULT)
do good things (UST)

Producing what is good is a metaphor for doing what is good. Alternate translation: “does what is good” (See: Metaphor)

the...evil (ULT)
good...they think evil thoughts (UST)

Here the evil thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they are evil things stored in the heart of that person, and “his heart” is a metonym the person's inner being. Alternate translation: “the evil things he keeps deep inside himself” or “the evil things he values very intensely” (See: Metaphor) (See: Metonymy)

out...of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks (ULT)
according to...People will speak and act...what they think about in their minds (UST)

Here “heart” represents the person's mind or inner being. The phrase “his mouth” represents the person as a whole. Alternate translation: “what he thinks in his heart affects what he says with his mouth” or “a person will speak aloud what truly values inside of himself” (See: Metonymy and Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
• heart
• of the heart (2)
• good
Translation Words - UST

- they think...thoughts
- what they think about in their minds (2)
- Good
- good
- good things
- evil people
- they think evil thoughts
- evil things
Luke 6:46

General Information:

Jesus compares the person who obeys his teaching to a man who builds a house on rock where it will be safe from floods. (See: Simile)

Lord, Lord

The repetition of these words indicates that they regularly called Jesus “Lord.”

Translation Words - ULT

- you call
- Lord
- Lord (2)

Translation Words - UST

- you call
- Lord
- Lord (2)

ULT

46 Now why do you call me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ and do not do what I say?

UST

46 Jesus said to the people, “Why do you call me ‘Lord’ when you do not even obey what I say to do?”
Luke 6:47

Everyone who is coming to me...I will show you what he is like (ULT)
who come to me...Let me tell you what people are like (UST)

It may be clearer to change the order of this sentence. Alternate translation: “I will tell you what every person is like who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them”

Translation Words - ULT

• like

Translation Words - UST

• like
Luke 6:48

laid a foundation on the rock (ULT)
He made sure to build...the foundation for the house on solid rock (UST)

“dug the foundation of the house deep enough to reach a foundation of solid rock.” Some cultures may not be familiar with building on bedrock, and may need to use another image for a stable foundation. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a foundation (ULT)
the foundation for the house (UST)

the part of a house that connects it to the ground. People in Jesus’ time dug down into the ground to the solid rock and then began to build on the rock. That solid rock was the foundation.

the rock (ULT)
solid rock (UST)

“bedrock.” This is the very large, hard rock that is deep under the soil.

torrent of water (ULT)
and a torrent of water (UST)

“fast-moving water” or “river”

flowed against (ULT)
was beating against (UST)

“crashed against”

shake it (ULT)
shake the house (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “cause it to shake” or 2) “destroy it.”

because it had been built well (ULT)
because he had built the house on a solid foundation (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because the man had built it well” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• well
• could
• a flood
• a foundation
• like
• a house
• house

Translation Words - UST

• he had built...on a solid foundation
• the torrent could...even
• a flood
• the foundation for the house
• like
• his house
• the house
Luke 6:49

General Information:
Jesus compares the person who hears but does not obey his teaching to a man who builds a house that has no foundation and so will collapse when the flood comes. (See: Simile)

But the one (ULT)
But some people (UST)

“But” shows a strong contrast to the previous person who built with a foundation.

on the ground without a foundation (ULT)
on top of the ground without building a foundation (UST)

Some cultures may not know that a house with a foundation is stronger. Additional information may be helpful. Alternate translation: “but he did not dig down and build first a foundation” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a foundation (ULT)
building a foundation (UST)

the part of a house that connects it to the ground. People in Jesus’ time dug down into the ground to the solid rock and then began to build on the rock. That solid rock was the foundation.

torrent of water (ULT)
river (UST)

“fast-moving water” or “river”

flowed (ULT)
When...flooded (UST)

“crashed against”

it collapsed (ULT)
collapsed (UST)

fell down or came apart

the ruin of that house was great (ULT)
the house...was completely ruined (UST)

“that house was completely destroyed”

Translation Words - ULT

• a foundation
• ruin
Translation Words - UST

- like
- a house
- house
Luke 7

Luke 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULT does this with the quoted material in 7:27.

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

Special concepts in this chapter

Centurion

The centurion who asked Jesus to heal his slave (Luke 7:2) was doing many unusual things. A Roman soldier would almost never go to a Jew for anything, and most wealthy people did not love or care for their slaves. (See: centurion and faith)

John's Baptism

John baptized people to show that those he was baptizing knew they were sinners and were sorry for their sin. (See: repent, repentance and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

“Sinners”

Luke refers to a group of people as “sinners.” The Jewish leaders considered these people to be hopelessly ignorant of the law of Moses, and so called them “sinners.” In reality, the leaders were sinful. This situation can be taken as irony. (See: Irony)

“Feet”

The feet of the people in the ancient Near East were very dirty because they wore sandals and the roads and trails were dusty and muddy. Only slaves washed other people’s feet. The woman who washed Jesus’ feet was showing him great honor.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 7:34). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)
Luke 7:1

General Information:
Jesus enters Capernaum where Jesus heals a centurian’s servant.

in the hearing of the people (ULT) to the people (UST)

The idiom “in the hearing” emphasizes that he wanted them to hear what he said. Alternate translation: “to the people who were listening to him” or “to the people who were present” or “for the people to hear” (See: Idiom)

he entered into Capernaum (ULT) he went to the town of Capernaum (UST)

This begins a new event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

Translation Words - ULT
- Capernaum
- people

Translation Words - UST
- the town of Capernaum
- people
Luke 7:2

who was highly regarded by him (ULT)
a slave that was dear to him (UST)

“whom the centurion valued” or “whom he respected”

Translation Words - ULT

• highly regarded
• of a centurion
• to die
• a...servant

Translation Words - UST

• dear
• a centurion in the Roman army
• to die
• slave

ULT
2 Now a certain servant of a centurion, who was highly regarded by him, being sick, was about to die.

UST
2 In that town there was a centurion in the Roman army who had a slave that was dear to him. This slave was so sick that he was about to die.
Luke 7:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jews
- he might save
- asking
- elders
- he sent
- servant

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jewish
- and heal
- to ask
- some...elders
- he sent
- slave

ULT

3 And when the centurion heard about Jesus, he sent elders of the Jews to him, asking him to come so that he might save his servant.

UST

3 When the centurion heard about Jesus, he sent some Jewish elders to Jesus to ask him to come and heal his slave.
Luke 7:4

they asked him earnestly (ULT)
they earnestly asked him to help the centurion’s slave (UST)

“pleaded with him” or “begged him”

He is...worthy (ULT)
He deserves (UST)

“The centurion is worthy”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• worthy
• they asked

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• He deserves
• they...asked
**Luke 7:5**

*our nation* (ULT)

*our people* (UST)

“our people.” This refers to the Jewish people.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- synagogue
- he loves
- nation

**Translation Words - UST**

- synagogue
- he loves
- people

ULT

5 because *he loves* our *nation*, and he built the *synagogue* for us.”

UST

5 because *he loves* our *people* and he built our *synagogue* for us.”
Luke 7:6

went on his way (ULT)
went...to the officer’s house (UST)

“went along”

when he was...not far from the house (ULT)
he was...almost there (UST)

The double negative can be replaced. Alternate translation: “near the house” (See: Double Negatives)

do not trouble yourself (ULT)
do not trouble yourself any further (UST)

The centurion was speaking politely to Jesus. Alternate translation: “do not trouble yourself by coming to my house” or “I do not wish to bother you”

you would come under my roof (ULT)
you should come into my house (UST)

This phrase is an idiom that means “come into my house.” If your language has an idiom that means “come into my house,” think about whether it would be good to use here. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• worthy
• Lord
• centurion
• trouble yourself
• sent
• house

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• worthy
• Lord
• officer
• trouble yourself any further
• sent
• almost there
Luke 7:7

say a word (ULT)
if you say just one word (UST)

The servant understood that Jesus could heal the servant just by speaking. Here “word” refers to a command. Alternate translation: “just give the order” (See: Synecdoche)

my servant will be healed (ULT)
you can heal...my slave (UST)

The word that is translated here as “servant” is normally translated as “boy.” It may indicate that the servant was very young or show the centurion’s affection for him.

Translation Words - ULT
• I did...consider...worthy
• will be healed
• servant

Translation Words - UST
• I...think that I am worthy
• you can heal
• slave

ULT
7 For this reason I did not even consider myself worthy to come to you, but say a word and my servant will be healed.

UST
7 That is why I do not think that I am worthy to come to you myself. But you can heal my slave if you say just one word.
Luke 7:8

also…I…am a man placed under authority (ULT)
I know that you can do this because…I am a man who must obey the orders of my superiors (UST)

“I also have someone over me that I must obey”

under me (ULT)
who must obey my orders (UST)

“under my authority”

to my servant (ULT)
to my slave (UST)

The word that is translated here as “servant” is the typical word for a servant.

Translation Words - ULT

• authority
• placed
• soldiers
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• who must obey
• the orders of my superiors
• soldiers
• slave

ULT
8 For I also am a man placed under authority, having soldiers under me, and I say to this one, ‘Go,’ and he goes; and to another one, ‘Come,’ and he comes; and to my servant, ‘Do this,’ and he does it.”

UST
8 I know that you can do this because I am a man who must obey the orders of my superiors, and I also have soldiers who must obey my orders. When I say to one of them, ‘Go!’, he goes, and when I say to another, ‘Come!’, he comes. When I say to my slave, ‘Do this!’, he does it.”
Luke 7:9

he was amazed at him (ULT)
he was amazed at him (UST)

“he was amazed at the centurion”

I say to you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

Jesus said this to emphasize the surprising thing that he was about
to tell them.

not even in Israel have I found such faith (ULT)
I have not found any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does (UST)

The implication is that Jesus expected Jewish people to have this kind
of faith, but they did not. He did not expect Gentiles to have this kind
of faith, yet this man did. You may need to add this implied information. Alternate translation: “I have not found
any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does!” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Israel
- faith
- he was amazed at
- turning

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- any Israelite
- who trusts me
- he was amazed at
- he turned
Luke 7:10

those who had been sent (ULT)
those people who had come from the centurion (UST)

It is understood that these were the people the centurion sent. This can be stated. Alternate translation: “the people whom the Roman officer had sent to Jesus” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• had been sent
• returned
• servant
• house

Translation Words - UST

• had come from the centurion
• When...returned
• slave
• house

ULT
10 When those who had been sent returned to the house, they found the servant was well.

UST
10 When those people who had come from the centurion returned to his house, they found out that the slave was in good health again.
Luke 7:11

Connecting Statement:
Jesus goes to the city of Nain, where he heals a man who had died.

Nain (ULT)
Nain (UST)
This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT
- called
- disciples

Translation Words - UST
- of
- disciples
Luke 7:12

see...a man...who had died (ULT)
he saw...a man who had just died (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to the introduction of the dead man into the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: “there was a dead man who” (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

a man was being carried out who had died (ULT)
carrying a man who had just died (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people were carrying out of the city a man who had died” (See: Active or Passive)

was being carried out...the only begotten son of his mother...she was a widow), and a...crowd...rather large (ULT)
carrying...and he was her only son...a...crowd...his mother was a widow...the crowd, and they were going to bury...large (UST)

“carried out. He was his mother's only son, and she was a widow. A rather large crowd." This is background information about the dead man and his mother. (See: Background Information)

a widow (ULT)
a widow (UST)

a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• gate
• a man...who had died

Translation Words - UST

• son
• gate
• a man who had just died
Luke 7:13

he was deeply moved with compassion for her (ULT)
he had compassion for her (UST)

“felt very sorry for her”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• he was deeply moved with compassion
• cry

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• he had compassion
• cry

ULT

13 Now when the Lord saw her, he was deeply moved with compassion for her, and said to her, “Do not cry.”

UST

13 When the Lord saw her, he had compassion for her and said to her, “Do not cry!”
Luke 7:14

he went up (ULT)
Then he came close to them (UST)

“he went forward” or “he approached the dead man”

the wooden frame holding the body (ULT)
the stretcher on which the body was lying (UST)

This was a stretcher or bed used to move the body to the burial place. It did not have to be something in which the body was buried. Other translations may have the less common “bier” or “funeral couch.”

I say to you, arise (ULT)
I say to you, get up (UST)

Jesus says this to emphasize that the young man needs to obey him. “Listen to me! Arise”

Translation Words - ULT

• arise
• were carrying it

Translation Words - UST

• get up
• carrying it
Luke 7:15

the dead man (ULT)
The man (UST)

The man was not still dead; he was now alive. It may be necessary to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "The man who had been dead"
Luke 7:16

Connecting Statement:

This tells what happens as a result of Jesus' healing the man who had died.

overcame...fear...all of them (ULT)
was overcome...Everyone there...with awe (UST)

“fear filled all of them.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they all became very afraid” (See: Active or Passive)

A...great...prophet...has been raised among us (ULT)
A...great...prophet...has come among us (UST)

They were referring to Jesus, not to some unidentified prophet. “Raised” here is an idiom for “caused to become.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has caused one of us to become a great prophet” (See: Active or Passive) (See: Idiom)

has looked upon (ULT)
has come to care for (UST)

This idiom means “cared for” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• his...people
• fear
• A...prophet
• God
• God
• they kept praising
• people
• has been raised
• overcame

Translation Words - UST

• his...people
• with awe
• A...prophet
• God
• God
• They praised
• people
• has come
• was overcome
Luke 7:17

And this news...spread...about him (ULT)
Then this news...spread...about what Jesus had done (UST)

“This news” refers to the things people were saying in verse 16. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People spread this report about Jesus” or “People told others this report about Jesus”

close this news (ULT)
close this news (UST)

“This report” or “This message”

Translation Words - ULT
  • Judea
  • news

Translation Words - UST
  • region of Judea
  • news

ULT
17 And this news about him spread throughout the whole of Judea and all the neighboring regions.

UST
17 Then this news about what Jesus had done spread throughout the region of Judea and all the other nearby areas.
Luke 7:18

Connecting Statement:
John sends two of his disciples to question Jesus.

his own disciples reported to John concerning all these things (ULT)

John's disciples told John about all these things... This introduces a new event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

reported to John (ULT)
“told John”

all these things (ULT)
“all the things Jesus was doing”

Translation Words - ULT

• calling
• disciples
• disciples
• to John
• John
• reported

Translation Words - UST

• call, call out
• disciple
• disciple
• John (the Baptist)
• John (the Baptist)
• report, reported, reputation
Luke 7:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• sent them

Translation Words - UST

• lord, Lord, master, sir
• send, sent, send out

ULT

19 sent them to the Lord to say, “Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?”

UST

19
Luke 7:20

the men said, “John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, ‘Are you...or should we look for another (ULT)
two men...they said, “John the Baptizer sent us to ask
you, ‘Are you...or should we expect someone else (UST)

This sentence can be rewritten so that it only has one direct quote.
Alternate translation: “the men said that John the Baptist had sent
them to him to ask, ‘Are you the one who is coming, or should we
look for another?” or “the men said, ‘John the Baptist has sent us to
you to ask if you are the one who is coming, or if we should look for
another.” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Translation Words - ULT

• Baptist
• John the Baptist
• has sent

Translation Words - UST

• Baptizer
• John the Baptizer
• sent
Luke 7:21

In that hour (ULT)
At that same time (UST)

“At that time”

from evil spirits (ULT)
from evil spirits (UST)

It may be helpful to restate the healing. Alternate translation: “he healed them from evil spirits” or “he set people free from evil spirits” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• from...spirits
• from evil spirits
• evil
• he healed
• afflictions
• hour

Translation Words - UST

• from...spirits
• from evil spirits
• evil
• Jesus was healing
• serious diseases
• time

ULT
21 In that hour he healed many from sicknesses and afflictions and from evil spirits, and to many blind people he granted to see.

UST
21 At that same time Jesus was healing many people from sicknesses and serious diseases, and from evil spirits. He also healed many blind people so that they were able to see.
Luke 7:22

and said to them (ULT)
he answered...those two men (UST)

“said to John’s messengers” or “said to the messengers that John sent”

report to John (ULT)
and report to John (UST)

“tell John”

dead people are being raised back to life (ULT)
People who were dead are being made to live again (UST)

“dead people are being caused to live again”

poor people (ULT)
to the poor (UST)

“poor people”

Translation Words - ULT

• are being cleansed
• to John
• are being told the gospel
• lepers
• report
• dead people
• are being raised back to life
• are walking

Translation Words - UST

• are being healed
• to John
• and I am proclaiming good news
• People who had skin diseases
• and report
• People who were dead
• are being made to live again
• are now walking
and blessed is anyone who does not take offense at me (ULT)
And also tell him, “God will bless anyone who sees what I do and hears what I teach and does not turn away from me.”

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will bless the person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions” (See: Active or Passive)

and blessed is anyone who does not (ULT)
And also tell him, “God will bless anyone who sees what I do and hears what I teach and does not”

“People who do not...are blessed” or “Anyone who does not...is blessed” or “Whoever does not...is blessed.” This is not a specific person.

does not take offense at me (ULT)
does not...turn away from me (UST)

This double negative means “continues to believe in me despite” (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

- blessed

Translation Words - UST

- God will bless
Luke 7:24

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd about John the Baptist. He asks rhetorical questions to lead them to think about what John the Baptist is really like.

He began (ULT)
Jesus began (UST)

What did...A reed shaken by the wind (ULT)
He said, “What did...A thin stalk of a plant shaken by the wind (UST)

This expects a negative answer. “Did you go out to see a reed shaken by the wind? Of course not!” It can also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “Surely you did not go out to see a reed being shaken by the wind!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

A reed shaken by the wind (ULT)
A thin stalk of a plant shaken by the wind (UST)

Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) a person who easily changes his mind, as reeds are easily moved by the wind, or 2) a person who talks a lot but does not say anything important, as reeds rattle when the wind blows. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• John's
• John (2)
• desert
• A reed
• messengers

Translation Words - UST

• John
• John (2)
• wilderness
• A thin stalk of a plant
• men whom...had sent
But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes? Look, those in expensive clothing and living in luxury are in kings' palaces.

This also expects a negative answer, since John wore rough garments. "Did you go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes? Of course not!" This can also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: You certainly did not go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes! (See: Rhetorical Question)

dressed in soft clothes (ULT)
in fancy clothing...those who wear (UST)

This refers to expensive clothing. Normal clothing was rough. Alternate translation: "wearing expensive clothing" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

kings' palaces (ULT)
kings' palaces (UST)

A palace is a large, expensive house that a king lives in.

Translation Words - ULT

- kings' palaces
- living
- clothes
- dressed

Translation Words - UST

- kings' palaces
- who have
- clothing
- those who wear
Luke 7:26

**But what did...A prophet (ULT)**
**Then what did...A prophet (UST)**

This leads to a positive answer. “Did you go out to see a prophet? Of course you did!” This can also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “But you actually went out to see a prophet!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Yes, I say to you (ULT)**
**Yes! But I tell you (UST)**

Jesus says this to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

**more than a prophet (ULT)**
**more important than an ordinary prophet (UST)**

This phrase means that John was indeed a prophet, but that he was even greater than a typical prophet. Alternate translation: “not just an ordinary prophet” or “much more important than a normal prophet”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- A prophet
- a prophet

**Translation Words - UST**

- A prophet
- an ordinary prophet
Luke 7:27

This is he concerning whom it is written (ULT)
He is the one about whom the prophets wrote long ago (UST)

“That prophet is the one the prophets wrote about” or “John is the one the prophets wrote about long ago”

See, I am sending (ULT)
See, I am sending (UST)

In this verse, Jesus is quoting the prophet Malachi and saying that John is the messenger of which Malachi spoke.

before your face (ULT)
ahead of you (UST)

This idiom means “in front of you” or “to go ahead of you” (See: Idiom)

your (ULT)
of you (UST)

The word “your” is singular because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

- messenger
- I am sending
- face
- it is written

Translation Words - UST

- messenger
- I am sending
- ahead
- the prophets wrote long ago
Luke 7:28

I say to you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

Jesus is speaking to the crowd, so “you” is plural. Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the truth of the surprising thing he is about to say next. (See: Forms of You)

among those born of women (ULT)
that of all the people who ever lived (UST)

“among those to whom a woman has given birth.” This is a metaphor that refers to all people. Alternate translation: “of all the people who have ever lived” (See: Metaphor)

greater than…no one is…John (ULT)
gerreater than…there is no one…John (UST)

“John is the greatest”

the one who…among…is least…the kingdom of God (ULT)
the…that of…most insignificant people…God where he dwells (UST)

This refers to anyone who is part of the kingdom that God will establish.

is greater than he is

The spiritual state of people in the kingdom of God will be higher than that of the people before the kingdom was established. Alternate translation: “has higher spiritual status than John” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- kingdom of God
- John
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God...where he dwells
- John
- where he dwells
Luke 7:29

**General Information:**

Luke, the author of this book, comments on how people responded to John and Jesus.

Now all the people who heard this, including the tax collectors, having been baptized with the baptism of John (ULT)

When all the people heard what Jesus said—(ULT)

This verse could be reordered to be more clear. Alternate translation: “When all the people who had been baptized by John, including the tax collectors, heard this, they declared that God is righteous”

declared God to be righteous (ULT)

they agreed that God was just (UST)

“they said that God had shown himself to be righteous” or “they declared that God had acted righteously”

having been baptized with the baptism of John (ULT)

that John had baptized (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because they had let John baptize them” or “because John had baptized them” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- having been baptized
- baptism
- God
- declared...to be righteous
- of John
- people
- tax collectors

**Translation Words - UST**

- that...had baptized
- that...had baptized
- God
- they agreed that...was just
- John
- people
- tax collectors
Luke 7:30

rejected the purpose of God for themselves (ULT)
rejected God’s will for them (UST)

“rejected what God wanted them to do” or “chose to disobey what God told them”

not having been baptized by John (ULT)
whom John had not baptized (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they did not let John baptize them” or “they rejected John’s baptism” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• having been baptized
• God
• Pharisees
• experts in Jewish law
• purpose
• rejected

Translation Words - UST

• whom...had...baptized
• God’s
• Pharisees
• experts in the Jewish laws
• will
• rejected
Luke 7:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the people about John the Baptist.

To what, then, will I compare...what are they like (ULT)
Then Jesus...said...people living in...time period...What are you...like? I will tell you (UST)

Jesus uses these questions to introduce a comparison. They can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “This is what I compare this generation to, and what they are like.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

will I compare...what are they like (ULT)
people living in...time period...What are you...like? I will tell you (UST)

These are two ways of saying that this is a comparison. (See: Parallelism)

the people of this generation (ULT)
people living in...this...time period (UST)

The people living when Jesus spoke.

Translation Words - ULT

• will I compare
• they like
• generation

Translation Words - UST

• people living in...time period
• like? I will tell you
• people living in...time period
Luke 7:32

They are like (ULT)
You are like (UST)

These words are the beginning of Jesus' comparison. Jesus is saying that the people are like children who are never satisfied with the way other children act. (See: Simile)

the marketplace (ULT)
an open area (UST)

a large, open-air area where people come to sell their goods

and...you did not dance (ULT)
They call out...you did not dance (UST)

“but you did not dance to the music”

and...did not...you...cry (ULT)
They call out...did not...you...cry (UST)

“but you did not cry with us”

Translation Words - ULT

• calling
• children
• you...cry
• like

Translation Words - UST

• They call out
• children playing games
• you...cry
• like

ULT
32 They are like children who are in the marketplace, sitting and calling to one another, saying, ‘We played a flute for you, and you did not dance. We sang a funeral song, and you did not cry.’

UST
32 You are like children playing games in an open area. They call out to each other, saying, “We played happy music for you on the flute, but you did not dance! Then we sang sad funeral songs for you, but you did not cry!”
Luke 7:33

neither eating bread (ULT)
and did not eat ordinary food (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “frequently fasting” or 2) “not eating normal food.”

you say, ‘He has a demon (ULT)
you rejected him and said...A demon is controlling him (UST)

Jesus was quoting what people were saying about John. This can be stated without the direct quote. Alternate translation: “you say that he has a demon.” or “you accuse him of having a demon.” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Translation Words - ULT

• John the Baptist
• a demon
• bread
• wine

Translation Words - UST

• John
• A demon
• John
• ordinary food
• wine
Luke 7:34

**The Son of Man (ULT)**
the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus expected the people to understand that he was referring to himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

**you say, ‘Look, a gluttonous man and a drunkard…sinners (ULT)**
you rejected him and said, ‘Look! This man eats too much food and drinks too much wine…other sinners (UST)

This can be translated as an indirect quote. If you translated “The Son of Man” as “I, the Son of man,” you can state this as an indirect statement and use the first person. Alternate translation: “you say that he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard…sinners.” or “you accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being…sinners.” or “you say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard…sinners.” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations and Direct and Indirect Quotations and First, Second or Third Person)

**a gluttonous man (ULT)**
This man eats too much food (UST)

“he is a greedy eater” or “he continually eats too much food”

**a drunkard (ULT)**
drinks too much wine (UST)

“a drunk” or “he continually drinks too much alcohol”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- sinners
- Son of Man
- of tax collectors
- a drunkard

**Translation Words - UST**

- other sinners
- Son of Man
- with tax collectors
- drinks too much wine
Luke 7:35

**ULT**

wisdom is justified by all her children (ULT)

those who are truly God’s children realize that what John and I do is truly wise (UST)

This appears to be a proverb that Jesus applied to this situation, probably to teach that wise people would understand that the people should not have rejected Jesus and John.

**Translation Words - ULT**

- wisdom
- children
- is justified

**Translation Words - UST**

- what John and I do is truly wise
- who are truly God’s children
- realize that
Luke 7:36

General Information:
It was a custom in that time for onlookers to attend dinners without eating.

Connecting Statement:
A Pharisee invites Jesus to eat at his house.

Now one...of the Pharisees (ULT)
One day...a certain...Pharisee named Simon (UST)

The marks the beginning of a new part of the story and introduces the Pharisee into the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event and Introduction of New and Old Participants)

he reclined at the table (ULT)
and reclined at a table to eat (UST)

“sat down at the table for the meal.” It was the custom at a relaxed meal such as this dinner for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

Translation Words - ULT

• Pharisees
• Pharisee
• house

Translation Words - UST

• Pharisee named Simon
• man’s
• house
Luke 7:37

Now there was a woman...was (ULT)
There was also a woman...had been (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

who was...a sinner (ULT)
whom many people knew had been...a prostitute (UST)

“who lived a sinful lifestyle” or “who had a reputation for living a sinful life.” She may have been a prostitute.

an alabaster jar (ULT)
a stone jar (UST)

“a jar made of soft stone.” Alabaster is a soft, white rock. People stored precious things in alabaster jars.

of perfumed oil (ULT)
that contained perfume (UST)

“with perfume in it.” The oil had something in it that made it smell nice. People rubbed it on themselves or sprinkled their clothing with it in order to smell nice.

Translation Words - ULT

• a sinner
• Pharisee
• of perfumed oil
• house
• she found out

Translation Words - UST

• a prostitute
• Pharisee’s
• that contained perfume
• house
• When she heard
Luke 7:38

with the hair of her head (ULT)
with...her...hair (UST)

“with her hair”

anointed them with the perfumed oil (ULT)
anointing them with the perfume (UST)

“poured perfume on them”

Translation Words - ULT

• anointed them
• head
• weeping
• perfumed oil
• kissed

Translation Words - UST

• anointing them
• with...hair
• She was crying
• perfume
• kept kissing
Luke 7:39

he said to himself, saying (ULT)
he thought (UST)

“he said to himself”

If this man were a prophet, he would know...she is a sinner (ULT)
If this man were really a prophet, he would have known...she is a sinner (UST)

The Pharisee thought that Jesus was not a prophet because he allowed the sinful woman to touch him. Alternate translation: “Apparently Jesus is not a prophet, because a prophet would know that this woman who is touching him is a sinner”

that she is a sinner (ULT)
that she is a sinner (UST)

Simon assumed that a prophet would never allow a sinner to touch him. This part of his assumption can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “that she is a sinner, and he would not allow her to touch him” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• a sinner
• a prophet
• Pharisee
• he would know

Translation Words - UST

• a sinner
• a prophet
• Pharisee
• he would have known
Luke 7:40

Simon (ULT)
Simon (UST)

This was the name of the Pharisee who invited Jesus into his home. This was not Simon Peter.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Teacher

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Teacher

ULT
40 So Jesus answered and said to him, “Simon, I have something to say to you.” He said, “Say it, Teacher!”

UST
40 In response, Jesus said to him, “Simon, there is something I want to tell you.” He replied, “Teacher, what is it?”
Luke 7:41

General Information:

To emphasize what he is going to tell Simon the Pharisee, Jesus tells him a story. (See: Parables)

Two men were debtors to a certain moneylender (ULT)
Jesus told him this story: “Two people owed money to a man who had a business lending money to people. One of these people (UST)

“Two men owed money to a certain moneylender”

five hundred denarii (ULT)
five hundred silver coins (UST)

“500 days' wages.” “Denarii” is the plural of “denarius.” A “denarius” was a silver coin. (See: Biblical Money and Numbers)

The...other fifty (ULT)
One of these people...other one owed him fifty silver coins (UST)

“the other debtor owed fifty denarii” or “50 days' wages”
Luke 7:42

he forgave them both (ULT)
so the man very kindly said that they did not have to pay back anything (UST)

“he forgave their debts” or “he canceled their debts”

Translation Words - ULT

• will love
• he forgave

Translation Words - UST

• will love

so the man very kindly said that...did not have to pay back anything

ULT
42 When they did not have enough to repay him, he forgave them both. Therefore, which of them will love him more?”

UST
42 Neither of them was able to pay back what he owed, so the man very kindly said that they did not have to pay back anything. So, which of those two men will love that man more?”
Luke 7:43

I suppose (ULT)
I assume (UST)

Simon was cautious about his answer. Alternate translation: “Probably”

You have judged correctly (ULT)
You are correct (UST)

“You are right”

Translation Words - ULT

• he forgave
• You have judged

Translation Words - UST

• who had owed him the most money will love him more
• You are correct

ULT
43 Simon answered and said, “I suppose the one whom he forgave the most.” Then he said to him, “You have judged correctly.”

UST
43 Simon replied, “I assume that the one who had owed him the most money will love him more.” Jesus said to him, “You are correct.”
Luke 7:44

he turned to the woman (ULT)
he turned toward the woman (UST)

Jesus directed Simon's attention to the woman by turning to her.

You did not give me water for my feet (ULT)
You did not give me any water to wash my feet (UST)

It was a basic responsibility of a host to provide water and a towel for guests to wash and dry their feet after walking on dusty roads. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

You did not give...but she (ULT)
You did not give...but this woman (UST)

Jesus twice uses these phrases to contrast Simon's lack of courtesy with the woman's extreme actions of gratitude.

she...my feet...has wet my feet with her tears (ULT)
this woman...my feet...has washed my feet with her tears (UST)

The woman used her tears in place of the missing water.

wiped them with her hair (ULT)
then wiped them with her hair (UST)

The woman used her hair in place of the missing towel.

Translation Words - ULT

- water
- he turned
- house

Translation Words - UST

- any water
- he turned
- house
Luke 7:45

You did not give me a kiss (ULT)
You did not greet me with a kiss (UST)

A good host in that culture would greet his guest with a kiss on the cheek. Simon did not do this. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

did not stop kissing my feet (ULT)
has not stopped kissing my feet (UST)

“has continued to kiss my feet”

kissing my feet (ULT)
kissing my feet (UST)

The woman kissed the feet of Jesus rather than his cheek as a sign of extreme repentance and humility.

Translation Words - ULT

- a kiss
- kissing

Translation Words - UST

- a kiss
- kissing

ULT

45 You did not give me a kiss, but from the time I came in she did not stop kissing my feet.

UST

45 You did not greet me with a kiss, but from the moment I came in she has not stopped kissing my feet!
Luke 7:46

You did not anoint...but she (ULT)
You did not anoint...but she (UST)

Jesus continues to contrast Simon's poor hospitality with the actions of the woman.

my head with oil...You...anoint (ULT)
my head with olive oil...You...anoint (UST)

“put oil on my head.” This was the custom to welcome an honored guest. Alternate translation: “welcome me by anointing my head with oil” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

my...has anointed...feet (ULT)
my...has anointed...feet (UST)

The woman greatly honored Jesus by doing this. She demonstrated humility by anointing his feet instead of his head.

Translation Words - ULT

- You...anoint
- has anointed
- head
- with oil
- with perfumed oil

Translation Words - UST

- You...anoint
- has anointed
- head
- with olive oil
- with fragrant perfume
Luke 7:47

I say to you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

This emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows.

her sins, which were many, have been forgiven (ULT)
that she has been forgiven for her many sins (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has forgiven her many sins” (See: Active or Passive)

for she loved much (ULT)
and that is why she loves me very much (UST)

Her love was the evidence that her sins were forgiven. Some languages require that the object of “love” be stated. Alternate translation: “for she greatly loves the one who forgave her“ or “for she loves God very much”

the one...who is forgiven little (ULT)
a person who...thinks he has only a few sins, and has been forgiven (UST)

“anyone who is forgiven only a few things.” In this sentence Jesus states a general principle. However, he expected Simon to understand that he showed very little love for Jesus. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- sins
- she loved
- loves
- have been forgiven
- who is forgiven

Translation Words - UST

- sins
- she loves me
- will love me
- that she has been forgiven for
- and has been forgiven
Luke 7:48

ULT

Then he said to her (ULT)
Then he said to the woman (UST)

“Then he said to the woman”

Your sins are forgiven (ULT)
You have been forgiven for your sins (UST)

“You are forgiven.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I forgive your sins” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• are forgiven

Translation Words - UST

• sins
• You have been forgiven
Luke 7:49

reclining together (ULT)
were eating with him (UST)

“reclining together around the table” or “eating together”

Who is this that even forgives sins (ULT)
Who is this man who says that he can forgive sins (UST)

The religious leaders knew that only God could forgive sins and did not believe that Jesus was God. This question was probably intended to be an accusation. Alternate translation: “Who does this man think he is? Only God can forgive sins!” or “Why is this man pretending to be God, who alone can forgive sins?” (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• forgives

Translation Words - UST

• sins
• he can forgive
Luke 7:50

Your faith has saved you (ULT)
Because you have believed in me, God has saved you (UST)

“Because of your faith, you are saved.” The abstract noun “faith” could be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “Because you believe, you are saved” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Go in peace (ULT)
May God give you peace as you go (UST)

This is a way of saying good-bye while giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: “As you go, do not worry anymore” or “May God give you peace as you go”

Translation Words - ULT

• has saved
• faith
• peace

Translation Words - UST

• God has saved
• Because...have believed in me
• May God give you peace
Luke 8

Luke 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting
Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

Special concepts in this chapter

Miracles
Jesus made a storm stop by speaking to it, he made a dead girl alive by speaking to her, and he made evil spirits leave a man by speaking to them. (See: miracle, wonder, sign)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Parables
The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth (Luke 8:4-15).

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Brothers and sisters
Most people call those who have the same parents “brother” and “sister” and think of them as the most important people in their lives. Many people also call those with the same grandparents “brother” and “sister.” In this chapter Jesus says that the most important people to him are those who obey his Father in heaven. (See: brother)
Luke 8:1

General Information:
These verses give background information about Jesus' preaching while traveling.

ULT 1 Now it happened that soon afterward, he also began traveling around to different cities and villages, preaching and proclaiming the gospel about the kingdom of God, and the twelve were with him,

UST 1 After that, Jesus and his twelve disciples traveled around through various cities and villages. As they went, Jesus preached to people, proclaiming the good news that God would soon reveal himself as king.

Translation Words - ULT
- God
- twelve
- kingdom of God
- preaching
- proclaiming the gospel
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST
- God
- twelve disciples
- God...would soon reveal himself as king
- As they went, Jesus preached to people
- proclaiming the good news that
- would soon reveal himself as king
Luke 8:2

who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases (ULT) whom he had healed from evil spirits and sicknesses (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Jesus had set free from evil spirits and healed of diseases” (See: Active or Passive)

Mary (ULT) These included Mary (UST)

One of the “certain women.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Mary who was called Magdalene...seven demons had gone out (ULT) These included Mary from the village of Magdala...he had forced seven evil spirits (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Mary, whom people called Magdalene...Jesus had driven out seven demons” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• was called
• spirits
• evil spirits
• demons
• evil
• Mary who was called Magdalene
• healed

Translation Words - UST

• from the village of Magdala
• spirits
• evil spirits
• evil spirits
• evil
• These included Mary from the village of Magdala
• he had healed
Luke 8:3

Joanna...Susanna (ULT)
Joanna...Susanna (UST)

Two of the “certain women” (verse 2). (See: How to Translate Names)

Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager (ULT)
Joanna...the wife of Chuza, who was one of King Herod Antipas' managers (UST)

Joanna was Chuza's wife, and Chuza was Herod's manager. “Joanna, the wife of Herod's manager, Chuza” (See: How to Translate Names)

were providing for them (ULT)
were providing...to support Jesus and his disciples (UST)

“financially supported Jesus and his twelve disciples”

Translation Words - ULT

• were providing
• Herod's
• possessions
• manager

Translation Words - UST

• were providing...to support Jesus and his disciples
• King Herod Antipas
• funds
• who was one of...managers

ULT

3 and Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager; and Susanna; and many others, who were providing for them out of their possessions.

UST

3 Joanna the wife of Chuza, who was one of King Herod Antipas' managers; Susanna; and many others. They were providing some of their own funds to support Jesus and his disciples.
Luke 8:4

General Information:
Jesus tells the parable of the soils to the crowd. He explains its meaning to his disciples. (See: Parables)

coming to him (ULT)
were traveling to see Jesus (UST)

“coming to Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT
• a parable
• while...was gathering

Translation Words - UST
• this story
• was gathering

ULT
4 Now while a large crowd was gathering and coming to him from different towns, he spoke in a parable:

UST
4 One day a very large crowd was gathering, because people were traveling to see Jesus from many different towns. Then he told them this story:
Luke 8:5

The sower went out to sow his seed (ULT)
A man went out to his field to plant some grain seeds (UST)

“A farmer went out to scatter some seed in a field” or “A farmer went out to scatter some seeds in a field”

some fell (ULT)
some of the seeds fell (UST)

“some of the seed fell” or “some of the seeds fell”

it was trampled underfoot (ULT)
people walked on those seeds (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people walked on it” or “people walked on them” (See: Active or Passive)

to sow...the birds...sky (ULT)
to plant...birds (UST)

This idiom can be translated simply as “birds” or as “birds flew down and” to keep the sense of “sky.”

devoured it (ULT)
ate them (UST)

“ate it all” or “ate them all”

Translation Words - ULT

• sky
• sower
• to sow
• as...sowed
• devoured
• seed

Translation Words - UST

• birds
• to plant
• to plant
• As he was scattering...over the soil
• ate
• some grain seeds
Luke 8:6

it withered away (ULT)
the plants dried up (UST)

“each plant became dry and shriveled up” or “the plants became dry and shriveled up”

it had no moisture (ULT)
was no moisture (UST)

“it was too dry” or “they were too dry.” The cause can also be stated. Alternate translation: “the ground was too dry”

ULT
6 And other seed fell on the rock, and when it grew up, it withered away, because it had no moisture.

UST
6 Some of the seeds fell on rocky ground which had very little soil. Therefore, as soon as the seeds grew, the plants dried up because there was no moisture.
Luke 8:7

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes telling the parable to the crowd.

choked it (ULT)
and crowded them out so that they could not grow (UST)

The thorn plants took all the nutrients, water, and sunlight, so the farmer's plants could not grow well.

Translation Words - ULT
- thorns
- thorns

Translation Words - UST
- seeds of thorn plants
- thorn plants
Luke 8:8

it produced a crop (ULT)
they produced a crop (UST)

“grew a harvest” or “grew more seeds”

a hundred times greater (ULT)
that had a hundred times (UST)

This means a hundred times more than the seeds that were sown. (See: Ellipsis)

The one who has ears to hear, let him hear (ULT)
Jesus...Every one of you should think carefully about what you just heard me say (UST)

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase “ears to hear” here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate translation: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey” or “If you are willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey” (See: Metonymy...First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- he called out
- good
- a crop

Translation Words - UST

- called out to them
- fertile
- a crop
Luke 8:9

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins to speak to his disciples.

Translation Words - ULT
• parable
• disciples

Translation Words - UST
• story
• disciples

ULT
9 Then his disciples asked him, “What might this parable mean?”

UST
9 Then Jesus’ disciples asked him to tell them the meaning of the story.
Luke 8:10

To you has been granted to know the mysteries of the kingdom of God (ULT)
God has granted to you the privilege of knowing the hidden things about how God will rule as king (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has given to you the knowledge of...God” or “God has made you able to understand...God” (See: Active or Passive)

the mysteries of the kingdom of God (ULT)
the hidden things about how God will rule as king (UST)

These are truths that have been hidden, but Jesus is now revealing them.

to the...rest (ULT)
to...everyone else (UST)

“for other people.” This refers to the people who rejected the teaching of Jesus and did not follow him.

Seeing, they may not see (ULT)
Although they see, they may not perceive (UST)

“though they see, they will not perceive.” This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation: “though they see things, they will not understand them” or “though they see things happen, they will not understand what they mean”

not...hearing, they may...understand (ULT)
not...although they hear, they may...understand (UST)

“though they hear, they will not understand.” This is a quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation: “though they hear instruction, they will not understand the truth”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• parables
• kingdom of God
• mysteries
• to know
• they may...understand
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God
• parables
• about how...God...will rule as king
• hidden things
• the privilege of knowing
• they may...understand
• about how...will rule as king
Luke 8:11

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins to explain the meaning of the parable of the soils to his disciples.

The seed is the word of God

“The seed is the message from God”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• word of God
• parable
• seed

Translation Words - UST

• God's
• God's...word
• story
• seeds
Luke 8:12

The ones...along the path are those who have heard (ULT)
The seeds that fell...on the pathway show what happens when people hear God's word (UST)

“The seeds that fell along the path are those.” Jesus tells what happens to the seeds as it relates to people. Alternate translation: “The seeds that fell along the path represent people” or “In the parable, the seeds that fell along the path represent people” (See: Metonymy)

are those who (ULT)
show what happens when people (UST)

Jesus speaks of the seeds showing something about people as if the seeds were the people. Alternate translation: “show what happens to people who” (See: Metonymy)

the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts (ULT)
the devil comes and takes that word away from their minds and hearts (UST)

Here “hearts is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings. Alternate translation: “the devil comes and takes away the message of God from their inner thoughts” (See: Metonymy)

takes away (ULT)
takes (UST)

In the parable this was a metaphor of a bird snatching away the seeds. Try to use words in your language that keep that image. (See: Metaphor)

so they may not believe and be saved (ULT)
As a result, they do not believe it and God does not save them (UST)

This is the devil's purpose. Alternate translation: “because the devil thinks, ‘They must not believe and they must not be saved”’ or “so it will not be that they believe and God saves them” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• and be saved
• hearts
• word
• they may...believe
• devil

Translation Words - UST

• and...does...save them
• minds and hearts
• word
• they...believe it
• devil
Luke 8:13

The ones on the rock (ULT)
The seeds that fell on the rocky ground (UST)

"The seeds that fell on the rocky soil are those." Jesus tells what happens to the seeds as it relates to people. Alternate translation: "The seeds that fell on the rocky soil represent people" or "In the parable the seeds that fell on the rocky soil represent people" (See: Metonymy)

the rock (ULT)
the rocky ground (UST)

"the rocky soil"

in a time of testing (ULT)
As soon as difficult things happen to them (UST)

"when they experience hardship"

they fall away (ULT)
they stop believing God's word (UST)

This idiom means “they stop believing” or “they stop following Jesus” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- word
- believe
- of testing
- receive
- a time
- a time
- joy

Translation Words - UST

- God's word
- only believe
- As soon as difficult things happen to them
- and receive it
- a short time
- As soon as difficult things happen to them
- joyfully
Luke 8:14

The ones...that fell among the thorns, these are (ULT) The seeds...that fell...among...the thorny plants show what happens when (UST)

“The seeds that fell among the thorns represent people” or “In the parable the seeds that fell among the thorns represent people” (See: Metonymy)

as they go on their way...pleasures of this life (ULT) as they go on...pleasures of this life (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the cares and riches and pleasures of this life choke them” (See: Active or Passive)

cares (ULT)
such things as the worries (UST)

things that people worry about

pleasures of this life (ULT)
pleasures of this life (UST)

“the things in this life that people enjoy”

as they go on their way, they are choked by cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and they do not produce mature fruit (ULT) as they go on in life they allow such things as the worries, riches and pleasures of this life to crowd out God's word from their life. As a result, they do not become spiritually mature (UST)

This metaphor refers to the way weeds cut off light and nutrients from plants and keep them from growing. Alternate translation: “as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares, riches, and pleasures of this life keep these people from becoming mature” (See: Metaphor)

they do not produce mature fruit (ULT)
they do not become spiritually mature (UST)

“they do not bear ripe fruit.” Mature fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: “so like a plant that does not produce mature fruit, they do not produce good works” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- life
- thorns

Translation Words - UST

- life
- thorny plants
Luke 8:15

the ones...on the good soil, these are the ones who (ULT)
the seeds that fell...on the fertile ground show what happens when people (UST)

“the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people” or “in the parable the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people” (See: Metonymy)

hearing the word (ULT)
hear God's word (UST)

“hearing the message”

with an honest and good heart (ULT)
with an honorable and upright heart (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person's thoughts or intentions. Alternate translation: “with an honest and good desire” (See: Metonymy)

bear fruit with patient endurance (ULT)
They persevere in believing and obeying the word...they produce good spiritual fruit (UST)

“produce fruit by enduring patiently” or “produce fruit by continued effort.” Fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: “like healthy plants that produce good fruit, they produce good works by persevering” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- an...heart
- word
- good
- honest (2)
- good
- bear fruit
- hold it securely
- patient endurance

Translation Words - UST

- heart
- God's word
- fertile
- an honorable (2)
- upright
- they produce good spiritual fruit
- and receive it
- They persevere in believing and obeying the word
Luke 8:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues with another parable then he finishes speaking to his disciples as he emphasizes the role of his family in his work.

No one (ULT)
people do not (UST)

This marks the beginning of another parable. (See: Parables)

Translation Words - ULT

• a lamp
• light
• a lampstand

Translation Words - UST

• a lamp
• can know what I can do for them
• a lampstand

ULT 16 No one lights a lamp and covers it with a bowl or puts it under a bed. Rather, he puts it on a lampstand so that those who enter may see the light.

UST 16 After lighting a lamp, people do not cover it with a basket or put it under a bed. Instead, they put it on a lampstand, so that everyone who enters the room can see by its light. Similarly, you must tell God's truth to others so that they can know what I can do for them.
Luke 8:17

For nothing is hidden that will not be made known (ULT)
This illustrates that...someday everyone will be able to see everything that is now hidden (UST)

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: “everything that is hidden will be made known” (See: Double Negatives)

nor secret that will not be known and come into the light (ULT)
And someday everyone will see in the open everything that is now secret (UST)

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: “and everything that is secret will be made known and will come into the light” (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

• known
• the light (2)
• will...be known

Translation Words - UST

• someday everyone will be able to see
• someday everyone will see in the open (2)
• someday everyone will see in the open
Luke 8:18

**ULT**

So be careful how you listen, for to whoever has, more will be given to him, but whoever does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him.

**UST**

So make sure that you are listening carefully to what I tell you, because God will enable those who believe his truth to understand even more. But God will cause those who do not believe his truth to not understand even the little that they think they have understood.

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: “whoever has understanding will be given more understanding” or “God will enable those who believe the truth to understand even more” (See: Ellipsis and Active or Passive)

**ULT**

18 So be careful how you listen, for to whoever has, more will be given to him, but whoever does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him.

**UST**

18 So make sure that you are listening carefully to what I tell you, because God will enable those who believe his truth to understand even more. But God will cause those who do not believe his truth to not understand even the little that they think they have understood.

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: “But whoever does not have understanding will lose even what understanding he thinks he has” or “But God will cause those who do not believe the truth not to understand even the little that they think they have understood” (See: Ellipsis and Active or Passive)
Luke 8:19

brothers (ULT)
brothers (UST)

These were Jesus’ younger brothers—the other sons of Mary and Joseph who were born after Jesus. Since the Father of Jesus was God, and their father was Joseph, they were technically his half-brothers. This detail is not normally translated.

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers

Translation Words - UST

• brothers
Luke 8:20

was told...he (ULT)
someone told...him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People told him” or “Someone told him” (See: Active or Passive)

wanting to see you (ULT)
wanting to see you (UST)

“and they want to see you”

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• was told

Translation Words - UST

• brothers
• someone told

ULT
20 Then he was told, “Your mother and your brothers are standing outside, wanting to see you.”

UST
20 Then someone told him, “Your mother and your brothers have been standing outside, wanting to see you.”
Luke 8:21

My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it (ULT)
Those who hear God's word and obey it are as dear to me as my mother and my brothers (UST)

This metaphor expresses that the people who were coming to listen to Jesus were as important to him as his own family was. Alternate translation: “Those who hear the word of God and obey it are like a mother and brothers to me” (See: Metaphor)

the word of God (ULT)
God's word (UST)

“the message God has spoken”

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• God
• word of God

Translation Words - UST

• brothers
• God's
• God's...word
Luke 8:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples use a boat to cross Lake Genneseret. The disciples learn more about Jesus’ power through the storm that arises.

of the lake (ULT)
of the lake (UST)

This is the lake of Genneseret, which is also called the Sea of Galilee.

they set sail (ULT)
they started to sail across the lake (UST)

This expression means they began to travel across the lake in their sailboat.

Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- lake
- days

Translation Words - UST

- disciples
- lake
- day
Luke 8:23

as...sailed...they (ULT)
as...were sailing...they (UST)

“as they went”

he fell asleep (ULT)
Jesus fell asleep (UST)

“began to sleep”

a terrible windstorm came down (ULT)
a powerful windstorm came down (UST)

“a storm of very strong winds began” or “very strong winds suddenly began to blow”

their boat was filling with water (ULT)
the boat was filling with water (UST)

The strong winds caused high waves which pushed water over the sides of the boat. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “the winds caused high waves that started to fill up their boat with water” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• lake
• he fell asleep

Translation Words - UST

• lake
• Jesus fell asleep
Luke 8:24

rebuked (ULT)
and commanded (UST)

spoke sharply to

the...raging of the water (ULT)
the...violent waves (UST)

“the violent waves”

they ceased (ULT)
to be still (UST)

“the wind and the waves stopped” or “they became still”

Translation Words - ULT

- Master
- Master (2)
- We are perishing
- water
- woke
- rebuked
- raging

Translation Words - UST

- Master
- Master (2)
- We are going to die
- violent waves
- woke up
- and commanded
- violent waves

ULT
24 Then they came over and woke him up, saying, “Master! Master! We are perishing!” But he awoke, rebuked the wind and the raging of the water, and they ceased, and there was a calm.

UST
24 So Jesus’ disciples came to him and woke him up. They said to him, “Master! Master! We are going to die!” He then woke up and commanded the wind and the violent waves to be still and they became still. Everything became calm.
Luke 8:25

Where is your faith (ULT)
Why is your faith so weak (UST)

Jesus rebukes them mildly because they do not trust him to take care of them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should have faith!” or “You should trust me!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Who then is this...they obey him (ULT)
Who is this...they obey him (UST)

“What kind of man is this...obey him?” This question expresses shock and confusion over how Jesus is able to control the storm. (See: Rhetorical Question)

Who then is this, that he commands even the winds...they obey him (ULT)
Who is this, that he is able to command even the winds...they obey him (UST)

This can be turned into two sentences: “Who then is this? He commands...obey him!”

Translation Words - ULT

- they were afraid
- he commands
- faith
- they obey
- water
- and marveled

Translation Words - UST

- The disciples were alarmed
- he is able to command
- faith
- they obey
- water
- amazed because of what had just happened
Luke 8:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples come ashore at Gerasa where Jesus removes many demons from a man.

*the region of the Gerasenes (ULT)*
*the region where the Gerasene people (UST)*

Gerasenes were people from the city called Gerasa. (See: How to Translate Names)

*opposite Galilee (ULT)*
*on the opposite side of the lake from the district of Galilee (UST)*

“on the other side of the lake from Galilee”

Translation Words - ULT

- Galilee

Translation Words - UST

- district of Galilee
Luke 8:27

a certain man from the city (ULT)
a certain man from the town in that area (UST)

“a man from the city of Gerasa”

a certain man from the city, who had demons (ULT)
a certain man from the town in that area...This man had demons in him (UST)

The man had demons; it was not the city that had demons. Alternate translation: “a certain man from the city, and this man had demons”

who had demons (ULT)
This man had demons in him (UST)

“who was controlled by demons” or “whom demons controlled”

Now for a long time he had not worn clothes...but in the tombs (ULT)
For a long time this man had not worn clothes...Instead, he lived in the burial caves (UST)

This is background information about the man who had demons. (See: Background Information)

he had not worn clothes (ULT)
this man had not worn clothes (UST)

“he had not worn clothes”

the tombs (ULT)
the burial caves (UST)

These are places where people put dead bodies, possibly caves or small buildings that the man could use for shelter.

Translation Words - ULT

• demons
• for a...time
• tombs
• he had...worn
• clothes
• a house

Translation Words - UST

• demons
• For a...time
• burial caves
• this man had...worn
• clothes
• a house
Luke 8:28

When he saw...Jesus (ULT)
he saw...Jesus (UST)

“When the man who had the demon saw Jesus”

he cried out (ULT)
the man cried out (UST)

“he screamed” or “he shrieked”

fell down before him (ULT)
lay facedown before him (UST)

“lay down on the ground before Jesus.” He did not fall accidentally. (See: Symbolic Action)

he said in a loud voice (ULT)
said with a loud voice (UST)

“he said loudly” or “he shouted out”

What is that to me and to you (ULT)
What do you want with me (UST)

This idiom means “Why are you bothering me?” (See: Idiom)

Son of the Most High God (ULT)
Son of the Most High God (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Jesus
• Most High
• God
• Son of the...God
• in a...voice
• I beg
• you would...torment
• he cried out
• fell down before

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• Jesus
• Most High
• God
• Son of...God
• with a...voice
• I beg
• torment
• the man cried out
• lay facedown before
Luke 8:29

many...times it had seized him (ULT)
many...times the evil spirit would suddenly seize him by force (UST)

“For Jesus had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. This tells about what the demon had done many times before Jesus met the man.

and he was bound...and kept under guard (ULT)
people had bound him...while they guarded him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “though the people had bound him with chains and shackles and guarded him” (See: Active or Passive)

and he would be driven by the demon (ULT)
and the demon would make him go out (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the demon would make him go” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus had commanded
• he was bound
• chains
• unclean
• spirit
• unclean spirit
• demon
• wilderness
• times
• it had seized

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus had just commanded
• people had bound him
• chains
• evil
• spirit
• evil spirit
• and the demon
• deserted places
• times
• the evil spirit would suddenly seize...by force

ULT

29 For Jesus had commanded the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For many times it had seized him, and he was bound with chains and shackles and kept under guard, and he had broken his chains and he would be driven by the demon into the wilderness.

UST

29 The man said this because Jesus had just commanded the evil spirit to come out of him. Although people had bound him with chains on his wrists and ankles while they guarded him, many times the evil spirit would suddenly seize him by force. Then the man would break the chains and the demon would make him go out into deserted places.
Luke 8:30

Legion (ULT)
My name is Thousands (UST)

Then Jesus asked him, “What is your name?” and he said, “Legion,” for many demons had entered into him.

Translation Words - ULT
• Jesus
• name
• demons

Translation Words - UST
• Jesus
• name
• demons

ULT
30 Then Jesus asked him, “What is your name?” and he said, “Legion,” for many demons had entered into him.

UST
30 Then Jesus asked him, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is Thousands.” He said that because many demons had entered that man.
Luke 8:31

they kept begging him (ULT)
The demons kept begging...Jesus (UST)

“kept begging Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

- he would...command
- abyss
- they kept begging

Translation Words - UST

- to command
- deep pit where God punishes demons
- The demons kept begging
Luke 8:32

Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside (ULT)
There was a large herd of pigs grazing on the hillside nearby (UST)

This is supplied as background information to introduce the pigs. (See: Background Information)

was...there...feeding on the hillside (ULT)
There was...a...herd...grazing on the hillside nearby (UST)

“was nearby eating grass on a hill”

Translation Words - ULT

• of pigs
• they begged

Translation Words - UST

• of pigs
• The demons begged

ULT
32 Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside, and they begged him to let them go into them. So he gave them permission.

UST
32 There was a large herd of pigs grazing on the hillside nearby. The demons begged Jesus to allow them to enter the pigs, and he allowed them.
Luke 8:33

Then the demons came out (ULT)
So the demons left (UST)

The word “so” is used here to explain that the reason the demons came out of the man was because Jesus had told them that they could go into the pigs.

rushed (ULT)
rushed (UST)

ran very fast

the herd...was drowned (ULT)
the herd of pigs...drowned (UST)

“the herd...drowned.” No one caused the pigs to drown once they were in the water.

Translation Words - ULT

• demons
• lake
• pigs

Translation Words - UST

• demons
• lake
• pigs
Luke 8:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- reported it
- they ran off

Translation Words - UST

- They reported what they had seen to people
- they ran away

ULT

34 Now when those tending the pigs saw what had happened, they ran off and reported it in the city and in the countryside.

UST

34 When the men who were taking care of the pigs saw what happened, they ran away! They reported what they had seen to people in the town and in the countryside.
Then the people went out to see what had happened, and they came to Jesus and found the man from whom the demons had gone out sitting at the feet of Jesus, listening to him, and they were afraid.

“saw the man whom the demons had left”

in his right mind (ULT)

his mind was normal again (UST)

“sane” or “behaving normally”

sitting...at the feet of Jesus (ULT)

was sitting...at the feet of Jesus, listening to him (UST)

“sitting at the feet” here is an idiom that means “sitting humbly nearby” or “sitting in front of.” Alternate translation: “sitting on the ground in front of Jesus” (See: Idiom)

they were afraid (ULT)

they became afraid (UST)

It may be helpful to state explicitly that they were afraid of Jesus. Alternate translation: “they were afraid of Jesus” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Jesus
• they were afraid
• demons
• clothed

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• of Jesus, listening to him
• they became afraid
• demons
• They saw that he had clothes on
Luke 8:36

those who had seen it (ULT)
The men who had seen what had happened (UST)

“those who had seen what had happened“

the one who had been possessed by demons had been healed (ULT)
Jesus had healed the man who had been controlled by demons (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had possessed" or "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had controlled“ (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- had been possessed by demons
- had been healed
- reported

Translation Words - UST

- had been controlled by demons
- Jesus had healed
- told

ULT

36 Then those who had seen it reported to them how the one who had been possessed by demons had been healed.

UST

36 The men who had seen what had happened told the people who had just arrived how Jesus had healed the man who had been controlled by demons.
Luke 8:37

of the region of the Gerasenes (ULT)
from the surrounding region of the Gerasenes (UST)

“that area of the Gerasenes” or “the area where the Gerasene people lived”

they were overwhelmed with great fear (ULT)
ey were very afraid (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they became very afraid” (See: Active or Passive)

to return (ULT)
to go back across the lake (UST)

The destination can be stated. Alternate translation: “go back across the lake” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• with...fear
• to return
• they were overwhelmed

Translation Words - UST

• afraid
• to go back across the lake
• they were
Luke 8:38

The man (ULT)
the man (UST)

The events in these verses happened before Jesus left in the boat. It may be helpful to state this clearly at the beginning. Alternate translation: “Before Jesus and his disciples left, the man” or “Before Jesus and his disciples set sail, the man”

begged...he sent him away (ULT)
Before they left...Jesus sent him away (UST)

but Jesus sent the man away

Translation Words - ULT

• demons
• begged

Translation Words - UST

• demons
• begged
Luke 8:39

your home (ULT)
your house (UST)

“your household” or “your family”

describe all that God has done for you (ULT)
tell people how much God has done for you (UST)

“tell them everything about what God has done for you”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• God
• proclaiming
• describe
• Return
• home

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• God
• and told people
• tell people
• No, go back
• house

ULT
39 “Return to your home and describe all that God has done for you.” So he went on his way, proclaiming throughout the whole city all that Jesus had done for him.

UST
39 “No, go back to your house and tell people how much God has done for you!” So the man went away and told people throughout the town how much Jesus had done for him.
Luke 8:40

General Information:

These verses give background information about Jairus. (See: Background Information)

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples return to Galilee on the other side of the lake, he heals the 12-year-old daughter of the ruler of the synagogue as well as a woman who has been bleeding for 12 years.

the crowd welcomed him (ULT)
A crowd of people...and they welcomed him (UST)

“the crowd joyfully greeted him”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• returned

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus and the disciples
• went back across the lake
Luke 8:41

a leader of the synagogue (ULT)
was one of the leaders of the synagogue there (UST)

“one of the leaders at the local synagogue” or “a leader of the people who met at the synagogue in that city”

falling at the feet of Jesus (ULT)
he lay facedown before him (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “bowed down at Jesus feet” or 2) “lay down on the ground at Jesus feet.” Jairus did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• of Jesus
• synagogue
• name
• a leader
• he begged
• house
• falling

Translation Words - UST

• him
• synagogue there
• named
• was one of the leaders
• He pleaded with
• house
• he lay facedown
Luke 8:42

was dying (ULT)
was dying (UST)

“was about to die”

As...he was on his way (ULT)
But...he wanted Jesus to heal her...as Jesus went (UST)

Some translators may need to first say that Jesus had agreed to go with Jairus. Alternate translation: “So Jesus agreed to go with him. As he was on his way” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the crowds of people were pressing around him (ULT)
many people were crowding around him (UST)

“the people were crowding tightly around Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• years old
• was dying

Translation Words - UST

• years old
• was dying
Luke 8:43

there was a woman (ULT)
there was a woman (UST)

This introduces a new character in the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

with a flow of blood (ULT)
who had been suffering...from a disease that caused continual bleeding (UST)

“had a flow of blood.” She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition. (See: Euphemism)

was not able to be healed by anyone (ULT)
but none of them was able to heal her (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but no one could heal her” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• living
• of blood
• to be healed
• years

Translation Words - UST

• money
• who had been suffering...from a disease that caused continual bleeding
• to heal her
• years

ULT

43 Now there was a woman with a flow of blood for twelve years, who, having spent all her living on doctors, was not able to be healed by anyone.

UST

43 Now in the crowd there was a woman who had been suffering for twelve years from a disease that caused continual bleeding. She had spent all her money to pay doctors to help her, but none of them was able to heal her.
Luke 8:44

touched the edge of his coat

“touched the fringe of his robe.” Jewish men wore tassels on the edges of their robes as a part of their ceremonial dress as commanded in God's Law. This is likely what she touched.

Translation Words - ULT

• blood
• coat

Translation Words - UST

• bleeding
• robe

ULT
44 She approached him from behind and touched the edge of his coat, and immediately her flow of blood stopped.

UST
44 She came behind Jesus and touched the edge of his robe. At once her bleeding stopped.
Luke 8:45

the crowds of people...they are pressing against you
(ULT)
there are many people crowding around...any one of
them might have touched you (UST)

By saying this, Peter was implying that anyone could have touched
Jesus. This implicit information can be made explicit if necessary.
Alternate translation: “there are many people crowding around you
and pressing in against you, so any one of them might have touched
you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

  • Jesus
  • Master
  • Peter

Translation Words - UST

  • Jesus
  • Master
  • Peter

ULT

45 Then Jesus said, “Who is the one who
 touched me?” But when all denied it,
Peter said, “Master, the crowds of
people are surrounding you and they
are pressing against you.”

UST

45 Jesus said, “Who touched me?” As
everyone around Jesus was saying they
had not touched him, Peter said, “
Master, there are many people
crowding around you and pressing up
against you, so any one of them might
have touched you!”
Luke 8:46

Someone did touch me (ULT)
that someone deliberately touched me (UST)

It may be helpful to distinguish this intentional “touch” from the accidental touches of the crowd. Alternate translation: “Someone deliberately touched me” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I...know that power has gone out from me (ULT)
I...know...power has gone out of me to heal that person (UST)

Jesus did not lose power or become weak, but his power healed the woman. Alternate translation: “I know that healing power went out from me” or “I felt my power heal someone” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• power
• know that

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• power...to heal that person
• know
Luke 8:47

that she could not escape notice (ULT)
that she could not hide (UST)

“that she could not keep secret what she had done.” It may be helpful to state what she did. Alternate translation: “that she could not keep it a secret that she was the one who had touched Jesus” (See: Ellipsis)

she came trembling (ULT)
she came trembling to him (UST)

“she came trembling with fear”

fell down before him (ULT)
she lay facedown on the ground before him (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “bowed down in front of Jesus” or 2) “lay down on the ground at Jesus’ feet.” She did not fall accidentally. This was a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

In the presence of all the people (ULT)
As the other people were listening (UST)

“In the sight of all the people”

Translation Words - ULT

• she had been...healed
• people
• she declared
• trembling
• fell down before

Translation Words - UST

• she had been healed
• people
• she told Jesus
• trembling
• she lay facedown on the ground

ULT

47 When the woman saw that she could not escape notice, she came trembling and fell down before him. In the presence of all the people she declared for what reason she had touched him, and how she had been healed.

UST

47 And when the woman realized that she could not hide, she came trembling to him and she lay facedown on the ground before him. As the other people were listening, she told Jesus why she had touched him and that she had been healed immediately.
Luke 8:48

Daughter (ULT)
My dear woman (UST)

This was a kind way of speaking to a woman. Your language may have another way of showing this kindness.

your faith has made you well (ULT)
because you believed that I could heal you, you are now well (UST)

“because of your faith, you have become well.” The abstract noun “faith” could be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “because you believe, you are healed” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Go in peace (ULT)
Now go on your way, and may God’s peace be with you (UST)

This idiom is a way of saying, “Goodbye” and giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: “As you go, do not worry anymore” or “May God give you peace as you go” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• faith
• has made...well
• peace

Translation Words - UST

• believed that I could heal you
• are now well
• and may God’s peace be with you
Luke 8:49

While he was still speaking (ULT)
While he was still speaking to her (UST)

“While Jesus was still speaking to the woman”

the synagogue leader’s house (ULT)
Jairus’ house (UST)

This refers to Jairus (Luke 8:41).

Do not trouble the teacher any longer (ULT)
So do not bother the teacher anymore (UST)

This statement implies that Jesus will not be able to do anything to help now that the girl is dead. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the teacher (ULT)
the teacher (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

• is dead
• trouble
• teacher

Translation Words - UST

• has died
• bother
• teacher
Luke 8:50

she will be healed (ULT)
she will live again (UST)

“she will be well” or “she will live again”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• be afraid
• believe

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• be afraid
• believe in me

ULT

50 But when Jesus heard this, he answered him, “Do not be afraid; only believe, and she will be healed.”

UST

50 But when Jesus heard that, he said to Jairus, “Do not be afraid. Just believe in me and she will live again.”
Luke 8:51

When he came to the house (ULT)
When he arrived outside the house (UST)

“When they came to the house.” Jesus went there with Jairus. Also some of Jesus’ disciples went with them.

he did not allowed anyone...except Peter and John and James, and the father of the child and her mother

This could be stated positively. Alternate translation: “Jesus allowed only Peter, John, James, and the girl's father and mother to go inside with him”

the father of the child (ULT)
the girl's...and father (UST)

This refers to Jairus.

Translation Words - ULT

• child
• Peter
• John
• James
• father
• house

Translation Words - UST

• girl's
• Peter
• John
• James
• and father
• house
Luke 8:52

they were...mourning...all...and wailing for her (ULT)
were crying loudly...all the people there...to show that
they were very sad because the girl had died (UST)

This was the normal way of showing grief in that culture. Alternate
translation: "all the people there were showing how sad they were
and crying loudly because the girl had died" (See: Assumed
Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- wailing
- she is...dead
- sleeps
- they were...mourning
- weep

Translation Words - UST

- they were very sad
- She is...dead
- She is...sleeping
- were crying loudly
- crying

ULT

52 Now they were all mourning and
wailing for her, but he said, “Do not
weep, for she is not dead, but sleeps.”

UST

52 And all the people there were crying
loudly to show that they were very sad
because the girl had died. But Jesus said
to them, “Stop crying! She is not dead!
She is just sleeping!”
Luke 8:53

they laughed at him, knowing that she was dead (ULT)
the people laughed at him, because they knew that the
girl was dead (UST)

“laughed at him because they knew the girl”

Translation Words - ULT

• she was dead
• knowing

Translation Words - UST

• the girl was dead
• because they knew

ULT
53 But they laughed at him, knowing that she was dead.

UST
53 And the people laughed at him, because they knew that the girl was dead.
Luke 8:54

he...taking hold of her hand (ULT)
Jesus...took hold of her hand (UST)

“Jesus took hold of the girl's hand”

Translation Words - ULT

• called out, saying
• Child
• hand
• called out
• get up

Translation Words - UST

• and called to her, saying
• Child
• hand
• and called to her
• get up

ULT
54 But he, taking hold of her hand, called out, saying, “Child, get up!”

UST
54 But Jesus took hold of her hand and called to her, saying, “Child, get up!”
Luke 8:55

her spirit returned (ULT)
her spirit returned to her body (UST)

“Her spirit returned to her body.” The Jews understood that life was the result of the spirit coming into a person. Alternate translation: “She started breathing again” or “She came back to life” or “She became alive again” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
• spirit
• she rose up
• returned

Translation Words - UST
• spirit
• she got up
• returned to her body

ULT
55 Then her spirit returned, and she rose up immediately, and he ordered that something be given to her to eat.

UST
55 And immediately her spirit returned to her body and she got up. Jesus told them to give her something to eat.
Luke 8:56

to tell no one (ULT)
not to tell anyone else yet (UST)

This could be stated differently. Alternate translation: “not to tell anyone”

Translation Words - ULT
- ordered
- were astonished

Translation Words - UST
- told
- were amazed

ULT
56 Now her parents were astonished, but he ordered them to tell no one what had happened.

8:43 [1] Scholars are divided whether the phrase should be included here.

UST
56 And her parents were amazed, but Jesus told them not to tell anyone else yet what had happened.

8:43 [1] Scholars are divided whether the phrase [She] had spent all her money should be included here.
Luke 9

Luke 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“To preach the kingdom of God”

No one knows for sure what the words “kingdom of God” here refer to. Some say it refers to the reign of God on earth, and others say it refers to the gospel message that Jesus died to pay for the his people’s sins. It is best to translate this as “to preach about the kingdom of God” or “to teach them about how God was going to show himself as king.” (See: Metaphor)

Elijah

God had promised the Jews that the prophet Elijah would return before the Messiah came, so some people who saw Jesus do miracles thought Jesus was Elijah (Luke 9:9, Luke 9:19). However, Elijah did come to earth to speak with Jesus (Luke 9:30). (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess and Christ, Messiah and Elijah)

“Kingdom of God”

The term “kingdom of God” is used in this chapter to refer to a kingdom that was still in the future when the words were spoken. (See: kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven)

Glory

Scripture often speaks of God’s glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Luke says in this chapter that Jesus’ clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God’s Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory, glorious, glorify and fear, afraid, dread)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. An example in this chapter is: “Whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it.” (Luke 9:24).

“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 9:22). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

“Receiving”

This word appears several times in this chapter and means different things. When Jesus says, “If someone receives a little child like this in my name, he also is receiving me, and if someone receives me, he is also receiving the one who sent me” (Luke 9:48), he is speaking of people serving the child. When Luke says, “the people there did not receive him” (Luke 9:53), he means that the people did not believe in or accept Jesus. (See: believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief)
Luke 9:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus reminds his disciples not to depend on money and their things, gives them power, and then sends them out to various places.

power and authority (ULT)
the right and power (UST)

These two terms are used together to show that the twelve had both the ability and the right to heal people. Translate this phrase with a combination of words that include both of these ideas.

all the demons (ULT)
all kinds of demons (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “every demon” or 2) “every kind of demon.”

diseases (ULT)
people’s diseases (UST)

sicknesses

Translation Words - ULT

• when he had called...together
• twelve
• power
• authority
• demons
• to cure

Translation Words - UST

• Then Jesus called together
• twelve disciples
• the right
• power
• demons
• to heal
Luke 9:2

he sent them out (ULT)
He sent...them...out (UST)

“sent them to various places” or “told them to go”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• kingdom of God
• to heal
• to proclaim
• he sent...out
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God
• how...God...was going to show himself as king
• to heal
• to teach them about
• He sent...out
• how...was going to show himself as king

ULT
2 and he sent them out to proclaim the kingdom of God and to heal the sick.

UST
2 He sent them out to heal people and to teach them about how God was going to show himself as king.
Luke 9:3

Then he said to them (ULT)
Before they left, he said to them (UST)

“Jesus said to the twelve.” It may be helpful to state that this happened before they went out. Alternate translation: “Before they left, Jesus said to them”

Take nothing (ULT)
Do not take anything (UST)

“Do not take anything with you” or “Do not bring anything with you”

staff (ULT)
walking stick (UST)

large stick that people use for balance when climbing or walking on uneven ground, as well as for defense against attackers

wallet (ULT)
a traveler’s bag (UST)

a bag a traveler uses for carrying what he needs on a journey

bread (ULT)
food (UST)

This is here used as a general reference to “food.”

Translation Words - ULT

- money
- bread
- staff
- tunics

Translation Words - UST

- money
- food
- walking stick
- an…tunic
Luke 9:4

And whatever house you enter into (ULT)
Whatever house you enter (UST)

“Any house you enter”

stay there (ULT)
stay in that house (UST)

“remain there” or “temporarily live in that house as a guest”

And...you leave (ULT)
Whatever...until you leave (UST)

“until you leave that town” or “until you leave that place”

Translation Words - ULT

• house

Translation Words - UST

• house
Luke 9:5

And wherever they do not receive you, when you go out (ULT) do not welcome you, you should not continue to stay there (UST)

“Here is what you should do in any town where people do not receive you: When you leave”

shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them (ULT)
As you leave that town, shake off the dust from your feet. Do that as a warning against them for rejecting you (UST)

To “shake off the dust from your feet” was an expression of strong rejection in that culture. It showed they did not want even the dust of that town to remain on them. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• a testimony
• they...receive
• dust

Translation Words - UST

• Do that as a warning...for rejecting you
• welcome
• dust
Luke 9:6

they departed (ULT)
Then Jesus' disciples left (UST)

“they left the place where Jesus was”

healing everywhere (ULT)
Everywhere they went...healed sick people (UST)

“healing wherever they went”

Translation Words - ULT

• healing
• preaching the gospel

Translation Words - UST

• healed sick people
• they talked to people about the good news from God
Luke 9:7

General Information:
These verses interrupt to give information about Herod.

Now Herod (ULT)
Herod...heard about (UST)
This phrase marks a break in the main story line. Here Luke tells background information about Herod. (See: Background Information)

Herod the tetrarch (ULT)
Herod, the ruler over the district of Galilee (UST)
This refers to Herod Antipas, who was the ruler of one-fourth of Israel.

he was perplexed (ULT)
He was perplexed (UST)
unable to understand, confused

it was said by some (ULT)
some people were saying (UST)
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “some people said” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• tetrarch
• Herod
• John
• the dead
• had risen

Translation Words - UST

• ruler over the district of Galilee
• Herod
• John the Baptizer
• had become alive again
• had become alive again

ULT
7 Now Herod the tetrarch heard about all that was happening, and he was perplexed, because it was said by some that John had risen from the dead.

UST
7 Herod, the ruler over the district of Galilee, heard about everything that was happening. He was perplexed, because some people were saying that John the Baptizer had become alive again.
Luke 9:8

but by others that one of the ancient prophets had risen (ULT)
and still others were saying that one of the other prophets from long ago had become alive again (UST)

The word “said” is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “still others said that one of the prophets of long ago had risen” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• prophets
• Elijah
• had risen

Translation Words - UST

• prophets
• the prophet Elijah
• had become alive again

ULT
8 and by some that Elijah had appeared, but by others that one of the ancient prophets had risen.

UST
8 Other people were saying that the prophet Elijah had appeared again, and still others were saying that one of the other prophets from long ago had become alive again.
Luke 9:9

I beheaded John, but who is this (ULT)
It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man (UST)

Herod assumes that it is impossible for John to rise from the dead. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I beheaded John (ULT)
It cannot be John because I had his head cut off (UST)

Herod's soldiers would have carried out executions. Alternate translation: “I commanded my soldiers to cut off John's head” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Herod
• John
• he was trying

Translation Words - UST

• Herod
• John
• he kept looking for a way
Luke 9:10

Connecting Statement:

Though the disciples return to Jesus and they go to Bethsaida to spend time together, the crowds follow Jesus for healing and to listen to his teaching. He performs a miracle to provide bread and fish to the crowds as they return home.

Now when the apostles returned (ULT)
When the apostles returned from their trip (UST)

“apostles came back to where Jesus was”

everything they had done (ULT)
everything that they had done (UST)

This refers to the teaching and healing that they did when they went to the other cities.

Bethsaida (ULT)
of Bethsaida (UST)

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• called
• apostles
• they told
• when...returned

Translation Words - UST

• of Bethsaida
• apostles
• they told
• When...returned from their trip
Luke 9:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- kingdom of God
- he welcomed
- of healing
- he healed
- kingdom
- when...heard about this

Translation Words - UST

- God
- how...God...was soon going to show himself as king
- He welcomed
- to be healed
- he healed
- how...was soon going to show himself as king
- when...heard about where Jesus had gone

ULT

11 But when the crowds heard about this, they followed him. And he welcomed them and spoke to them about the kingdom of God, and he healed those who had need of healing.

UST

11 But when the crowds heard about where Jesus had gone, they followed him there. He welcomed them and spoke to them about how God was soon going to show himself as king, and he healed those who needed to be healed.
Luke 9:12

Now the day began to end (ULT)
Now it was getting late in the day (UST)

“the day was about to end” or it was near the end of the day”

Translation Words - ULT

- twelve
- an isolated
- day

Translation Words - UST

- twelve disciples
- this isolated
- day

ULT

12 Now the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside and may find lodging and may find food, because we are here in an isolated place.”

UST

12 Now it was getting late in the day, so the twelve disciples came to him and said, “Please send this large crowd of people away so that they can go to the surrounding villages and farms to get some food and find places to stay, since we are out here in this isolated place.”
Luke 9:13

five loaves of bread (ULT)
five...small loaves of bread (UST)

A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

two fish...unless we go and buy food for all these people (ULT)
two small fish. We could never go buy enough food for all these people (UST)

If “unless” is difficult to understand in your language, you could make a new sentence. “two fish. In order to feed all these people, we would have to go and buy food”

Translation Words - ULT

• loaves of bread
• people

Translation Words - UST

• small loaves of bread
• people
Luke 9:14

about five thousand men (ULT)
about five thousand men (UST)

“about 5,000 men.” This number does not include the women and children who might have been present. (See: Numbers)

Have them sit down (ULT)
Tell the people to sit down (UST)

“Tell them to sit down”

fifty each (ULT)
with about fifty people in each group (UST)

“50 each” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT
• disciples

Translation Words - UST
• disciples
Luke 9:15

So they did this (ULT)
So the disciples did that (UST)

“This” refers to what Jesus told them to do Luke 9:14. They told the people to sit down in groups of about fifty people.
Luke 9:16

Then taking the five loaves (ULT)
Then he took the five bread loaves (UST)

“Jesus took the five loaves of bread”

looking up to heaven (ULT)
He looked up toward heaven (UST)

This refers to looking up, toward the sky. The Jews believed that heaven was located above the sky. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he blessed them (ULT)
and praised God for them (UST)

This refers to the loaves of bread and the fish.

to set before (ULT)
for them to distribute (UST)

“to pass out to” or “to give to”

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• he blessed
• disciples
• loaves

Translation Words - UST

• heaven
• and praised God
• disciples
• bread loaves
Luke 9:17

were satisfied (ULT)
had enough to eat (UST)

This idiom means they ate enough food so they were not hungry. Alternate translation: “they had as much as they wanted to eat” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT
  • baskets

Translation Words - UST
  • baskets

ULT
17 So they all ate and were satisfied, and what was left over of them was picked up—twelve baskets of broken pieces.

UST
17 They all ate and everyone had enough to eat. Then the disciples collected the leftover pieces of food, which filled twelve baskets!
Luke 9:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus is praying, with only his disciples near him, and they begin to talk about who Jesus is. Jesus tells them that he will soon die and resurrect and urges them to follow him even if it becomes very hard to do that.

Now it came about that (ULT)
One day (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

praying by himself (ULT)
praying in private (UST)

“praying alone.” The disciples were with Jesus, but he was praying personally and privately by himself.

Translation Words - ULT

• disciples
• praying

Translation Words - UST

• disciples
• praying
Luke 9:19

John the Baptist (ULT)
John the Baptizer (UST)

It may be helpful to restate part of the question here. Alternate translation: “Some say you are John the Baptist” (See: Ellipsis)

that one of the ancient prophets has risen (ULT)
that...one of the other prophets from long ago who has come back to life again (UST)

It may be helpful to clarify how this answer relates to Jesus’ question. Alternate translation: “that you are one of the prophets from long ago and have risen” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

has risen (ULT)
who has come back to life again (UST)

“has come back to life”

Translation Words - ULT

• Baptist
• prophets
• John the Baptist
• Elijah
• has risen

Translation Words - UST

• Baptizer
• prophets
• John the Baptizer
• the prophet Elijah
• who has come back to life again
Luke 9:20

Then he said to them (ULT)
He asked them (UST)

“Then Jesus said to his disciples”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• Christ
• Peter

Translation Words - UST

• God
• Messiah
• Peter

ULT
20 Then he said to them, “But who do you say that I am?” Then Peter answered and said, “The Christ of God.”

UST
20 He asked them, “What about you? Who do you say that I am?” Peter replied, “You are the Messiah, who has come from God.”
Luke 9:21

them...to tell this to no one (ULT)
warned them strongly...to not tell that to anyone yet (UST)

“not to tell anyone” or “that they should not tell anyone.” This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: them, “Do not tell anyone.” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Translation Words - ULT
  • instructing them

Translation Words - UST
  • warned them strongly
Luke 9:22

The Son of Man...must...suffer many things (ULT)
I, the Son of Man...must...suffer many things (UST)

“People will cause the Son of Man to suffer greatly”

The Son of Man...and he will be killed (ULT)
I, the Son of Man...and kill me (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man...and I will” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes (ULT)
The elders, chief priests and teachers of the Jewish laws...will reject me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the elders, chief priests, and scribes will reject him” (See: Active or Passive)

he will be killed (ULT)
kill me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will kill him” (See: Active or Passive)

on the third day (ULT)
on the third day (UST)

“three days after he dies” or “on the third day after his death” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

be raised (ULT)
I will come back to life again (UST)

“he will...be made alive again.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will...make him alive again” or “he will...live again” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• Son of Man
• chief priests
• elders
• be raised
• suffer
• be rejected
• day

Translation Words - UST

• teachers of the Jewish laws
• Son of Man
• chief priests
• elders
• I will come back to life again
• suffer
• will reject me
• day
Luke 9:23

he said (ULT)
he said (UST)

“Jesus said”

to them all (ULT)
to them all (UST)

This refers to the disciples who were with Jesus.

to come after me (ULT)
to...as my disciple (UST)

“follow me.” Coming after Jesus represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: “be my disciple” or “be one of my disciples” (See: Metaphor)

he must deny himself (ULT)
you must not do only what you desire to do (UST)

“must not give in to his own desires” or “must forsake his own desires”

take up his cross daily and follow me (ULT)
follow me...every day you must be willing to suffer, even to the point of giving up your life (UST)

“carry his cross and follow me every day.” The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: “must obey me every day even to the point of suffering and dying” (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

follow me (ULT)
follow...me (UST)

Following Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: “obey me” (See: Metaphor)

follow me (ULT)
follow...me (UST)

“go along with me” or “begin to follow me and keep on following me”

Translation Words - ULT

• cross
• daily

Translation Words - UST

• you must be willing to suffer, even to the point of giving up your life
• day
Luke 9:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to save
- will save
- soul
- soul (2)

Translation Words - UST

- to save...for themselves
- will save...eternally
- lives
- lives (2)

ULT

24 For whoever would desire to save his soul will lose it; but whoever would lose his soul for my sake, he will save it.

UST

24 You must do that, because those who try to save their own lives for themselves will lose them eternally, but those who give up their lives because of being my disciples will save their lives eternally.
Luke 9:25

For what is a person profited…but destroying or losing himself (ULT)
How does it benefit you…but then end up losing, or even giving up, your own self (UST)

The implied answer to this question is that it is not good. Alternate translation: “It will not benefit someone at all to gain the whole world, and yet lose himself.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

having gained the whole world (ULT)
if you gain everything in this world (UST)

“to get everything in the world”

himself...destroying or losing (ULT)
your own self...end up losing, or even giving up (UST)

“ruin himself or give up his life”

Translation Words - ULT

• destroying
• world
• is...profited
• having gained

Translation Words - UST

• end up losing
• everything in this world
• it benefit
• if you gain
Luke 9:26

my words (ULT)
my...message (UST)

“what I say” or “what I teach”

of him will the Son of Man be ashamed (ULT)
I, the Son of Man will also refuse to say that they belong to me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him” (See: Active or Passive)

the Son of Man...when he comes (ULT)
the Son of Man...when I come back (UST)

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man...when I come” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

of the Father (ULT)
in the glory of the Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• angels
• holy
• glory
• Father
• Son of Man
• is ashamed
• will...be ashamed

Translation Words - UST

• angels
• holy
• glory
• of the Father
• Son of Man
• reject...and refuse to say that they belong to
• will also refuse to say that they belong to me
Luke 9:27

But I say to you truly (ULT)
But I tell you this fact (UST)

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

there are some...who are standing...who will not taste death (ULT)
Some...standing here now will not die (UST)

“some of you who are standing here will not taste death”

before they see (ULT)
until you see (UST)

Jesus was speaking to the people he was talking about. Alternate translation: “before you see” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God (ULT)
will...not...die until you see God show himself as king (UST)

This idea with “not...until” can be expressed positively with “before.” Alternate translation: “will see the kingdom of God before they die” or “will see the kingdom of God before you die”

will...taste death (ULT)
will...die (UST)

This idiom means “die” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• truly
• kingdom of God
• death
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God
• this fact
• God...show himself as king
• will...die
• show himself as king
Luke 9:28

Connecting Statement:

Eight days after Jesus tells his disciples that some would not die before they saw the kingdom of God, Jesus goes up the mountain to pray with Peter, James, and John, who all fall asleep while Jesus is changed to a dazzling appearance.

these sayings (ULT)
those words (UST)

This refers to what Jesus said to his disciples in the preceding verses.

Translation Words - ULT

• to pray
• Peter
• John
• James
• days

Translation Words - UST

• to pray there
• Peter
• John
• James
• days
Luke 9:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• was praying
• face

Translation Words - UST

• was praying
• face

ULT
29 Now it happened that as he was praying, the appearance of his face was changed, and his clothes became brilliant white.

UST
29 While he was praying, the appearance of his face became very different and his clothes became dazzling white and began to shine brightly.
Luke 9:30

behold (ULT)
Suddenly (UST)

The word “Behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: “Suddenly”

Translation Words - ULT
• Moses
• Elijah

Translation Words - UST
• Moses
• Elijah

ULT
30 And behold, two men were talking with him, who were Moses and Elijah.

UST
30 Suddenly, two prophets from long ago were there talking with Jesus; they were Moses and Elijah.
Luke 9:31

who appeared in glory (ULT)
They appeared surrounded in glory (UST)

This phrase gives information about how Moses and Elijah looked. Some languages would translate it as a separate clause. Alternate translation: “and they appeared in glorious splendor” or “and they were shining brightly” (See: Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding)

his departure (ULT)
his departure (UST)

“his leaving” or “how Jesus would leave this world.” This was a polite way of talking about his death. Alternate translation: “his death” (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

• glory
• to bring to completion
• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• glory
• accomplished
• Jerusalem

ULT
31 who appeared in glory, talking about his departure, which he was about to bring to completion in Jerusalem.

UST
31 They appeared surrounded in glory, and spoke with Jesus about his departure, which would soon be accomplished in Jerusalem.
Luke 9:32

Now (ULT)
Peter (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke tells information about Peter, James, and John. (See: Background Information)

were heavy with sleep (ULT)
very sleepy (UST)

This idiom means “very sleepy.”

they saw his glory (ULT)
they saw...Jesus’ glory (UST)

This refers to the brilliant light that surrounded them. Alternate translation: “they saw brilliant light coming from Jesus” or “they saw very bright light coming out of Jesus”

the two men who were standing with him

This refers to Moses and Elijah.

Translation Words - ULT

• glory
• Peter
• were heavy
• with sleep

Translation Words - UST

• glory
• Peter
• very
• sleepy
Luke 9:33

as they were going away (ULT)
As...Moses and Elijah were starting to leave (UST)

“As Moses and Elijah were going away”

shelters (ULT)
shelters (UST)

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Master
- good
- shelters
- for Moses
- Peter
- for Elijah
- He did...know

Translation Words - UST

- him
- Master
- good
- shelters
- for Moses
- Peter
- for Elijah
- he really...realize

ULT
33 Then it happened that as they were going away from him, Peter said to Jesus, "Master, it is good for us to be here. Now let us make three shelters, one for you, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah." (He did not know what he was saying.)

UST
33 As Moses and Elijah were starting to leave Jesus, Peter said to him, “Master, it is good for us to be here! We should make three shelters, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah!” But he really did not realize what he was saying.
Luke 9:34

But as he was saying this (ULT)
As he was saying these things (UST)

“While Peter was saying these things”

they were afraid (ULT)
The disciples were afraid (UST)

These adult disciples were not afraid of clouds. This phrase indicates that some kind of unusual fear came over them with the cloud. Alternate translation: “they were terrified” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they...entered...into the cloud (ULT)
the cloud...surrounded...them (UST)

This can be expressed in terms of what the cloud did. Alternate translation: “the cloud surrounded them”

Translation Words - ULT

• they were afraid

Translation Words - UST

• The disciples were afraid
Luke 9:35

Then a voice came out of the cloud (ULT)  
God’s voice spoke to them from the cloud (UST)

It is understood that the voice could only have belonged to God. Alternate translation: “God spoke to them from the cloud” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Son (ULT)  
Son (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

the one who is chosen (ULT)  
whom I have chosen (UST)

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: “the one I have chosen” or “I have chosen him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT  
- my...Son  
- is chosen  
- a voice

Translation Words - UST  
- my...Son  
- I have chosen  
- God's voice
Luke 9:36

So they kept silent...of what they had seen (ULT)
They were silent...what they had seen (UST)

This is information that tells what happened after the story as a result of the events in the story itself. (See: End of Story)

kept silent...told no one (ULT)
were silent...tell anyone (UST)

The first phrase refers to their immediate response, and the second refers to what they did in the following days.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• voice
• told
• days

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus was there
• voice
• tell
• a long time they

ULT
36 Now when the voice had spoken, Jesus was found alone. So they kept silent and told no one in those days anything of what they had seen.

UST
36 When the voice had finished speaking, the three disciples saw that only Jesus was there. They were silent and for a long time they did not tell anyone what they had seen.
Luke 9:37

Connecting Statement:
The next day after Jesus’ dazzling appearance, Jesus heals a demon-possessed boy that the disciples were unable to make better.

Translation Words - UST
- day

Translation Words - ULT
- day

ULT
37 Now it happened that on the next day, when they came down from the mountain, a large crowd met him.

UST
37 The next day, when they had come down from the mountain, a large crowd of people met Jesus.
Luke 9:38

Then see, a man from the crowd (ULT)
Suddenly a man from the crowd (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to the new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. English uses “There was a man in the crowd who” (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• only begotten child
• I beg
• cried out
• Teacher

Translation Words - UST

• son
• only child
• Teacher, I plead with
• called out
• Teacher, I plead with

ULT

38 Then see, a man from the crowd cried out, saying, “Teacher, I beg you to look at my son, for he is my only begotten child.

UST

38 Suddenly a man from the crowd called out, “Teacher, I plead with you, do something to help my son! He is my only child.”
Luke 9:39

Now see, a spirit (ULT)
An evil spirit (UST)

The phrase “You see” introduces us to the evil spirit in the man’s story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: “There is an evil spirit that” (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

and foaming at the mouth (ULT)
to foam at the mouth (UST)

“foam comes out of his mouth.” When a person has a seizure, they can have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to form around their mouths.

Translation Words - ULT

• a spirit
• he...screams

Translation Words - UST

• An evil spirit
• causes him to scream

ULT
39 Now see, a spirit takes control over him and he suddenly screams, and it causes him to have convulsions and foaming at the mouth. And it departs from him with difficulty, bruising him badly.

UST
39 An evil spirit suddenly seizes him and causes him to scream. It shakes him violently and causes him to foam at the mouth. It hardly ever leaves my child and when it does, it injures him severely.
Luke 9:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• they could
• disciples
• force...out
• I begged

Translation Words - UST

• they were...able to do it
• disciples
• command...to come out of him
• I pleaded with

ULT

40 And I begged your disciples to force it out, but they could not.”

UST

40 I pleaded with your disciples to command the evil spirit to come out of him, but they were not able to do it!”
Luke 9:41

Then Jesus answered and said (ULT)
In response, Jesus said (UST)

“Jesus answered by saying”

You unbelieving and depraved generation (ULT)
This generation of people does not believe and so your thinking is corrupt (UST)

Jesus said this to the crowd that had gathered, and not to his disciples.

generation...depraved (ULT)
This generation of people...your thinking is corrupt (UST)

“corrupt generation”

how long must I be with you and put up with you (ULT)
How much longer must I be with you before you believe (UST)

Here “you” is plural. Jesus uses these questions to express his sadness that the people did not believe. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: “I have been with you so long, yet you do not believe. I wonder how long I must put up with you.” (See: Forms of You and Rhetorical Question)

Bring your son here (ULT)
Then he said to the boy’s father, “Bring your son here to me (UST)

Here “your” is singular. Jesus is speaking directly to the father who addressed him. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• son
• does not believe
• your thinking is corrupt
• you before you believe
• This generation of people
Luke 9:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- unclean
- spirit
- demon
- unclean spirit
- father
- healed
- rebuked

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- evil
- spirit
- demon
- evil spirit
- father
- healed
- rebuked

ULT

42 While the boy was coming, the demon threw him to the ground and shook him with convulsions. But Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit and healed the boy, and gave him back to his father.

UST

42 While they were bringing the boy to him, the demon threw the boy down to the ground, and shook him severely. But Jesus rebuked the evil spirit and healed the boy. Then he returned him to his father.
Luke 9:43

Then they were all amazed at the greatness of God (ULT)
Then all the people there were completely amazed at the great power of God (UST)

Jesus performed the miracle, but the crowd recognized that God was the power behind the healing.

everything that he was doing (ULT)
all the miracles Jesus was doing (UST)

“everything Jesus was doing”

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• disciples
• greatness
• they were...amazed
• while...were marveling

Translation Words - UST

• God
• disciples
• great power
• the people there were completely amazed
• in wonderment
Luke 9:44

Let these words go deeply into your ears (ULT)
Listen carefully to what I am about to tell you (UST)

This is an idiom that means they should pay attention. Alternate translation: “Listen carefully and remember” or “Do not forget this” (See: Idiom)

For the Son of Man is going to be betrayed into the hands of men (ULT)
Someone will soon hand over me, the Son of Man, to my enemies (UST)

This can be stated with an active clause. Here “hands” refers to power or control. Alternate translation: “they will betray the Son of Man and put him in the control of men” (See: Active or Passive and Metonymy)

For the Son of Man is going to be betrayed into the hands of men (ULT)
Someone will soon hand over me, the Son of Man, to my enemies (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. The word “hands” is a synecdoche for the people whose hands they are or a metonym for the power that uses those hands. You may need to make explicit who these men are. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men” or “The Son of Man will be betrayed into the power of his enemies” or “I, the Son of Man will be betrayed to my enemies” (See: First, Second or Third Person and Synecdoche and Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Son of Man
- the hands
- to be betrayed

Translation Words - UST

- Son of Man
- my enemies
- hand over
Luke 9:45

**ULT**

for it was hidden from them (ULT)
God prevented them from understanding it (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God hid the meaning from them” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- they were afraid
- did not understand
- they could...understand

**Translation Words - UST**

- they were afraid
- did not understand
- they would...know

**ULT**

45 But they **did not understand** this statement, for it was hidden from them, so they **could not understand** it, and yet they **were afraid** to ask him about this statement.

**UST**

45 But the disciples **did not understand** what he meant by this. God prevented them from understanding it, so that they **would not know** yet what he meant, and they **were afraid** to ask him about what he had said.
Luke 9:46

General Information:
The disciples begin to argue about who will be the most powerful among them.

among them (ULT)
among themselves about (UST)
“among the disciples”

ULT
46 Then an argument started among them as to which of them would be the greatest.

UST
46 Some time later, the disciples began to argue among themselves about which one of them would be the most important.
Luke 9:47

knowing the reasoning in their hearts (ULT)
know what they were thinking, so (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for their minds. Alternate translation: “knowing the reasoning in their minds” or “knowing what they were thinking” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- Jesus
- hearts
- a little child
- knowing

Translation Words - UST
- Jesus
- were thinking, so
- a young child to stand
- knew

ULT
47 But Jesus, knowing the reasoning in their hearts, took a little child, put him by his side,

UST
47 But Jesus knew what they were thinking, so he brought a young child to stand beside him.
and said to them, “Whoever welcomes this child in my name, welcomes me; and whoever welcomes me, welcomes the one who sent me. For the one who is least among you all, he is great.”

He said to them, “If someone welcomes a little child like this because of me, it is the same as welcoming me. And if someone welcomes me, it is the same as welcoming God, who sent me. Remember that those among you who seem to be the least important are the ones whom God considers to be most important.”

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- child
- welcomes
- welcomes
- welcomes (2)
- welcomes (2)
- sent

Translation Words - UST

- me
- a little child
- welcomes
- welcoming
- welcomes (2)
- it is the same as welcoming (2)
- sent
Luke 9:49

answered...John (ULT)
replied...John (UST)

“In reply, John said” or “John replied to Jesus.” John was responding to what Jesus had said about being the greatest. He was not answering a question.

we saw (ULT)
we saw (UST)

John speaks of himself but not Jesus, so “we” here is exclusive. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

in your name (ULT)
was using your name (UST)

This means the person was speaking with the power and authority of Jesus. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Master
• name
• demons
• John
• forcing out

Translation Words - UST

• Master
• was using...name
• demons
• John
• to command...to come out of people
Do not stop him (ULT)
Do not stop him from doing that (UST)

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “Allow him to continue”

whoever is not against you is for you

Some modern languages have sayings that mean the same thing. Alternate translation: “if a person does not keep you from working, it is as if he were helping you” or “if someone is not working against you, he is working with you”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
Luke 9:51

General Information:

It is now obvious that Jesus has decided to go to Jerusalem.

the days drew near for him to be taken up (ULT)
getting close to the day when God would take him back up to heaven (UST)

“When the time was coming for him to go up” or “When it was almost time for him to go up”

set his face (ULT)
firmly resolved (UST)

This idiom means he “firmly decided.” Alternate translation: “made up his mind” or “decided” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jerusalem
• face
• days

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem
• firmly resolved
• day
Luke 9:52

to prepare things for him (ULT)
to prepare for him to go there (UST)

This means to make arrangements for his arrival there, possibly including a place to speak, a place to stay, and food.

Translation Words - ULT
- Samaritan
- messengers
- he sent
- on ahead
- to prepare things

Translation Words - UST
- in the region of Samaria
- some messengers
- He sent
- to go ahead
- to prepare

ULT
52 Then he sent messengers on ahead of him, and they went and entered into a Samaritan village to prepare things for him.

UST
52 He sent some messengers to go ahead of him, and they entered a village in the region of Samaria to prepare for him to go there.
Luke 9:53

they did not welcome him (ULT)
the Samaritans would not let Jesus come to their village (UST)

“did not want him to stay”

because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem (ULT)
because he was on his way to Jerusalem (UST)

The Samaritans and the Jews hated each other. Therefore the Samaritans would not help Jesus on his journey to Jerusalem, the Jewish capital. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jerusalem
• they...welcome
• face

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem
• the Samaritans would...let...come to their village
• on his way

ULT
53 But they did not welcome him, because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem.

UST
53 But the Samaritans would not let Jesus come to their village because he was on his way to Jerusalem.
Luke 9:54

when...saw this (ULT)
heard that (UST)

“saw that the Samaritans did not receive Jesus”

us to command fire to come down from heaven and consume them (ULT)
us to ask God to send fire down from heaven to destroy those people (UST)

James and John suggested this method of judgment because they knew that this was how the prophets such as Elijah had judged people who rejected God. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• Lord
• disciples
• John
• James
• fire
• consume

Translation Words - UST

• heaven
• Lord
• disciples
• John
• James
• fire
• destroy

ULT

54 Now when the disciples James and John saw this, they said, "Lord, do you want us to command fire to come down from heaven and consume them?"

UST

54 When two of his disciples James and John, heard that, they said, "Lord, do you want us to ask God to send fire down from heaven to destroy those people?"
Luke 9:55

he turned...and rebuked them (ULT)
Jesus turned...to them and sternly told them they were wrong to say that (UST)

“Jesus turned and rebuked James and John.” Jesus did not condemn the Samaritans as the disciples expected.

Translation Words - ULT

• he turned
• and rebuked

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus turned
• to them and sternly told...they were wrong to say that

ULT
55 But he turned and rebuked them,

UST
55 But Jesus turned to them and sternly told them they were wrong to say that.
Luke 9:56

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT 56 and they went on to another village.

UST 56 So they went to a different village.
Luke 9:57

someone (ULT)
someone (UST)

This was not one of the disciples.

ULT
57 Now as they were going along the road, someone said to him, “I will follow you wherever you go.”

UST
57 As Jesus and the disciples were walking along the road, someone said to him, “I will go with you wherever you go!”
Luke 9:58

The foxes have holes...does not have anywhere he might lay his head (ULT)
Foxes have holes in the ground to live in...do not have a home to sleep in (UST)

Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being Jesus’ disciple. Jesus implies that if the man were to follow him, that man too might not have a home. Alternate translation: “Foxes have holes...nowhere to lay his head. So do not expect that you will have a home” (See: Proverbs and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The foxes (ULT)
Foxes (UST)

These are land animals similar to small dogs. They sleep in a den or a burrow in the ground.

the birds in the sky (ULT)
birds (UST)

“birds that fly in the air”

the...Son of Man...his head (ULT)
I, the...Son of Man...to sleep in (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man, have...my head” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

does not have anywhere he might lay his head (ULT)
do not have a home to sleep in (UST)

“nowhere to rest my head” or “nowhere to sleep.” Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that he has no permanent home and that people did not often invite him to stay with them. (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

• sky
• Jesus
• Son of Man
• head

Translation Words - UST

• birds
• Jesus
• Son of Man
• to sleep in
Luke 9:59

**Connecting Statement:**

Jesus continues to talk with the people along the road.

**Follow me (ULT)**

Follow me (UST)

By saying this Jesus is asking the person to become his disciple and to go with him.

me...first permit...to go and bury my father (ULT)
me...let...first go home and bury my father after he dies (UST)

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

me...first permit...to go (ULT)
me...let...first go home (UST)

“before I do that, let me go”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- father
- and bury

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- father
- and bury...after he dies
Luke 9:60

Let the dead bury their own dead (ULT)
Let the dead bury their own dead (UST)

Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of “the dead” are 1) it is a metaphor for those who will soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus. (See: Metaphor)

the dead (ULT)
the dead (UST)

This refers to dead people in general. Alternate translation: “the dead people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- kingdom of God
- bury
- dead
- and proclaim

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God...will soon show himself as king
- bury
- dead
- will soon show himself as king
- and tell people everywhere that
Luke 9:61

I will follow you (ULT)
I will come with you and be your disciple (UST)

“I will join you as a disciple” or “I am ready to follow you”

first...permit me to say goodbye to those in my home (ULT)
first...let me go home to say goodbye to my people (UST)

“before I do that, let me tell my people at my home that I am leaving”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• home

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• my people
Luke 9:62

No one...is fit for the kingdom of God (ULT)  
Anyone...not...is...able to serve God when he rules everything as king (UST)

Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being his disciple. Jesus means that a person is not suitable for the kingdom to God if he focuses on people in his past instead of following Jesus. (See: Proverbs and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

No one, having put his hand on a plow (ULT)  
Anyone who starts plowing his field...not (UST)

Here “puts his hand to” something is an idiom that means the person starts to do something. Alternate translation: “No one who starts to plow his field” (See: Idiom and Translate Unknowns)

looking back (ULT)  
looks behind him (UST)

Anyone who is looking back while plowing cannot guide the plow where it needs to go. That person must focus on looking forward in order to plow well.

is fit for the kingdom of God (ULT)  
is...able to serve God when he rules everything as king (UST)

“useful for the kingdom of God” or “suitable for the kingdom of God”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- God
- kingdom of God
- hand
- a plow
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- he
- when...he...rules everything as king
- who starts
- plowing his field
- when...rules everything as king
Luke 10

Luke 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to get the food they have planted so they can bring it to their houses and eat it. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about Jesus so those people can be part of God's kingdom. (See: faith)

Neighbor

A neighbor is anyone who lives nearby. The Jews helped their Jewish neighbors who needed help, and they expected their Jewish neighbors to help them. Jesus wanted them to understand that people who were not Jews were also their neighbors, so he told them a parable (Luke 10:29-36). (See: Parables)
Luke 10:1

General Information:

Jesus sends out 70 more people ahead of him. Those 70 return with joy, and Jesus responds with praise to his heavenly Father.

Now (ULT)
After that (UST)

This word is used here to mark a new event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

seventy (ULT)
seventy (UST)

“70.” Some versions say “seventy-two” or “72.” You may want to include a footnote that says that. (See: Numbers)

two...sent them out two by two (ULT)
two...He prepared to send...them out in (UST)

“sent them out in groups of two” or “sent them out with two people in each group”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• appointed
• sent...out
• ahead

Translation Words - UST

• Lord Jesus
• appointed...to go preach
• He prepared to send
• to go ahead
Luke 10:2

He said to them (ULT)
He said to them (UST)

This was before the men actually went out. Alternate translation: “He had said to them” or “Before they went out he told them” (See: Order of Events)

The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few (ULT)
The harvest is certainly plentiful, but the workers are few (UST)

“There is a big crop, but not enough workers to bring it in.” Jesus means there are many people ready to enter God's kingdom, but there are not enough disciples to go teach and help the people. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- laborers are
- laborers
- he would send out
- harvest is
- harvest
- harvest

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- workers
- more workers
- to send
- harvest is certainly
- harvest
- to reap...harvest

ULT

2 He said to them, “The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few. Therefore ask the Lord of the harvest that he would send out laborers into his harvest.”

UST

2 He said to them, “The harvest is certainly plentiful, but the workers are few. So pray to the Lord of the harvest and plead with him to send more workers to reap his harvest.”
Luke 10:3

Go on your way (ULT)
Go (UST)

“Go to the cities” or “Go to the people”

I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves (ULT)
I am sending you out to tell my message to people who will try to get rid of you. You will be like lambs among wolves (UST)

Wolves attack and kill sheep. This metaphor therefore means that there are people who would attempt to harm the disciples that Jesus is sending out. The names of other animals could be substituted. Alternate translation: “when I send you out, people will want to harm you, as wolves attack sheep” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- lambs
- I send...out
- as
- of wolves

Translation Words - UST

- lambs
- I am sending...out to tell my message to people who will try to get rid of you
- You will be like
- wolves
Luke 10:4

Do not carry a money bag, nor a traveler’s bag, nor sandals

“Do not take with you a bag, a traveler’s bag, or sandals”

greet no one on the road (ULT)
Do not...stop to greet people along the way (UST)

“do not greet anyone on the road.” Jesus was emphasizing that they should go quickly to the towns and do this work. He was not telling them to be rude.

Translation Words - ULT

- sandals
- carry

Translation Words - UST

- take extra shoes
- take along

ULT
4 Do not carry a money bag, nor a traveler’s bag, nor sandals, and greet no one on the road.

UST
4 Do not take along any money. Do not take a traveler’s bag. Do not take extra shoes. Do not stop to greet people along the way.
Luke 10:5

Peace be to this house (ULT)
May God give peace to you who are in this house (UST)

This was both a greeting and a blessing. Here “house” refers to those who live in the house. Alternate translation: “May the people in this household receive peace” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Peace be
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- May God give peace
- a house
- who are in...house

ULT
5 Whatever house you enter into, first say, ‘Peace be to this house!’

UST
5 Whenever you enter a house, first say to those people, ‘May God give peace to you who are in this house!’
Luke 10:6

**ULT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Sense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a son of peace</td>
<td>“a peaceful person.” This is a person who wants peace with God and with people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>are desiring to have God’s peace</td>
<td>your peace will rest upon him</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**UST**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Sense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>are desiring to have God’s peace</td>
<td>they will experience the peace that you are offering them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here “peace” is described as a living thing that can choose where to stay. Alternate translation: “he will have the peace you blessed him with” (See: Personification)

**ULT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Sense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>if...not</td>
<td>If the people who live there are not desiring to have God’s peace</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It may be helpful to restate the entire phrase. Alternate translation: “if there is no person of peace there” or “if the owner of the house is not a peaceful person” (See: Ellipsis)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Translation</th>
<th>Sense</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>it will return to you</td>
<td>are not desiring to have God’s peace...you will experience God’s inner peace, but they will not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Here “peace” is described as a living thing that can choose to leave. Alternate translation: “you will have that peace” or “he will not receive the peace you blessed him with” (See: Personification)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- a son
- of peace
- peace
- it will return

**Translation Words - UST**

- are desiring to have God’s peace
- are desiring to have God’s peace
- peace
- will experience God’s inner peace, but they will not
Luke 10:7

Now remain in that house (ULT)
Stay in that same house until you leave that village (UST)

Jesus was not saying that they should stay in the house all day, but that they should sleep at the same house every night they were there. Alternate translation: “Continue to sleep at that house”

for the laborer is worthy of his wages (ULT)
because a worker deserves to receive payment for his work (UST)

This is a general principle that Jesus was applying to the men he was sending out. Since they would be teaching and healing the people, the people should provide them with a place to stay and with food.

Do not move around from house to house (ULT)
Do not move around from one house to another (UST)

Moving around from house to house means going to different houses. It can be made clear that he was talking about staying overnight at different houses. “Do not go sleep at a different house each night” (See: Idiom and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• is worthy
• laborer
• house
• house
• house

Translation Words - UST

• deserves
• a worker
• house
• one house
• another
Luke 10:8

And...they receive you (ULT)
Whenever you...the people there welcome you (UST)

“if they welcome you”

eat what is set before you (ULT)
eat whatever food they provide for you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “eat whatever food they give you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
- they receive

Translation Words - UST
- the people there welcome
Luke 10:9

the...sick (ULT)
the...people...who are sick (UST)

This refers to sick people in general. Alternate translation: “the sick people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

The kingdom of God has come close to you (ULT)

The abstract noun “kingdom” can be expressed with the verbs “reign” or “rule.” Possible meanings are 1) the kingdom of God will begin soon. Alternate translation: “God will soon rule everywhere as king” or 2) the activities of kingdom of God are happening all around you. Alternate translation: “The proof that God is reigning is all around you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• kingdom of God
• heal
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God
• God...rule...as king
• Heal
• rule...as king
Luke 10:10

and they do not receive you (ULT)
do not welcome you (UST)

“if the people of the city reject you”

Translation Words - ULT
• they do...receive

Translation Words - UST
• welcome

ULT
10 Now into whatever town you might enter, and they do not receive you, go out into its streets and say,

UST
10 But if you enter a town whose people do not welcome you, go into its main streets and say,
Luke 10:11

Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you (ULT)
As a warning against you, we will wipe off even the dust that sticks to our feet as we are leaving your town (UST)

This is a symbolic action to show that they reject the people of the city. Alternate translation: “Just as you rejected us, we thoroughly reject you. We even reject the dust from your town that clings to our feet” (See: Symbolic Action)

we wipe off (ULT)
we will wipe off (UST)

Since Jesus was sending these people out in groups of two, it would be two people saying this. So languages that have a dual form of “we” would use it. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

But know this, that the kingdom of God has come near (ULT)
Yet be sure of this; God will soon rule everything as king (UST)

The phrase “But know this” introduces a warning. It means “Even though you reject us, it does not change the fact that the kingdom of God is near!”

the kingdom of God has come near (ULT)
God...will soon rule everything...as king (UST)

The abstract noun “kingdom” can be expressed with the verbs “reign” or “rule.” See how you translated a similar sentence in Luke 10:8. Alternate translation: “God will soon rule everywhere as king” or “The proof that God is reigning is all around you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• kingdom of God
• dust
• kingdom
• know

Translation Words - UST

• God
• God...as king
• dust
• as king
• be sure
Luke 10:12

I say to you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

Jesus was saying this to the 70 people he was sending out. He said this to show that he was about to say something very important.

that day (ULT)
the final day when God judges everyone (UST)

The disciples would have understood that this refers to the time of final judgment of sinners. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for Sodom...it will be more tolerable...than for that town (ULT)
the wicked people who lived long ago in the city of Sodom...the people of that town will be punished even more severely than (UST)

“God will not judge Sodom as severely as he will judge that town.” Alternate translation: “God will judge the people of that town more severely than he will judge the people of Sodom” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• day
• for Sodom

Translation Words - UST

• the final day when God judges everyone
• the wicked people who lived long ago in the city of Sodom
• day when God judges everyone
Luke 10:13

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida (ULT)
How terrible it will be for you people who live in the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida (UST)

Jesus speaks as if the people of the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida are there listening to him, but they are not. (See: Apostrophe and How to Translate Names and Metonymy)

For if the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon (ULT)
because you refuse to repent! If I had performed in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon the miracles that I performed for you (UST)

Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past but did not. Alternate translation: “If someone had performed the miracles for the people of Tyre and Sidon that I performed for you” (See: Hypothetical Situations and Active or Passive)

long ago...they would have repented...sitting (ULT)
lon ago...wearing coarse cloth...the wicked people who lived there would...have shown that they were sorry for their sins by sitting on the ground (UST)

“the wicked people who lived there would have shown that they were sorry for their sins by sitting”

in...and...sitting...sackcloth...ashes (ULT)
in...and...by sitting on the ground...wearing coarse cloth...putting ashes on their heads (UST)

“wearing sackcloth and sitting in ashes”

Translation Words - ULT

- mighty works
- Woe
- Woe (2)
- they would have repented
- Sidon
- Tyre
- sackcloth
- ashes

Translation Words - UST

- miracles
- How terrible it will be
- and (2)
- the wicked people who lived there would...have shown that they were sorry for their sins
- Sidon
- the ancient cities of Tyre

ULT

13 Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago, sitting in sackcloth and ashes.

UST

13 How terrible it will be for you people who live in the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida, because you refuse to repent! If I had performed in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon the miracles that I performed for you, the wicked people who lived there would long ago have shown that they were sorry for their sins by sitting on the ground wearing coarse cloth and putting ashes on their heads.
• wearing coarse cloth
• putting ashes on their heads
Luke 10:14

But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you (ULT)
So on the final day when God judges everyone, he will punish you more severely than the wicked people who lived in Tyre and Sidon because you did not repent and believe in me even though you saw me do miracles (UST)

It may be helpful to clearly state the reason for their judgment. Alternate translation: “But because you did not repent and believe in me even though you saw me do miracles, God will judge you more severely than he will judge the people of Tyre and Sidon” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Metonymy)

at the judgment (ULT)
on the final day when God judges everyone (UST)

“on that final day when God judges everyone”

Translation Words - ULT

• judgment
• Sidon
• for Tyre

Translation Words - UST

• final day when God judges everyone
• Sidon
• the wicked people who lived in Tyre
Luke 10:15

you, Capernaum (ULT)
to you people who live in the town of Capernaum (UST)

Jesus now speaks to the people in the city of Capernaum as if they are listening to him, but they are not. (See: Apostrophe and Metonymy)

you will not be exalted to heaven, will you (ULT)
Do you think God will honor you up in heaven (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. Alternate translation: “you will certainly not go up to heaven!” or “God will not honor you!” (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

you will...be exalted to heaven (ULT)
God will honor you up in heaven (UST)

This expression means “greatly exalted.”

You will be brought down...Hades (ULT)
God will bring you...to the place of the dead (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will go down to Hades” or “God will send you to Hades” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• Hades
• you will...be exalted
• Capernaum

Translation Words - UST

• in heaven
• place of the dead
• God will honor you
• in the town of Capernaum
Luke 10:16

The one who listens to you listens to me (ULT)
Jesus also said to the disciples, “Whoever listens to your message is listening to...me (UST)

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: “When someone listens to you, it is as if they were listening to me” (See: Simile)

The one who...rejects you rejects me (ULT)
Jesus also said to the disciples, “Whoever...me...rejects your message is rejecting (UST)

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: “when someone rejects you, it is as if they were rejecting me” (See: Simile)

the one who...rejects me rejects the one who sent me (ULT)
whoever...rejects me is rejecting God, the one who sent me (UST)

The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile. Alternate translation: “when someone rejects me, it is as if they were rejecting the one who sent me” (See: Simile)

the one who sent me (ULT)
God, the one who sent me (UST)

This refers to God the Father, who appointed Jesus for this special task. Alternate translation: “God, who sent me” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- sent
- rejects
- rejects
- rejects (2)
- rejects (2)

Translation Words - UST

- sent
- rejects
- is rejecting
- rejects (2)
- is rejecting (2)
Luke 10:17

Then the seventy...returned (ULT)
The seventy-two people whom Jesus appointed went and did as he told them to. When they returned (UST)

Some languages will need to say that the seventy actually went out first as the UST does. This is implicit information that can be made explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

seventy (ULT)
they (UST)

You may want to add a footnote: “Some versions have ‘72’ instead of ‘70.’” (See: Numbers)

in your name (ULT)
by your authority (UST)

Here “name” refers to Jesus’ power and authority. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- name
- demons
- joy
- are subject
- returned

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- authority
- demons
- they were very joyful
- obeyed...when...we commanded them to leave people
- When...returned
Luke 10:18

I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning (ULT)
While you were away doing that, I saw Satan fall from heaven as suddenly and quickly as lightning strikes (UST)

Jesus used a simile to compare how God was defeating Satan when his 70 disciples were preaching in the towns to the way lightning strikes. (See: Simile)

fall from heaven as lightning (ULT)
fall from heaven as suddenly and quickly as lightning strikes (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) fell as quickly as lightning strikes, or 2) fell down from heaven as lightning strikes downward. Since both meaning are possible, it may be best to keep the image.

Translation Words - ULT
• heaven
• Satan
• as

Translation Words - UST
• heaven
• Satan
• as
Luke 10:19

authority to tread on serpents and scorpions (ULT)

authority to trample on snakes and crush scorpions.” Possible meanings are 1) snakes and scorpions are a metaphor for evil spirits. Alternate translation: “the right to defeat evil spirits” or 2) this refers to actual snakes and scorpions. (See: Metaphor)

to tread on serpents and scorpions (ULT)

This implies that they would do this and not be injured. Alternate translation: “walk on snakes and scorpions and they will not hurt you” (See: Ellipsis)

scorpions (ULT)

Scorpions are small animals with two claws and a poisonous stinger on their tail.

over all the power of the enemy (ULT)

to be stronger than our enemy, Satan (UST)

“I have given you authority to crush the power of the enemy” or “I have given you authority to defeat the enemy.” The enemy is Satan. (See: Ellipsis and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- power
- authority
- enemy
- serpents

Translation Words - UST

- to be stronger than
- right
- our enemy, Satan
- serpent, snake, viper
Luke 10:20

do not rejoice in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice that your names are written in heaven (ULT)
as you rejoice that evil spirits obey you, you should rejoice even more that God has written your names in heaven, because you will be with God forever (UST)

This is an exaggeration to show that the thing they should rejoice about most is that their names are written in heaven. “do not rejoice only because the spirits submit to you” can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “rejoice that your names are written in heaven even more than you rejoice that the spirits submit to you” (See: Hyperbole)

your names are written in heaven (ULT)
God has written your names in heaven, because you will be with God forever (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has written your names in heaven” or “your names are on the list of people who are citizens of heaven” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- spirits
- names
- rejoice
- rejoice (2)
- submit

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, because you will be with God forever
- evil spirits
- names
- as you rejoice
- you should rejoice even more (2)
- obey
Luke 10:21

Father (ULT)
Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Lord of heaven and earth (ULT)
you are Lord over everything in heaven and on earth (UST)

“heaven” and “earth” represent everything that exists. Alternate translation: “Master over everyone and everything in heaven and earth” (See: Merism)

these things (ULT)
these things (UST)

This refers to Jesus’ previous teaching about the authority of the disciples. It may be best to simply say “these things” and let the reader determine the meaning.

the wise and understanding (ULT)
Some people think that they are wise because they are well educated (UST)

The words “wise” and “understanding” are nominal adjectives that refer to people with these qualities. Because God had concealed truth from them, these people were not actually wise and understanding, even though they thought they were. Alternate translation: “from people who think they are wise and have understanding” (See: Irony and Nominal Adjectives)

to little children (ULT)
to people who accept your truth as readily as little children do (UST)

This refers to those who may not have much education but who are willing to accept Jesus’ teachings in the same way that little children willingly listen to those they trust. Alternate translation: “people who may have little education, but who listen to God as little children do” (See: Ellipsis and Simile)

because...so it was well pleasing in your sight (ULT)
that...you have done that...it pleased you to do so (UST)

“for it pleased you to do this”

Translation Words - ULT

- revealed
- heaven
- Lord
- Holy
- Holy Spirit
- the wise
- Father
Father to little children he rejoiced greatly I praise earth understanding time

Translation Words - UST

you have revealed heaven you are Lord over everything Holy Holy Spirit Some people think that they are wise because they are Father Father to people who accept your truth as readily as little children do Jesus was filled with great joy But I praise earth well educated Right then
Luke 10:22

All things have been committed to me from my Father (ULT)
God, my Father, has given everything to me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “My Father has handed everything over to me” (See: Active or Passive)

Father...the Son (ULT)
God...Father...his Son (UST)

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

knows who the Son is (ULT)
really knows me...his Son (UST)

The word that is translated as “knows” means to know from personal experience. God the Father knows Jesus in this way.

the Son (ULT)
his Son (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. (See: First, Second or Third Person)

the...except...Father (ULT)
Only...Father...his (UST)

This means only the Father knows who the Son is.

who the...is...Father (ULT)
really knows me...his...Father (UST)

The word that is translated as “knows” means to know from personal experience. Jesus knows God his Father in this way.

the Son...except (ULT)
Only...his Son (UST)

This means only the Son knows who the Father is.

the Son...to whomever...chooses to reveal him (ULT)
his Son...those people to whom...choose to reveal him really know him (UST)

“whoever the Son desires to show the Father to”

Translation Words - ULT

- to reveal him
- Son
- Son (2)
Son
Father
Father
Father
knows

Translation Words - UST

• to reveal him really know him
• Son
• Son (2)
• I (3)
• God...Father
• Father
• Father
• really knows me
Luke 10:23

Then he turned around to the disciples...privately (ULT)
Then when his disciples were alone with him, he turned toward them (UST)

The word “privately” indicates that he was alone with his disciples. Alternate translation: “Later, when he was alone with his disciples, he turned to them and said” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Blessed are the eyes that see what you see (ULT)
God has given you a great gift by letting you see the things that I have done (UST)

This probably refers to the good works and miracles that Jesus was doing. Alternate translation: “How good it is for those who see the things that you see me doing” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
- Blessed are
- disciples
- he turned around

Translation Words - UST
- God has given you a great gift
- disciples
- he turned
Luke 10:24

and did not see them (ULT)
but they could not, because those things did not happen then (UST)

This implies that Jesus was not yet doing those things. Alternate translation: “but could not see them because I was not doing them yet” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

what you hear (ULT)
the things that you have been hearing me say (UST)

This probably refers to the teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: “the things that you have heard me say” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and did not hear them (ULT)
but I had not yet revealed those things at that time (UST)

This implies that Jesus was not yet teaching. Alternate translation: “but could not hear them because I had not yet started to teach” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- kings

Translation Words - UST

- prophets
- kings who lived long ago
Luke 10:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus replies with a story to an expert in the Jewish law who wants to test Jesus. (See: Parables)

Now see, a certain expert in the Jewish law (ULT)
One day as Jesus was teaching people, a certain teacher of Jewish laws was there (UST)

This alerts us to a new event and a new person in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event and Introduction of New and Old Participants)

to test him (ULT)
He wanted to test Jesus by asking him a difficult question (UST)

“challenge Jesus”

to inherit (ULT)
in order to live with God forever (UST)

“so that God will give me”

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• eternal
• to inherit
• to test
• a...expert in the Jewish law
• stood up
• Teacher

Translation Words - UST

• in order to live with God forever
• in order to live with God forever
• in order to live with God forever
• He wanted to test...by asking him a difficult question
• a...teacher of Jewish laws
• So he stood up
• Teacher
Luke 10:26

What is written in the law? How do you read it (ULT)
You have read what Moses has written in the laws that
God gave him. What do the laws say (UST)

Jesus is not seeking information. He uses these questions to test the
Jewish law expert's knowledge. Alternate translation: “Tell me what
Moses wrote in the law and what you think it means.” (See:
Rhetorical Question)

What is written in the law? How do you read it (ULT)
You have read what Moses has written in the laws that
God gave him. What do the laws say (UST)

This can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: “What did Moses write in the law?” (See: Active or Passive)

How do you read it (ULT)
You have read...What do the laws say (UST)

“What have you read in it?” or “What do you understand it to say?”

Translation Words - ULT

• law
• is written

Translation Words - UST

• laws that God gave him
• Moses has written
Luke 10:27

You will love...your God...neighbor...as yourself (ULT)
Love...the...your...neighbor...as much as you love yourself (UST)

The man is quoting what Moses wrote in the law.

with all your soul, and with all your strength, and with all your mind (ULT)
with...all...soul...with...all your strength and with all your mind...your (UST)

Here “heart” and “soul” are metonyms for a person's inner being. These four phrases are used together to mean “completely” or “earnestly.” (See: Metonymy and Doublet)

your neighbor as yourself (ULT)
your...neighbor as much as you love yourself (UST)

This simile can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: “love your neighbor as much as you love yourself” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Lord
• You will love
• God
• heart
• soul
• strength
• mind
• as
• neighbor

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• Love
• God
• heart
• soul
• strength
• mind
• as much as
• neighbor
Luke 10:28

you will live (ULT)
you will live with God forever (UST)

“God will give you eternal life”

**Translation Words - ULT**

• you will live

**Translation Words - UST**

• you will live with God forever
Luke 10:29

But he, desiring to justify himself, said (ULT)
But the man wanted to find a reason to justify the way he treated other people...he said (UST)

“But the expert wanted to find a way to justify himself, so he said” or “But wanting to appear righteous, the expert said”

who is my neighbor (ULT)
Which people are my neighbors that I should love (UST)

The man wanted to know whom he was required to love. Alternate translation: “Whom should I consider to be my neighbor and love as I love myself?” or “Which people are my neighbors that I should love?” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- to justify
- neighbor

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- to justify
- neighbors that I should love
Luke 10:30

Jesus answered and said (ULT)
Jesus replied (UST)

Jesus answers the man's question by telling a parable. Alternate translation: "As an answer to the man's question, Jesus told him this story" (See: Parables)

A certain man (ULT)
a Jewish man (UST)

This introduces a new character in the parable. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

He fell among...robbers...who (ULT)
some bandits attacked him. They (UST)

"He was surrounded by robbers, who" or "Some robbers attacked him. They"

having stripped (ULT)
took away most of...clothes and everything else that he had (UST)

“taken everything he had” or “stolen all his things"

half dead (ULT)
until he was almost dead (UST)

This idiom means “almost dead.” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Jericho
• Jerusalem
• robbers
• half dead

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus replied
• Jericho
• Jerusalem
• some bandits
• until he was almost dead
Luke 10:31

by chance (ULT)
It happened that (UST)

This was not something that any person had planned.

a certain priest (ULT)
a Jewish priest was going (UST)

This expression introduces a new person in the story, but does not identify him by name. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

when he saw him (ULT)
When he saw...that man (UST)

“when the priest saw the injured man.” A priest is a very religious person, so the audience would assume that he would help the injured man. Since he did not, this phrase could be stated as “but when he saw him” to call attention to this unexpected result. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he passed by on the other side (ULT)
instead of helping him, he passed by on the other side of the road (UST)

It is implied that he did not help the man. Alternate translation: “he did not help the injured man but instead walked past him on the other side of the road” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• a...priest

Translation Words - UST

• a Jewish priest
Luke 10:32

a Levite...passed by on the other side (ULT)
a Levite, who worked in God’s temple...the man. But he also passed by on the other side of the road (UST)

The Levite served in the temple. He would be expected to help his fellow Jewish man. Since he did not, it may are helpful to state that. Alternate translation: “a Levite...the other side and did not help him” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• a Levite
• similarly

Translation Words - UST

• a Levite, who worked in God's temple
• Similarly

ULT
32 Now similarly a Levite also, when he came to the place and saw him, passed by on the other side.

UST
32 Similarly, a Levite, who worked in God's temple, came to that place and saw the man. But he also passed by on the other side of the road.
Luke 10:33

But a certain Samaritan (ULT)
Then a man from the region of Samaria (UST)

This introduces a new person in the story without giving his name. We know only that he was from Samaria. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

a...Samaritan...certain (ULT)
from the region of Samaria...a man (UST)

The Jews despised the Samaritans and would have assumed that he would not help the injured Jewish man. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

when he saw him (ULT)
When he saw that man (UST)

“When the Samaritan saw the injured man”

he was moved with compassion (ULT)
he pitied him (UST)

“he felt sorry for him”

Translation Words - ULT

• he was moved with compassion
• a...Samaritan

Translation Words - UST

• he pitied him
• from the region of Samaria
Luke 10:34

He went close to him and put some olive oil and wine on the wounds to help heal them. He wrapped strips of cloth around the wounds.

Wine was used to clean the wound, and oil was probably used to prevent infection. This can be stated. Alternate translation: “pouring oil and wine on them to help heal them” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

“his own pack animal.” This was an animal that he used to carry heavy loads. It was probably a donkey.

Translation Words - ULT

- he bound up
- animal
- oil
- wine

Translation Words - UST

- He wrapped strips of cloth around
- donkey
- some olive oil
- wine on the wounds to help heal them
Luke 10:35

two denarii (ULT)
two silver coins (UST)

“two day's wages.” “Denarii” is the plural of “denarius.” (See: Biblical Money)

to the host (ULT)
to the innkeeper (UST)

“the innkeeper” or “the person who took care of the inn”

to the...whatever more you might spend, when I... return...I will repay you (ULT)
to the...If you spend...more than this amount...to care for him, I will pay you back when I return (UST)

This could be reordered. Alternate translation: “when I return, I will repay you whatever amount you may need to spend that is more than this”

Translation Words - ULT

• return

Translation Words - UST

• when...return
Luke 10:36

Which of these three do you think...a neighbor...the robbers (ULT)

Then Jesus said, “Three people saw the man whom...
Which one of them showed he was a true neighbor...

bandits (UST)

This could be written as two questions. Alternate translation: “What do you think? Which of these three men was a neighbor...robbers?”

a neighbor...was (ULT)
showed he was a true neighbor...showed he was a true neighbor (UST)

“showed himself to be a true neighbor”

to the one who fell among the robbers (ULT)
bandits attacked...to the man (UST)

“to the man whom the robbers attacked”

Translation Words - UST

- bandits
- showed he was a true neighbor

Translation Words - ULT

- robbers
- a neighbor
Luke 10:37

Go and you do the same (ULT)
Yes, so now you should go and act like that toward everyone whom you can help (UST)

It might be helpful to give more information. Alternate translation: “In the same way, you should also go and help people as much as you can” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• mercy
• the same

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• mercifully
• like that toward everyone whom you can help

ULT
37 He said, “The one who showed mercy to him.” Then Jesus said to him, “Go and you do the same.”

UST
37 The teacher of the law replied, “The one who acted mercifully toward him.” Jesus said to him, “Yes, so now you should go and act like that toward everyone whom you can help!”
Luke 10:38

General Information:

Jesus comes to Martha's house where her sister Mary listens to Jesus with great attention.

Now (ULT)
As...continued to travel (UST)

This word is used here to mark a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

as...they were traveling along (ULT)
As...continued to travel...As...Jesus and his disciples...continued to travel (UST)

“as Jesus and his disciples were traveling along”

a certain village (ULT)
a village near Jerusalem (UST)

This introduces the village as a new location, but does not name it.

a...woman...certain...named Martha (ULT)
A woman...whose name was Martha (UST)

This introduces Martha as a new character. Your language may have a way of introducing new people. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Translation Words - ULT

- named
- Martha
- welcomed...as a guest

Translation Words - UST

- name
- was Martha
- invited...to come to her house
Luke 10:39

who also sat at the feet of Jesus (ULT)
was sitting near Jesus’ feet (UST)

This was the normal and respectful position for a learner at that time. Alternate translation: “sat on the floor near Jesus” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and listened to his word (ULT)
She was listening to what he was teaching (UST)

This refers to everything that Jesus taught while at Martha’s house. Alternate translation: “listened to the Lord teach” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• named
• Mary
• a sister

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• whose name
• was Mary
• Her younger sister
Luke 10:40

was distracted (ULT)
was...concerned (UST)

“very busy” or “too busy”

do you not care...left me to serve alone (ULT)
do you not care...has left me to prepare everything by myself (UST)

Martha is complaining that the Lord is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. She respects the Lord, so she uses a rhetorical question to make her complaint more polite. Alternate translation: “It seems like you do not care...alone.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• the preparations
• to serve
• Martha
• sister

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• preparing the meal
• to prepare everything
• Martha
• sister
Luke 10:41

Martha, Martha

Jesus repeats Martha’s name for emphasis. Alternate translation: “Dear Martha” or “You, Martha”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- Martha
- Martha (2)
- troubled

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- Martha
- Martha (2)
- you are very worried

ULT

41 But the Lord answered and said to her, “Martha, Martha, you are anxious and troubled about many things,

UST

41 But the Lord replied, “Martha, Martha, you are very worried about many things.
Luke 10:42

only one thing...is necessary (ULT)
the only thing that...is truly necessary is to listen to
what I am teaching (UST)

Jesus is contrasting what Mary is doing with what Martha is doing. It
may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: “the only
thing that is really necessary is to listen to my teaching” or “listening
to my teaching is more necessary than preparing a meal” (See:
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

which will not be taken away from her (ULT)
The blessing that she is receiving from doing that will
not be taken away from her (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “I will not take this opportunity away from
her” or 2) “she will not lose what she has gained as she was listening
to me” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

  • has chosen
  • good
  • Mary

Translation Words - UST

  • has made
  • best
  • Mary
Luke 11

Luke 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The ULT sets the lines in 11:2-4 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are a special prayer.

Special concepts in this chapter

The Lord’s Prayer

When Jesus’ followers asked him to teach them how to pray, he taught them this prayer. He did not expect them to use the same words every time they prayed, but he did want them to know what God wanted them to pray about.

Jonah

Jonah was an Old Testament prophet who was sent to the Gentile city of Nineveh to tell them to repent. When he told them to repent, they repented. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and repent, repentance)

Light and darkness

The Bible often speaks of unrighteous people, people who do not do what pleases God, as if they were walking around in darkness. It speaks of light as if it were what enables those sinful people to become righteous, to understand what they are doing wrong and begin to obey God. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Washing

The Pharisees would wash themselves and the things they ate with. They would even wash things that were not dirty. The law of Moses did not tell them to wash these things, but they would wash them anyway. This was because they thought that if they obeyed both the rules that God had made and some rules that God had not made, God would think that they were better people. (See: law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law and clean, wash)
Luke 11:1

General Information:
The is the beginning of the next part of the story. Jesus teaches his disciples to pray.

Now it happened that (ULT)
One day (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

when he was...one (ULT)
Jesus was...one (UST)

It may be more natural to state that Jesus finished praying before the disciple asked the question. Alternate translation: "that Jesus was praying in a certain place. When he finished praying, one of"

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- disciples
- praying
- to pray
- John
- teach
- taught
- just as

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- disciples
- praying
- to pray
- John
- teach
- taught
- as
Luke 11:2

And he said to them (ULT)
He said to them (UST)

“Jesus said to his disciples”

Father (ULT)
Father (UST)

Jesus is commanding the disciples to honor the name of God the Father by addressing him as “Father” when praying to him. This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

may your name be honored as holy (ULT)
may all people honor your name as holy (UST)

“cause everyone to honor your name.” “Name” often refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: “may all people honor you” (See: Metonymy)

May your kingdom come (ULT)
May you soon rule all people everywhere (UST)

The action of God ruling over everyone is spoken of as if it were God himself. Alternate translation: “May you come and rule over everyone” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• may...be honored as holy
• Father
• name
• kingdom
• you pray

Translation Words - UST

• may all people honor...as holy
• Father
• name
• rule all people everywhere
• you pray
Luke 11:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples how to pray.

Give us (ULT)
Please give...we (UST)

This is an imperative, but it should be translated as a request, rather than as a command. It may be helpful to add something such as “please” to them to make this clear. Alternate translation: “Please give us”

our daily bread (ULT)
us...the food that...need (UST)

Bread was an inexpensive food that people ate every day. It is used here to refer to food in general. Alternate translation: “the food we need each day” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• bread
• day

Translation Words - UST

• food that
• day
Luke 11:4

And forgive us...do not lead us (ULT)
Please forgive us...Help us to...not...sin when
something tempts us (UST)

These are imperatives, but they should be translated as requests, rather than as commands. It may be helpful to add something such as “please” to them to make this clear. Alternate translation: “Please forgive us...Please do not lead us”

forgive us our sins (ULT)
Please forgive...us for the wrong things that we have
done (UST)

“Forgive us for sinning against you” or “Forgive our sins”

And...for we...forgive (ULT)
Please forgive...just as...we ourselves forgive (UST)

“since we also forgive”

us...who is in debt (ULT)
us...for the wrong things that they do (UST)

“who has sinned against us” or “who has done wrong things to us”

do not lead us into temptation (ULT)
Help us to...not...sin when something tempts us (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Lead us away from temptation”

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• temptation
• forgive
• forgive

Translation Words - UST

• wrong things that...have done
• Help us to...sin when something tempts us
• Please forgive
• we...forgive
Luke 11:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples about prayer.

lend to me three loaves of bread (ULT)
please lend me three loaves of bread (UST)

“let me borrow three loaves of bread” or “give me three loaves of bread and I will pay you later.” The host does not have any food ready to give to his guest.

three loaves of bread (ULT)
three loaves of bread (UST)

Bread is often used to represent food in general. Alternate translation: “enough cooked food for a meal” or “enough prepared food for a person to eat” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• loaves of bread

Translation Words - UST

• of bread
Luke 11:6

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking a question that begins in verse 5.

since a friend...to set before him (ULT)
Another friend...food ready...to him (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. “Suppose one of you has...to set before him.’” or “Suppose you have...to set before him’.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

just came to me from the road (ULT)
who is traveling has just arrived at my house (UST)

It is implied that the visitor has come far from his home. Alternate translation: "was traveling and just came to my house" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

anything to set before him (ULT)
food ready...to him (UST)

“any food ready to give him’”
Luke 11:7

I am not able to get up (ULT)
So I cannot get up...anything (UST)

“It is not convenient for me to get up”

Translation Words - ULT

• children
• trouble
• to get up

Translation Words - UST

• family
• bother
• So I...get up

ULT
7 Then he may answer from inside and say, 'Do not cause me trouble. The door is already shut, and my children, along with me, are in bed. I am not able to get up to give it to you.’

UST
7 Suppose that he answers you from inside the house, 'Do not bother me! I have locked the door and all my family are in bed. So I cannot get up and give you anything!'
Luke 11:8

I say to you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

Jesus was speaking to the disciples. The word “you” is plural. (See: Forms of You)

to give it to him...because he is...his...to him...he needs (ULT)
he...and give you any food even though...you are...his...his...he...you need (UST)

Jesus addresses the disciples as if they were the ones asking for bread. Alternate translation: “give bread to him because he is...his...he needs”

yet because of his persistence (ULT)
But because you keep persisting in asking him, he will certainly (UST)

The phrase can be reworded to eliminate the abstract noun “persistence.” Alternate translation: “because you persist shamelessly” or “because you boldly continue to ask him” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• he...get up
• he will get up

Translation Words - UST

• to get up
• get up
Luke 11:9

**ULT**

Ask...seek...knock (ULT)

Keep asking God for what you need...Keep seeking his will...Keep on praying urgently to God, like someone knocking on a door (UST)

Jesus gives these commands to encourage his disciples to pray continually. Some languages may also require more information with these verbs. Use the form of “you” that would be most appropriate in this context. Alternate translation: “keep asking for what you need... keep seeking what you need from God...find it...keep knocking on the door” (See: Forms of You and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**ULT**

9 I also say to you, ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you.

**UST**

9 So I tell you this: Keep asking God for what you need, and he will give it to you. Keep seeking his will and he will show it to you. Keep on praying urgently to God, like someone knocking on a door, and he will open the way to give you what you pray for.

**ULT**

it will be given to you (ULT)

he will give it to you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will give it to you” or “you will receive it” (See: Active or Passive)

knock (ULT)

Keep on praying urgently to God, like someone knocking on a door (UST)

To knock at a door is to hit it a few times to let a person inside the house know you are standing outside. It can also be translated using the way people in your culture show that they have arrived, such as “call out” or “cough” or “clap.” Here, it means a person should keep praying to God until he answers. (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

it will be opened to you (ULT)

he will open the way to give you what you pray for (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will open the door for you” or “God will welcome you inside” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- seek

**Translation Words - UST**

- Keep seeking his will
Luke 11:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• receives
• seeks

Translation Words - UST

• will receive
• seeks

ULT

10 For everyone who asks receives; and the one who seeks finds; and to the one who knocks, it will be opened.

UST

10 Remember that anyone who asks will receive and anyone who seeks will find, and anyone who knocks will have the door opened for him.
Luke 11:11

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes teaching his disciples about prayer.

And which father among you... he will give him a snake... a fish (ULT)
If one of you had... you certainly would not give him a poisonous snake... instead... would you (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. It could also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “None of you fathers... a fish” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
- son
- father
- a snake

Translation Words - UST
- a son
- you had
- a poisonous snake
Luke 11:12

Or also if he asks...a scorpion to him (ULT)
And if he asked you for...him a scorpion instead (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. It could also be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “And you would never give him a scorpion if he asks for an egg” (See: Rhetorical Question)

a scorpion (ULT)
a scorpion instead (UST)

A scorpion is similar to a spider, but it has a tail with a poisonous sting. If scorpions are not known where you are, you could translate this as “poisonous spider” or “spider that stings” (See: Translate Unknowns)
Luke 11:13

if...you who are evil know how (ULT)
Even though...you people are sinful, you know how (UST)

“since you who are evil know” or “even though you are sinful, you know”

how much more will the Father who is in heaven give the Holy Spirit...him (ULT)
So it is even more certain that your Father in heaven will give the Holy Spirit to you...him (UST)

“how much more certain is it that your Father in heaven will give the Holy Spirit...him?” Jesus again uses a question to teach his disciples. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “you can be sure that your Father from heaven will give the Holy Spirit...him.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• gifts
• Holy
• the Holy Spirit
• Father
• children
• good
• evil
• know how

Translation Words - UST

• heaven
• things
• Holy
• the Holy Spirit
• Father
• children
• good
• sinful
• you know how
Luke 11:14

General Information:

Jesus is questioned after he drives a demon out of a mute man.

Now (ULT)
One day a man came to Jesus (UST)

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

he was driving out a demon (ULT)
who was not able to speak because a demon controlled him (UST)

It may be helpful to add extra information. Alternate translation: “Jesus was driving a demon out of a person” or “Jesus was making a demon leave a person” (See: Ellipsis)

a demon that was mute (ULT)
who was not able to speak because a demon controlled him (UST)

The demon has power to prevent people from speaking. Alternate translation: “demon that caused the man to be unable to speak” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Now (ULT)
One day a man came to Jesus (UST)

This word is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. When the demon comes out of the man, some of the people criticize Jesus, and that leads to Jesus teaching about evil spirits.

when the demon had gone out (ULT)
Jesus forced out the demon (UST)

It may be helpful to add extra information. Alternate translation: “when the demon had gone out of the man” or “when the demon left the man” (See: Ellipsis)

the man who had been mute spoke (ULT)
the man began to talk (UST)

“the man who had been unable to speak now spoke”

Translation Words - ULT

• a demon
• demon
• driving out
• was amazed
Translation Words - UST

- who was not able to speak because a demon controlled him
- the demon
- who was not able to speak because a demon controlled him
- were amazed
Luke 11:15

By Beelzebul, the ruler of demons, he is driving out demons (ULT)
It is Beelzebul, the ruler of the demons, who enables this man to force out demons (UST)

“He is driving out demons by the power of Beelzebul, the ruler of demons”

Translation Words - ULT
- demons
- Beelzebul
- he is driving out
- ruler

Translation Words - UST
- demons
- Beelzebul
- who enables this man to force out
- ruler
Luke 11:16

General Information:

Jesus begins to respond to the crowd.

Others tested him (ULT)
Other people there...to prove (UST)

“Other people tested Jesus.” They wanted him to prove that his authority was from God.

seeking from him a sign from heaven (ULT)
asked him to perform a miracle...he was from God (UST)

“and asked him to give a sign from heaven” or “by demanding that he give a sign from heaven.” This was how they wanted him to prove that his authority was from God.

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• a sign
• tested him
• seeking

Translation Words - UST

• he was from God
• to perform a miracle
• to prove
• asked
Luke 11:17

Every kingdom divided against itself is made desolate (ULT)
If the people in one nation fight against each other, their nation will be destroyed (UST)

“kingdom” here refers to the people in it. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “If people of a kingdom fight among themselves, they will destroy their kingdom” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

a house divided against itself falls (ULT)
If the people in one household oppose each other... their family will fall apart (UST)

Here “house” refers to a family. Alternate translation: “If family members fight each other, they will ruin their family” (See: Metonymy)

falls (ULT)
their family will fall apart (UST)

“crashes down and is destroyed.” This image of the house collapsing refers to the destruction of a family when the members fight each other. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• kingdom
• a house divided against itself
• a house divided against itself
• knew

Translation Words - UST

• the people in one nation
• If the people in one household oppose each other
• If the people in one household oppose each other
• knew
Luke 11:18

if...Satan...divided against himself (ULT)
Similarly, if...Satan and his demons were fighting against each other (UST)

“Satan” here is referring to the demons who follow Satan as well as to Satan himself. Alternate translation: “If Satan and members of his kingdom are fighting among themselves” (See: Metonymy)

if...Satan...how will his kingdom stand (ULT)
Similarly, if...Satan and his demons...his rule over them would certainly not last (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “If Satan...his kingdom will not last.” or “If Satan...his kingdom will fall apart.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

For you say I force out demons by Beelzebul (ULT)
I say this because you are saying that I force out demons by the power of the ruler of demons (UST)

“For you say that it is by the power of Beelzebul that I make demons leave people.“ The next part of his argument can be stated explicitly: Alternate translation: “For you say that it is by the power of Beelzebul that I make demons leave people. That would mean that Satan is divided against himself” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
- Satan
- demons
- Beelzebul
- force out
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST
- Satan and his demons
- demons
- the ruler of demons
- force out
- rule over them
Luke 11:19

Now if I...by whom do your sons force them out (ULT)
Now, if it is really true that...me...is it also true that your disciples who force out demons do so by Satan's power (UST)

“If I...by whose power do your followers force demons to leave people?” Jesus uses a question to teach the people. The meaning of Jesus' question can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “If I...then we must agree that your followers also drive out demons by Beelzebul's power. But you do not believe that it is true.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

your...they will be...judges (ULT)
your...they prove...are wrong (UST)

“your followers who cast out demons by God's power will judge you for saying that I cast out demons by Beelzebul's power”

Translation Words - ULT

• sons
• demons
• Beelzebul
• force out
• force them out
• judges

Translation Words - UST

• is it also true that...disciples
• demons
• Satan
• to force out
• who force out demons
• prove...wrong
Luke 11:20

by the finger of God (ULT)
by the power of God (UST)

The “finger of God” refers to God’s power. (See: Metonymy)

of God, then the kingdom of...has come to you (ULT)
of God...I am showing you that God has begun to rule over you (UST)

“this shows that God’s kingdom has come to you”

Translation Words - ULT

• of God
• God (2)
• demons
• kingdom of God
• force out
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• of God
• God (2)
• demons
• God...to rule over you
• that...force out
• to rule over you
Luke 11:21

When the strong man...his possessions are safe (ULT)
Jesus continued, “When a strong man...no one can steal the things in his house (UST)

This speaks about Jesus defeating Satan and his demons as if Jesus were a stronger man who takes what belongs to a strong man. (See: Metaphor)

his possessions are safe (ULT)
no one can steal the things in his house (UST)

“no one can steal his things”

Translation Words - ULT

• strong man
• possessions
• safe

Translation Words - UST

• a strong man
• no one can steal the things in
• no one can steal the things in

ULT

21 When the strong man who is fully armed guards his own house, his possessions are safe.

UST

21 Jesus continued, “When a strong man who has many weapons guards his own house, no one can steal the things in his house.
Luke 11:22

when...one who is stronger than...his...divide his possessions (ULT)
when...someone else who is stronger...weapons...he can take from that man's house anything he wants to (UST)

This speaks about Jesus defeating Satan and his demons as if Jesus were a stronger man who takes what belongs to a strong man. (See: Metaphor)

him...take away...armor (ULT)
that man...he is able to take away the weapons (UST)

“removes the man's weapons and protection”

him...divide...possessions (ULT)
that man...he can take from that man's house anything he wants to (UST)

“steals his possessions” or “takes away anything that he wants”

Translation Words - ULT

• he trusted
• one who is stronger than
• armor

Translation Words - UST

• the man trusted
• someone else who is stronger
• weapons
Luke 11:23

The one who is not with me is against me, and the one who does not gather with me scatters

This refers to any person or any group of people. “Anyone who is not with me is against me, and anyone who does not gather with me scatters” or “Those who are not with me are against me, and those who do not gather with me scatter”

The one who is not with me (ULT)
Anyone who is not supporting...me (UST)

“one who does not support me” or “one who does not work with me”

me is against (ULT)
is opposing...me (UST)

“works against me”

with...the one who does not gather...me scatters (ULT)
me...anyone who does not bring people...me causes them to go away from me (UST)

Jesus is referring to gathering disciples who follow him. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “anyone who does not cause people to come and follow me causes them to go away from me” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
Luke 11:24

waterless places (ULT)
desolate areas (UST)

This refers to “desolate places” where the evil spirits wander.

not finding any (ULT)
If it...does not...find any (UST)

“If the spirit does not find any rest there”

my house from which I came (ULT)
the person in whom I used to live (UST)

This refers to the person in which he used to live. Alternate translation: “the person in whom I used to live” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• unclean
• spirit
• unclean spirit
• looking for
• I will return
• rest
• house

Translation Words - UST

• evil
• an...spirit
• an...evil...spirit
• seeking
• I will return
• relief
• person in whom

ULT

24 When the unclean spirit has gone out from the man, it passes through waterless places looking for rest, but not finding any, it says, ‘I will return to my house from which I came.’

UST

24 Then Jesus said this: “Sometimes when an evil spirit leaves someone, it wanders around in desolate areas seeking relief. If it does not find any, it says to itself, ‘I will return to the person in whom I used to live!’
Luke 11:25

it finds it swept out and put in order (ULT)
and finds that the person is like a house that has been swept clean and put in order, but is still empty (UST)

This metaphor speaks about the person as if he were a house that is swept clean and things put in their places. It is implied that the house is still empty. This can be stated in active form with that information made explicit. Alternate translation: “finds that the person is like a house that someone has swept clean and organized by putting everything where it belongs, but has left empty” or “finds that the person is like a house that is clean and organized, but empty” (See: Active or Passive and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• swept out

Translation Words - UST

• the person is like a house that has been swept clean

ULT
25 And when it returns, it finds it swept out and put in order.

UST
25 So it goes back and finds that the person is like a house that has been swept clean and put in order, but is still empty.
Luke 11:26

worse than the first (ULT)
was bad before...much worse (UST)

The word “first” refers to the condition of the man while he had the unclean spirit before it left him. Alternate translation: “worse than his condition was before the spirit left” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• spirits
• spirits more evil than
• more evil than

Translation Words - UST

• other spirits
• other spirits that are even more evil than
• that are even more evil than

ULT
26 Then it goes and takes along with it seven other spirits more evil than itself and they come in to live there. Then the final condition of that man becomes worse than the first.”

UST
26 Then this evil spirit goes and gets seven other spirits that are even more evil than it is. They all enter that person and begin living there. So, although that person's condition was bad before, it became much worse.”
Luke 11:27

General Information:

This is a break in Jesus' teachings. A woman speaks a blessing and Jesus responds.

Now it happened that (ULT)

When (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

raised...her voice...above the crowd (ULT)

loudly...called out...to him (UST)

This idiom means "spoke loudly above the noise of the crowd" (See: Idiom)

Blessed is the womb that bore you and the breasts at which you nursed (ULT)

God is pleased with the woman who gave birth to you and who nursed you at her breasts (UST)

The parts of a woman's body are used to refer to the whole woman. Alternate translation: "How good it is for the woman who bore you and nursed you at her breasts" or "How happy the woman who bore you and nursed you at her breasts must be" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• Blessed is
• her voice
• womb
• bore

Translation Words - UST

• God is pleased with
• called out
• the woman
• gave birth to
Luke 11:28

Rather, blessed are the ones who hear (ULT)
Even more blessed by God are those who hear (UST)

“But he said, “Rather, blessed are the ones who hear the word of God and keep it.”

Then he replied, “Even more blessed by God are those who hear his message and obey it!”

Translation Words - ULT

- blessed are
- God
- word of God
- keep it

Translation Words - UST

- Even more blessed by God
- his
- his...message
- obey it
Luke 11:29

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues teaching the crowd.

As the crowds were increasing (ULT)
As more and more people were coming to join the crowd around Jesus (UST)

“As more people were joining the crowd” or “As the crowd was growing larger”

This generation is an evil generation. It seeks...to it
Here “generation” refers to the people in it. Alternate translation: “The people living at this time are evil people. They seek...to them” or “You people living at this time are evil people. You seek...to you”

It seeks a sign (ULT)
Many of you want me to perform a miracle as proof that I have come from God (UST)

The information about what kind of sign it seeks can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “It wants me to perform a miracle as proof that I have come from God” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

no sign will be given to it (ULT)
the...proof that you will receive (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will not give it a sign” (See: Active or Passive)

a sign...the...of Jonah (ULT)
to perform a miracle as proof that I have come from God...is a miracle like what happened to Jonah (UST)

“What happened to Jonah” or “the miracle that God did for Jonah”

Translation Words - ULT

• a sign
• sign (2)
• sign (3)
• evil
• of Jonah
• It seeks
• generation
• an...generation (2)

Translation Words - UST

• to perform a miracle as proof that I have come from God
• the...proof that (2)
• a miracle (3)
• evil
• is...like what happened to Jonah
• Many of you want me
• people living at...time
• people (2)
Luke 11:30

For just as Jonah became...a sign...so...to this generation (ULT)
Just as...for Jonah long ago was a testimony...the miracle that God did...so God will do a similar miracle for...people living now (UST)

This means that Jesus will serve as a sign from God for the Jews of that day in exactly the same way as Jonah served as a sign from God to the people of Nineveh.

the Son of Man (ULT)
the...Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself.

to this generation (ULT)
people living now (UST)

“the people living today”

Translation Words - ULT

• a sign
• Son of Man
• Ninevites
• Jonah
• just as
• generation

Translation Words - UST

• the miracle that God did
• Son of Man
• city of Nineveh
• for Jonah
• just as
• people

ULT

30 For just as Jonah became a sign to the Ninevites, so also will the Son of Man be to this generation.

UST

30 Just as the miracle that God did for Jonah long ago was a testimony to the people from the city of Nineveh, so God will do a similar miracle for the Son of Man that will be a testimony to you people living now.
Luke 11:31

The Queen of the South (ULT)
this queen (UST)

This refers to the Queen of Sheba. Sheba was a kingdom south of Israel.

will rise up at the judgment with the men of this generation (ULT)
And...Therefore, at the time when God will judge all people...will stand there...condemn the people alive now (UST)

“will stand up and judge the people of this time”

she came from the ends of the earth (ULT)
Long ago the Queen of Sheba...traveled a very long distance (UST)

This idiom means that she came from very far away. Alternate translation: “she came a very great distance” or “she came from a place very far away” (See: Idiom)

someone greater than Solomon is here (ULT)
someone who is much greater than Solomon is here, but you have not really listened to what I say (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: “I, who am greater than Solomon, am here” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

someone greater than Solomon (ULT)
someone who is much greater than Solomon (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: “I am greater than Solomon” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- condemn
- wisdom
- judgment
- of Solomon
- Solomon (2)
- The Queen
- will rise up
- earth
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- And...condemn the people alive now
• speak wise things
• time when God will judge all people
• Solomon
• Solomon (2)
• this queen
• Therefore...will stand there
• traveled a very long distance
• And...condemn the people alive now
Luke 11:32

The men of Nineveh (ULT)
Therefore...the men who lived in Nineveh long ago (UST)

It may be helpful to state explicitly that this refers to the ancient city of Nineveh. Alternate translation: “The men who lived in the ancient city of Nineveh” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

The men (ULT)
Therefore...the men (UST)

This includes both men and woman. Alternate translation: “The people” (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

this generation (ULT)
the people alive now (UST)

“the people of this time”

for they repented (ULT)
The men who lived in the ancient city of Nineveh turned from their sinful ways (UST)

“for the people of Nineveh repented”

someone greater than Jonah is here (ULT)
I, who am greater than Jonah, have come and preached to you, but you have not turned from your sinful ways (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. It may be helpful to explicitly state that they have not listened to him. Alternate translation: “even though I am greater than Jonah, you still have not repented” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• will condemn
• they repented
• judgment
• of Nineveh
• of Jonah
• Jonah (2)
• preaching
• will stand up
• generation

Translation Words - UST

• condemn
• The men who lived in the ancient city of Nineveh turned from their sinful ways
• time when God judges all people
• who lived in Nineveh long ago
• Jonah
• I, who am greater than Jonah, have come and preached to you, but you have not turned from your sinful ways (2)
• when...preached to them
• will stand there
• the people alive now
Luke 11:33

General Information:
Verses 33-36 are a metaphor where Jesus speaks of his teaching as “light” that he wants his disciples to obey and share with others. He speaks of people who do not know or accept his teaching as being in “darkness.” (See: Metaphor)

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes teaching the crowd.

puts it in a hidden place nor under the basket (ULT)
do not then hide it or put it under a basket (UST)

“hides it or puts in under a basket”

but on the lampstand (ULT)
Instead, they put it on a lampstand (UST)

The understood subject and verb in this clause may be supplied. Alternate translation: “but a person places it on a lampstand” or “but a person puts it on a table” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

• a lamp
• light
• basket
• lampstand

Translation Words - UST

• People who light a lamp
• light
• a basket
• a lampstand
Luke 11:34

The lamp of the body is your eye (ULT)
Your eye is the lamp of your body (UST)

In this part of the metaphor, the things they saw Jesus do provided understanding just as an eye provides light for the body. Alternate translation: “Your eye is like the lamp of the body” (See: Metaphor)

your eye (ULT)
Your eye (UST)

The eye is a metonym for vision. (See: Metonymy)

of the body (ULT)
of your body (UST)

The body is a synecdoche for a person's life. (See: Synecdoche)

When your eye is good (ULT)
If your eye is healthy (UST)

Here “eye” here is a metonym for vision. Alternate translation: “When your vision is good” or “when you see well” (See: Metonymy)

your whole body is also filled with light (ULT)
then your whole body is full of light (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the light will fill your whole body” or “you will be able to see everything clearly” (See: Active or Passive)

when...it is bad (ULT)
If...it is unhealthy (UST)

Here “eye” is a metonym for vision. Alternate translation: “When your vision is bad” or “when you see poorly” (See: Metonymy)

your...body...also...is...full of darkness (ULT)
Your...then...body...will be full of darkness (UST)

“you will not be able to see anything”

Translation Words - ULT

- body
- body
- body (2)
- bad
- lamp
- is...full of darkness
- filled with light
Translation Words - UST

• body
• body
• body (2)
• unhealthy
• lamp
• will be full of darkness
• full of light
Luke 11:35

be careful that the light in you is not darkness

“make sure that what you think is light is not actually darkness” or “make sure you know what is light and make sure you know what is darkness”

Translation Words - ULT

- darkness
- light

Translation Words - UST

- cause you to remain in spiritual darkness
- things that you have heard from others

ULT
35 Therefore, be careful that the light that is in you is not darkness.

UST
35 Therefore, you do not need to see more miracles. You need to think carefully about what I have already told you, so that the things that you have heard from others do not cause you to remain in spiritual darkness.
Luke 11:36

it will all be full of light, as when the lamp shines its brightness on you (ULT)
all of your body will be full of light like the light of a lamp that enables you to see everything clearly (UST)

Jesus states the same truth as a simile. He speaks of people who are full of truth as if they are a lamp that shines brightly. (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• body
• lamp
• full of darkness
• is full of light
• full of light
• shines
• as

Translation Words - UST

• body
• the light of a lamp
• and no part of it is darkened
• is full of light
• full of light
• clearly
• like

ULT

36 If therefore your whole body is full of light, not having any part full of darkness, it will all be full of light, as when the lamp shines its brightness on you."

UST

36 If your whole body is full of light and no part of it is darkened, all of your body will be full of light like the light of a lamp that enables you to see everything clearly."
Luke 11:37

General Information:

Jesus is invited to eat at a Pharisee's house.

Now when he had finished speaking (ULT)
After Jesus finished saying those things (UST)

The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

and reclined at the table (ULT)
reclined at the table to eat (UST)

It was the custom for a relaxed meal such as this dinner for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table. You might want to translate using the word your language uses for the way people's bodies are when they eat. Alternate translation: “sat down at the table” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• a Pharisee

Translation Words - UST

• a Pharisee
Luke 11:38

he did not first wash (ULT)
Jesus did not ritually wash his hands (UST)

The Pharisees had a rule that people must wash their hands in order to be ceremonially clean before God. Alternate translation: “wash his hands” or “wash his hands in order to be ritually clean” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Pharisee
• and was surprised

Translation Words - UST

• Pharisee
• was surprised
Luke 11:39

General Information:

Jesus begins to speak to the Pharisee using a metaphor. He compares the way they clean cups and bowls to how they clean themselves. (See: Metaphor)

the outside of the cup and of the bowl (ULT)
the outside of cups and dishes (UST)

Washing of the outside of containers was a part of the ritual practices of the Pharisees. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

but the inside of you is filled with greed and evil (ULT)
but within yourselves you are very greedy and wicked (UST)

This part of the metaphor contrasts the careful way they clean the outside of the dishes with the way they ignore their own internal condition. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- clean
- Pharisees
- evil

Translation Words - UST

- Lord Jesus
- wash...before you eat
- Pharisees
- wicked
Luke 11:40

You foolish ones (ULT)
You foolish people! Surely you know that (UST)

This expression can refer to men or women, even though all of the Pharisees to whom Jesus was speaking to here were men.

Did not the one who made the outside also make the inside (ULT)
God not only made the outside, but he also made the inside (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees for not understanding that what is in their hearts matters to God. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “The one who made the outside also made the inside!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
• You foolish ones

Translation Words - UST
• You foolish people! Surely you know that
Luke 11:41

give as charity what is inside (ULT)
give whatever is inside the dishes to those in need (UST)

This refers to what they should be doing with their cups and bowls. Alternate translation: “Give to the poor what is inside your cups and bowls” or “Be generous to the poor” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

all things will be clean for you (ULT)
both the inside and outside of you will be clean (UST)

“you will be completely clean” or “you will be clean both inside and outside”

Translation Words - ULT

• clean
• as charity

Translation Words - UST

• clean
• to those in need
Luke 11:42

the mint and the rue and every garden herb
“you give God one tenth of your mint and rue and other herbs from your garden.” Jesus was giving an example of how extreme the Pharisees were in giving a tenth of their income.

the mint and the rue (ULT)
the herbs that you grow in (UST)
These are herbs. People put just a little bit of these leaves into their food to give it flavor. If people do not know what mint and rue are, you can use the name of herbs they know or a general expression such as “herbs.” (See: Translate Unknowns)

every garden herb (ULT)
herbs that you grow in...your gardens (UST)
Possible meanings are 1) “every other vegetable” 2) “every other garden herb” or 3) “every other garden plant.”

the...love of God (ULT)
love...God...justly toward others (UST)
“to love God” or “love for God.” God is the one who is loved.

and not to neglect those things (ULT)
in addition to giving to God (UST)
“without failing” emphasizes that this should always be done. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “and to always do the other good things as well” (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT
• woe
• love
• God
• Pharisees
• justice
• you tithe

Translation Words - UST
• how terrible it will be
• love
• God
• Pharisees
• justly toward others
• You carefully give to God a tenth of all you have, including even
Luke 11:43

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes speaking to the Pharisee.

the best seats (ULT)
in the most important seats (UST)

"the best seats"

the respectful greetings (ULT)
you like people to greet you with special honor (UST)

“you like people to greet you with special honor”

Translation Words - ULT

• synagogues
• Woe
• you love
• Pharisees

Translation Words - UST

• synagogues
• How terrible it will be
• you like to sit
• Pharisees
Luke 11:44

you are like unmarked graves, and people walk over them without knowing it

The Pharisees are like unmarked graves because they look ceremonially clean, but they cause people around them to become unclean. (See: Simile)

unmarked graves

These graves were holes dug in the ground where a dead body was buried. They did not have the white stones that people normally place over graves so that others would see them.

without knowing it (ULT)
without realizing it and become ceremonially unclean (UST)

When the Jews walked over a grave, they would become ceremonially unclean. These unmarked graves caused them to accidentally do that. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “without realizing it and become ceremonially unclean” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Woe
• graves
• walk
• like
• knowing it

Translation Words - UST

• How terrible it will be
• graves
• which...walk
• like
• realizing it and become ceremonially unclean
Luke 11:45

**General Information:**

Jesus begins to respond to a Jewish teacher.

one of the teachers of the law (ULT)
One of those who were teachers of the Jewish laws replied (UST)

This introduces a new character into the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

saying these things, you insult us too (ULT)
by saying this you are criticizing us also (UST)

Jesus' comments about the Pharisees also seemed to apply to the teachers of the Jewish laws.

**Translation Words - ULT**

• teachers of the law
• Teacher

**Translation Words - UST**

• One of those who were teachers of the Jewish laws replied
• Teacher
Woe to you...teachers of the law (ULT)
How terrible it will be...for you...who are teachers of the Jewish laws (UST)

Jesus makes it clear that he intended to condemn the actions of the teachers of the law along with the Pharisees.

you burden the people with burdens that are heavy to carry (ULT)
You weigh...people...down...with very heavy burdens (UST)

“you put burdens on people that are too heavy and they cannot carry them.” Jesus speaks about someone giving people many rules as if the person were giving them heavy things to carry. Alternate translation: “you burden people by giving them too many rules to follow” (See: Metaphor)

teachers of the law...you...do not touch...burdens with one of your fingers (ULT)
who are teachers of the Jewish laws...you...will...not...do even the smallest thing...to help people bear...those burdens (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “do anything at all to help people carry those burdens” or 2) “make any effort to carry those burdens yourselves.”

Translation Words - ULT

• Woe
• you burden
• with burdens
• burdens
• teachers of the law
• that are heavy to carry

Translation Words - UST

• How terrible it will be
• You weigh...down
• with...burdens
• those burdens
• who are teachers of the Jewish laws
• very heavy
Luke 11:47

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Woe
- prophets
- fathers
- tombs

Translation Words - UST

- How terrible it will be
- prophets
- ancestors
- graves

ULT

47 Woe to you, because you build the tombs of the prophets, but your fathers killed them.

UST

47 How terrible it will be for you, because you construct buildings to mark the graves of the prophets, but your ancestors are the ones who killed them!
Luke 11:48

So you are witnesses and you consent (ULT)
you are declaring that you approve of (UST)

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees and teachers of the law. They know about the murder of the prophets, but do not condemn their ancestors for killing them. Alternate translation: “So, rather than denouncing them, you confirm and agree” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
- you are witnesses
- works
- fathers

Translation Words - UST
- you are declaring that
- did
- ancestors

ULT
48 So you are witnesses and you consent to the works of your fathers, for they indeed killed them, and you build their tombs.

UST
48 So when you build these buildings, you are declaring that you approve of what your ancestors did when they killed the prophets.
Luke 11:49

For this reason (ULT)
So (UST)

This refers back to the previous statement that the teachers of the law burdened people with rules.

the wisdom of God said (ULT)
God...who is very wise...said (UST)

“wisdom” is treated as if it was able to speak for God. Alternate translation: “God in his wisdom said” or “God wisely said” (See: Personification)

also...I will send to them prophets...apostles (ULT)
who is very wise...I will send prophets...apostles to guide my people (UST)

“I will send prophets and apostles to my people.” God had declared beforehand that he would send prophets and apostles to the ancestors of the Jewish audience to whom Jesus was speaking.

also...they will persecute...they will kill some of them (ULT)
who is very wise...they will cause them to suffer greatly...kill some of them (UST)

“my people will persecute and kill some of the prophets and apostles.” God had declared beforehand that the ancestors of the Jewish audience to whom Jesus was speaking would persecute and kill the prophets and apostles.

Translation Words - ULT

• prophets
• God
• wisdom
• apostles
• they will persecute
• I will send

Translation Words - UST

• prophets
• God
• who is very wise
• apostles
• they will cause them to suffer greatly
• I will send
Luke 11:50

will be charged all the blood of the prophets which has been shed...against this generation (ULT)
of...will be considered guilty of the murder of all God’s prophets...many...the people living now at this time (UST)

The people to whom Jesus is speaking will be held responsible for the murder of the prophets by their ancestors. Alternate translation: “Therefore, God will hold this generation responsible for all the deaths of the prophets that people have killed” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

all the blood of the prophets which has been shed (ULT)
of...of the murder of all God’s prophets (UST)

The “blood...shed” refers to the blood spilled when they were killed. Alternate translation: “the murder of the prophets” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- of the world
- blood
- the foundation
- the foundation of the world
- generation

Translation Words - UST

- of...murder of all God's prophets
- the world
- of...murder of all God's prophets
- the time...was created
- the time the world was created
- people living now
Luke 11:51

of Zechariah (ULT)
they killed the prophet Zechariah in the temple (UST)

This was probably the priest in the Old Testament who rebuked the people of Israel for idolatry. This was not the Father of John the Baptist.

who was killed (ULT)
they killed the prophet Zechariah in the temple (UST)

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the people killed" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• altar
• was killed
• blood
• the blood (2)
• Abel's
• generation
• sanctuary

Translation Words - UST
• altar
• they killed the prophet Zechariah in the temple
• when...brother killed him
• they killed the prophet Zechariah in the temple (2)
• Abel's
• people living at this time
• holy place
Luke 11:52

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes responding to the Jewish teacher.

You have taken away the key of knowledge...you hinder those who are entering (ULT)
people cannot know how to have God rule over them...you even get in the way of people who want to have God rule over them (UST)

Jesus speaks about God’s truth as if it were in a house that the teachers refuse to enter and will not let others have the key to enter either. This means the teachers do not truly know God, and they prevent others from knowing him as well. (See: Metaphor)

the key (ULT)
people cannot know how to have God rule over them (UST)

This represents the means of access, as to a house or storage room.

you do not enter in yourselves (ULT)
You do not let God rule over you (UST)

“you yourselves do not go in to get knowledge”

Translation Words - ULT

- Woe
- teachers of the law
- knowledge

Translation Words - UST

- How terrible it will be
- men who teach the Jewish laws
- people cannot know how to have God rule over them
Luke 11:53

General Information:
This is the end of the part of the story where Jesus eats at the Pharisee’s house. These verses tell the reader what happens after the main part of the story ends.

**After he went out from there (ULT)**
After Jesus finished saying those things, he left there (UST)

“After Jesus left the Pharisee’s house”

**argued against him about many things (ULT)**
They intensely questioned...him about many things (UST)

The scribes and Pharisees did not argue in order to defend their views, but to try to trap Jesus so they could accuse him of breaking the law of God.

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• Pharisees

Translation Words - UST

• men who taught the Jewish laws
• Pharisees
Luke 11:54

to trap him in something from his mouth (ULT)
They kept waiting for him...to say something wrong for which they could accuse him (UST)

This means they wanted Jesus to say something wrong so that they could accuse him. The scribes and Pharisees did not argue in order to defend their views, but to try to trap Jesus so they could accuse him of breaking the law of God. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• watching
• to trap

Translation Words - UST

• They kept waiting for him
• They kept waiting for him

ULT
54 watching to trap him in something from his mouth.

11:11 [1] The best ancient copies have the shorter reading, which we follow here. Some ancient copies have a longer reading, which also is found in Matthew 7:9: Which father among you, if your son asks for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? Or a fish, will give him a snake?

UST
54 They kept waiting for him to say something wrong for which they could accuse him.
Luke 12

Luke 12 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“Blasphemy against the Spirit”

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit’s work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous and Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit)

Servants

God expects his people to remember that everything in the world belongs to God. God gives his people things so they can serve him. He wants them to please him by doing what he wants them to do with everything he has given them. One day Jesus will ask his servants what they have done with everything he gave them to use. He will give a reward to those who have done what he wanted them to do, and he will punish those who have not.

Division

Jesus knew that those who did not choose to follow him would hate those who did choose to follow him. He also knew that most people love their families more than they love anyone else. So he wanted his followers to understand that following and pleasing him had to be more important to them than having their family love them (Luke 12:51-56).

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 12:8). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)
Luke 12:1

General Information:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples in front of thousands of people.

When...were gathered together (ULT)
that...in (UST)

This is probably while the scribes and Pharisees were looking for a way to trap him. The author uses these words to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

When...many thousands of the people...were gathered together...so much that they trampled on each other (ULT)
Meanwhile, many thousands of people gathered around Jesus. There were so many that they were stepping on each other. But (UST)

This is background information that tells the setting of the story. (See: Background Information)

many thousands of the people (ULT)
Meanwhile, many thousands of people...so many (UST)

“a very great crowd”

they trampled on each other (ULT)
they were stepping on each other. But (UST)

This is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that so many people were crowded close together that they would step on each other. Alternate translation: “they were stepping on each other” or “they were stepping on one another’s feet” (See: Hyperbole)

he began to say to his disciples first of all (ULT)
first he said to his disciples (UST)

“Jesus first started speaking to his disciples, and said to them”

Guard yourselves from the yeast of the Pharisees, which is hypocrisy (ULT)
Be careful...you do not become like the Pharisees, who act religious...public, but do evil things in secret. Just like yeast causes a lump of dough to rise, their evil behavior causes others to be hypocrites like they are (UST)

Just as yeast spreads through a whole lump of bread dough, their hypocrisy was spreading through the whole community. Alternate translation: “Guard yourself against the hypocrisy of the Pharisees, which is like yeast” or “Be careful that you do not become hypocrites like the Pharisees. Their evil behavior influences everyone just as yeast affects a lump of dough” (See: Metaphor)
Translation Words - ULT

- hypocrisy
- disciples
- Pharisees
- yeast
- people

Translation Words - UST

- of dough to rise, their evil behavior causes others to be hypocrites
- first he said to his disciples
- you do not become like the Pharisees
- public, but do evil things in secret. Just like yeast causes a lump
- people...so many
Luke 12:2

But nothing is concealed that will not be revealed, nor hidden that will not be known.

People cannot cover up their sins. Someday God will let everyone know everything people are trying to hide.

“everything that is hidden will be shown.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people will find out about everything that people do secretly” (See: Active or Passive)

Nor hidden that will not be known (ULT)
Know everything...trying to hide (UST)

This means the same thing as the first part of the sentence in order to emphasize its truth. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people will learn about everything that others try to hide” (See: Parallelism and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• will...be revealed
• will...be known

Translation Words - UST

• their sins. Someday God will let everyone know everything
Luke 12:3

Whatever you have said in the darkness will be heard in the light (ULT)
Everything you...say in the dark, someday people will hear in the daylight. Whatever you (UST)

Here “darkness” is a metonym for “night” which is a metonym for “private. And “light” is a metonym for “day” which is a metonym for “public. The phrase “will be heard” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whatever you have said privately at night, people will hear it in the daylight” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

You have spoken in the ear (ULT)
whisper (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whispered to another person” (See: Synecdoche)

In...the inner rooms (ULT)
in...your room...the (UST)

“In a closed room.” This refers to private speech. Alternate translation: “in privacy” or “secretly”

Will be proclaimed (ULT)
shouted (UST)

“will be shouted loudly.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people will proclaim” (See: Active or Passive)

Upon the housetops (ULT)
from...rooftops (UST)

Houses in Israel had flat roofs, so people could go up and stand on top of them. If readers would be distracted trying to imagine how people would get up on the house tops, this could also be translated with a more general expression, such as “from a high place so that everyone will be able to hear.”

Translation Words - ULT

• will be proclaimed
• darkness
• light

Translation Words - UST

• shouted
• dark, someday people will
• the daylight. Whatever you
Luke 12:4

But I say to you, my friends (ULT)
My friends, listen carefully...you, but they (UST)

Jesus readdresses his disciples to mark a shift in his speech to a new topic, in this case, to speak about not being afraid.

do not...have anything more to do (ULT)
Do not...do anything more to you (UST)

“they cannot cause any more harm”

Translation Words - ULT

• be afraid
• body

Translation Words - UST

• be afraid
• people; they can kill
Luke 12:5

Fear the one who, after...has authority (ULT)
the...be afraid of God, because he not only...to...has...right (UST)

The phrase “the one” refers to God. This could be reworded. Alternate translation: “Fear God who, after...has authority” or “Fear God, because after...he has authority” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

after he has killed (ULT)
the...to cause...to die (UST)

“after he kills you”

has authority to throw into hell (ULT)
has...right...he also has the right to throw them into hell (UST)

This is a general statement about God’s authority to judge people. It does not mean this will happen to the disciples. Alternate translation: “has authority to throw people into hell”

Translation Words - ULT

• to fear
• Fear
• fear (2)
• hell
• authority

Translation Words - UST

• be afraid of. You should
• be afraid of God, because he not only
• be afraid of (2)
• hell
• right
Luke 12:6

Are not five sparrows sold for two small coins (ULT)
Think about the sparrows. They have so little value that you can buy five...for only two small coins (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: “You know that five sparrows are sold for only two small coins.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

sparrows (ULT)
Think about the sparrows. They have...five (UST)

very small, seed-eating birds

not one of them is forgotten in the sight of God (ULT)
of them...yet God never forgets any of them (UST)

This could be stated in active form and in positive form. Alternate translation: “God never forgets any of them” or “God indeed remembers every sparrow” (See: Active or Passive and Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

• God

Translation Words - UST

• yet God
Luke 12:7

even the hairs of your head are all numbered (ULT)
God even...knows how many hairs there are on your head (UST)

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows even how many hairs are on your head" (See: Active or Passive)

Do not fear (ULT)
Do not be afraid (UST)

The reason for the fear is not stated. Possible meanings are 1) “Do not be afraid of what will happen to you” or 2) “So do not be afraid of people who could hurt you.”

You are more valuable than many sparrows (ULT)
because you are more valuable to God than many sparrows (UST)

“You are worth more to God than many sparrows”

Translation Words - ULT

• fear
• head

Translation Words - UST

• be afraid
• on...head
Luke 12:8

But I say to you (ULT)
I tell you also, that if (UST)

Jesus readdresses his audience to mark a shift in his speech to a new topic, in this case, to speak about confession.

everyone who confesses me before men (ULT)
people tell others that...my disciples (UST)

What is confessed can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “whoever tells others that he is my disciple” or “anyone who acknowledges before others that he is loyal to me” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the Son of Man (ULT)
I, the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man”

Translation Words - ULT

• angels
• God
• confesses
• will...confess
• Son of Man

Translation Words - UST

• angels
• God's
• people tell others that...my disciples
• will say...that those people are my
• I, the Son...of Man
Luke 12:9

but he who denies me before men (ULT)
But if they tell others that they are not my disciples (UST)

“he who disowns me before people.” What is denied can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “whoever refuses to acknowledge to others that he is my disciple” or “if anyone refuses to say that he is loyal to me, he” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

will be denied (ULT)
are not my disciples (UST)

“will be disowned.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Son of Man will deny him” or “I will deny that he is my disciple” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• angels
• God

Translation Words - UST

• angels that
• then I will say to God's
Luke 12:10

And everyone who speaks a word against the Son of Man (ULT)
I also tell you that if people say evil things about me, the Son of Man, God will (UST)

“Everyone who says something bad about the Son of Man”

it will be forgiven him (ULT)
forgive them (UST)

“he will be forgiven.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will forgive him for that” (See: Active or Passive)

against...who blasphemes...the Holy Spirit (ULT)
evil things about me...say evil things about the Holy Spirit (UST)

“speaks evil against the Holy Spirit”

but to him...it will not be forgiven (ULT)
that. But if people...God will not forgive them for that (UST)

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: “but he...God will not forgive him” or “but he...God will consider him guilty forever” (See: Active or Passive and Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

• Holy
• Holy Spirit
• it will be forgiven
• it will...be forgiven (2)
• Son of Man
• who blasphemes

Translation Words - UST

• the Holy
• the Holy...Spirit
• forgive
• God will...forgive them for that (2)
• Son of Man, God will
• say evil things about
Luke 12:11

When they bring you (ULT)
So when people bring you (UST)

It is not stated who brings them into judgment.

before the synagogues (ULT)
into...synagogues to question you before the (UST)

“into the synagogues to question you before the religious leaders”

the rulers, and the authorities

It may be necessary to combine these into one statement. Alternate translation: “other people who have power in the country”

Translation Words - ULT

• synagogues
• authorities
• rulers

Translation Words - UST

• synagogues
• religious leaders
• other people who have power in...country
Luke 12:12

in that hour (ULT)
at that very time (UST)

“at that time” or “then”

Translation Words - ULT

• Holy
• Holy Spirit
• will teach
• hour

Translation Words - UST

• Holy
• Holy Spirit
• will tell
• time

ULT
12 for the Holy Spirit will teach you in that hour what you ought to say.”

UST
12 because the Holy Spirit will tell you at that very time what you should say.”
Luke 12:13

General Information:
This is a break in Jesus’ teachings. A man asks Jesus to do something and Jesus responds to him.

to divide the inheritance with me (ULT)
the...divide...father’s property with me (UST)

In that culture, inheritances came from the father, usually after the father had died. You may need to make explicit that the speaker’s father had probably died. Alternate translation: “share my father’s property with me now that our father is dead” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• inheritance
• brother
• Teacher

Translation Words - UST

• father’s property
• my brother to
• Teacher

ULT 13 Then someone from the crowd said to him, “Teacher, tell my brother to divide the inheritance with me.”

UST 13 Then one of the people in the crowd said to Jesus, “Teacher, tell my brother to divide my father’s property with me!”
Luke 12:14

Man (ULT)
Man (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this is simply a way to address a stranger or 2) Jesus is rebuking the man. Your language might have a way of addressing people in either of these ways. Some people do not translate this word at all.

who made me a judge or a mediator over you (ULT)
no one made me a judge to settle arguments that people have about property (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the man. Some languages would use the plural form for “you” or “your.” Alternate translation: “I am not your judge or mediator.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• made
• a mediator
• a judge

Translation Words - UST

• made
• to settle arguments that people have about property
• a judge
Luke 12:15

Then he said to them (ULT)

Then...said to the whole crowd (UST)

The word “them” here probably refers to the whole crowd of people.
Alternate translation: “And Jesus said to the crowd”

keep yourselves from all greedy desires (ULT)
Be careful...to be greedy...not determined by...many (UST)

“guard yourself from every form of greed.” Alternate translation: “do not allow yourself to love having things” or “do not let the urge to have more things control you”

person's life (ULT)
any way! The value...man's life...he (UST)

This is a general statement of fact. It does not refer to any specific person. Some languages have a way of expressing that.

the abundance...of his possessions (ULT)
a...things...he...of...owns (UST)

“how many things he owns” or “how much wealth he has”

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• possessions
• abundance
• greedy desires

Translation Words - UST

• man's life
• owns
• things
• to be greedy
Luke 12:16

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues his teaching by telling a parable. (See: Parables)

Then he spoke...them (ULT)
Then he told...them (UST)

Jesus was probably still speaking to the entire crowd.

yielded abundantly (ULT)
produced abundant crops (UST)

“grew a very good harvest”

Translation Words - ULT

• a parable

Translation Words - UST

• this illustration
Luke 12:17

What will I do, because I do not have a place to store my crops (ULT)
I do not know what to do, because I do not have any place big enough to store all my crops (UST)

This question reflects what the man was thinking to himself. Alternate translation: “I do not know what to do, because I do not have any place big enough to store all my crops!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
• crops

Translation Words - UST
• crops
Luke 12:18

barns (ULT)
grain bins (UST)

buildings where farmers store the crops they have harvested

other goods (ULT)
other things…the (UST)

possessions

Translation Words - ULT
• other goods
• grain

Translation Words - UST
• other things
• grain

ULT
18 So he said, 'I will do this: I will pull down my barns and build bigger ones, and there I will store all of my grain and other goods.

UST
18 Then he thought to himself, 'I know what I will do! I will tear down my grain bins and build larger ones! Then I will store all my grain and other things in the big new bins.
Luke 12:19

Then I will say to my soul, “Soul, you have many goods stored up for many years. Rest easy, eat, drink, be merry (ULT)
Then I will say to myself, “Now I have enough things stored up to last many years. So now I will take life easy. I will eat and drink and be happy (UST)

“I will say to myself, ‘I have...years. Rest...merry.’” or “I will tell myself that I have...years, so I can rest...merry.” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• soul
• Soul
• goods
• years
• be merry
• Rest easy

Translation Words - UST

• myself, “Now
• have
• things
• years
• be happy
• So now I will take life easy
Luke 12:20

Connecting Statement:

Jesus quotes how God responds to the rich man, as he finishes telling his parable.

this very night your soul is required of you (ULT)
You foolish man...Tonight you will die...all the things you...for...to (UST)

The “soul” refers to the life of a person. Alternate translation: “you will die tonight” or “I will take your life from you tonight” (See: Euphemism and Active or Passive)

and the things you have prepared, whose will they be (ULT)
Then...have saved up...yourself will belong...someone else, not to you (UST)

“who will own what you have stored up?” or “who will have what you prepared?” God uses a question to make the man realize that he would no longer possess those things. Alternate translation: “the things that you have prepared will belong to someone else!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• Foolish man
• God
• soul

Translation Words - UST

• You foolish man
• God
• you
Luke 12:21

the one who stores up treasure (ULT)
store up things…the (UST)

“saves up valuable things”

is not rich toward God (ULT)
to those who...who do not value...things that God considers valuable (UST)

has not used his time and possessions for the things that are important to God

Translation Words - UST

- God

Translation Words - ULT

- God

ULT
21 So it is with the one who stores up treasure for himself, and is not rich toward God.”

UST
21 Then Jesus ended this illustration by saying, “That is what will happen to those who store up things just for themselves, but who do not value the things that God considers valuable.”
Luke 12:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching his disciples in front of the crowd.

For this reason (ULT)
So...this (UST)
“For that reason” or “Because of what this story teaches”

I say to you (ULT)
I want to tell you (UST)
“I want to tell you something important” or “you need to listen carefully to this”

what...about your body...you will wear (ULT)
need in order to live. Do not worry about whether you will have enough food to eat...enough clothes to wear (UST)

“about your body and what you will wear” or “about having enough clothes to put on your body”

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• body
• disciples
• you will wear

Translation Words - UST

• need in order to live. Do not worry about whether you will have enough food to eat
• enough clothes to wear
• disciples
• enough clothes to wear
Luke 12:23

For life is more than food (ULT)
Your life is more important than the food...is (UST)

This is a general statement of value. Alternate translation: “life is more important than the food you eat”

the body more than clothes (ULT)
body...more important than the clothes you put on it (UST)

“your body is more important than the clothes you wear”

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• body
• clothes

Translation Words - UST

• Your life is
• body
• clothes you put on it

ULT
23 For life is more than food, and the body more than clothes.

UST
23 Your life is more important than the food you eat and your body is more important than the clothes you put on it.
Luke 12:24

the ravens (ULT)
the birds: They do not plant seeds (UST)

This refers either to 1) crows, a kind of bird that eats mostly grain, or 2) ravens, a kind of bird that eats the flesh of dead animals. Jesus’ audience would have considered the ravens worthless since the Jewish people could not eat these types of birds.

storeroom...barn (ULT)
in which to store crops. But God provides food...in which to store crops. But God provides food (UST)

These are places where food is stored.

How much more valuable you are than the birds (ULT)
for...You are certainly much more valuable than birds (UST)

This is an exclamation, not a question. Jesus emphasizes the fact that people are much more valuable to God than birds. (See: Exclamations)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• they...sow
• reap

Translation Words - UST

• in which to store crops. But God provides food
• birds: They do not plant seeds
• and they do not harvest crops
Luke 12:25

Which of you...add a cubit to his lifespan?

Jesus uses a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: “None of you can make your life any longer by being anxious!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

add a cubit to his lifespan (ULT)
add even a minute to his life (UST)

This is a metaphor because a cubit is a measure of length, rather than of time. The image is of a person's life stretched out as if it were a board, a rope, or some other physical object. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• can
• a cubit

Translation Words - UST

• can
• even a minute
Luke 12:26

If then you are not able to do such a very little thing, why do you worry about the rest (ULT)
So since you cannot even do that small thing, you certainly should not worry about anything else (UST)

Jesus uses another question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: “Since you cannot do even this small thing, you should not worry about the other things.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• you are...able to do

Translation Words - UST

• even do that
Luke 12:27

Consider the lilies—how they grow (ULT)
Think about the way that flowers grow (UST)

“Think about how the lilies grow”

Lilies are beautiful flowers that grow wild in the fields. If your language does not have a word for lily, you can use the name of another flower like that or translate it as “flowers” (See: Translate Unknowns)

neither do they spin (ULT)
and they do not make their own clothes (UST)

The process of making thread or yard for cloth is called “spinning.” It may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: “neither do they make thread in order to make cloth” or “and they do not make yarn” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Solomon in all his glory (ULT)
even though King Solomon, who lived long ago, wore very beautiful clothes, he was (UST)

“Solomon, who had great wealth” or “Solomon, who wore beautiful clothes”

Translation Words - ULT

• glory
• Solomon
• They...labor
• like
• was...clothed

Translation Words - UST

• who lived long ago, wore very beautiful clothes
• King Solomon
• work to earn money
• as
• as well dressed
Luke 12:28

Now if...the grass in the field, which exists (ULT)
God makes the plants beautiful even though they grow
for only a short time...But (UST)

“If God clothes the grass in the field like that, and it” or “If God gives
the grass in the field such beautiful clothing, and it.” God making the
grass beautiful is spoken of as if God were putting beautiful clothes
on the grass. Alternate translation: “If God makes the grass in the
field beautiful like this, and it” (See: Metaphor)

is thrown into the oven (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone
throws it into a fire” (See: Active or Passive)

how much more will he clothe you (ULT)
he will care for you much more than he...you (UST)

This is an exclamation, not a question. Jesus emphasizes that he will certainly take care of people even better than
he does the grass. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “he will certainly clothe you even better” (See:
Exclamations)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• O you of little faith
• clothes

Translation Words - UST

• you are very precious to God, and
• do...trust him so little
• cares for the plants. Why
Luke 12:29

**do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink**

“Do not focus on what you will eat and drink” or “Do not greatly desire more to eat and drink”

**Translation Words - ULT**

• seek

**Translation Words - UST**

• wonder about

**ULT**

29 So do not seek what you will eat and what you will drink, and do not be anxious.

**UST**

29 Do not wonder about what you will eat and drink, and do not keep worrying about those things.
Luke 12:30

all the nations of the world (ULT)
The people who do not know God are always (UST)

Here “nations” refers to “unbelievers.” Alternate translation: “all people of other nations” or “all the unbelievers in the world” (See: Metonymy)

your...Father (ULT)
your...Father in heaven (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• world
• Father
• nations
• seek
• knows

Translation Words - UST

• people who do not know God are
• Father in heaven
• people who do not know God are
• worried about
• knows

ULT
30 For all the nations of the world seek these things, and your Father knows that you need them.

UST
30 The people who do not know God are always worried about such things. But your Father in heaven knows that you need them.
Luke 12:31

seek his kingdom (ULT)
make it the most important thing in your life to accept God when he rules over you (UST)

“focus on God’s kingdom” or “greatly desire God’s kingdom”

these things will be added to you (ULT)
give you everything you need (UST)

“these things also will be given to you.” “These things” refers to food and clothing. This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will also give you these things” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• kingdom
• seek

Translation Words - UST

• to accept God when...rules over you
• make it...most important thing in your life
Luke 12:32

little flock (ULT)
little flock (UST)

Jesus is calling his disciples a flock. A flock is a group of sheep or goats that a shepherd cares for. As a shepherd cares for his sheep, God cares for Jesus’ disciples. Alternate translation: “small group” or “dear group” (See: Metaphor)

your Father (ULT)
Your Father in heaven (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

Translation Words - ULT

• fear
• Father
• kingdom
• flock
• is very pleased

Translation Words - UST

• be afraid
• Father in heaven
• all...benefits he plans to when he rules everything completely
• flock
• wants
Luke 12:33

give to the poor (ULT)
Give the money to those who...have the food...clothing they need or a place to live (UST)

It may be helpful to state what they receive. Alternate translation: “give to poor people the money you earn from the sales” (See: Ellipsis)

Make for yourselves purses...treasure...in the heavens (ULT)
do...Get yourselves wallets that...and you will store up treasure...in heaven (UST)

The purses and treasure in the heavens are the same thing. They both represent God's blessing in heaven. (See: Metaphor)

Make for yourselves (ULT)
do...Get yourselves (UST)

This is the result of giving to the poor. Alternate translation: “In this way you will make for yourselves”

purses which will not wear out (ULT)
wallets that do not wear out (UST)

“money bags that will not get holes in them”

that does not run out (ULT)
it will always be safe (UST)

“does not diminish” or “does not become less”

no thief comes near (ULT)
not...There, no thief can come near to steal it, and (UST)

“thieves do not come near”

and no moth destroys (ULT)
no moths can destroy your clothing (UST)

“moths do not destroy”

moth (ULT)
moths (UST)

A “moth” is a small insect that eats holes in fabric. You may need to use a different insect, such as an ant or termite.

Translation Words - ULT

• heavens
• possessions
• thief
• to the poor
• destroys

Translation Words - UST

• heaven
• things...own
• There, no thief can
• money to those who...have the food...clothing they need or a place to live
• can destroy your clothing
Luke 12:34

where your treasure is, there your heart will be also
“your heart will be focused on where you store your treasure”

your heart (ULT)
think about...spend your time on (UST)

Here “heart” refers to a person’s thoughts. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• heart

Translation Words - UST

• think about
Luke 12:35

**General Information:**

Jesus begins to tell a parable. (See: Parables)

**Let your long clothing be tucked in at your belt (ULT)**

People wore long flowing robes. They would tuck them into their belt to keep the robes out of the way while they worked. Alternate translation: “Tuck your clothing into your belt so you are ready to serve” or “Be dressed and ready to serve” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

**Have put on their work clothes (UST)**

**let your lamps be kept burning (ULT)**

Always be ready for doing God’s work, like people who...lamps burning all night (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “keep your lamps burning” (See: Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lamps
- at your belt

**Translation Words - UST**

- lamps
- have put on their work clothes
Luke 12:36

be like...people waiting for their master (ULT)
like servants who are waiting for their master...the (UST)

Jesus commands the disciples to be ready for him to return the same way servants should be ready for their master to return. (See: Simile)

he returns from the marriage feast (ULT)
return...to return after being at a wedding feast. They are waiting...the door (UST)

“returns home from a marriage feast”

they may...open the door for him (ULT)
open...door for him (UST)

This refers to the door of the master’s house. It was the responsibility of his servants to open it for him. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- master
- marriage feast
- he returns
- be like

Translation Words - UST

- master
- wedding feast. They are waiting
- return
- like
Luke 12:37

Blessed are (ULT)
will reward (UST)

“How good it is for”

whom the master will find watching when he comes (ULT)
are awake when he returns, he (UST)

“whose master finds them waiting for him when he returns” or “who are ready when the master returns”

he will tuck in his clothing at his belt, and have them recline (ULT)
this: He will get dressed to serve, tell them to sit down (UST)

Because the servants have been faithful and ready to serve their master, the master will now reward them by serving them.

Translation Words - ULT

• Blessed are
• master
• Truly
• and serve
• watching
• servants

Translation Words - UST

• will reward
• he
• I will tell
• he will serve
• are awake when he
• servants
Luke 12:38

in the second...watch (ULT)
between midnight...sunrise (UST)

The second watch was between 9:00 p.m. and midnight. Alternate translation: “late at night” or “just before midnight”

Whether...in the...third watch (ULT)
Even if...between midnight...sunrise (UST)

The third watch was from midnight to 3:00 a.m. Alternate translation: “or if he comes very late at night”

Translation Words - ULT

• blessed
• watch

Translation Words - UST

• he will be very pleased with
• sunrise

ULT
38 Whether the master comes in the second, or even in the third watch, and finds them thus, blessed are those servants.

UST
38 Even if he comes between midnight and sunrise, if he finds that his servants are awake and ready for him, he will be very pleased with them.
Luke 12:39

had known...at which hour (ULT)
know...what time (UST)

“had known when”

he would not have let his house be broken into (ULT)
he would have stayed awake and would not have allowed the thief to break into his house (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he would not have let the thief break into his house” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• master of the house
• thief
• hour
• house
• understand
• had known

Translation Words - UST

• owner of a house
• thief
• time
• house
• you must also remember
• knew
because the Son of Man is coming at an hour which you do not expect (ULT)
because I, the Son of Man, will come again at a time...not expect me (UST)

The only similarity between a thief and the Son of Man is that people do not know when either one will come, so they need to be ready.

at an hour which you do not expect (ULT)
at a time...not expect me (UST)

“do not know at what time”

the Son of Man is coming (ULT)
I, the Son of Man, will come again (UST)

Jesus is talking about himself. Alternate translation: “when I, the Son of Man, will come”

Translation Words - ULT

• Son of Man
• at an hour

Translation Words - UST

• I, the Son...of Man
• at a time
Luke 12:41

General Information:
In verse 41, there is a break in the story line as Peter asks Jesus a question about the previous parable.

Connecting Statement:
In verse 42, Jesus begins to tell another parable.

Translation Words - ULT
- Lord
- parable
- Peter

Translation Words - UST
- Lord, are you
- illustration only
- Peter

ULT
41 Then Peter said, “Lord, are you speaking this parable to us, or also to everyone?”

UST
41 Peter asked, “Lord, are you giving this illustration only for us or for everyone else also?”
Luke 12:42

Who then is...their portion of food at the right time (ULT)
I am saying it for everyone who is...in...the proper time (UST)

Jesus uses a question to answer Peter’s question indirectly. He expected those who wanted to be faithful managers to understand that the parable was about them. Alternate translation: “I said it for everyone who is...right time.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the faithful and wise manager (ULT)
like a faithful...wise servant who...a manager (UST)

Jesus tells another parable about how servants should be faithful while they wait for their master to return. (See: Parables)

the Lord...whom...will appoint to care for his servants (ULT)
The Lord...in his master’s house. His...puts him...charge...making sure...other servants...at (UST)

“whom his lord puts in charge of his other servants”

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- master (2)
- and wise
- will appoint
- faithful
- the right time
- manager

Translation Words - UST

- The Lord
- master (2)
- wise servant
- puts him...charge
- like a faithful
- time
- a manager
Luke 12:43

Blessed is that servant (ULT)
If the servant...when...his master will reward him (UST)

“How good it is for that servant”

servant whom his...master...finds doing so when he comes (ULT)
If the...is doing that work...when...his...master...returns (UST)

“if his lord finds him doing that work when he comes back”

Translation Words - ULT

• Blessed is
• master
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• his master will reward him
• master
• servant
Luke 12:44

Truly I say to you (ULT)
I tell you this (UST)

This expression means they should pay special attention to what he is about to say.

he will appoint him over all his property (ULT)
The master will put...servant in charge of all he owns (UST)

“will put him in charge of all his property”

Translation Words - ULT

• Truly
• he will appoint
• property

Translation Words - UST

• this
• put...charge of
• owns
Luke 12:45

that servant (ULT)
that servant manager (UST)

This refers to the servant whose lord has put him in charge of the other servants.

says...his heart (ULT)
says...himself...He (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: “thinks to himself” (See: Metonymy)

servant...My...master...is taking a long time to return (ULT)
servant manager...My master has been away for a long time (UST)

“My master will not return soon”

and...the male...the female servants (ULT)
then...the other servants, both male...female ones (UST)

The words that are translated here as “male and female servants” are normally translated as “boys” and “girls.” They may indicate that the servants were young or that they were dear to their master.

Translation Words - ULT

- master
- heart
- to become drunk
- servant
- male
- female servants

Translation Words - UST

- master
- himself
- and get drunk
- servant manager
- male
- female ones
Luke 12:46

in a day that he does not expect, and in an hour that he does not know (ULT)
at a time when...not expect him. Then...not (UST)

The words "day" and "hour" form a merism of time that refers to any time, and the words "expect" and "know" have similar meanings, so the two phrases here are parallel to emphasize that the coming of the lord will be a total surprise to the servant. However, the phrases should not be combined unless your language has no different words for "know" and "expect" or "day" and "hour." Alternate translation: "at a time when the servant is not expecting him" (See: Merism and Parallelism)

will cut him in pieces and appoint the place for him with the unfaithful (ULT)
the...his master will punish him severely...assign him a place with those...do...serve him faithfully (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) this is an exaggeration for the master dealing out harsh punishment toward the slave, or 2) this describes the manner in which the servant will be executed and buried as punishment. (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- master
- appoint
- unfaithful
- an hour
- a day
- servant
- he...know

Translation Words - UST

- his master might
- assign
- do...serve him faithfully
- a time...not
- not expect him
- servant does
- a time...not
Luke 12:47

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the parable.

But that servant, the one having known the will of his master, and not having prepared or done according to his will, will be beaten with many blows (ULT)

The servant who knew what his master wanted but did not get ready and do it will be severely punished (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “But as for the servant who knows his lord’s will does not prepare or do according to it, the master will beat him with many blows” (See: Active or Passive)

the will of his master...the will...his...according to (ULT)

his master wanted...what his...wanted (UST)

“what his master wanted him to do...it”

Translation Words - ULT

- master
- servant
- having known

Translation Words - UST

- master
- servant
- knew
Luke 12:48

But the one who...few blows (ULT)
But every servant who did...mild (UST)

Both the servant who knows the master’s will and the servant who does not know it are punished, but the words that begin with “That servant” (verse 47) show the servant who intentionally disobeyed his master was punished more severely than the other servant.

But everyone to whom much has been given, from them much will be required (ULT)
what his master wanted...A lot is expected from those people who have been given a lot...with (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They will require more of anyone who has received much” or “The master will require more of everyone he has given much to” (See: Active or Passive)

to whom...much...even more will be asked of him (ULT)
those who...him to...Even more is expected from...a lot (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the master will ask even more of the one...much” or “the master will require even more of the one...much” (See: Active or Passive)

to whom much has been entrusted (ULT)
those who have been entrusted...a lot (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the one to whom the master has given much property to take care of” or “the one to whom the master has given much responsibility” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- things that deserved
- did
- has been entrusted
- know

Translation Words - UST

- did something wrong
- do
- have been entrusted
- know
Luke 12:49

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to teach his disciples.

I came to cast fire upon the earth (ULT)
I came...set the earth on fire (UST)

“I came to throw fire on the earth” or “I came to set the earth on fire.” Possible meanings are 1) Jesus has come to judge people or 2) Jesus has come to purify believers or 3) Jesus has come to cause division among people. (See: Metaphor)

how I wish that it were already kindled (ULT)
I wish that it were already on fire (UST)

This exclamation emphasizes how much he wants this to happen. Alternate translation: “I wish very much that it was already lit” or “how I wish that it had already begun” (See: Exclamations)

Translation Words - ULT

  • fire
  • earth

Translation Words - UST

  • fire
  • earth
Luke 12:50

a baptism...I have...to be baptized with (ULT)
a baptism of terrible suffering...I must go through (UST)

Here “baptism” refers to what Jesus must suffer. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: “I must go through a baptism of terrible suffering” or “I must be overwhelmed by suffering as a person being baptized is covered by water” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

But (ULT)
a baptism of terrible suffering (UST)

The word “but” is used to show that he cannot cast the fire on the earth until after he goes through his baptism.

how I am distressed until it is completed (ULT)
I will continue to be distressed until my suffering is finished (UST)

This exclamation emphasizes how distressed he was. Alternate translation: “I am terribly distressed and will be so until I complete this baptism of suffering” (See: Exclamations)

Translation Words - ULT

- a baptism
- to be baptized with

Translation Words - UST

- a baptism of terrible suffering
- I...go through
Luke 12:51

Do you think that I came to bring peace on the earth? No, I tell you, but rather division (ULT)
Do you think that as a result of my coming to earth people will live together peacefully? No! I must tell you, instead, people will be divided (UST)

Jesus asks a question to let them know that he is going to correct their wrong understanding. You may need to supply the words “I came” that are omitted in the second sentence. Alternate translation: “You think that I came to bring peace on the earth, but I tell you I did not. Instead, I came to bring division” (See: Rhetorical Question)

division (ULT)
will be divided (UST)

“hostility” or “discord”

Translation Words - ULT

• peace
• earth

Translation Words - UST

• people will live together peacefully
• earth
Luke 12:52

there will be...five in one house (ULT)
they will be...people in...one house who (UST)

It may be helpful to state that this refers to people. Alternate translation: “there will be five people in one house” (See: Ellipsis)

against...against (ULT)
do not believe in me will oppose...do not believe in me will oppose (UST)

“will oppose...will oppose”

Translation Words - ULT
• house

Translation Words - UST
• house who
Luke 12:53

against (ULT)
A man will oppose (UST)

“will oppose”

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• son
• father
• father

Translation Words - UST

• his son, or a son will oppose his father
• his son, or a son will oppose his father
• A man will oppose
• his son, or a son will oppose his father

ULT
53 They will be divided, father against son, and son against father; mother against her daughter, and daughter against her mother; mother-in-law against her daughter-in-law, and daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law.”

UST
53 A man will oppose his son, or a son will oppose his father. A woman will oppose her daughter, or a woman will oppose her mother. A woman will oppose her daughter-in-law, or a woman will oppose her mother-in-law.”
Luke 12:54

General Information:

Jesus begins to speak to the crowd.

When you see a cloud rising...so it happens (ULT)
When you see a dark cloud forming...happens (UST)

This condition normally meant rain was coming in Israel. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

A shower...is coming (ULT)
It is going to rain (UST)

“Rain is coming” or “It is going to rain”

Translation Words - ULT

• rising

Translation Words - UST

• forming
Luke 12:55

when a south wind is blowing (ULT)
When the wind blows from the south (UST)

This condition normally meant hot weather was coming in Israel. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT
55 And when a south wind is blowing, you say, 'There will be a scorching heat,' and it happens.

UST
55 When the wind blows from the south, you say, 'It is going to be a very hot day!' and you are right.
Luke 12:56

of the sky and of the earth (ULT) clouds and the wind, you are able to discern what is happening regarding the weather. Why are you (UST)

“the earth and the sky”

but how do you not know how to interpret the present time (ULT) wind, you are able to discern...is happening regarding the weather. Why are you...not able to discern what God is doing at this present time (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. Jesus uses this question to convict them. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “you should know how to interpret the present time.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• sky
• Hypocrites
• time
• to interpret
• to interpret (2)
• earth
• You know how
• you...know how (2)

Translation Words - UST

• clouds
• You hypocrites! By
• time
• wind, you are able to discern...is happening regarding the weather. Why are you able to discern...at (2)
• wind, you are able to discern...is happening regarding the weather. Why are you
• wind, you are able to discern...is happening regarding the weather. Why are you able to discern...at (2)
Luke 12:57

And why do you not even judge what is right for yourselves (ULT)
Each of you ought to decide what is the right thing for you to do while you still have time to do that (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke the crowd. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You yourselves should discern what is right.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

for yourselves (ULT)
Each of you...thing for you to do (UST)

“on your own initiative”

Translation Words - ULT

• what is right
• you...judge

Translation Words - UST

• right
• ought to decide
Luke 12:58

For when you are going...into prison (ULT)
while you are still...in prison (UST)

Jesus uses a hypothetical situation to teach the crowd. His point is that they should resolve the things they are able to resolve without involving the public courts. This can be restated to make it clear it might not happen. Alternate translation: “For if you were to go...into prison” (See: Hypothetical Situations)

when...you are going (ULT)
while...you are still (UST)

Though Jesus is talking to a crowd, the situation he is presenting is something that a person would go through alone. So in some languages the word “you” would be singular. (See: Forms of You)

to settle the matter with him (ULT)
settle things...he (UST)

“settle the matter with your adversary”

the judge (ULT)
judge, the...could decide that you are guilty (UST)

This refers to the magistrate, but the term here is more specific and threatening.

you...deliver (ULT)
you...turn...over (UST)

“does not take you”

Translation Words - ULT

• adversary
• prison
• the magistrate
• judge
• when

Translation Words - UST

• has accused
• prison
• to the court
• judge...could decide that you are guilty
• judge
• while
Luke 12:59

I say to you...you have paid the very last bit of money (ULT)
I tell you that if you go to...pay every bit of what the judge says you owe (UST)

This is the end of the hypothetical situation, which begins in verse 58, that Jesus uses to teach the crowd. His point is that they should resolve the things they are able to resolve without involving the public courts. This can be restated to make it clear it might not happen. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

the very last bit of money (ULT)
every bit of what the judge says you owe (UST)

“the entire amount of money that your adversary demands”

ULT
59 I say to you, you will never come out from there until you have paid the very last bit of money."

UST
59 I tell you that if you go to prison, you will never get out until you are able to pay every bit of what the judge says you owe.”
Luke 13

Luke 13 General Notes

Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Unknown events

The people and Jesus speak about two events that they knew about but about which no one today knows anything except what Luke has written (Luke 13:1-5). Your translation should tell only what Luke tells.

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: “those who are least important will be first, and those who are most important will be last” (Luke 13:30).
Luke 13:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus is still speaking in front of the crowd. Some people in the crowd ask him a question and he begins to respond. This continues the story that begins in Luke 12:1.

at that time (ULT)
time...Jesus...whom soldiers had recently killed in Jerusalem (UST)

This phrase connects this event to the end of chapter 12, when Jesus was teaching a crowd of people.

whose blood Pilate mixed with their sacrifices (ULT)
that...Pilate, the Roman governor, had ordered soldiers to kill...while they were offering sacrifices in the temple (UST)

Here “blood” refers to the death of the Galileans. They were probably killed while they were offering their sacrifices. This could be stated explicitly as in the UST. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

whose blood Pilate mixed with their sacrifices (ULT)
that...Pilate, the Roman governor, had ordered soldiers to kill...while they were offering sacrifices in the temple (UST)

Pilate probably ordered his soldiers to kill people rather than doing it himself. Alternate translation: “whom Pilate's soldiers killed as they were sacrificing animals” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- Pilate
- Galileans
- time
- who told
- sacrifices

Translation Words - UST

- kill
- Pilate
- some Galileans
- time
- told
- were offering sacrifices in...temple
Luke 13:2

Do you think that these Galileans...sinful...they suffered in this way (ULT)
Do you think that...those people from Galilee...they...more sinful...this happened to (UST)

“Were these Galileans more sinful...way?” or “Does this prove that these Galileans were more sinful...way?” Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people.

Translation Words - ULT

• sinful
• Galileans
• Galileans
• they suffered

Translation Words - UST

• more sinful
• people from Galilee
• other Galileans
• happened to

ULT
2 And he answered and said to them, “Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful than all the other Galileans because they suffered in this way?

UST
2 Jesus replied to them, “Do you think that this happened to those people from Galilee because they were more sinful than all the other Galileans?”
Luke 13:3

No, I tell you. But if you do not repent, you will all perish in the same way (ULT)
I assure you, that was not the reason! But you need to remember that God will similarly punish you if you do not turn from your sinful behavior (UST)

Jesus uses this question, which begins with the words “Do you think that these Galileans were more sinful...in this way?” (verse 2), to challenge the understanding of the people. “You think that these Galileans were more sinful...in this way, but they were not. But if you do not repent...same way” or “Do not think that these Galileans were more sinful...in this way. If you do not repent...same way” (See: Rhetorical Question)

No, I tell you (ULT)
I assure you, that was not the reason...you (UST)

Here “I tell you” emphasizes “no.” Alternate translation: “They certainly were not more sinful” or “You are wrong to think that their suffering proves that they were more sinful”

you will all perish in the same way (ULT)
need to remember that God will similarly punish you (UST)

“all of you also will die.” The phrase “in the same way” means they will experience the same result, not that they will die by the same method.

you will...perish (ULT)
punish you (UST)

die

Translation Words - ULT

• you will...perish
• you...repent
• in the same way

Translation Words - UST

• punish you
• turn from your sinful behavior
• need to remember that God will similarly
Luke 13:4

Or those (ULT)
Or what about...them (UST)

This is Jesus’ second example of people who suffered. Alternate translation: “Or consider those” or “Think about those”

eighteen (ULT)
the eighteen (UST)

“18 people” (See: Numbers)

Siloam (ULT)
at Siloam outside Jerusalem (UST)

This is the name of an area in Jerusalem. (See: How to Translate Names)

do you think that they were worse sinners than...in Jerusalem (ULT)
Do you think that this happened...because they were worse sinners than...Jerusalem (UST)

“does this prove that they were more sinful...Jerusalem?” Jesus uses this question to challenge the understanding of the people.

they were worse sinners than (ULT)
because they were worse sinners than (UST)

The crowd assumed that they died in this terrible way because they were especially sinful. This could be explicitly stated. Alternate translation: “they died because they were worse sinners” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• in Jerusalem
• tower

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem
• tower
Luke 13:5

No, I say (ULT)
I assure you, that was not the reason! But (UST)

Jesus uses this question, which begins with the words “do you think they were worse sinners...Jerusalem?”, to challenge the understanding of the people. “you think that they were more sinful...Jerusalem, but I say that they were not” or “I say that you should not think that they were more sinful...Jerusalem” or “They certainly did not die because they were more sinful” or “You are wrong to think that their suffering proves that they were more sinful” (See: Rhetorical Question or Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

will...perish (ULT)
punish you (UST)
die

Translation Words - ULT

• will...perish
• you...repent
• likewise

Translation Words - UST

• punish you
• turn from your sinful behavior
• will similarly

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell the crowd a parable to explain his last statement, “But if you do not repent, all of you will also perish.” (See: Parables)

A certain man had a fig tree planted in his vineyard (ULT)
A man planted a fig tree in his garden (UST)

The owner of a vineyard had another person plant a fig tree in the vineyard.

Translation Words - ULT

• parable
• fruit
• a fig tree
• vineyard
• seeking

Translation Words - UST

• story
• figs
• fig tree
• a...garden
• pick

ULT
6 Then he spoke this parable, “A certain man had a fig tree planted in his vineyard, and he came seeking fruit on it, but did not find any.

UST
6 Then Jesus told them this story: “A man planted a fig tree in his garden. Each year he came to pick the figs, but there were never any on it.

Why let it even waste the ground (ULT)
It is just using up the nutrients...the soil for nothing (UST)

The man uses a question to emphasize that the tree is useless and the gardener should cut it down. Alternate translation: “Do not let it waste the ground.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• fruit
• Cut...down
• years
• fig tree
• seeking
• let it...waste

Translation Words - UST

• fruit
• Cut...down
• years
• tree
• I have been looking
• It is just using up the nutrients

ULT
7 And he said to the gardener, ‘Look, for three years I came seeking fruit on this fig tree and did not find any. Cut it down. Why let it even waste the ground?’

UST
7 Then he said to the gardener, ‘Look at this tree! I have been looking for fruit on it every year for the past three years, but there have been no figs. Cut it down! It is just using up the nutrients in the soil for nothing!’
Luke 13:8

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes telling his parable. This is the end of the story that began in Luke 12:1.

\begin{itemize}
  \item leave it alone (ULT)
  \item leave it here for (UST)
\end{itemize}

“Do not do anything to the tree” or “Do not cut it down”

\begin{itemize}
  \item put manure on it (ULT)
  \item fertilize it (UST)
\end{itemize}

“put manure in the soil.” Manure is animal dung. People put it in the ground to make the soil good for plants and trees. Alternate translation: “put fertilizer on it” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

\begin{itemize}
  \item Master
  \item year
\end{itemize}

Translation Words - UST

\begin{itemize}
  \item Sir
  \item year
\end{itemize}
Luke 13:9

If indeed it bears fruit, then good (ULT)
If it has figs on it next year, we can allow it to keep growing...by then (UST)

It may be helpful to state what will happen. Alternate translation: “If it has figs on it next year, we can allow it to keep growing” (See: Ellipsis)

you will cut it down (ULT)
you can cut it down (UST)

The servant was making a suggestion; he was not giving a command to the owner. Alternate translation: “Tell me to cut it down” or “I will cut it down”

Translation Words - ULT

• fruit
• you will cut...down
• it bears

Translation Words - UST

• it has figs
• you can cut...down
• it has figs
Luke 13:10

General Information:

These verses give background information about the setting of this part of the story and about a crippled woman who is introduced into the story. (See: Background Information)

Now (ULT)
Jesus was (UST)

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

in...the Sabbath (ULT)
On one Jewish day of rest (UST)

“on a Sabbath day.” Some languages would say “a Sabbath” because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

Translation Words - ULT

• synagogues
• Sabbath
• teaching

Translation Words - UST

• synagogues
• On one Jewish day...rest
• teaching people
Luke 13:11

there was a woman (ULT)
There was...a woman there whom an (UST)

The word “ behold” here alerts us to a new person in the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

for eighteen years (ULT)
eighteen years (UST)

“18 years” (See: Numbers)

a spirit...of weakness (ULT)
evil spirit...crippled (UST)

“an evil spirit that made her weak”

Translation Words - ULT

• a spirit
• for...years

Translation Words - UST

• evil spirit
• years
Luke 13:12

Woman, you are freed from your weakness (ULT)
Woman, I have healed you of this illness (UST)

“Woman, you are healed from your disease.” This can be expressed with an active verb: Alternate translation: “Woman, I have set you free from your weakness” (See: Active or Passive)

Woman, you are freed from your weakness (ULT)
Woman, I have healed you of this illness (UST)

By saying this, Jesus healed her. This can be expressed with a sentence that shows that he was causing it to happen, or by a command. Alternate translation: “Woman, I now free you from your weakness” or “Woman, be freed from your weakness” (See: Statements - Other Uses)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• he called her near

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• he called her over

he placed his hands on her (ULT)
He put...his hands...on...her (UST)

“He touched her”

she was straightened up (ULT)
she stood up straight (UST)

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “she stood up straight” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• she glorified
• hands

Translation Words - UST

• God
• began praising
• his hands
Luke 13:14

being indignant (ULT)
But the leader of the synagogue was angry (UST)

“was very angry”

answered...and said (ULT)
But the leader of the synagogue was angry...he said (UST)

“said” or “responded”

during them...and be healed (ULT)
those are the days...come on our...If you need healing (UST)

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “let someone heal you during those six days” (See: Active or Passive)

on the Sabbath day (ULT)
day of rest (UST)

“on a Sabbath day.” Some languages would say “a Sabbath” because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Sabbath
- Sabbath
- had healed
- and be healed
- to work
- days
- on the...day

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- the Jewish rest day
- rest
- had healed her
- If you need healing
- to work
- days each week
- day
Luke 13:15

But the Lord answered him (ULT)
Then the Lord replied to him, “You and (UST)

“The Lord responded to the synagogue ruler”

Hypocrites (ULT)
religious leaders are hypocrites! Each (UST)

Jesus speaks directly to the synagogue ruler, but the plural form includes the other religious rulers also. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “You and your fellow religious leaders are hypocrites” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Does not each of you on the Sabbath untie his ox or his donkey from the stall and lead it away to drink (ULT)
your fellow...of you also works on the day of rest sometimes! Would you not untie your ox or donkey to lead it from the food trough to where it can drink water (UST)

Jesus uses a question to get them to think about something they already knew. Alternate translation: “Every one of you unties his ox or his donkey from the stall and leads it to drink on the Sabbath.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

his ox...ox...donkey (ULT)
of you...the...your ox...the...donkey (UST)

These are animals that people care for by giving them water.

on the Sabbath (ULT)
day of rest (UST)

“on a Sabbath.” Some languages would say “a Sabbath” because we do not know which particular Sabbath day it was.

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• Hypocrites
• Sabbath
• ox
• donkey

Translation Words - UST

• Then the Lord replied to him...You and
• religious leaders are hypocrites! Each
• day of rest
• your ox
• donkey
Luke 13:16

*a daughter of Abraham (ULT)*
*woman is a Jew, descended from Abraham (UST)*

This is an idiom that means, “descendant of Abraham” (See: Idiom)

*whom...Satan bound (ULT)*
*Satan...as though he...had...tied her up (UST)*

Jesus compares people tying animals to the way Satan restricted the woman with this disease. Alternate translation: “whom Satan kept crippled by her illness” or “whom Satan bound with this disease” (See: Metaphor)

*for eighteen years (ULT)*
*has kept her crippled for eighteen...years...even (UST)*

“18 long years.” The word “long” here emphasizes that eighteen years was a very long time for the woman to suffer. Other languages may have other ways of emphasizing this. (See: Numbers)

*should she not be released from this bond on the Sabbath day (ULT)*
*Certainly you would agree that it is right that I free her from Satan...if I do it on a day of rest (UST)*

Jesus uses a question to tell the synagogue rulers that they are wrong. Jesus speaks about the women's disease as if it were ropes that bound her. This can be translated as an active statement. Alternate translation: “it is right to release her from the bonds of this illness...day.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- bound
- bond
- Satan
- Sabbath
- of Abraham
- years
- day

**Translation Words - UST**

- tied her up
- Satan
- Satan
- rest
- Abraham
- years
- a day
Luke 13:17

And as...was saying these things (ULT)
After...said that (UST)

“When Jesus said these things”

the glorious things that were being done by him
“the glorious things Jesus was doing”

Translation Words - ULT

• glorious things
• were ashamed
• was rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

• wonderful
• were ashamed of themselves
• were happy

ULT
17 And as he was saying these things, all those who opposed him were ashamed, but the whole crowd were rejoicing at all the glorious things that were being done by him.

UST
17 After he said that, his enemies were ashamed of themselves. But all the other people were happy about all the wonderful things he was doing.
Luke 13:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the people in the synagogue. (See: Parables)

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to (ULT)
How can I explain what it will be like when God shows himself as king? I will tell you what it will be like (UST)

Jesus uses two questions to introduce what he is about to teach. Alternate translation: “I will tell you what the kingdom of God is like... what I can compare it to.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

what can I compare it to (ULT)
I will tell you what...it will be like (UST)

This is basically the same as the previous question. Some languages can use both questions, and some would use only one. (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- kingdom of God
- like
- can I compare
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God...shows himself as king
- will be like when
- will be like
- shows himself as king
Luke 13:19

It is like a mustard seed (ULT)
It is like a tiny mustard seed (UST)

Jesus compares the kingdom to a mustard seed. Alternate translation: “The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed” (See: Simile)

a mustard seed (ULT)
a tiny mustard seed (UST)

A mustard seed is a very small seed that grows into a large plant. If this seed is not known, the phrase can be translated with the name of another seed like it or simply as “a small seed.” (See: Translate Unknowns)

and threw into his garden (ULT)
a man planted...in his field. It grew (UST)

“planted in his garden.” People planted some kinds of seeds by throwing them so that they scattered in the garden. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

a tree (ULT)
it until it became big, like a tree. It (UST)

The word “big” is an exaggeration that contrasts the tree with the tiny seed. Alternate translation: “a very large shrub” (See: Hyperbole)

the birds of the air (ULT)
birds (UST)

“birds of the sky.” Alternate translation: “birds that fly in the sky” or “birds”

Translation Words - ULT

- air
- like
- a...seed

Translation Words - UST

- birds
- like
- a tiny...seed
Luke 13:20

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the people in the synagogue. This is the end of this part of the story.

To what can I compare the kingdom of God (ULT) what it will be like when God shows himself as king (UST)

Jesus uses another question to introduce what he is about to teach. Alternate translation: “I will tell you another thing to which I can compare to the kingdom of God.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• kingdom of God
• can I compare
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God
• when...God...shows himself as king
• it will be like
• when...shows himself as king
Luke 13:21

It is like yeast (ULT)
It is like a little bit of yeast (UST)

Jesus compares the kingdom of God to yeast in bread dough. Alternate translation: “The kingdom of God is like yeast” (See: Simile)

like...yeast (ULT)
like a little bit of...yeast (UST)

Only a little bit of yeast is needed to make a lot of dough rise. This can be made clear, as it is in the UST. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

three measures of flour (ULT)
twenty-five kilograms of flour (UST)

This is a large amount of flour, since each measure was about 13 liters. You may need to use a term that your culture uses to measure flour. Alternate translation: “a large amount of flour”

Translation Words - ULT

• yeast
• was...leavened
• like

Translation Words - UST

• yeast
• batch of dough swell up
• like a little bit of
Luke 13:22

General Information:
Jesus responds to a question by using a metaphor about entering God's kingdom. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jerusalem
• teaching

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem
• taught the people

are those who are being saved only a few (ULT)
will God only save a few people (UST)

This could be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will God save only a few people?” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• are being saved
• Lord

Translation Words - UST

• will God only save a
• Lord
Luke 13:24

Struggle to enter through the narrow door (ULT)
You need to try hard to enter the narrow doorway (UST)

“Work hard to go through the narrow doorway.” Jesus is speaking about the entrance to God’s kingdom as if it were a small doorway to a house. Since Jesus is talking to a group, the “you” implied in this command is plural. (See: Metaphor and Forms of You)

the narrow door (ULT)
the narrow doorway (UST)

The fact that the door is narrow implies that it is difficult to go through it. Translate it in a way to keep this restrictive meaning. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

many...will seek to enter, but will not be able (ULT)
many people...will try some other way, but they will not be able to get in (UST)

It is implied that they will not be able to enter because of the difficulty of entering. The next verse explains the difficulty. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• will seek

Translation Words - UST

• will try
Luke 13:25

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to talk about entering into God's kingdom.

Once the owner
"After the owner"

the owner of the house (ULT)
After the owner of the house (UST)

This refers to the owner of the house with the narrow door in the previous verses. This is a metaphor for God as the ruler of the kingdom. (See: Metaphor)

you will begin to stand outside (ULT)
will stand outside (UST)

Jesus was talking to a crowd. The form of “you” is plural. He is addressing them as if they will not enter through the narrow door into the kingdom. (See: Forms of You)

the door...pound (ULT)
door, you...will knock on the (UST)

“hit on the door.” This is an attempt to gain the owner’s attention.

Translation Words - ULT

• owner of the house
• Lord
• gets up
• I...know

Translation Words - UST

• owner of the house
• say to him, ‘Lord
• gets up
• know
Luke 13:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• you taught

Translation Words - UST

• you taught us

ULT

26 Then you will begin to say, 'We ate and drank in your presence, and you taught in our streets.'

UST

26 Then you will say, 'You must have forgotten that we ate meals with you, and you taught us in the streets of our towns!'
Luke 13:27

Get away from me (ULT)
Get away from here (UST)

“Go away from me”

Translation Words - ULT

• you evildoers
• you evildoers
• I...know

Translation Words - UST

• You are wicked
• people
• know

ULT
27 But he will reply, ‘I say to you, I do not know where you are from. Get away from me, all you evildoers!’

UST
27 But he will say, ‘I tell you again, I do not know you, and I do not know where you are from. You are wicked people! Get away from here!’"

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to talk about entering into God's kingdom. This is the end of this conversation.

The actions are symbolic acts, indicating great regret and sadness. Alternate translation: "crying and grinding of teeth because of their great regret" (See: **Symbolic Action**)

Then Jesus continued by saying, “You will see (ULT)
Then Jesus continued by saying, “You will see (UST)
Jesus continues to speak to the crowd as if they will not enter into the kingdom of heaven.

but you are thrown out (ULT)
But you...outside (UST)

“but you yourselves will have been thrown outside.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but God will have forced you outside” (See: **Active or Passive**)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- God
- kingdom of God
- Abraham
- Isaac
- Jacob
- are thrown
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- prophets
- God
- who...where...God...will rule everything as king
- Abraham
- Isaac
- Jacob
- outside
- where...will rule everything as king
Luke 13:29

from east...west...north and south (ULT)
many non-Jewish people will...have come...east...west...
lands to...north...south (UST)

This means “from every direction.” (See: Merism)

from east and west, and from north and south (ULT)
many non-Jewish people will...have come...from lands
to...north, east, south...west (UST)

It was common to speak of the joy in God's kingdom as a feast. 
Alternate translation: “they will feast in the kingdom of God” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• kingdom of God
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God
• God is ruling everything
• is ruling everything

ULT
29 And they will come from east and west, and from north and south, and will recline in the kingdom of God.

UST
29 Furthermore, many non-Jewish people will be inside. There will be ones who have come from lands to the north, east, south, and west. They will be feasting to celebrate that God is ruling everything.
Luke 13:30

will be first...will be last (ULT)
will be the most important...will be...the least important then (UST)

Being first represents being important or honored. Alternate translation: “will be the most important...will be the least important” or “God will honor...God will shame” (See: Metaphor)
Luke 13:31

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in this part of the story. Jesus is still on his way towards Jerusalem when some Pharisees speak to him about Herod.

At that hour (ULT)
That same day...the...to (UST)

“Soon after Jesus finished speaking”

Leave and go away from here, because Herod wants to kill you (ULT)
Leave this area, because...ruler Herod Antipas wants...kill you (UST)

Translate this as a warning to Jesus. They were advising him to go somewhere else and be safe.

Herod wants to kill you (ULT)
ruler Herod Antipas wants...kill you (UST)

Herod would order people to kill Jesus. Alternate translation: “Herod wants to send his men to kill you”

Translation Words - ULT

• Pharisees
• Herod
• hour

Translation Words - UST

• Pharisees
• ruler Herod Antipas
• That...day
Luke 13:32

that fox (ULT)
Herod is as cruel as a fox, but also as insignificant as a fox...So I do not worry about him. But to show him that no one can harm me...until it is the time and place God has determined, go tell him this message from me (UST)

Jesus was calling Herod a fox. A fox is a small wild dog. Possible meanings are 1) Herod was not much of a threat at all 2) Herod was deceptive. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• demons
• I cast out
• healings
• I will reach my goal

Translation Words - UST

• demons
• I am expelling
• miracles
• I will finish my work

ULT
32 So he said to them, “Go and tell that fox, ‘Look, I cast out demons and perform healings today and tomorrow, and the third day I will reach my goal.’

UST
32 He replied to them, “Herod is as cruel as a fox, but also as insignificant as a fox. So I do not worry about him. But to show him that no one can harm me until it is the time and place God has determined, go tell him this message from me: ‘Listen! I am expelling demons and performing miracles today, and I will continue doing it for a short time. After that, I will finish my work.’”
Luke 13:33

Nevertheless (ULT)
But (UST)

“Nevertheless” or “However” or “Whatever happens”

it is not acceptable for a prophet to perish outside of Jerusalem (ULT)
it is not appropriate to kill a prophet in a place other than Jerusalem (UST)

The Jewish leaders claimed to serve God. And yet their ancestors killed many of God's prophets in Jerusalem, and Jesus knew that they would kill him there too. Alternate translation: “it is in Jerusalem that the Jewish leaders kill God's messengers” (See: Irony)

Translation Words - ULT

- to perish
- a prophet
- of Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- to kill
- a prophet
- Jerusalem
Luke 13:34

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes responding to the Pharisees. This is the end of this part of the story.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem (ULT)
Oh, people of Jerusalem (UST)

Jesus speaks as if the people of Jerusalem are there listening to him. Jesus says this twice to show how sad he is for them. (See: Apostrophe)

who kills the prophets and stones those who are sent to you (ULT)
You killed the prophets who lived long ago and you killed others whom God sent to you, by throwing stones at them (UST)

If it would be strange to address the city, you can make it clear that Jesus was really addressing the people in the city: “you people who kill the prophets and stone those sent to you” (See: Metonymy)

those who are sent to you (ULT)
you killed others whom God sent to you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those God has sent to you” (See: Active or Passive)

How often I desired (ULT)
Many times I wanted (UST)

“I so often desired.” This is an exclamation and not a question.

to gather your children (ULT)
to gather you together (UST)

The people of Jerusalem are described as her “children.” Alternate translation: “to gather your people” or “to gather the people of Jerusalem” (See: Metonymy)

the way a hen gathers her brood under her wings (ULT)
to protect you like a hen gathers her young chicks under her wings...that (UST)

This describes how a hen protects her young from harm by covering them with her wings. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• prophets
• stones
• children
• Jerusalem
• Jerusalem
are sent

Translation Words - UST

- prophets who lived long ago
- by throwing stones at them
- you
- Oh, people of Jerusalem
- Oh, people of Jerusalem
- you killed others whom God sent
Luke 13:35

your house is abandoned (ULT)
God will...longer protect you, people of Jerusalem...
your...who (UST)

This is a prophecy about something that would happen soon. It means that God has stopped protecting the people of Jerusalem, so enemies can attack them and drive them away. Possible meanings are 1) God will abandon you" or 2) their city will be empty. Alternate translation: “your house will be abandoned” (See: Metaphor)

you will not see me until the time comes when you say (ULT)
no...I will enter...not see me until...time when I return, when you will say about me (UST)

“you will not see me until the time comes when you will say” or “the next time you see me, you will say”

the name of the Lord (ULT)
God’s authority (UST)

Here “name” refers to the Lord’s power and authority. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Blessed is
• of the Lord
• the name
• house

Translation Words - UST

• May God bless
• God’s
• authority
• people of Jerusalem

ULT
35 See, your house is abandoned. For I say to you, you will not see me until the time comes when you say, ’Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.’”

UST
35 Now look! God will no longer protect you, people of Jerusalem. I will also tell you this: I will enter your city only once more. After that, you will not see me until the time when I return, when you will say about me, ‘May God bless this man who comes with God’s authority!’”
Luke 14

Luke 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Verse 3 says, “Jesus asked the experts in the Jewish law and the Pharisees, ‘Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not?’” Many times, the Pharisees got angry with Jesus for healing on the Sabbath. In this passage, Jesus dumbfounds the Pharisees. It was normally the Pharisees who tried to trap Jesus.

Changes of subject

Many times in this chapter Luke changes from one subject to another without marking the changes.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Parable

Jesus told the parable in Luke 14:15-24 to teach that the kingdom of God will be something that everyone can enjoy. But people will refuse to be part of it. (See: Metaphor and kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: “for everyone who exalts himself will be humbled, and he who humbles himself will be exalted” (Luke 14:11).
Luke 14:1

General Information:

It is the Sabbath, and Jesus is at Pharisee's house. Verse 1 gives background information for the event that follows. (See: Background Information)

Now it happened that...on a Sabbath (ULT)
One day...which was a day of rest (UST)

This indicates a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

to eat bread (ULT)
eat (UST)

“to eat” or “for a meal.” Bread was an important part of a meal and is used in this sentence to refer to a meal. (See: Synecdoche)

they were watching him closely (ULT)
they were watching him carefully (UST)

They wanted to see if they could accuse him of doing anything wrong.

Translation Words - ULT

- Pharisees
- on a Sabbath
- bread
- leaders
- watching...closely
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- Pharisees
- which was a day of rest
- eat
- leaders
- watching...carefully
- house
Luke 14:2

Now there was...a man...in front of him (ULT)
a man...and...Right there in front of Jesus was...that caused his arms...legs to be very swollen (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. English uses “There in front of him was a man” (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

was suffering from edema (ULT)
had a disease (UST)

Edema is swelling caused by water building up in parts of the body. Some languages may have a name for this condition. Alternate translation: “was suffering because parts of his body were swollen with water”
Luke 14:3

Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbath, or not (ULT)
Is it permitted in the law to heal people on the day of rest, or not (UST)

“Does the law permit us to heal on the Sabbath, or does it forbid it”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• the Pharisees
• Sabbath
• to heal
• experts in the Jewish law
• Is it lawful

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus asked the experts in Jewish law...the Pharisees who were present
• Jesus asked the experts in Jewish law...the Pharisees who were present
• day of rest
• to heal people
• Jesus asked the experts in Jewish law...the Pharisees who were present
• Is it permitted in the law...on
Luke 14:4

But they kept silent (ULT)
They did not reply. So (UST)

The religious leaders refused to answer Jesus’ question.

So he took hold of him (ULT)
Jesus put his hands on the man and (UST)

“So Jesus took hold of the man who suffered from edema”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- healed

**Translation Words - UST**

- healed him
Luke 14:5

Which of you, if a son or an ox falls into a well...will...pull him out on the Sabbath day (ULT)
If you had a son or an ox that fell into a well...on the day of rest...pull him out (UST)

Jesus uses a question because he wanted them to admit that they would help their son or ox, even on the Sabbath. Therefore, it was right for him to heal people even on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: “If one of you has a son or an ox...you would surely pull him out immediately.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
- a son
- Sabbath
- an ox
- day
- a well

Translation Words - UST
- son
- rest
- an ox
- the day
- a well
Luke 14:6

And they were not able to give an answer (ULT)
Again, they were not able…answer (UST)

They knew the answer and that Jesus was right, but they did not want to admit that he was correct. Alternate translation: “They had nothing to say”
Luke 14:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to the guests at the house of the Pharisee who had invited him to a meal.

those who were invited (ULT)
Jesus then told a parable when...that the people who had been invited to the meal (UST)

It may be helpful to identify these people, and to state this in active form. Alternate translation: “those whom the leader of the Pharisees had invited to the meal” (See: Active or Passive)

the seats of honor (ULT)
in the places where important people usually sit (UST)

“the seats for honored people” or “the seats for important people”

Translation Words - ULT

• a parable
• they were choosing

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus then told a parable when...that the people who had been invited to the meal
• were choosing to sit
Luke 14:8

When you are invited by someone (ULT)
When one of you...invited...someone (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When someone invites you” (See: Active or Passive)

When you are invited...than you (ULT)
When one of you...invited...you (UST)

These occurrences of “you” are singular. Jesus is speaking to the group as if to each individual person. (See: Forms of You)

or perhaps someone more honorable than you may have been invited by him (ULT)
is...by...It may be that a man more important than you has also been invited (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because the host may have invited a person who is more important than you are” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• someone more honorable
• wedding feasts

Translation Words - UST

• more important than
• a wedding feast
Luke 14:9

he will say to you...you will proceed (ULT)
say to you...you will be (UST)

These occurrences of “you” and “your” are singular. Jesus is speaking to the group as if to each individual person. (See: Forms of You)

in shame (ULT)
you will have to...ashamed (UST)

“you will feel ashamed and”

your place...the last (ULT)
man take your seat...the least important (UST)

“the least important place” or “the place for the least important person”

Translation Words - ULT
• shame

Translation Words - UST
• ashamed
Luke 14:10

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the people at the Pharisee's house.

when you are invited (ULT)
when...are invited to a feast (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when someone invites you" (See: Active or Passive)

the last place (ULT)
the least important seat (UST)

“the seat meant for the least important person”

come up higher (ULT)
come sit in a better seat (UST)

“move to a seat for a more important person”

Then you will be honored (ULT)
Then...you will...he is honoring (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Then the one who invited you will honor you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• honored

Translation Words - UST

• he is honoring
Luke 14:11

who exalts himself (ULT)
who exalt themselves (UST)

“who tries to look important” or “who takes an important position”

will be humbled (ULT)
God will humble (UST)

“will be shown to be unimportant” or “will be given an unimportant position.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will humble” (See: Active or Passive)

who...himself...humbles (ULT)
who...themselves...humble (UST)

“who chooses to look unimportant” or “who takes an unimportant position”

will be exalted (ULT)
he will exalt (UST)

“will be shown to be important” or “will be given an important position.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will exalt” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- will be humbled
- humbles
- exalts
- will be exalted

Translation Words - UST

- God will humble
- humble
- exalt
- he will exalt
Luke 14:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking at the Pharisee's house, but addresses his host directly.

to the one who had invited him (ULT)
to the Pharisee who had invited him...meal (UST)

“the Pharisee who had invited him to his house for a meal”

When you give (ULT)
When...invite people (UST)

“you” is singular because Jesus is speaking directly to the Pharisee that invited him. (See: Forms of You)

do not invite (ULT)
do not only invite (UST)

This probably does not mean they can never invite these people. More likely it means they should invite others as well. Alternate translation: “do not only invite” or “do not always invite”

also...otherwise they may...invite you in return (ULT)
also...since they will later repay you by inviting (UST)

“because they might”

may...invite you in return (ULT)
will later repay you by inviting (UST)

“invite you to their dinner or banquet”

repayment will be made to you (ULT)
you for a meal (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “in this way they will repay you” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- relatives
- a banquet
- neighbors

Translation Words - UST

- the...you...friends
- relatives
- evening meal
- neighbors
Luke 14:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the Pharisee who had invited him to his home.

invite the poor (ULT)
invite poor people (UST)

It may be helpful to add “also” since this statement is probably not exclusive. Alternate translation: “also invite the poor”

the poor, the crippled, the lame, and the blind (ULT)
poor people, crippled people, lame people or blind people (UST)

These nominal adjectives can be translated as noun phrases. Alternate translation: “poor people, crippled people, lame people, and blind people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

• a banquet

Translation Words - UST

• a feast
Luke 14:14

you will be blessed (ULT)
God will bless you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will bless you” (See: Active or Passive)

they do not have the power to repay you (ULT)
They will be...unable...to repay you (UST)

“they cannot invite you to a banquet in return”

will be repaid...you (ULT)
He will repay...you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will repay you” (See: Active or Passive)

in the resurrection of the just (ULT)
at the time when he causes righteous people to become alive again (UST)

This refers to the final judgment. Alternate translation: “when God brings the righteous people back to life” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• resurrection
• just
• blessed

Translation Words - UST

• time when he causes righteous people to become alive again
• time when he causes righteous people to become alive again
• God will bless you
Luke 14:15

General Information:

One of the men at the table speaks to Jesus and Jesus responds to him by telling a parable. (See: Parables)

one of those who reclined at the table (ULT)
One of those who were eating with him (UST)

This introduces a new person. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Blessed is he (ULT)
God has truly blessed (UST)

The man was not talking about a specific person. Alternate translation: “Blessed is anyone” or “How good it is for everyone”

who will eat bread (ULT)
everyone who will eat...feast to celebrate that (UST)

The word “bread” is used to refer to the whole meal. Alternate translation: “he who will eat at the meal” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• Blessed is he
• God
• kingdom of God
• bread
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God has truly blessed
• God
• God has begun to rule everywhere
• feast to celebrate that
• has begun to rule everywhere
Luke 14:16

But he said to him (ULT)
Jesus replied to him (UST)

Jesus begins telling a parable. (See: Parables)

A certain man prepared a large dinner and invited many (ULT)
One time a man decided to prepare a large feast. He invited many people to come (UST)

The reader should be able to infer that the man probably had his servants prepare the meal and invite the guests. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

A certain man (ULT)
One time a man (UST)

This phrase is a way of referring to the man without giving any specific information about his identity.

invited many (ULT)
He invited many people (UST)

“invited many people” or “invited many guests”

Translation Words - UST

• dinner

Translation Words - UST

• feast
Luke 14:17

at the hour of the dinner (ULT)
day for the feast (UST)

“At the time for the dinner” or “When the dinner was about to begin”

to those who were invited (ULT)
those who had been invited (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “those he had invited” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• dinner
• he sent
• hour
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• feast
• he sent
• day for
• servant
Luke 14:18

General Information:
All of the people who were invited gave the servant excuses about why they could not come to the banquet.

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues telling his parable.

to make excuses (ULT)
why...could not come (UST)
“to say why they could not come to the dinner”
The first said to him (ULT)
they...The first...said (UST)

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out (Luke 14:17). Alternate translation: “The first sent him a message, saying” or “The first told the servant to say” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Please excuse me (ULT)
Please ask your master to forgive me for not coming (UST)

“Please forgive me” or “Please accept my apology”
Luke 14:19

another said (ULT)
person said (UST)

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out (Luke 14:17). Alternate translation: “Another sent a message, saying” or “Another told the servant to say” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

pairs of oxen...five (ULT)
pairs of oxen...five (UST)

Oxen were used in pairs to pull farming tools. Alternate translation: “10 oxen to work in my fields” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• to try...out
• of oxen

Translation Words - UST

• to examine
• oxen
Luke 14:20

Yet another said (ULT)
Another person said (UST)

The reader should be able to infer that these people spoke directly to the servant whom the master had sent out (Luke 14:17). Alternate translation: “another man sent a message, saying” or “another man told the servant to say” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I have married a wife (ULT)
I have just been married (UST)

Use an expression that is natural in your language. Some languages may say “gotten married” or “taken a wife.”
Luke 14:21

becoming angry (ULT)
was angry (UST)

“became angry with the people he had invited”

bring in here (ULT)
bring them here (UST)

“invite in here to eat the dinner”

Translation Words - ULT

• master
• master of the house
• and reported
• servant
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• master
• owner
• reported
• servant
• servant

ULT
21 So the servant came and reported these things to his master. Then becoming angry, the master of the house said to his servant, ‘Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the town and bring in here the poor, and crippled, and blind, and lame.’

UST
21 So the servant returned to his master and reported what everyone had said. The owner of the house was angry and said to his servant, ‘Go out quickly to the streets and alleys of the city and find poor and crippled and blind and lame people, and bring them here into my house!’
Luke 14:22

Then the servant said (ULT)
After the servant went out and did that, he came back...said (UST)

It may be necessary to state clearly the implied information that the servant did what the master commanded him. Alternate translation: “After the servant went out and did that, he came back and said” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

what you commanded has been done (ULT)
I have done what you told me to do (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I have done what you commanded” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Master
• you commanded
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• Sir
• you told me to do
• servant
Luke 14:23

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes his parable.

So...the highways...hedges (ULT)
So...the narrow roads with hedges (UST)

This refers to roads and paths outside of the city. Alternate translation: “the main roads and paths outside of the city”

compel them to come in (ULT)
Strongly urge...those places to come (UST)

“demand that they come in”

compel them (ULT)
Strongly urge (UST)

The word “them” refers to anyone the servants find. “compel anyone you find to come in”

the...so that my...house...may be filled (ULT)
his master...to my house. I want it to be full of people (UST)

“so that people may fill my house”

Translation Words - ULT
• master
• servant
• house

Translation Words - UST
• his master
• him
• house
Luke 14:24

For I say to you (ULT)
Moreover I tell you (UST)

The word “you” is plural, so it is unclear to whom it is addressed. (See: Forms of You)

of those men (ULT)
this, the ones...were invited first (UST)

The word here for “men” means “male adults” and not just people in general.

of...were invited (ULT)
this, the...were invited first (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom I invited” (See: Active or Passive)

will taste my dinner (ULT)
who...will...get to enjoy my feast (UST)

“will enjoy the dinner I have prepared”

Translation Words - ULT

• dinner

Translation Words - UST

• feast
Luke 14:25

General Information:
Jesus begins to teach the crowd that was traveling with him.

Translation Words - ULT
- he turned

Translation Words - UST
- He turned

ULT
25 Now large crowds were going with him, and he turned and said to them,

UST
25 A large crowd of people was traveling with Jesus. He turned toward the people and said to them,
Luke 14:26

If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father...he cannot be my disciple (ULT)
If anyone comes to me who loves his father and...he loves me, he cannot be my disciple (UST)

Here, "hate" is an exaggeration for the lesser love people are to show to people other than Jesus. Alternate translation: "If anyone comes to me and does not love me more than he loves his father...he cannot be my disciple" or "Only if a person loves me more than he loves his own father...can he be my disciple" (See: Hyperbole and Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT
• life
• brothers
• disciple
• children
• father
• sisters

Translation Words - UST
• life
• brothers
• disciple
• children
• who loves his father
• sisters

ULT
26 “If anyone comes to me and does not hate his own father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brothers, and sisters, and also even his own life, he cannot be my disciple.

UST
26 “If anyone comes to me who loves his father and mother and wife and children and brothers and sisters more than he loves me, he cannot be my disciple. He must even love me more than he loves his own life!
Luke 14:27

Whoever does not carry his own cross and come after me cannot be my disciple (ULT)
Whoever does not carry his own cross and whoever does not obey me cannot be my disciple (UST)

This could be stated with positive verbs. Alternate translation: “If anyone wants to be my disciple, he must carry his own cross and follow me” (See: Double Negatives)

carry his own cross (ULT)
does...carry his own cross (UST)

Jesus does not mean every Christian must be crucified. The Romans often made people carry their own crosses before they crucified them as a sign of their submission to Rome. This metaphor means they must submit to God and be willing to suffer in any way to be Jesus’ disciples. (See: Metaphor and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- disciple
- cross
- carry

Translation Words - UST

- disciple
- own cross
- does...carry
Luke 14:28

General Information:

Jesus continues to explain to the crowd that it is important to count the cost of being a disciple.

For which of you, desiring to build a tower, does not first sit down and count the cost—whether he has enough for its completion (ULT)

If one of you desired to build a tower, would you not first sit down and determine how much it would cost? Then you would be able to determine whether you had enough money to complete it (UST)

Jesus uses this question to prove that people count the cost of a project before they begin it. Alternate translation: “If a person wanted to build a tower, he would certainly first sit down and determine if he had enough money to complete it.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

a tower (ULT)
a tower (UST)

This may have been a watchtower. “a tall building” or “a high lookout platform”

Translation Words - ULT

• a tower

Translation Words - UST

• a tower
Luke 14:29

Otherwise (ULT)
Otherwise, if...to (UST)

It may be helpful to give more information. Alternate translation: “If he does not first count the cost” (See: Ellipsis)

when he has laid a foundation (ULT)
laid the foundation...of you (UST)

“when he has built a base” or “when he has completed the first part of the building”

is not able to finish (ULT)
were not able...finish (UST)

It is understood that he was not able to finish because he did not have enough money. This could be stated. Alternate translation: “does not have enough money to be able to finish” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- to mock
- is...able
- a foundation

Translation Words - UST

- make fun
- able
- the foundation
Luke 14:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT
  • was...able

Translation Words - UST
  • was...able
Luke 14:31

General Information:

Jesus continues to explain to the crowd that it is important to count the cost of being a disciple.

Or (ULT)
Or (UST)

Jesus used this word to introduce another situation where people count the cost before making a decision.

what king...will not sit down and first determine...coming against him...twenty thousand men (ULT)
a king...those who...he would surely first sit down...advised...against...him...twenty thousand soldiers (UST)

Jesus uses another question to teach the crowd about counting the cost. Alternate translation: “you know that a king...would sit down first and take counsel...men.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

and...determine (ULT)
advised (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “think carefully “ or 2) “listen to his advisors.”

ten thousand men...twenty thousand men (ULT)
ten thousand soldiers...twenty thousand soldiers (UST)

“10,000...20,000” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• able
• king
• and...determine

Translation Words - UST

• could
• a king
• king
• advised
Luke 14:32

But if not (ULT)
If...not...while (UST)

It may be helpful to state more information. Alternate translation: “If he realizes that he will not be able to defeat the other king” (See: Ellipsis)

for terms of peace (ULT)
the messenger to say to that king, ‘What things must I do to have peace with you (UST)

“terms to end the war” or “what the other king wants him to do in order to end the war”

Translation Words - ULT

• he sends
• peace

Translation Words - UST

• defeat the other army, he would send a
• have peace with you
Luke 14:33

every one of you who does not renounce all his own possessions cannot be my disciple (ULT)
similarly, if any one of you does not first decide...you are willing to give up all that you have, you cannot be my disciple (UST)

This can be stated with positive verbs. Alternate translation: “only those of you who give up all that you have can be my disciples” (See: Double Negatives)

renounce all his own possessions (ULT)
you are willing to give up all...you have (UST)

“leave behind all that he has”

Translation Words - ULT

• disciple
• possessions

Translation Words - UST

• disciple
• have
Luke 14:34

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes teaching the crowd.

Salt is good (ULT) salt, which is very useful (UST)

“Salt is useful.” Jesus is teaching a lesson about those who want to be his disciple. (See: Metaphor)

with what will it be seasoned (ULT) could it ever be made to taste salty again (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: “it cannot be made salty again.” or “no one can make it salty again.” (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• is good

Translation Words - UST
• which is very useful
Luke 14:35

the manure pile (ULT)
manure heap (UST)

People use manure to fertilize gardens and fields. Salt without taste is so useless it is not even worth mixing with manure. Alternate translation: “compost heap” or “fertilizer”

They throw it out (ULT)
People just throw it away (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Someone just throws it away” (See: Active or Passive)

The one who has ears to hear, let him hear (ULT)
Every one of you should think carefully about what you just heard me say (UST)

Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase “ears to hear” here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated this phrase in Luke 8:8. Alternate translation: “Let the one who is willing to listen, listen” or “The one who is willing to understand, let him understand and obey” (See: Metonymy)

The one who...let him

Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you may prefer to use the second person here. See how you translated this phrase in Luke 8:8. Alternate translation: “If you are willing to listen, listen” or “If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey” (See: First, Second or Third Person)
Luke 15

Luke 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The parable of the prodigal son

Luke 15:11-32 is the parable of the prodigal son. Most people think that the father in the story represented God (the Father), the sinful younger son represented those who repent and come to faith in Jesus, and the self-righteous older son represented the Pharisees. In the story the older son became angry at the father because the father forgave the younger son's sins, and he would not go into the party the father had because the younger son repented. This was because Jesus knew that the Pharisees wanted God to think only they were good and to not forgive other people's sins. He was teaching them that they would never be part of God's kingdom because they thought that way. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned and Parables)

Special concepts in this chapter

Sinners

When the people of Jesus' time spoke of “sinners,” they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. But Jesus told three parables (Luke 15:4-7, Luke 15:8-10, and Luke 15:11-32) to teach that the people who believe they are sinners and who repent are the people who truly please God. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and repent, repentance and Parables)

766 / 1953
Luke 15:1

General Information:

We do not know where this takes place; it simply occurs one day when Jesus is teaching.

Now (ULT)
Now (UST)

This marks the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

all the tax collectors (ULT)
many tax collectors...other (UST)

This is an exaggeration to stress that there were very many of them. Alternate translation: “many tax collectors” (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

• sinners
• tax collectors

Translation Words - UST

• sinners
• tax collectors
Luke 15:2

This man...receives sinners (ULT)
This man welcomes sinners (UST)

“This man lets sinners into his presence” or “This man associates with sinners”

This man (ULT)
This man (UST)

They were talking about Jesus.

eats with them (ULT)
eats with them.” They thought Jesus was defiling himself by doing this (UST)

The word “even” shows that they thought it was bad enough that Jesus allowed sinners to come to him, but it was worse that he would eat with them.

Translation Words - ULT
- scribes
- sinners
- Pharisees
- receives

Translation Words - UST
- teachers of...Jewish laws
- sinners
- When the Pharisees
- welcomes

ULT
2 But both the Pharisees and the scribes were grumbling, saying, “This man receives sinners and eats with them.”

UST
2 When the Pharisees and teachers of the Jewish laws saw this, they began to grumble, saying, “This man welcomes sinners and even eats with them.” They thought Jesus was defiling himself by doing this.
Luke 15:3

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell several parables. These parables are hypothetical situations about things that anyone could experience. They are not about particular people. The first parable is about what a person would do if one of his sheep was lost. (See: Parables and Hypothetical Situations)

to them (ULT)
So Jesus told them this parable (UST)

Here “them” refers to the religious leaders.

Translation Words - ULT

• parable

Translation Words - UST

• So Jesus told them this parable
Luke 15:4

Which man among you...will not leave...until he finds it (ULT)
Suppose that one of you...you...Certainly you will leave...until you have found it (UST)

Jesus uses a question to remind the people that if any of them lost one of their sheep, they would certainly go looking for it. Alternate translation: “Each of you...would certainly leave...until he finds it” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Which man among you, having a hundred sheep (ULT)
Suppose that one of you has a hundred sheep...you (UST)

Since the parable starts with "Which one of you," some languages would continue the parable in the second person. Alternate translation: "Which one of you, if you have a hundred sheep” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

a hundred...ninety-nine (ULT)
a hundred...ninety-nine (UST)

“100...99” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• wilderness
• sheep

Translation Words - UST

• wilderness
• sheep
Luke 15:5

he lays it across his shoulders (ULT)  
put it on your shoulders to carry it home (UST)

This is the way a shepherd carries a sheep. This could be stated. 
Alternate translation: “lays it across his shoulders to carry it home” 
(See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• rejoicing

Translation Words - UST

• joyfully

ULT
5 Then when he has found it, he lays it across his shoulders, rejoicing.

UST
5 When you find it, you will joyfully put it on your shoulders to carry it home.
Luke 15:6

And when he comes to the house (ULT)
Then when you arrive home...and (UST)

“When the owner of the sheep comes home” or “When you come home.” Refer to the owner of the sheep as you did in the previous verse.

Translation Words - ULT

• he calls together
• Rejoice with
• sheep
• neighbors
• house

Translation Words - UST

• you will call together
• Be joyful with
• sheep
• neighbors
• home

ULT
6 And when he comes to the house, he calls together his friends and his neighbors, saying to them, ‘Rejoice with me, for I have found my sheep that was lost.’

UST
6 Then when you arrive home, you will call together your friends and neighbors and say to them: ‘Be joyful with me, because I have found my sheep that was lost!’
Luke 15:7

even so (ULT)
a similar way (UST)

“in the same way” or “as the shepherd and his friends and neighbors would rejoice”

there will be joy in heaven (ULT)
there will be more joy in heaven because of (UST)

“everyone in heaven will rejoice”

ninety-nine righteous who have no need of repentance (ULT)
many people who were already right with God and do not need to repent (UST)

Jesus uses sarcasm to say that the Pharisees were wrong to think that they did not need to repent. Your language may have a different way to express this idea. Alternate translation: “ninety-nine persons like you, who think they are righteous and do not need to repent” (See: Hyperbole)

ninety-nine (ULT)
many people (UST)

“99” (See: Numbers)

righteous (ULT)
right with God and (UST)

This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: “righteous people” (See: Nominal Adjectives)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• righteous
• sinner
• who repents
• of repentance
• joy

Translation Words - UST

• heaven because of
• right with God and
• sinner
• who repents
• to repent
• more joy
Luke 15:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a woman with 10 silver coins.

Or what woman...would not light a lamp...and...seek diligently until she has found it (ULT)
Or, suppose...a woman...Certainly she will light a lamp...that...and...search carefully until she finds it (UST)

Jesus uses a question to remind the people that if they lost a silver coin, they would certainly look for it diligently. Alternate translation: “Any woman...would certainly light a lamp...and seek diligently until she has found it.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

if she would lose (ULT)
has ten very valuable silver coins and then she loses (UST)

This is a hypothetical situation and not a story about a real woman. Some languages have ways of showing this. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

Translation Words - ULT

• a lamp
• sweep
• seek
• house

Translation Words - UST

• a lamp
• sweep
• search
• floor
Luke 15:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- she calls together
- Rejoice with
- neighbors

Translation Words - UST

- she will call together
- Be very happy with
- neighbors

ULT

9 Then when she has found it, she calls together her friends and neighbors, saying, ‘Rejoice with me, for I have found the coin which I lost.’

UST

9 When she finds it, she will call together her friends and neighbors and say to them, ‘Be very happy with me, because I have found the coin that I lost.’
Luke 15:10

In the same way (ULT)
in a similar way (UST)

“In the same way” or “Just as people would rejoice with the woman”

over one sinner who repents (ULT)
because of one sinner who repents from his sins (UST)

“when one sinner repents”

Translation Words - ULT

- sinner
- angels
- God
- who repents
- joy

Translation Words - UST

- sinner
- angels
- God
- who repents from his sins
- much joy

ULT
10 In the same way, I say to you, there is joy in the presence of the angels of God over one sinner who repents.”

UST
10 I tell you that, in a similar way, there is much joy among the angels of God because of one sinner who repents from his sins.”
Luke 15:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a young man who asks his father for his part of the inheritance. (See: Parables)

A certain man (ULT)
a man who (UST)

This introduces a new character in the parable. Some languages might say “There was a man who” (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Translation Words - ULT

• sons

Translation Words - UST

• sons
Luke 15:12

give me (ULT)
give...to me (UST)

The son wanted his father to give it to him immediately. Languages that have a command form that means that they want it done immediately should use that form.

the portion of the wealth that falls to me (ULT)
me now the share...your property that would normally be given (UST)

“the part of your wealth that you planned for me to receive when you die”

between them (ULT)
between his two sons (UST)

“between his two sons”

Translation Words - ULT

- father
- Father

Translation Words - UST

- his father
- Father

ULT

12 and the younger of them said to his father, ‘Father, give me the portion of the wealth that falls to me.’ So he divided his property between them.

UST

12 One day the younger son said to his father, ‘Father, give me now the share of your property that would normally be given to me when you die.’ So the father divided his property between his two sons.
Luke 15:13

gathered everything together (ULT)
gathered together all (UST)
“packed his things” or “put his things in his bag”

by living recklessly (ULT)
foolishly in wasteful, immoral living (UST)
“living without thinking about the consequences of his actions” or “living wildly”

Translation Words - ULT

• by living
• son
• he wasted
• days

Translation Words - UST

• living
• son
• in that country he spent
• days

ULT
13 Not many days later, the younger son gathered everything together and went to a country far away, and there he wasted his wealth by living recklessly.

UST
13 Only a few days later, the younger son gathered together all that he owned and traveled to a country far away. There in that country he spent all his money foolishly in wasteful, immoral living.
Luke 15:14

Now (ULT)
After (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Jesus explains how the younger son went from having plenty to being in need.

a severe famine happened throughout that country (ULT)
money, there was a severe famine throughout that country (UST)

“a drought occurred there and the entire country did not have enough food”

to be in need (ULT)
did not have anything left to live on (UST)

“to lack what he needed” or “to not have enough”

Translation Words - ULT

• a…famine

Translation Words - UST

• famine
Luke 15:15

So he went (ULT)
So he went (UST)

The word “he” refers to the younger son.

and hired himself out (ULT)
asked him to hire him (UST)

“took a job with” or “began to work for”

to one of the citizens of that country (ULT)
to a man who lived in that country (UST)

“a man of that country”

to feed pigs (ULT)
to feed his pigs (UST)

“to give food to the man’s pigs”

Translation Words - ULT

• pigs
• he sent
• citizens

Translation Words - UST

• his pigs
• sent
• who lived
Luke 15:16

And he was longing to eat (ULT)
He became so hungry that he wished he could eat (UST)

“wished very much that he could eat.” It is understood that this is because he was very hungry. This could be stated. Alternate translation: “he was so hungry that he would have happily eaten” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

carob pods (ULT)
bean pods (UST)

These are the husks of beans that grow on the carob tree. Alternate translation: “carob bean pods” or “bean husks” (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

• pigs

Translation Words - UST

• pigs
Luke 15:17

to himself...when he had come (ULT)
Finally he began to think clearly...Finally he began...think clearly (UST)

This idiom means he realized what the truth was, that he had made a terrible mistake. Alternate translation: “clearly understood his situation” (See: Idiom)

How many hired servants of my father have more than enough bread (ULT)
to himself: ‘All of my father’s hired servants have more than enough food to eat (UST)

This is part of an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: “All my father's hired servants have more than enough food to eat”

from hunger...am...dying (ULT)
because I do not have anything to eat...am dying (UST)

This is probably not an exaggeration. The young man may really have been starving.

Translation Words - ULT

• am...dying
• father
• bread
• from hunger
• hired servants

Translation Words - UST

• am dying
• father’s
• food to eat
• because I do not have anything to eat
• hired servants
Luke 15:18

I have sinned against heaven (ULT)
I have sinned against God (UST)

Jewish people sometimes avoided saying the word “God” and used the word “heaven” instead. Alternate translation: “I have sinned against God” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
• heaven
• I have sinned
• father
• Father
• I will get up

Translation Words - UST
• God
• I have sinned
• father
• Father
• So I will leave here

ULT
18 I will get up and go to my father, and will say to him, “Father, I have sinned against heaven and against you.

UST
18 So I will leave here and go back to my father. I will say to him, “Father, I have sinned against God and against you."
Luke 15:19

I am no longer worthy to be called your son (ULT)
I am no longer worthy to be called your son (UST)

“I am not worthy to be called your son.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I am not worthy for you to call me son” (See: Active or Passive)

your...make me as one of...hired servants (ULT)
your...please just employ me to work for you as one of (UST)

“hire me as an employee” or “hire me and I will become one of your servants.” This is a request, not a command. It may be helpful to add “please” as the UST does.

Translation Words - ULT

- worthy
- to be called
- son
- as
- hired servants

Translation Words - UST

- worthy
- to be called
- son
- for you as
- please just employ...to work
Luke 15:20

So he got up and went to his own father (ULT)
So he left there and started traveling back to...father’s house...the (UST)

“So he left that country and started going back to his father.” The word “so” marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, the young man was in need and had decided to go home.

But while he was still far away (ULT)
his...But...still a great distance from (UST)

“While he was still far away from his home” or “While he was still far away from his father’s house”

was moved with compassion (ULT)
felt deep compassion for him (UST)

“had pity on him” or “loved him deeply from his heart”

So...his...he...fell upon...neck...kissed him (ULT)
So he left there and...his...the...embraced him...kissed him on...the cheek (UST)

The father did this to show his son that he loved him and was glad that the son was coming home. If people think that it is strange or wrong for a man to embrace or hug and kiss his son, you can substitute a way that men in your culture show affection to their sons. Alternate translation: “welcomed him affectionately”

Translation Words - ULT

• was moved with compassion
• father
• father
• he got up
• kissed
• he ran

Translation Words - UST

• felt deep compassion for him
• father’s house
• father
• So he left there and
• kissed
• He ran to
Luke 15:21

I have sinned against heaven (ULT)
I have sinned against God (UST)

Jewish people sometimes avoided saying the word “God” and used the word “heaven” instead. See how you translated this in Luke 15:18. Alternate translation: “I have sinned against God” (See: Metonymy)

I am no longer worthy to be called your son (ULT)
I am no longer worthy to be called your son (UST)

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in Luke 15:18. Alternate translation: “I am not worthy for you to call me your son” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• worthy
• to be called
• I have sinned
• son
• son
• Father

Translation Words - UST

• God
• worthy
• to be called
• I have sinned
• His son
• son
• Father
Luke 15:22

the best robe (ULT)  
my best robe (UST)

“the best robe in the house.” Alternate translation: “the best coat” or “the best garment”

his...the...put a ring on...hand (ULT)  
his...my best...on my son. Also put a ring on...finger (UST)

A ring was a sign of authority that men wore on one of their fingers.

sandals (ULT)  
shoes (UST)

Wealthy people of that time wore sandals. However, in many cultures the modern equivalent would be “shoes.”

Translation Words - ULT

• father
• robe
• hand
• sandals
• servants
• put it

Translation Words - UST

• father
• robe
• finger
• shoes
• his servants...Go
• put
Luke 15:23

fattened calf (ULT)
the calf...that has been fattened (UST)

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf. Alternate translation: “the best calf” or “the young animal we have been making fat” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

kill it (ULT)
for a special occasion and kill it (UST)

The implied information that they were to cook the meat can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “kill it and cook it” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- calf
- and celebrate

Translation Words - UST

- the calf
- celebrate
Luke 15:24

son of mine was dead, and now is alive (ULT)
son of mine was like a dead man, but he is now alive again (UST)

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were dead. Alternate translation: “it is as if my son were dead and became alive again” or “I felt like my son had died, but he is now alive” (See: Metaphor)

he was lost, and now is found (ULT)
He was like a lost person, but he has now been found (UST)

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were lost. Alternate translation: “It is as if my son were lost and now I found him” or “My son was lost and has returned home” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• to celebrate
• dead

Translation Words - UST

• son
• to celebrate
• like a dead man
Luke 15:25

Now (ULT)
While all that (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Jesus starts to tell a new part of the story about the older son.

in the field (ULT)
was out working in...fields (UST)

It is implied that he was out in the field because he was working there. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• older
• house

Translation Words - UST

• son
• older
• the house

ULT
25 Now his older son was in the field, and as he came in and approached the house, he heard music and dancing.

UST
25 While all that was happening, the father’s older son was out working in the fields. After he finished working and was getting close to the house, he heard people playing music and dancing.
Luke 15:26

one of the servants (ULT)
one of the servants (UST)

The word that is translated here as “servant” is normally translated as “boy.” It may indicate that the servant was very young.

what these things might be (ULT)
what was happening (UST)

“what was happening”

Translation Words - ULT

- he called
- servants

Translation Words - UST

- He called for
- servants

ULT
26 So he called one of the servants and asked what these things might be.

UST
26 He called for one of the servants and asked what was happening.
Luke 15:27

And he said to him (ULT)
The servant said to him (UST)

“and the servant said to the older brother”

the fattened calf (ULT)
the fattened calf (UST)

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf. See how you translated this phrase in Luke 15:23. Alternate translation: “the best calf” or “the young animal we have been making fat” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- father
- he has received...back
- calf

Translation Words - UST

- Your brother
- father
- has returned
- calf

ULT
27 And he said to him, ‘Your brother has come and your father has killed the fattened calf because he has received him back safe and sound.’

UST
27 The servant said to him, Your brother has come home. Your father has told us to kill the fattened calf to celebrate because your brother has returned safe and healthy.’
Luke 15:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• and begged
• father

Translation Words - UST

• came out and pleaded with
• father

ULT
28 But he was angry and was not willing to go in, and his father came out and begged him.

UST
28 But the older brother was angry and did not want to go into the house. So his father came out and pleaded with him to come in.
Luke 15:29

these many years (ULT)
For all these years (UST)

“for many years”

I slaved for you (ULT)
I have worked for you as hard as...slave...you (UST)

“I worked extremely hard for you” or “I worked as hard as a slave for you”

I never broke a rule of yours (ULT)
I always obeyed everything (UST)

“never disobeyed any of your commands” or “always obeyed everything you told me to do”

a young goat (ULT)
a young goat (UST)

A young goat was smaller and less expensive than a fatted calf. Alternate translation: “even a young goat” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- a rule
- father
- a young goat
- years
- I might celebrate
- I slaved

Translation Words - UST

- I always obeyed everything
- father
- a young goat
- years
- I could give a feast
- I have worked for you as hard as...slave

ULT

29 But he answered and said to his father, ‘Look, these many years I slaved for you, and I never broke a rule of yours, and yet you never gave me a young goat that I might celebrate with my friends,

UST

29 But he replied to his father, ‘Listen! For all these years I have worked for you as hard as a slave, I always obeyed everything you told me to do. But you never gave me even a young goat to eat so that I could give a feast with my friends.
Luke 15:30

this son of yours (ULT)
this son...have told your servants to (UST)

“that son of yours.” The older son refers to his brother this way in order to show how angry he is.

who has devoured your living (ULT)
that...wasting all your money (UST)

Food is a metaphor for money. After one eats food, the food is no longer there and there is nothing to eat. The money that the brother had received was no longer there and there was no more to spend. Alternate translation: “wasted all your wealth” or “thrown away all your money” (See: Metaphor)

with prostitutes (ULT)
after...on prostitutes (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) he assumed this is how his brother spent the money or 2) he speaks of prostitutes to exaggerate the sinfulness of his brother’s actions in the “country far away” (Luke 15:13). (See: Hyperbole)

the fattened calf (ULT)
the fattened calf for a celebration (UST)

A calf is a young cow. People would give one of their calves special food so that it would grow well, and then when they wanted to have a special feast, they would eat that calf. See how you translated this phrase in Luke 15:23. Alternate translation: “the best calf” or “the young animal we have been making fat” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- living
- son
- calf
- has devoured
- prostitutes

Translation Words - UST

- money
- son
- calf for a celebration
- wasting
- on prostitutes
Luke 15:31

Then he said to him (ULT)
But his father said to him (UST)

“So the father said to his older son”

Translation Words - ULT

• Child

Translation Words - UST

• My son

ULT
31 Then he said to him, ‘Child, you are always with me, and all that is mine is yours.

UST
31 But his father said to him, ‘My son, you are always with me, and all that I own is yours.”
Luke 15:32

**ULT**

this brother of yours (ULT)

The father was reminding the older son that the one who just came home was his brother.

**ULT**

your brother...It is as though he (UST)

this brother of yours was dead, and now is alive (ULT)

Your brother was dead and is alive again! It is as though he (UST)

This metaphor speaks of the brother being gone as if he were dead. See how you translated this phrase in Luke 15:24. Alternate translation: “it was as if this brother of yours were dead and became alive again” or “this brother of yours had died, but he is now alive” (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

he was lost, and now is found (ULT)

was lost...has now been found (UST)

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were lost. See how you translated this phrase in Luke 15:24. Alternate translation: “it is as if he were lost and now I found him” or “he was lost and has returned home” (See: Metaphor)

**ULT**

Translation Words - ULT

- is alive
- brother
- to feast
- to be happy
- dead

**ULT**

Translation Words - UST

- is alive again
- brother
- for us to...celebrate
- rejoice
- dead

32 But it was proper to feast and to be happy, for this brother of yours was dead, and now is alive; and he was lost, and now is found.”

**UST**

32 But it is right for us to rejoice and celebrate, because it is as though your brother was dead and is alive again! It is as though he was lost and has now been found!”

**ULT**

This metaphor speaks of the son being gone as if he were lost. See how you translated this phrase in Luke 15:24. Alternate translation: “it is as if he were lost and now I found him” or “he was lost and has returned home” (See: Metaphor)
Luke 16

Luke 16 General Notes
Luke 16:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins telling another parable. It is about a master and the manager of his debtors. This is still the same part of the story and the same day that began in Luke 15:3. (See: Parables)

Now he also said to the disciples (ULT)
Jesus also said to his disciples...day the rich man...that (UST)

The last section was directed at Pharisees and scribes, though Jesus’ disciples may have been part of the crowd listening.

There was a certain rich man (ULT)
Once there was a rich man...One...was (UST)

This introduces a new character in the parable. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

he was reported to him (ULT)
told...the manager was managing his property so badly...he (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people reported to the rich man” (See: Active or Passive)

wasting his possessions (ULT)
was causing the rich man to lose his possessions (UST)

“foolishly managing the rich man's wealth”

Translation Words - ULT

- disciples
- possessions
- a manager
- wasting
- as

Translation Words - UST

- his disciples
- possessions
- a household manager
- was causing...rich man to lose
- that
Luke 16:2

he called him (ULT)
So he called...to him (UST)

“the right man called his manager”

What is this that I hear about you (ULT)
What you...report (UST)

The rich man uses a question to scold the manager. Alternate translation: “I have heard what you are doing.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Give an account of your management (ULT)
the...have been doing is terrible! Give me a final written...of what you have been managing (UST)

“Set your records in order to pass on to someone else” or “Prepare the records you have written about my money”

Translation Words - ULT

• he called
• management
• manager

Translation Words - UST

• So he called
• have been managing
• my household manager
Luke 16:3

What should I do...the management job from me (ULT)
what to do...the...me from (UST)

The manager asks this question of himself, as a means of reviewing
his options. Alternate translation: “I need to think about what I
should do...job” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the...my...master (ULT)
My...master...being his manager, so I have to think
(UST)

This refers to the wealthy man. The manager was not a slave.
Alternate translation: “my employer”

I am not strong enough to dig (ULT)
I am not strong enough to work by digging ditches
(UST)

“I am not strong enough to dig the ground” or “I am not able to dig”

Translation Words - ULT

• master
• and I am ashamed
• to beg
• I am...strong enough
• I am not strong enough
• manager
• management job

Translation Words - UST

• master
• and I am ashamed to
• beg...money
• strong enough
• I am not strong enough
• being his manager, so I have to think
• me from
Luke 16:4

when I am removed from the management job (ULT) and provide for...after I am dismissed from my management work (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when I lose my management job" or "when my master takes away my management job" (See: Active or Passive)

people will welcome me into their houses (ULT) people will take me into their houses...me (UST)

This implies that those people will provide a job, or other things that he needs to live. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- people will welcome
- management job
- houses
- I know

Translation Words - UST

- people will take me
- and provide for...my management work
- houses
- I know
Luke 16:5

of the debtors of his master (ULT)
who owed his master money...you (UST)

“the people who were in debt to his master” or “the people who owed things to his master.” In this story the debtors owed olive oil and wheat.

Translation Words - ULT

- the manager called
- master

Translation Words - UST

- he asked everyone...to come to him
- his master
- master

ULT
5 Then the manager called each one of the debtors of his master, and he said to the first one, ‘How much do you owe to my master?’

UST
5 So one by one he asked everyone who owed his master money to come to him. He asked the first one, ‘How much do you owe my master?’
Luke 16:6

And he said...And he said...to him (ULT)

“The debtor said...the manager said to the debtor”

A hundred baths of olive oil (ULT)

This was about 3,000 liters of olive oil. (See: Biblical Volume)

A hundred...fifty (ULT)

“100...50” (See: Numbers)

Take your bill (ULT)

A “bill” is a piece of paper that tells how much someone owes.

Translation Words - ULT

• of olive oil

Translation Words - UST

• oil

ULT

6 And he said, ‘A hundred baths of olive oil.’ Then he said to him, ‘Take your bill, and sit down quickly, and write fifty.’

UST

6 The man replied, ‘3,000 liters of olive oil.’ The manager said to him, ‘Take your bill, sit down, and quickly change it to 1,500 liters!’
Luke 16:7

Then he said to another...he said...And...he...He said to him (ULT)
He said to another...He said...man...The...replied...to him (UST)

“the manager said to another debtor...The debtor said...The manager said to the debtor”

A hundred cors of wheat (ULT)
A thousand baskets of wheat (UST)

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “twenty thousand liters of wheat” or “a thousand baskets of wheat”
(See: Biblical Volume)

write eighty (ULT)
change it to eight hundred baskets (UST)

“write eighty cors of wheat.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “write sixteen thousand liters” or “write eight hundred baskets”

eighty (ULT)
eight hundred baskets (UST)

“80” (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• of wheat

Translation Words - UST

• of wheat
Luke 16:8

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes telling the parable about the master and the manager of his debtors. In verse 9, Jesus continues to teach his disciples.

Then the master commended (ULT)
master heard...he praised...so (UST)

The text does not say how the master learned of the manager's action.

commended (ULT)
he praised (UST)

“praised” or “spoke well of” or “approved of”

he had acted shrewdly (ULT)
had done...shrewd (UST)

“he had acted cleverly” or “he had done a sensible thing”

the sons of this age (ULT)
what...truth is, the people who belong to this world (UST)

This refers to those like the unrighteous manager who do not know or care about God. Alternate translation: “the people of this world” or “worldly people”

the sons of the light (ULT)
the people who belong...God in (UST)

Here “light” is a metaphor for everything godly. Alternate translation: “the people of God” or “godly people” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• master
• sons
• sons
• unrighteous
• light
• manager
• commended
• age
• generation

Translation Words - UST

• master heard
• belong to
• people
• dishonest
• belong...God in
• his manager
• he praised
• world
• they relate to the people around them
Luke 16:9

I say to you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

“I” refers to Jesus. The phrase “I say to you” marks the end of the story and now Jesus tells the people how to apply the story to their lives.

make friends for yourselves by means of unrighteous wealth (ULT)
use the money you have in this world...make friends for yourself...the...you will have friends who (UST)

The focus here is on using the money to help other people. Alternate translation: “make people your friends by helping them with worldly wealth”

by means of unrighteous wealth (ULT)
use the money you have in this world...the...you will have friends who (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus uses hyperbole when he calls money “unrighteous” because it has no eternal value. Alternate translation: “by using money, which has no eternal value” or “by using worldly money” or 2) Jesus uses metonymy when he calls money “unrighteous” because people sometimes earn it or use it in unrighteous ways. Alternate translation: “by using even money that you earned dishonestly” (See: Metonymy and Hyperbole)

they may receive (ULT)
will welcome (UST)

This may refer to 1) God in heaven, who is pleased that you used money to help people, or 2) the friends you helped with your money.

eternal dwellings (ULT)
eternal homes (UST)

This refers to heaven, where God lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- eternal
- unrighteous
- dwellings
- they may receive

Translation Words - UST

- eternal
- in this world
- homes
- will welcome
Luke 16:10

He who is faithful...also...is...faithful...he who...is unrighteous...also...is...unrighteous (ULT)
People who faithfully...money can also...be trusted...
People who are...the...dishonest...in...will be dishonest (UST)

“People who are faithful...are also faithful...people who are unrighteous...are also unrighteous.” This would include women. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

is faithful in very little (ULT)
faithfully manage only small amounts of (UST)

“faithful even with small things.” Make sure this does not sound like they are not very faithful.

in very little...is unrighteous (ULT)
manage only small amounts of...dishonest (UST)

“unrighteous even in small things.” Make sure this does not sound like they are not often unrighteous.

Translation Words - ULT

• is unrighteous
• unrighteous
• is faithful
• faithful

Translation Words - UST

• dishonest
• dishonest
• faithfully
• be trusted
Luke 16:11

unrighteous wealth (ULT)
the money God has given you...this world (UST)

See how you translated this in Luke 16:9. Possible meanings are 1) Jesus uses metonymy when he calls money “unrighteous” because people sometimes earn it or use it in unrighteous ways. Alternate translation: “even money that you earned dishonestly” or 2) Jesus uses hyperbole when he calls money “unrighteous” because it has no eternal value. Alternate translation: “money, which has no eternal value” or “by using worldly money” (See: Metonymy and Hyperbole)

who will entrust true wealth to you (ULT)
he will certainly...let you have the true riches of heaven (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: “no one will trust you with true wealth.” or “no one will give you true wealth to manage.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

true wealth (ULT)
the true riches of heaven (UST)

This refers to wealth that is more genuine, real, or lasting than money.

Translation Words - ULT

• unrighteous
• true wealth
• will entrust
• faithful

Translation Words - UST

• God has given you...this world
• true riches of heaven
• he will certainly...let...have
• you have not faithfully
Luke 16:12

who will give to you that which is your own (ULT)
that...give you...your own (UST)

Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate translation: “no one will give you wealth for yourself.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• faithful

Translation Words - UST

• not faithfully
Luke 16:13

No servant can (ULT)

servant is able (UST)

“A servant cannot”

serve two masters (ULT)
to serve two...masters (UST)

It is implied that he cannot “serve two different masters at the same time”

for either...he will hate...either...he will be devoted (ULT)
at the same time. If he tried to do that...he would hate...at the same time. If he tried to do that...he would be loyal (UST)

These two clauses are essentially the same. The only significant difference is that the first master is hated in the first clause, but the second master is hated in the second clause.

he will hate (ULT)

he would hate (UST)

“the servant will hate”

he will be devoted to one (ULT)

he would be loyal to one (UST)

“love one very strongly”

he will despise the other (ULT)

despise the other (UST)

“hold the other in contempt” or “hate the other”

he will despise (ULT)

despise (UST)

This means essentially the same as “hate” in the previous clause.

You cannot...serve (ULT)

No...one. You cannot...devote your life to serving (UST)

Jesus was talking to a group of people, so languages that have a plural form of “you” would use that. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words -ULT

• masters
• he will love
• God
• servant
• serve
• serve (2)

Translation Words - UST

• masters
• love
• God
• servant
• to serve
• devote your life to serving (2)
Luke 16:14

General Information:

This is a break in Jesus teachings, as verse 14 tells us background information about how the Pharisees ridiculed Jesus. In verse 15, Jesus continues teaching and responds to the Pharisees. (See: Background Information)

Now (ULT)

When (UST)

This word marks a shift to the background information.

who were lovers of money (ULT)
because they loved to acquire money (UST)

“who loved having money” or “who where very greedy for money”

they ridiculed him (ULT)
they made fun of...him (UST)

“the Pharisees ridiculed Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• Pharisees

Translation Words - UST

• Pharisees
Luke 16:15

So he said to them (ULT)
But...said to them (UST)

“And Jesus said to the Pharisees”

You are those who justify yourselves in the sight of men (ULT)
You try to make other people think that you are righteous (UST)

“You try to make yourselves look good to people”

but God knows your hearts (ULT)
Jesus...but God knows your hearts (UST)

Here “hearts” refers to the desires of people. Alternate translation: “God understands your true desires” or “God knows your motives” (See: Metonymy)

that which is exalted among men is detestable in the sight of God (ULT)
Keep in mind that...people praise as being very important, God considers to be detestable (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Those things that men think are very important are things that God hates” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- is detestable
- God
- God
- hearts
- justify
- is exalted
- knows

Translation Words - UST

- detestable
- God
- God
- hearts
- righteous
- praise as being very important
- knows
Luke 16:16

The law and the prophets (ULT)
The laws that God gave Moses and what the prophets (UST)

This refers to all of God's word that had been written up to that time.

were in effect until (ULT)
until (UST)

“had authority” or “were what people needed to obey”

John (ULT)
John the Baptizer came (UST)

This refers to John the Baptist. Alternate translation: “John the Baptist came” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the gospel of the kingdom of God is preached (ULT)
wrote were proclaimed...I have been preaching that God will soon show himself as king (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I am teaching people about the good news of the kingdom of God” (See: Active or Passive)

everyone is forcing their way into it (ULT)
Many people are accepting that message...very eagerly asking God to rule their lives (UST)

This refers to the people who were listening to and accepting the teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: “many people are doing everything they can to enter it”

Translation Words - ULT

• prophets
• God
• law
• kingdom of God
• the gospel...is preached
• that time on
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• prophets
• I have been preaching that God will soon show himself
• laws that God gave Moses
• I have been preaching that God will soon show himself...as king
• wrote were proclaimed
• then
• as king
Luke 16:17

But it is easier for heaven and earth to pass away than for one stroke of a letter of the law to become invalid (ULT)

All of God’s laws, even those that seem insignificant, are more permanent than heaven and earth (UST)

This contrast could be stated in the reverse order. Alternate translation: “even the smallest stroke of the letter of the law will last longer than heaven and earth will exist”

than for...one stroke of a letter (ULT)
than...All of God's laws...even those that seem insignificant (UST)

A “stroke” is the smallest part of a letter. It refers to something in the law that may seem to be insignificant. Alternate translation: “than for even the smallest detail of the law” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to become invalid (ULT)
even those that seem insignificant (UST)

“disappear” or “cease to exist”

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• law
• earth

Translation Words - UST

• are more permanent...heaven and earth
• All of God's laws
• are more permanent...heaven and earth
Luke 16:18

Everyone who divorces his wife (ULT)
Any man who divorces his...woman (UST)

“Anyone who divorces his wife” or “Any man who divorces his wife”

commits adultery (ULT)
is committing adultery (UST)

“is guilty of adultery”

who...is divorced...marries (ULT)
who...is divorced...marries (UST)

“any man who marries a woman”

Translation Words - ULT

• commits adultery
• commits adultery (2)
• divorces
• is divorced

Translation Words - UST

• is committing adultery
• is also committing adultery (2)
• divorces
• is divorced

ULT
18 Everyone who divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery, and he who marries one who is divorced from her husband commits adultery.

UST
18 Any man who divorces his wife and marries another woman is committing adultery, and any man who marries a woman who is divorced from her husband is also committing adultery.”
Luke 16:19

General Information:

These verses give background information about the story Jesus begins to tell about the rich man and Lazarus. (See: Background Information)

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus continues teaching the people he begins to tell a story. It is about a rich man and Lazarus.

Now (ULT)
man (UST)

This marks a shift in Jesus’ speech as he begins to tell a story that will help people understand what he was teaching them.

a...man...certain...rich (ULT)
man...who...a rich (UST)

This phrase introduces a person in Jesus’ story. It is not clear if this is a real person or if it is simply a person in a story that Jesus tells in order to make a point. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

and he was clothed in purple...fine linen (ULT)
Jesus also said, “Once there...wore fine purple...linen clothes (UST)

“who wore clothing made with fine linen and purple dye” or “who wore very expensive clothes.” Purple dye and fine linen cloth were very expensive.

celebrating every day in splendor (ULT)
Every day he gave expensive feasts (UST)

“enjoyed eating expensive food every day” or “spent much money and bought whatever he desired”

Translation Words - ULT

• celebrating
• in purple
• day
• he was clothed

Translation Words - UST

• he gave...feasts
• fine purple
• day
• wore
Luke 16:20

a...poor man...certain...named Lazarus was laid at his gate (ULT)
And every day a poor man...whose name was Lazarus was laid at the gate of the rich man's house (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People had laid a certain beggar named Lazarus at his gate” (See: Active or Passive and How to Translate Names)

a...poor man...certain...named Lazarus (ULT)
And every day a poor man...whose name was Lazarus (UST)

This phrase introduces another person in Jesus' story. It is not clear if this is a real person or simply a person in a story that Jesus tells in order to make a point. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

at his gate (ULT)
at the gate of the rich man's house (UST)

“at the gate to the rich man's house” or “at the entrance to the rich man's property”

covered with sores (ULT)
Lazarus' body was covered with sores (UST)

“with sores all over his body”

Translation Words - ULT

• named
• gate
• a...poor man

Translation Words - UST

• name
• gate of
• And every day a poor man
Luke 16:21

longing to eat from what was falling (ULT)
he wanted to eat...scraps...food that fell from...the (UST)

“wishing he could eat the scraps of food that fell”

and...the dogs were coming (ULT)
He was so hungry that...dogs came (UST)

The word “Even” here shows that what follows is worse than what has already been told about Lazarus. Alternate translation: “In addition to that, the dogs came” or “Worse yet, the dogs came”

the dogs (ULT)
dogs (UST)

The Jews considered dogs to be unclean animals. Lazarus was too sick and weak to stop the dogs from licking his wounds.
Luke 16:22

Now it came about that (ULT) was (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark an event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

was carried away...by the angels (ULT) taken...by...angels (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the angels carried him away” (See: Active or Passive)

to Abraham's side (ULT) to his ancestor Abraham. The (UST)

This implies that Abraham and Lazarus were reclining next to each other at a feast, in the Greek style of feasting. The joy in heaven is often represented in the scriptures by the idea of a feast. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

was buried (ULT) his body was buried (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people buried him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• angels
• Abraham's
• was buried
• poor man
• died
• died

Translation Words - UST

• angels
• his ancestor Abraham
• his body was buried
• poor man
• died
• died
Luke 16:23

at his side (ULT)
sitting very close to Abraham (UST)

This implies that Abraham and Lazarus were reclining next to each other at a feast, in the Greek style of feasting. The joy in heaven is often represented in the scriptures by the idea of a feast. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in Hades...in...being...torment (ULT)
In the place of the dead...In...the rich man was...suffering great pain (UST)

“he went to Hades, where, suffering in terrible pain”

he lifted up his eyes (ULT)
He looked up (UST)

This idiom means “he looked up” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• Hades
• Abraham
• torment

Translation Words - UST

• place...dead
• Abraham
• suffering great pain
Luke 16:24

he cried out and said (ULT)
rich man shouted...he (UST)

“the rich man called out to say” or “he shouted out to Abraham”

Father Abraham (ULT)
Father Abraham (UST)

Abraham was the ancestor of all the Jews, including the rich man.

have mercy on me (ULT)
So please pity me (UST)

“please have pity on me” or “please be merciful to me”

So...send Lazarus (ULT)
So...send Lazarus here (UST)

“by sending Lazarus” or “and tell Lazarus to come to me”

he may dip the tip of his finger (ULT)
the...can dip his finger in (UST)

This indicates the smallness of the amount requested. Alternate translation: “he may wet the tip of his finger”

I am in anguish in this flame (ULT)
I am suffering...very much in this fire (UST)

“I am in terrible pain in this flame” or “I am suffering terribly in this fire”

Translation Words - ULT

- have mercy
- Abraham
- Father
- tongue
- in water
- I am in anguish
- send
- cried out

Translation Words - UST

- So please pity
- Abraham
- Father
- tongue to
- water
- I am suffering
- send
- rich man shouted
Luke 16:25

**ULT**

25 But Abraham said, ‘Child, remember that in your lifetime you received your good things, and Lazarus in like manner evil things. But now he is comforted here, and you are in agony.

**UST**

25 But Abraham replied, ‘Child, remember that while you were alive on earth you enjoyed many good things. But Lazarus was miserable. Now he is happy here, and you are suffering.

The rich man was one of Abraham’s descendants.

**Child (ULT)**

**Child (UST)**

The rich man was one of Abraham’s descendants.

**good things (ULT)**

**many good things (UST)**

“fine things” or “pleasant things”

**good things...in like manner...evil things (ULT)**

**many good things...was miserable (UST)**

“in like manner received evil things” or “in like manner received things that caused him to suffer”

**in like manner (ULT)**

**was miserable (UST)**

This refers the fact that they both received something while they lived on earth. It is not saying that what they received was the same. Alternate translation: “while he was living received”

**he is comforted here (ULT)**

**he is happy here (UST)**

“he is comfortable here” or “he is happy here”

**are in agony (ULT)**

**are suffering (UST)**

“suffering”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- lifetime
- Child
- good things
- evil things
- Abraham
- you received
- are in agony
- in like manner
- he is comforted

**Translation Words - UST**

- were alive
- Child
- many good things
- was miserable
- Abraham
• enjoyed
• are suffering
• was miserable
• he is happy
Luke 16:26

And with all these things (ULT)
Besides that (UST)

“In addition to this reason”

a great chasm has been put in place (ULT)
God has placed a huge ravine (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God has placed a huge ravine between you and us“ (See: Active or Passive)

a great chasm (ULT)
a huge ravine (UST)

“a steep, deep and wide valley” or “a big separation” or “a huge ravine”

those who want to cross over...are not able (ULT)
those who want to go...are are not able (UST)

“those people who want to cross over the chasm...cannot” or “if anyone wants to cross over...he cannot”

Translation Words - ULT

• are...able

Translation Words - UST

• able
Luke 16:27

he said (ULT)
rich man said (UST)

“the rich man said”

Translation Words - ULT

• father
• you would send
• house

Translation Words - UST

• Father Abraham
• father's
• send
• house

ULT
27 Then he said, 'I beg you then, father, that you would send him to the house of my father—

UST
27 Then the rich man said, 'If that is so, Father Abraham, I ask you to send Lazarus to my father's house.'
Luke 16:28

in order that he might warn them (ULT)
who live there. Tell him to warn them (UST)

“so that Lazarus may warn them”

this place of torment (ULT)
this place, where we suffer great pain (UST)

“this place where we suffer torment” or “this place where we suffer terrible pain”

Translation Words - ULT
• brothers
• torment

Translation Words - UST
• brothers
• we suffer great pain
Luke 16:29

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes telling the story about the rich man and Lazarus.

They have Moses and the prophets (ULT) have what Moses and the prophets wrote long ago (UST)

It is implied that Abraham refused to send Lazarus to the rich man's brothers. This could be stated. Alternate translation: "No, I will not do that, because your brothers have what Moses and the prophets wrote long ago" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Moses and the prophets (ULT) what Moses and the prophets wrote long ago (UST)

This refers to their writings. Alternate translation: "what Moses and the prophets wrote" (See: Metonymy)

let them listen to them (ULT) They should obey what they wrote (UST)

“your brothers should pay attention to Moses and the prophets”

Translation Words - ULT

- prophets
- Abraham
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- prophets
- Abraham
- what Moses...wrote long ago
Luke 16:30

But he replied (ULT)
But the rich man replied...that (UST)

“But the rich man said”

if someone would go to them from the dead (ULT)
if someone from those who have died goes back to
them and warns them (UST)

This describes a situation that has not happened, but that the rich
man would like to happen. Alternate translation: “if a person who has
died would go to them” or “if someone who has died would go and
warn them” (See: Hypothetical Situations)

from the dead (ULT)
from those who have died (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld.

Translation Words - ULT

• they will repent
• Abraham
• Father
• the dead

Translation Words - UST

• they will turn from their sinful behavior
• Abraham
• Father
• those who have died
Luke 16:31

But he said to him (ULT)
Abraham said to him...that (UST)

“But Lazarus said to the rich man”

If they do not listen to Moses and the prophets (ULT)
No! If they do...listen to what Moses and the prophets...
and go warn them, they would still not (UST)

Here “Moses and the prophets” represent the things that they wrote. Alternate translation: “If they do not pay attention to what Moses and the prophets wrote” (See: Metonymy)

neither will they be persuaded if someone would rise from the dead (ULT)
not...wrote, even if someone would rise from among the dead...be convinced...they should turn from (UST)

Abraham states what would happen if the hypothetical situation occurred. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “neither will a person who comes back from the dead be able to convince them” or “they will not believe even if a person comes back from the dead” (See: Hypothetical Situations and Active or Passive)

would rise from the dead (ULT)
would rise from among the dead...they should turn from (UST)

The words “from the dead” speak of all dead people together in the underworld. To rise from among them is to become alive again.

Translation Words - ULT

• prophets
• Moses
• the dead
• would rise

Translation Words - UST

• prophets
• to what Moses
• from among the dead
• would rise
Luke 17

Luke 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Old Testament Examples

Jesus used the lives of Noah and of Lot to teach his followers. Noah was ready for the flood when it came, and they needed to be ready for him to return, because he would not warn them when he came. Lot’s wife loved the evil city she had been living in so much that God also punished her when he destroyed it, and they needed to love Jesus more than anything else,

Those who read your translation may need help so they can understand what Jesus was teaching here.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hypothetical situations

Hypothetical situations are situations that have not actually happened. Jesus used a special type of hypothetical situation to teach that what will happen to those who cause others to sin will be worse than being drowned (Luke 19:1-2) and another to scold the disciples because they had little faith (Luke 19:6). (See: Hypothetical Situations)

Rhetorical Questions

Jesus asked his disciples three questions (Luke 17:7-9) to teach them that even those who serve him well are righteous only because of his grace. (See: Rhetorical Question and grace, gracious and righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 17:22). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. A paradox occurs in this chapter: “Whoever seeks to gain his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life will save it” (Luke 17:33).
Luke 17:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching, but he directs his attention back to his disciples. This is still the same part of the story and the same day that began in Luke 15:3.

It is impossible for the stumbling blocks not to come (ULT)
Things that tempt people to sin will certainly happen (UST)

“Things that tempt people to sin will certainly happen”

woe to the one through whom they come (ULT)
how terrible it will be for anyone who causes those things to happen (UST)

“to anyone who causes the temptations to come” or “to any person who causes people to be tempted”

Translation Words - ULT

• woe to the one
• disciples
• stumbling blocks

Translation Words - UST

• how terrible it will be
• disciples
• Things that tempt people to sin
Luke 17:2

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea than that he should cause one of these little ones to stumble (ULT)

It would be better for that person if someone fastened a huge stone around his neck and threw him into the sea, than if he were to cause to sin someone who is weak in his faith (ULT)

You may need to make explicit that it is the punishment for causing people to sin that Jesus is comparing to being thrown into the sea. Alternate translation: “I will not punish him a little by putting a millstone around his neck and throwing him into the sea. Instead, I will punish him much. This is because he has caused one of these little ones to stumble.” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

It would be better for him if (ULT)
It would be better for that person if someone...him (UST)

This introduces a hypothetical situation. It means that this person's punishment for causing people to sin will be worse than if they had drowned in the sea. No one has put a stone around his neck, and Jesus is not saying that anyone will do so. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown (ULT)
fasted a huge stone around his neck and threw (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him” or “if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and push him” (See: Active or Passive)

for him...his neck...he were thrown...he should cause...to stumble (ULT)
for...him...his neck...threw...if he were to cause...sin (UST)

These words can refer to anyone, to women as well as to men. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

a millstone (ULT)
stone (UST)

This is a very large, heavy circular stone used for grinding wheat grain into flour. Alternate translation: “a heavy stone”

of these little ones (ULT)
who is weak in his faith (UST)

This here refers to people whose faith is still weak. Alternate translation: “these people whose faith is small”
he should cause...to stumble (ULT)
if he were to cause...sin (UST)

This was a way of referring to unintentional sin. Alternate translation: “to sin”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- he should cause...to stumble

**Translation Words - UST**

- if he were to cause...sin
Luke 17:3

If your brother sins (ULT)
If one of your brothers sins (UST)

This is a conditional statement that talks about an event that will probably happen in the future.

your brother (ULT)
one of your brothers (UST)

“brother” is here used in the sense of someone with the same belief. Alternate translation: “a fellow believer”

rebuke him (ULT)
you should rebuke him...he (UST)

“tell him strongly that what he did was wrong” or “correct him”

Translation Words - ULT

• sins
• brother
• forgive
• he repents
• rebuke

Translation Words - UST

• sins
• brothers
• asks you to forgive him, then you should forgive
• he says that...is sorry for having sinned
• you should rebuke him
Luke 17:4

Even if...seven times...he sins against you (ULT)
Even if...you seven times...he sins against...you (UST)

This is a hypothetical future situation. It may never happen, but even if it does, Jesus tells people to forgive. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

seven times in the day...and seven times (ULT)
you seven times in one day...each time and (UST)

The number seven in the Bible is a symbol for completeness. Alternate translation: “many times in a day, and each time” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- he sins
- forgive
- I repent
- returns
- day

Translation Words - UST

- he sins
- must continue forgiving
- I am sorry for what I did
- if he comes
- in one day

ULT
4 Even if he sins against you seven times in the day, and seven times returns to you, saying, 'I repent; forgive him!'

UST
4 Even if he sins against you seven times in one day, if he comes to you each time and says, 'I am sorry for what I did,' you must continue forgiving him.
Luke 17:5

**General Information:**

There is a brief break in Jesus’ teachings as the disciples speak to him. Then Jesus continues teaching.

**Increase our faith (ULT)**  
**Give us more faith (UST)**

“Please give us more faith” or “Please add more faith to our faith”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lord
- apostles
- faith

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lord
- apostles
- faith

ULT
5 Then the apostles said to the Lord,  
“Increase our faith.”

UST
5 Then the apostles said to the Lord,  
“Give us more faith!”
Luke 17:6

If you had faith like a mustard seed, you would say (ULT)

Even if you had faith...was no bigger than this tiny mustard seed, you could say to...the (UST)

A mustard seed is a very small seed. Jesus implies that they do not have even a small amount of faith. Alternate translation: “If you had faith that was even as small as a mustard seed, you” or “Your faith is not as big as a mustard seed—but if it were, you” (See: Simile and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

mulberry tree (ULT)
mulberry tree (UST)

If this type of tree is not familiar, it may be helpful to substitute another type of tree. Alternate translation: “fig tree” or “tree” (See: Translate Unknowns)

Be uprooted, and be planted in the sea (ULT)
Pull yourself with your roots out of...ground and plant yourself in the sea (UST)

These can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Uproot yourself and plant yourself in the sea” or “Take your roots out of the ground, and put your roots down into the ocean” (See: Active or Passive)

you would say...it would obey you (ULT)
the...it would obey you (UST)

“the tree would obey you.” This result is conditional. It would happen only if they had faith.

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• faith
• it would obey
• like
• a...seed

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• faith
• it would obey
• was no bigger than this tiny
• seed
Luke 17:7

But which of you...will say...and recline at the table (ULT)
Jesus also said, “Suppose that one of...your...would not say, ‘Come...sit (UST)

Jesus asks his disciples a question to help them think about the role of a servant. This could be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “But none of you who...sheep would say...sit down to eat.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

a servant...plowing or keeping sheep (ULT)
servant...who was plowing...fields or taking care...your sheep (UST)

“a servant that plows your field or takes care of your sheep”

Translation Words - ULT

- keeping sheep
- plowing
- a servant

Translation Words - UST

- taking care...your sheep
- who was plowing
- servant
Luke 17:8

Instead, will he not say to him...you will eat and drink (ULT)
Instead, you would say to him...you can eat and drink (UST)

Jesus uses a second question explain how the disciples would actually treat a servant. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: “He will certainly say to him...eat and drink” (See: Rhetorical Question)

put a belt around your clothes and serve me (ULT)
put on your serving clothes...serve it to me (UST)

“tie your clothes at your waist and serve me” or “dress up properly and take care of me.” People would tie their clothes closely around their waist so that their clothes would not get in their way while they worked. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

and...after these things (ULT)
Then...Afterwards (UST)

“Then after you serve me”

Translation Words - ULT

• and serve

Translation Words - UST

• serve it
Luke 17:9

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching. This is the end of this part of the story.

He does not thank the servant...does he...he did (ULT)
You will not thank your servant...doing (UST)

Jesus uses this question to show how people treat servants. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: “He would not thank the servant...commanded.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the things that were commanded (ULT)
the work that he had been told to do (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the things you commanded him to do” (See: Active or Passive)

He does not thank...does he (ULT)
You will not thank (UST)

“right?” or “is this not true?”

Translation Words - ULT

• were commanded
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• work that he had been told to do
• your servant
Luke 17:10

for you also (ULT)
told you to do...and (UST)

Jesus was speaking to his disciples, so languages that have a plural form of “you” would use it. (See: Forms of You)

the things that you were commanded (ULT)
that God has...you...the (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that God has commanded you” (See: Active or Passive)

We are unworthy...servants (ULT)
We are only God's servants...do not deserve for him to thank us (UST)

This is an exaggeration to express that they did not do anything worthy of praise. Alternate translation: “We are ordinary slaves” or “We servants do not deserve your praise” (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

• were commanded
• we ought
• servants

Translation Words - UST

• that God has
• things...he told us to
• only God's servants

ULT

10 It is the same for you also, when you have done all the things that you were commanded, you should say, 'We are unworthy servants. We have only done what we ought to do.'

UST

10 Similarly, when you have done everything that God has told you to do, you should say, 'We are only God's servants and do not deserve for him to thank us. We have only done the things that he told us to do.'
Luke 17:11

General Information:
Jesus heals 10 men of leprosy. Verses 11 and 12 give background information and the setting of the event. (See: Background Information)

Now it came about that (ULT) and...were (UST)
This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

he went up to Jerusalem (ULT)
As...his disciples...walking along the road to Jerusalem (UST)
“as Jesus and the disciples were traveling to Jerusalem”

Translation Words - ULT
• Samaria
• Galilee
• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST
• the regions of Samaria
• Galilee
• Jerusalem
Luke 17:12

a certain village (ULT)
a village (UST)

This phrase does not identify the village.

ten men who were lepers met him (ULT)
ten lepers came (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “ten men who were lepers met him” or “ten men who had leprosy met him” (See: Active or Passive)

They stood far away (ULT)
him, but stood at some distance away (UST)

This was a respectful gesture, because lepers were not allowed to approach other people. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• who were lepers

Translation Words - UST

• lepers
Luke 17:13

they lifted up their voices (ULT)
They...called out (UST)

The idiom “to lift up one’s voice” means to speak loudly. Alternate translation: “they called with loud voices” or “they called aloud” (See: Idiom)

have mercy on us (ULT)
please have pity on us (UST)

They were specifically asking to be healed. Alternate translation: “please show us mercy by healing us” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Master
- have mercy
- their voices

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Master
- please have pity on
- called out
Luke 17:14

show yourselves to the priests (ULT)
show yourselves to the priests (UST)

Lepers were required to have the priests verify that their leprosy was healed. Alternate translation: “show yourselves to the priests so they can examine you” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they were cleansed (ULT)
they were healed (UST)

When people were healed, they were no longer ceremonially unclean. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “they were healed of their leprosy and so became clean” or “they were cured of their leprosy” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
- they were cleansed
- priests

Translation Words - UST
- they were healed
- priests

ULT
14 Now when he saw them, he said to them, “Go show yourselves to the priests.” And it happened that as they went away, they were cleansed.

UST
14 When he saw them, he said to them, “Go and show yourselves to the priests.” So they went, and as they were going, they were healed.
Luke 17:15

seeing that he was healed (ULT)
when he saw that he was healed (UST)

“realized that he was healed” or “realized that Jesus had healed him”

turned back (ULT)
turned back (UST)

“he went back to Jesus”

with a loud voice glorifying God (ULT)
praising God loudly (UST)

“and glorified God loudly”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- glorifying
- he was healed
- a…voice
- turned back

Translation Words - UST

- God
- praising
- he was healed
- loudly
- turned back
Luke 17:16

And he fell on his face at his feet (ULT)
He came to Jesus and he lay down on the ground with his face at Jesus’ feet (UST)

“He knelt down and put his face close to Jesus’ feet.” He did this to honor Jesus. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• a Samaritan
• his face
• he fell

Translation Words - UST

• a Samaritan
• the ground with...face
• lay down

ULT
16 And he fell on his face at his feet, giving thanks to him. Now he was a Samaritan.

UST
16 He came to Jesus and he lay down on the ground with his face at Jesus’ feet, and he thanked him. This man was a Samaritan.
Luke 17:17

Connecting Statement:
This is the end of the part of the story about Jesus healing the 10 lepers.

Then Jesus answered and said (ULT)
Then Jesus said (UST)

Jesus responded to what the man did, but he was speaking to the group of people around him. Alternate translation: “So Jesus said to the crowd” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Were not the ten cleansed (ULT)
I healed ten lepers! Why did the...not come back (UST)

This is the first of three rhetorical questions. Jesus used them to show the people around him how surprised and disappointed he was that only one of the ten men came back to glorify God. Alternate translation: “Ten men were healed.” or “God healed ten men.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

But where are the nine (ULT)
other nine (UST)

“Why did not the other nine come back?” This can be a statement. Alternate translation: “The other nine men should have come back, too.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Were...cleansed

Translation Words - UST

• Then Jesus said
• I healed
Luke 17:18

Were there none who returned to give glory to God except this foreigner (ULT)
This foreign man was the only one who returned to thank God; none of the others came back (UST)

This can be a statement. Alternate translation: “No one but this foreigner came back to give glory to God!” or “God healed ten men, yet only this foreigner came back to give glory to God!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

dthis foreigner (ULT)
This foreign man…the (UST)

Samaritans had non-Jewish ancestors and they did not worship God in the same way that the Jews did.

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• glory
• who returned
• foreigner

Translation Words - UST

• God
• to thank
• who returned
• foreign man
Luke 17:19

Your faith has made you well (ULT)
your...God has healed you because you trusted in me (UST)

“Because of your faith you have become well.” The idea of “faith” can be expressed with the verb “believe.” Alternate translation: “Because you believe, you are well again” (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT
• faith
• has made...well
• Rise up

Translation Words - UST
• because you trusted in me
• God has healed
• Get up

ULT
19 Then he said to him, “Rise up, and go. Your faith has made you well.”

UST
19 Then he said to the man, “Get up and go on your way. God has healed you because you trusted in me.”
Luke 17:20

General Information:
We do not know where this event takes place; it simply happens one day when Jesus is talking with the Pharisees.

Now being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come (ULT)
One day...asked by some Pharisees...will God begin to rule everyone (UST)

This is the beginning of a new event. Some translations start it with “One day” or “Once.” It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “One day the Pharisees asked Jesus, ‘When will the kingdom of God come?’” (See: Introduction of a New Event and Active or Passive and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

The kingdom of God does not come with careful observation (ULT)
He...That is not about signs that people can see with their own eyes (UST)

People thought that they would be able to see signs of the kingdom coming. The idea of signs can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “The kingdom of God does not come with signs that people can observe” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
- God
- God (2)
- kingdom of God
- kingdom of God
- Pharisees
- kingdom
- kingdom (2)

Translation Words - UST
- God
- He (2)
- God...rule everyone
- He...That is not about signs that
- some Pharisees
- rule everyone
- That is not about signs that (2)
Luke 17:21

The kingdom of God is in the midst of you (ULT)
He is ruling...God has already begun to rule within you (UST)

The idea of the noun “kingdom” can be expressed with the verb “rules.” Alternate translation: “God rules within you” (See: Abstract Nouns)

the kingdom of God is in the midst of you (ULT)
He is ruling...God has already begun to rule within you (UST)

Jesus was speaking to the religious leaders who were hostile to him. Possible meanings are 1) the word “you” refers to people in general. Alternate translation: “the kingdom of God is within people” or 2) the word translated “within” means “among.” Alternate translation: “the kingdom of God is among you”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- kingdom of God
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- ruling...God
- ruling

ULT

21 Neither will they say, ‘Look, here it is!’ or ‘There it is!’ For look, the kingdom of God is in the midst of you.”

UST

21 People will not be able to say, ‘Look! He is ruling here!’ or ‘He is ruling there!’ because, contrary to what you think, God has already begun to rule within you.”
Luke 17:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples.

The days will come when (ULT)
There will be a time when (UST)

The idea of days coming represents something being soon. Alternate translation: “A time is coming when” or “Soon” (See: Metaphor)

you will desire...to see (ULT)
you will want...to see (UST)

“you will want very much to see“ or “you will wish to experience”

one of the days of the Son of Man (ULT)
Son of Man, ruling powerfully (UST)

This refers to the kingdom of God. Alternate translation: “one of the days when the Son of Man will rule as king” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

of the Son of Man (ULT)
Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. (See: First, Second or Third Person)

but you will not see it (ULT)
you will not see that (UST)

“you will not experience it”

Translation Words - ULT

• disciples
• Son of Man
• The days
• days

Translation Words - UST

• his disciples
• Son...of Man
• There will be a time
• ruling powerfully
Luke 17:23

Look, there!' or ‘Look, here (ULT)
Look, the Messiah is over there!' or they will say, ‘Look, he is here (UST)

This refers to seeking the Messiah. Alternate translation: "Look, the Messiah is over there! He is over here!" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Do not go out or run after them (ULT)
When they say that, do not follow them (UST)

The purpose of going out can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “do not go with them to look” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• run after them

Translation Words - UST

• When they say that, do not follow them
Luke 17:24

for as the flashing lightning...shines (ULT)
Because when the lightning flashes...everyone can see it (UST)

The coming of the Son of Man will be clear and sudden, like the appearance of lightning. Alternate translation: “for as the lightning is visible to everyone when it appears and” or “for as the lightning appears suddenly” (See: Simile)

so will the Son of Man be (ULT)
Similarly...Son of Man, come back again, everyone will see me (UST)

This refers to the future kingdom of God. Alternate translation: “it will be like that on the day when the Son of Man comes to reign” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - UST

• sky
• Son of Man

Translation Words - UST

• sky...when I, the
• Son...of Man

ULT

24 for as the flashing lightning shines from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be. [1]

UST

24 Because when the lightning flashes and lights up the sky from one side to the other, everyone can see it. Similarly when I, the Son of Man, come back again, everyone will see me.
Luke 17:25

But first he must...suffer (ULT)
But before that happens, I must suffer in many ways...I must suffer in many ways (UST)

“But first the Son of Man must suffer.” Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. (See: First, Second or Third Person)

be rejected by this generation (ULT)
I will be rejected by people (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people of this generation must reject him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• suffer
• be rejected
• generation

Translation Words - UST

• I must suffer in many ways
• I will be rejected
• people

ULT 25 But first he must suffer many things and be rejected by this generation.

UST 25 But before that happens, I must suffer in many ways, and I will be rejected by people.
Luke 17:26

And just as it happened...And...even so it will...be (ULT)
But when I...just like people were doing...But when I...come again, people will be doing things (UST)

“As people were doing things...even so people will be doing the same things”

in the days of Noah (ULT)
the...Noah lived (UST)

The “days of Noah” refers to the time during Noah's life just before God punished the people of the world. Alternate translation: “when Noah was living”

in the days of the Son of Man

The “days of the Son of Man” refers to the period just before the Son of Man will come. Alternate translation: “when the Son of Man is about to come”

Translation Words - ULT

• Son of Man
• of Noah
• just as
• days
• days (2)

Translation Words - UST

• Son...of Man
• Noah
• just like people
• lived
• the time when (2)
Luke 17:27

They were eating, they were drinking, they were marrying, they were giving in marriage (ULT)
At that time people ate and drank as usual, and they got married as usual (UST)

People were doing ordinary things. They did not know or care that God was about to judge them.

they were giving in marriage (ULT)
and they got married as usual (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “parents were allowing their daughters to marry men” (See: Active or Passive)

the ark (ULT)
the big boat (UST)

“the ship” or “the barge”

destroyed them all (ULT)
destroyed all those who were not…the boat (UST)

This does not include Noah and his family who were in the ark. Alternate translation: “destroyed all those who were not in the boat”

Translation Words - ULT

• ark
• destroyed
• Noah
• flood
• the day

Translation Words - UST

• big boat
• destroyed
• when Noah
• flood
• the day
Luke 17:28

they were eating, they were drinking (ULT)
city of Sodom, people there ate and drank as usual (UST)

“the people of Sodom were eating and drinking”

Translation Words - ULT

• of Lot
• Likewise
• even as
• days

Translation Words - UST

• Lot
• Similarly
• Similarly
• lived

ULT
28 Likewise, even as it happened in the
days of Lot—they were eating, they
were drinking, they were buying, they
were selling, they were planting, they
were building.

UST
28 Similarly, when Lot lived in the city of
Sodom, people there ate and drank as
usual. They bought things and they sold
things. They planted crops and they
built houses as usual.
Luke 17:29

it rained fire and sulfur from heaven (ULT)
fire and burning sulfur came down...the sky...in the city (UST)

“fire and burning sulfur fell from the sky like rain”

destroyed them all (ULT)
destroyed all those who stayed (UST)

This does not include Lot and his family. Alternate translation: “destroyed all those who stayed in the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- destroyed
- Sodom
- Lot
- fire
- sulfur
- day

Translation Words - UST

- the sky
- destroyed
- Sodom
- Lot
- fire
- burning sulfur
- on the day
Luke 17:30

It will be according to the same manner (ULT)
Similarly...will (UST)

“It will be like that.” Alternate translation: “In the same way people will not be ready” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in the day when the Son of Man is revealed (ULT)
when I, the Son of Man, return to earth, people...be unprepared (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when the Son of Man appears” or “when the Son of man comes” (See: Active or Passive)

when the Son of Man is revealed (ULT)
the Son of Man...people...be unprepared (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man, am revealed” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• when...is revealed
• Son of Man
• day

Translation Words - UST

• people...be unprepared
• Son of Man
• when I...return to earth
Luke 17:31

the one who is on the housetop...do not let him go down (ULT)
On...those who are outside...must not take time to go (UST)

“whoever is on the housetop must not go down” or “if anyone is on his housetop, he must not go down”

on the housetop (ULT)
On...outside (UST)

Their housetops were flat and people could walk or sit on them.

his goods (ULT)
houses, with all...things...they own...the (UST)

“his possessions” or “his things”

let him turn back (ULT)
their...must...turn back to get anything; they must flee quickly (UST)

They were not to go back to the house to get anything. They were to flee quickly. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- let him turn
- likewise
- day
- house

Translation Words - UST

- must...turn back
- Similarly
- day
- houses
Luke 17:32

**Remember Lot’s wife (ULT)**
**Remember what happened to Lot’s wife (UST)**

“Remember what happened to Lot’s wife” This is a warning. She looked back toward Sodom and God punished her along with the people of Sodom. Alternate translation: “Do not do what Lot’s wife did” (See: Ellipsis and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Lot’s

**Translation Words - UST**

- Lot’s
Luke 17:33

Whoever seeks to keep his life will lose it (ULT)
Anyone who continues in his own way of living will die...who (UST)

“People who try save their lives will lose them” or “Whoever tries to save his old way of life will lose his life”

Whoever...will lose it, but...whoever...will save (ULT)
Anyone who...will die. But anyone who leaves his way for my sake will live forever (UST)

“but people who lose their lives will save them” or “but whoever abandons his old way of life will save his life”

Translation Words - ULT

• to keep
• life
• seeks

Translation Words - UST

• continues in his own way of living
Luke 17:34

I tell you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

As Jesus continues to address his disciples, he emphasizes the importance of what he is telling them.

in that night (ULT)
this...the night (UST)

This refers to what will happen if he, the Son of Man, comes during the night.

there will be two people in one bed (ULT)
On...when I return, there will be two...bed (UST)

The emphasis is not on these two people, but on the fact that some people will be taken away and the others will be left.

bed (ULT)
bed (UST)

“couch” or “cot”

The one will be taken, and the other will be left (ULT)
people sleeping in one...The one who believes in me will be taken and the other one will be left behind (UST)

“One person will be taken and the other person will be left behind.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will take one person and leave the other” or “Angels will take one and leave behind the other” (See: Active or Passive)
Luke 17:35

There will be two women grinding at the same place (ULT)

The emphasis is not on these two women or their activity, but on the fact that some people will be taken away and the others will be left.

grinding at the same place (ULT)

“grinding grain together”
Luke 17:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
36[2] [There will be two in the field; one will be taken and the other left.]

UST
36[1] [There will be two in the field; one will be taken and the other left.]
Luke 17:37

General Information:

The disciples ask Jesus a question about his teaching and he answers them.

Where, Lord (ULT)
Lord, where (UST)

“Lord, where will this happen?”

Where the body is, there also the vultures will be gathered together (ULT)
Wherever there is a dead body, the vultures will gather to eat it (UST)

Apparently this is a proverb that means “It will be obvious” or “You will know it when it happens.” Alternate translation: “As vultures gathering shows that there is a dead body, so these things show that the Son of Man is coming” (See: Proverbs)

the vultures (ULT)
vultures (UST)

Vultures are large birds that fly together and eat the flesh of dead animals that they find. You could describe these birds this way or use the word for local birds that do this. (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- body
- vultures

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- is a dead body
- vultures
Luke 18

Luke 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Jesus told two parables (Luke 18:1-8 and Luke 18:9-14) and then taught that his followers were to be humble (Luke 18:15-17), to use everything they owned to help the poor (Luke 18:18-30), and to expect him to die soon (Luke 18:31-34). Then they all began to walk to Jerusalem, and Jesus healed a blind man (Luke 18:35-43).

Special concepts in this chapter

Judges

People expected judges always to do what God said was right and to make sure that other people did what was right. But some judges did not care about doing right or making sure others did right. Jesus called this kind of judge unjust. (See: just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification)

Pharisees and tax collectors

The Pharisees thought that they themselves were the best examples of righteous good people, and they thought that tax collectors were the most unrighteous sinners. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness and righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 18:8). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)
Luke 18:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to tell a parable as he continues to teach his disciples. This is the same part of the story that began in Luke 17:20. Verse 1 gives us a description of the parable Jesus is about to tell. (See: Parables)

Then he spoke (ULT)
Jesus told his disciples (UST)

“Then Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• a parable
• pray

Translation Words - UST

• another story to teach
• pray

ULT

1 Then he spoke a parable to them about how they should always pray and not become discouraged,

UST

1 Jesus told his disciples another story to teach them that they ought to pray continually and not become discouraged if God does not immediately answer their prayers.
Luke 18:2

saying (ULT)
He said (UST)

A new sentence could begin here: “He said”

a certain city (ULT)
city (UST)

Here “certain city” is a way to let the listener know that the narrative that follows takes place in a city, but the name of the city itself is not important. (See: Writing Styles)

did not...respect people (ULT)
not...did...care about people (UST)

“did not care about other people”

Translation Words - ULT

• who...fear
• God
• a...judge

Translation Words - UST

• did...revere
• God
• judge who
Luke 18:3

Now there was a widow (ULT)
There was a widow...that (UST)

Jesus uses this phrase to introduce a new character to the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

a widow (ULT)
a widow (UST)

A widow is a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried. Jesus' hearers would have thought of her as a person who had no one to protect her from those who wanted to harm her.

she came often to him (ULT)
who kept coming...to...judge (UST)

The word “him” refers to the judge.

Give justice to me against (ULT)
Please get justice for me from (UST)

“Give me a just ruling against"

my opponent (ULT)
man who is opposing me in court (UST)

“my enemy” or “the person who is trying to harm me.” This is an opponent in a lawsuit. It is not clear whether the widow is suing the man or the man is suing the widow.

Translation Words - ULT

• opponent
• Give justice

Translation Words - UST

• man who is opposing...in court
• Please get justice for
Luke 18:4

man (ULT)
people (UST)

This refers here to “people” in general. (See: When Masculine Words Include Women)

Translation Words - ULT

• I...fear
• God
• a long time

Translation Words - UST

• revere
• God
• a long time

ULT

4 And for a long time he was not willing, but after these things he said to himself, ‘Even though I do not fear God or respect man,

UST

4 For a long time the judge refused to help her. But later, he said to himself, ‘I do not revere God and I do not care about people,
Luke 18:5

causes...me trouble (ULT)
keeps bothering me (UST)

“bothers me”

she will...wear me out (ULT)
exhaust me by continually coming to me (UST)

“exhaust me”

by continually coming (ULT)
exhaust me by continually coming to me (UST)

“by continually coming to me”

Translation Words - ULT

• I will give justice
• trouble

Translation Words - UST

• So I will judge...case and make sure she is treated fairly
• keeps bothering me
Luke 18:6

General Information:
Jesus has finished telling his parable and is now commenting about it to his disciples.

Connecting Statement:
These verses should be seen as an explanation of the parable in Luke 18:1-5.

the...Listen to what...unjust judge says (ULT)
the Lord Jesus...Think carefully about what...unjust judge said (UST)

“Think about what the unjust judge just said.” Translate this in a way that people will understand that Jesus has already told what the judge said.

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- unjust
- judge

Translation Words - UST

- the Lord Jesus
- unjust
- judge
Luke 18:7

Now (ULT) who is just (UST)

This word indicates that Jesus has ended the parable and has started explaining its meaning.

God...will...God...not bring about...night (ULT) who is just...Even more certainly will God...bring about...night (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: “God will also certainly...night!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

for his elect (ULT) for his chosen people (UST)

“the people he has chosen”

Will he...delay long over them (ULT) he is always patient with them (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. This can be a statement. Alternate translation: “He will certainly not delay long over them!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- elect
- justice
- crying out
- day

Translation Words - UST

- God
- chosen people
- justice
- who pray earnestly
- day

ULT

7 Now will God not bring about justice for his elect, the ones crying out to him day and night? Will he indeed delay long over them?

UST

7 Even more certainly will God, who is just, bring about justice for his chosen people, who pray earnestly to him night and day! And he is always patient with them.
Luke 18:8

when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find faith on the earth (ULT)
I, the Son of Man, come back to earth, there will still be many people who do not believe...me (UST)

Jesus asks this question so that his hearers will stop thinking that God is slow to help those who call to him for justice and will understand that the real problem is that they do not truly have faith in God. Alternate translation: “when the Son of Man comes, you need to be sure that he will find that you truly have faith in him.” or “when the Son of Man comes, he will find few on earth who believe.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

when the Son of Man comes, will he indeed find (ULT)
I, the Son of Man, come back to earth, there will still be many people who do not believe...me (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man come, will I indeed find” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• Son of Man
• faith
• justice
• earth

Translation Words - UST

• Son of Man
• to earth, there will still be many people who do not believe...me
• justice
• to earth, there will still be many people who do not believe...me
Luke 18:9

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell another parable to some other people who were persuaded that they themselves were righteous. (See: Parables)

ULT
9 Then he also spoke this parable to some who were persuaded in themselves that they were righteous and who despised others,

UST
9 Then Jesus also told the following story to some people who thought they were righteous and who looked down on other people.

Then he...spoke (ULT)
Then Jesus...told (UST)

“Then Jesus”

to some (ULT)
to some people (UST)

“to some people”

who were persuaded in themselves that they were righteous (ULT)
the...who thought they were righteous (UST)

“who had convinced themselves that they were righteous” or “who thought they were righteous”

who despised (ULT)
who looked down on other people (UST)

strongly disliked or hated

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous
- parable
- were persuaded

Translation Words - UST

- righteous
- following story
- who thought they
Luke 18:10

into the temple (ULT)
to the temple (UST)

“into the temple courtyard”

Translation Words - ULT

- to pray
- a Pharisee
- temple
- a tax collector

Translation Words - UST

- in Jerusalem to pray
- the men was a Pharisee
- temple
- was someone who collected taxes...for the Roman government

ULT
10 “Two men went up into the temple to pray—the one a Pharisee, and the other a tax collector.

UST
10 He said, “Two men went up to the temple in Jerusalem to pray. One of the men was a Pharisee. The other was someone who collected taxes...for the Roman government.
Luke 18:11

The Pharisee stood praying this about himself (ULT)
The Pharisee stood and prayed about himself in this way (UST)

The meaning of the Greek text of this phrase is not clear. Possible meanings are 1) “The Pharisee stood and prayed about himself in this way” or 2) “The Pharisee stood by himself and prayed.”

robbers (ULT)
Some steal money from...others (UST)

Robbers are people who steal from other people by forcing the other people to give things to them, or by threatening to harm them if they refuse to give what the robbers ask for.

or even like this tax collector (ULT)
things. And I am certainly not like this sinful tax collector who cheats people (UST)

The Pharisees believed that tax collectors were as sinful as robbers, unrighteous people, and adulterers. This could be made explicit. Alternate translation: “and I am certainly not like this sinful tax collector who cheats people” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- unrighteous
- God
- adulterers
- praying
- Pharisee
- tax collector
- like
- like

Translation Words - UST

- some treat...unjustly
- O God
- and some commit adultery
- in...way
- Pharisee
- sinful tax collector who cheats people
- like
- like
Luke 18:12

of all that I get (ULT)
and I give to the temple...of all that I earn (UST)

“everything I earn”

Translation Words - ULT

• a week
• I get
• I give tithes
• I fast

Translation Words - UST

• every week
• that I earn
• ten percent
• I fast
Luke 18:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus has finished telling his parable. In verse 14, he comments about what the parable teaches.

standing at a distance (ULT)
stood far away (UST)

“stood away from the Pharisee.” This was a sign of humility. He did not feel worthy to be near the Pharisee.

lift up his eyes to heaven (ULT)
from the other people in the...look up toward heaven (UST)

To “lift up his eyes” means to look at something. Alternate translation: “look toward heaven” or “look upward” (See: Idiom)

was beating his breast (ULT)
he beat on his chest (UST)

This is a physical expression of great sorrow, and shows this man’s repentance and humility. Alternate translation: “hit his breast to show his sorrow” (See: Symbolic Action)

the...God...have mercy on me, the sinner (ULT)
the...O God...please be merciful to me and forgive me, because I am a terrible sinner (UST)

“God, please be merciful to me. I am a sinner” or “God, please have mercy on me even though I have committed many sins”

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• sinner
• God
• have mercy
• tax collector

Translation Words - UST

• heaven
• sinner
• O God
• please be merciful
• tax collector
Luke 18:14

this one went back down to his house justified (ULT)  
Then Jesus said...the tax collector was forgiven as they left to go home...This (UST)

He was justified because God forgave his sin. Alternate translation: “God forgave the tax collector” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

rather than the other (ULT)  
not...Pharisee (UST)

“rather than the other man” or “and not the other man.” Alternate translation: “but God did not forgive the Pharisee” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

because everyone who exalts himself (ULT)  
the...is because everyone who exalts himself (UST)

With this phrase, Jesus switches from the story to state the general principle that the story illustrates.

will be humbled (ULT)  
will be made (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will humble” (See: Active or Passive)

will be exalted (ULT)  
will be exalted (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will greatly honor” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• will be humbled  
• humbles  
• justified  
• exalts  
• will be exalted  
• house

Translation Words - UST

• will be made  
• humbles  
• was forgiven  
• who exalts  
• will be exalted  
• go home
Luke 18:15

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in the part of the story which began in Luke 17:20. Jesus welcomes the children and talks about them.

Now they were also bringing to him (ULT)
One day people were bringing even their babies...When the (UST)

“Now the people were also bringing to Jesus”

he might touch them...Now (ULT)
he would put his hands on them and bless them...One day people were bringing even their babies...When the (UST)

This could also be translated as separate sentences: “touch them. But”

they were rebuking them (ULT)
they told them not to do (UST)

“the disciples tried to stop the parents from bringing their children to Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• disciples
• infants
• they were rebuking

Translation Words - UST

• disciples
• One day people were bringing even their babies...When the
• they told...not to do
Luke 18:16

But Jesus called them to him (ULT)
But Jesus called...the children to be brought (UST)

“Jesus told the people to bring their infants to him”

Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them (ULT)
to...Let the little children come to me! Do not stop them...humble and trusting (UST)

These two sentences have similar meaning and they are combined for emphasis. Some languages emphasize in a different way. Alternate translation: “You must certainly allow the children to come to me” (See: Parallelism)

For...belongs to such ones (ULT)
for...It is...people like these children (UST)

This could be stated as a simile. Alternate translation: “belongs to people who are like these little children” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- called...to him
- God
- kingdom of God
- little children
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- called
- over whom God
- over whom God...will agree to rule
- little children
- will agree to rule
Luke 18:17

Truly I say to you (ULT)
Indeed I say to you (UST)

“Surely I say to you.” Jesus used this expression to emphasize the importance of what he was about to say.

whoever will not receive the kingdom of God like a child will definitely not enter into it (ULT)
that whoever does not accept with humility like a child for God to rule over them, God will not accept that person at all (UST)

God requires people to accept his rule over them with trust and humility. Alternate translation: “whoever wants to enter God’s kingdom must receive it with trust and humility like a child” (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• Truly
• kingdom of God
• a child
• will...receive
• like
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God
• Indeed
• for...God...to rule over them, God
• child
• does...accept
• with humility like a
• for...to rule over them, God
Now a certain ruler asked him, saying, “Good teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”

Once a Jewish leader asked Jesus, “Good teacher, what must I do in order to have eternal life?”

“receive life that does not end.” The term “inherit” usually refers to the property that a man left to his children when he dies. Therefore, this metaphor may mean he understood himself to be a child of God and desired for God to give him eternal life. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- life
- eternal
- to inherit
- Good
- a...ruler
- teacher

Translation Words - UST

- life
- eternal
- to have
- Good
- a Jewish leader asked Jesus
- teacher
Luke 18:19

Why do you call me good? No one is good except God alone (ULT)
Why do you call me good? God is the only one who is truly good (UST)

Jesus asks the question because he knows that the ruler will not like Jesus’ answer to the ruler’s question in verse 18. Jesus does not expect the ruler to answer Jesus’ question. Jesus wants the ruler to understand that Jesus’ answer to the ruler’s question comes from God, who alone is good. Alternate translation: “You know that no one is good, except God alone, so to call me good is to compare me with God” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• you call
• God
• good
• is good

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• do you call
• God is
• good
• who is truly good
Luke 18:20

You know the commandments—do not commit adultery, do not kill, do not steal, do not testify falsely, honor your father and mother.”

In answer to your question, certainly you know the commandments that God gave to Moses for us to obey: ‘Do not commit adultery, do not murder anyone, do not steal, do not give a false report, honor your father and mother.’”
Luke 18:21

But he said (ULT)
The man said (UST)

“But the ruler said”

All these things (ULT)
all those commandments (UST)

“All of these commandments”

ULT
21 But he said, “All these things I have obeyed from my youth.”

UST
21 The man said, “I have obeyed all those commandments ever since I was young.”
Luke 18:22

But when Jesus heard that (ULT)
When Jesus heard (UST)

“When Jesus heard the man say that”

he said to him (ULT)
him say that, he replied to him (UST)

“he answered him”

One thing you still lack (ULT)
You still need to do one more thing...you (UST)

“You still need to do one more thing” or “There is one thing that you have not yet done”

You must sell all that you have (ULT)
Sell all that...own...have (UST)

“sell all your possessions” or “sell everything that you own”

distribute it to the poor (ULT)
give the money to people who...very little to live on (UST)

“give away the money to the poor people”

come, follow me (ULT)
come...be my disciple (UST)

“come with me as my disciple”

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• Jesus

Translation Words - UST

• heaven
• Jesus
Luke 18:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
23 But when the ruler heard these things, he became extremely sad, for he was very rich.

UST
23 The man became very sad when he heard that, because he was extremely rich.
Luke 18:24

How difficult it is…the kingdom of God (ULT)
how...is very difficult for...God to rule over them (UST)

This is an exclamation, and not a question. Alternate translation: “It is so very hard...kingdom of God!” (See: Exclamations)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• God
• kingdom of God
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• God
• God...to rule over them
• to rule over them

ULT

24 Then Jesus, looking at him, said, “How difficult it is for those who have riches to enter into the kingdom of God!

UST

24 When Jesus saw how sad the man was, he too became very sorrowful. He said, “It is very difficult for those who are wealthy to agree for God to rule over them.”
Luke 18:25

*a camel to go through the eye of a needle* (ULT)
a camel to go through...eye of a needle (UST)

It is impossible for a camel to fit through the eye of a needle. Jesus was probably using hyperbole to mean it is extremely difficult for a rich man to enter God's kingdom. (See: Hyperbole)

the eye of a needle (ULT)
eye of a needle (UST)

The needle's eye is the hole in a sewing needle through which the thread is passed.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- kingdom of God
- a camel
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God rule their lives
- a camel
- rule their lives
Luke 18:26

those who heard it (ULT)
Those who heard (UST)

“The people who listening to Jesus said”

Then who can be saved (ULT)
replied, “Then it seems that no one can be saved (UST)

It is possible that they were asking for an answer. But it is more likely that they used the question to emphasize their surprise at what Jesus said. Alternate translation: “Then no one can be saved from sin!” or in active form: “Then God will not save anyone!” (See: Rhetorical Question and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• be saved

Translation Words - UST

• be saved
Luke 18:27

The things which are impossible with people are possible with God

“What is impossible for people is possible for God,” said Jesus.

Translation Words - UST

• God

Translation Words - ULT

• God
Luke 18:28

Connecting Statement:
This is the end of the conversation about entering the kingdom of heaven.

Look, we (ULT)
Look...we (UST)
This phrase refers only to the disciples, and contrasts them with the rich ruler.

we have left (ULT)
we have left...we (UST)
“we have given up” or “we have left behind”

everything (ULT)
everything (UST)
“all our wealth” or “all our possessions”

Translation Words - ULT
• Peter

Translation Words - UST
• Peter
Luke 18:29

So he said (ULT)
Jesus said...and (UST)

“So Jesus said”

Truly, I say to you (ULT)
Yes...I also tell you (UST)

Jesus uses this expression to stress the importance of what he is about to say.

there is no one who (ULT)
those who (UST)

This expression is intended to include not only the disciples, but also everyone else who has made the same sacrifices.

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• God
• Truly
• kingdom of God
• children
• kingdom
• a house

Translation Words - UST

• brothers
• to God's
• Yes
• in order to submit...to God's...will for them
• or their children
• in order to submit...will for them
• homes

ULT

29 So he said to them, “Truly, I say to you that there is no one who has left a house, or a wife, or brothers, or parents, or children, for the sake of the kingdom of God.

UST

29 Jesus said to them, "Yes, and I also tell you that those who have left their homes, their wives, their brothers, their parents, or their children in order to submit to God's will for them
Luke 18:30

who will not receive (ULT)
will receive (UST)

This is the end of the sentence that begins with the words “there is no one who has left...kingdom of God” (verse 28). This could be stated in positive form. “everyone who has left...kingdom of God will receive” (See: Double Negatives)

in the world to come, eternal life

“also eternal life in the world to come”

Translation Words - ULT

• life
• eternal
• will...receive
• world
• world

Translation Words - UST

• life
• eternal
• will receive
• life
• age
Luke 18:31

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in this part of the story that began in Luke 17:20. Jesus is talking to his disciples alone.

Then having taken aside the twelve (ULT)
Jesus took the twelve...now (UST)

Jesus took the twelve disciples to a place away from other people where they could be alone.

See (ULT)
Listen carefully (UST)

This indicates a significant change in the ministry of Jesus as he goes to Jerusalem for the final time.

that have been written by the prophets (ULT)
The prophets wrote long ago (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the prophets have written” (See: Active or Passive)

the prophets (ULT)
prophets (UST)

This refers to the Old Testament prophets.

about the Son of Man (ULT)
about me, the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus speaks of himself as “the Son of Man.” Alternate translation: “me, the Son of Man,” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

will be accomplished (ULT)
will be accomplished (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will happen” or “will occur” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• prophets
• twelve
• Son of Man
• Jerusalem
• have been written

Translation Words - UST

• prophets
• twelve
• Son of Man
• Jerusalem
• wrote long ago
Luke 18:32

For he will be handed over to the Gentiles (ULT)
My enemies will put me into the power of the non-Jews (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “For the Jewish leaders will give him over to the Gentiles” (See: Active or Passive)

he will be handed over (ULT)
My enemies will put me into...power of the (UST)

Jesus speaks of himself as “the Son of Man.” Alternate translation: “I” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

will be mocked, and will be shamefully treated, and will be spit upon (ULT)
They will mock me...treat me with disdain, and spit on me (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will mock him, treat him shamefully, and spit on him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Gentiles
• he will be handed over
• will be mocked

Translation Words - UST

• non-Jews
• My enemies will put me into...power of the
• They will mock me
Luke 18:33

him...he will rise again (ULT)  
me...I will become alive again (UST)

Jesus speaks of himself as “the Son of Man.” Alternate translation: “me...me...I” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

on the third day (ULT)  
But on the third day after that (UST)

This refers to the third day after his death. However, the disciples did not yet understand this, so it is best not to add this explanation when translating this verse. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• he will rise again
• day

Translation Words - UST

• I will become alive again
• day
Luke 18:34

General Information:
This verse is not part of the main story line, but rather a comment about this part of the story. (See: End of Story)

But they understood none of these things (ULT)
But...disciples did...understand any of those things...them (UST)

“They did not understand any of these things”

of these things (ULT)
of those things...them (UST)

This refers to Jesus’ description of how he would suffer and die in Jerusalem, and that he would rise from the dead.

this word was hidden from them (ULT)
the...that...God prevented...from...meaning of what he...was...telling them (UST)

This can be stated in active form, but it is not clear whether it is God or Jesus who hid the word from them. Alternate translation: “Jesus hid his message from them” or “God prevented them from understanding the meaning of what Jesus was telling them” (See: Active or Passive)

the things that were spoken (ULT)
he said...the (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the things that Jesus said” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• understood
• they...understand

Translation Words - UST

• did...understand
• understanding
Luke 18:35

General Information:
Jesus heals a blind man as he approaches Jericho. These verses give background information and information about the setting of the story. (See: Background Information)

Now it happened that (ULT)  
As...was (UST)
This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

a certain blind man was sitting (ULT)  
a blind man...sitting (UST)
“there was a blind man sitting.” Here “certain” means only that the man is an important new participant to the story but Luke does not mention his name. He is a new participant in the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Translation Words - ULT
• Jericho
• begging

Translation Words - UST
• city...Jericho
• He was begging for money
Luke 18:36

Now hearing (ULT)
When he heard the (UST)

It may be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: “When he heard”

ULT
36 Now hearing a crowd going by, he was asking what this might be.

UST
36 When he heard the crowd of people passing by, he asked someone, “What is happening?”
Luke 18:37

And they told him (ULT)
They told him...the man from (UST)

“People in the crowd told the blind man”

Jesus...of Nazareth (ULT)
Jesus...the town of Nazareth (UST)

Jesus came from the town of Nazareth, which was located in Galilee.

is passing by (ULT)
is passing by (UST)

“was walking past him”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus...of Nazareth
• Nazareth

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus...the town of Nazareth
• town of Nazareth

ULT
37 And they told him, “Jesus of Nazareth is passing by.”

UST
37 They told him, “Jesus, the man from the town of Nazareth, is passing by.”

Luke 18:38

Then (ULT)
He shouted (UST)

This word marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, the crowd had told the blind man that Jesus was walking by.

he cried out (ULT)
He shouted (UST)

“called out” or “shouted”

Son of David (ULT)
you who are descended from King David (UST)

Jesus was a descendant of David, Israel's most important king.

have mercy on me (ULT)
have pity on me (UST)

“show me pity” or “show me compassion”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Son
• have mercy
• of David
• he cried out

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• you who are descended from
• have pity on
• King David
• He shouted
Luke 18:39

the ones who were walking ahead (ULT)
Those who were walking at the front of the crowd (UST)

“The people who were walking at the front of the crowd”

would be quiet (ULT)
told him to be quiet (UST)

“to be silent” or “not to shout”

he kept crying out much more (ULT)
shouted even more loudly (UST)

This could mean that he cried out louder or that he cried out more persistently.

Translation Words - ULT

• Son
• have mercy
• of David
• he kept crying out
• were rebuking

Translation Words - UST

• You who are descended from
• have pity on
• King David
• shouted...loudly
• scolded

ULT
39 And the ones who were walking ahead were rebuking him, so that he would be quiet. But he kept crying out much more, “Son of David, have mercy on me.”

UST
39 Those who were walking at the front of the crowd scolded him and told him to be quiet. But he shouted even more loudly. “You who are descended from King David, have pity on me!”
Luke 18:40

him to be brought to him (ULT)
to bring the man to him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people
to bring the blind man to him” (See: Active or Passive)

him...he asked (ULT)
him...Jesus asked (UST)

“Jesus asked the blind man”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• and commanded

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• commanded the people

ULT

40 Then Jesus stood still and commanded him to be brought to him. Then when he had come near, he asked him,

UST

40 Jesus stopped walking and commanded the people to bring the man to him. When the blind man came near, Jesus asked him,
Luke 18:41

I want to see again (ULT) to enable me to see (UST)

“to be able to see”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord

Translation Words - UST

• Lord, I want you

ULT

41 “What do you want me to do for you?” So he said, “Lord, I want to see again.”

UST

41 “What do you want me to do for you?” He replied, “Lord, I want you to enable me to see!”
Luke 18:42

Receive your sight (ULT)
see (UST)

This is a command, but Jesus is not commanding the man to do anything. Jesus is healing the man by commanding him to be healed. Alternate translation: “You will now receive your sight” (See: Imperatives - Other Uses)

Your faith has healed you (ULT)
Because you have trusted in me, I have healed you (UST)

These words are a metonym. It was because of the man's faith that Jesus healed the man. Alternate translation: “I have healed you because you believed in me” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
- Jesus
- faith
- has healed

Translation Words - UST
- Jesus
- Because...have trusted in me
- I have healed
Luke 18:43

glorifying God (ULT)
praising God...this (UST)

“giving glory to God” or “praising God”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- glorifying
- people
- praise

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- praising
- people
- they...praised

ULT

43 And immediately he could see again and followed him, glorifying God. And all the people, when they saw this, gave praise to God.

18:24 1 Scholars are divided whether the phrase: [he] became very sad should be included here. Compare verse 23.

18:28 2 Some manuscripts read our own possessions, but the best manuscripts read.

UST

43 Immediately he was able to see. And he went with Jesus, praising God. And when all the people there saw this, they also praised God.

18:24 1 Scholars are divided whether the phrase: When Jesus saw how sad the man was should be included here. Compare verse 23.
Luke 19

Luke 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

After Jesus helped a man named Zacchaeus repent of his sins (Luke 19:1-10), he taught his followers that when he began to rule as king they would need to tell them what they had done with the things he had given them to take care of (Luke 19:11-27). He did this by telling them a parable. After that, he rode into Jerusalem on a colt (Luke 19:28-48). (See: kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven and Parables)

Special concepts in this chapter

“Sinner”

The Pharisees refer to a group of people as “sinners.” The Jewish leaders thought these people were sinful, but in reality the leaders were also sinful. This can be taken as irony. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and Irony)

Servants

God expects his people to remember that everything in the world belongs to God. God gives his people things so they can serve him. He wants them to please him by doing what he wants them to do with everything he has given them. One day Jesus will ask his servants what they have done with everything he gave them to use. He will give a reward to those who have done what he wanted them to do, and he will punish those who have not.

The donkey and the colt

Jesus rode into Jerusalem on an animal. In this way he was like a king who came into a city after he had won an important battle. Also, the kings of Israel in the Old Testament rode on a donkeys. Other kings rode on horses. So Jesus was showing that he was the king of Israel and that he was not like other kings.

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about this event. Matthew and Mark wrote that the disciples brought Jesus a donkey. John wrote that Jesus found a donkey. Luke wrote that they brought him a colt. Only Matthew wrote that there were both a donkey had a colt. No one knows for sure whether Jesus rode the donkey or the colt. It is best to translate each of these accounts as it appears in the ULT without trying to make them all say exactly the same thing. (See: Matthew 21:1-7 and Mark 11:1-7 and Luke 19:29-36 and John 12:14-15)

Spreading garments and branches

When king would enter the cities they ruled, people would cut branches from trees and take off the clothes that they wore to stay warm in cold weather and spread them all on the road so the king would ride over them. They did this to honor the king and show that they loved him. (See: honor and Symbolic Action)

The merchants in the temple

Jesus forced the people who were selling animals in the temple to leave. He did this to show everyone that he had authority over the temple and that only those who were righteous, who did what God said was good, could be in it. (See: righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)
Luke 19:1

General Information:

Verses 1-2 begin to give background information for the events that follow. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jericho

Translation Words - UST

• Jericho...city

ULT

1 Then he entered and was passing through Jericho.

UST

1 Jesus entered Jericho and was going through the city.
Luke 19:2

Now, there was a man (ULT)
There was a man (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: “There was a man who was” (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

he was a chief tax collector, and he was rich (ULT)
He...was in charge of collecting taxes and was very rich (UST)

This is background information about Zacchaeus. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• named
• named
• Zacchaeus
• a chief tax collector

Translation Words - UST

• there named
• there named
• Zacchaeus
• in charge of collecting taxes
Luke 19:3

General Information:

Verse 3 completes the background information begun in Luke 19:1-2 for the events that follow. (See: Background Information)

he was trying (ULT)
He wanted (UST)

“Zacchaeus was trying”

because he was small in height (ULT)
He was a very short man (UST)

“because he was short”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• he was trying

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• He wanted

ULT
3 And he was trying to see Jesus, who he was, but he was not able over the crowd, because he was small in height.

UST
3 He wanted to see Jesus but he could not see him over the crowd. He was a very short man and there were many people around Jesus.
Luke 19:4

So he ran (ULT)
So he ran (UST)

The author has finished giving the background to the event and now begins to describe the event itself.

*a sycamore tree (ULT)*
*a sycamore fig tree (UST)*

“a sycamore fig tree.” It produces small round fruit about 2.5 centimeters across. Alternate translation: “a fig tree” or “a tree”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- he ran

**Translation Words - UST**

- he ran
Luke 19:5

the place (ULT)  
he looked up (UST)

“the tree” or “where Zacchaeus was”

Translation Words - ULT
  • Jesus
  • Zacchaeus
  • house

Translation Words - UST
  • Jesus
  • Zacchaeus
  • house

ULT
5 And when Jesus came to the place, he looked up and said to him, “Zacchaeus, come down quickly, for today I must stay at your house.”

UST
5 When Jesus got there, he looked up and said to him, “Zacchaeus, come down quickly, I have to stay at your house tonight!”
Luke 19:6

So he hurried (ULT)
So...quickly (UST)

“So Zacchaeus hurried“

Translation Words - ULT

• welcomed
• joyfully

Translation Words - UST

• welcome...into his home
• He was glad

ULT
6 So he hurried and came down and welcomed him joyfully.

UST
6 So he came down quickly. He was glad to welcome Jesus into his home.
Luke 19:7

they all complained (ULT)
the people...grumbled (UST)

The Jews hated the tax collectors and did not think any good person should associate with them. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

He has gone in to visit...with...a sinful man (ULT)
He has gone to be the guest...of...a real sinner (UST)

“Jesus has gone into the house of a sinner to visit him”

a sinful man (ULT)
a real sinner (UST)

“an obvious sinner” or “a real sinner”

Translation Words - ULT

• sinful

Translation Words - UST

• a real sinner
Luke 19:8

the Lord (ULT)
Jesus...the (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

I will restore four times the amount (ULT)
I will pay them back four times...amount I have gotten from them (UST)

“return to them four times as much as I took from them”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• Lord
• Zacchaeus
• goods

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• Lord
• Zacchaeus
• what...own
Luke 19:9

**ULT**

salvation has come to this house (ULT)

God has saved this household...has shown (UST)

It was understood that salvation comes from God. Alternate translation: “God has saved this household” (See: Abstract Nouns and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to this house (ULT)

this household (UST)

The word “house” here refers to the people living in the house or the family. (See: Metonymy)

he too (ULT)

he (UST)

“this man too” or “Zacchaeus also”

a son of Abraham (ULT)

a true descendant of Abraham (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “descendant of Abraham” and 2) “person who has faith as Abraham did.”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- salvation
- Jesus
- a son
- of Abraham
- house

**Translation Words - UST**

- God has saved
- Jesus
- a true descendant of
- Abraham
- household

**ULT**

9 Then Jesus said to him, “Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.”

**UST**

9 Jesus said to him, “Today God has saved this household, because this man has shown that he is a true descendant of Abraham.”
Luke 19:10

came...the Son of Man (ULT)
I...came...the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man, came”

those who are lost (ULT)
this...people like you who have gone astray from God (UST)

“the people who have wandered away from God” or “those who by sinning have wandered away from God”

Translation Words - ULT

• to save
• Son of Man
• to seek

Translation Words - UST

• save
• Son of Man
• to find

ULT
10 For the Son of Man came to seek and to save those who are lost.”

UST
10 Remember this: I, the Son of Man, came to find and save people like you who have gone astray from God.”
Luke 19:11

General Information:
Jesus begins to tell a parable to the crowd. Verse 11 gives background information about why Jesus tells the parable. (See: Parables and Background Information)

that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately (ULT)
that...as he got to Jerusalem he would begin to rule as king over God's people (UST)

The Jews believed that the Messiah would establish the kingdom as soon as he came to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “that Jesus would immediately begin to rule over God's kingdom” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• a parable
• kingdom of God
• to Jerusalem
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God's
• another story. He wanted to correct
• to rule as king...God's
• Jerusalem
• to rule as king

ULT 11 Now as they were listening to these things, he proceeded to speak a parable, because he was near to Jerusalem, and they thought that the kingdom of God was about to appear immediately.

UST 11 The people were listening to everything Jesus said. Since he was getting close to Jerusalem, Jesus decided to tell them another story. He wanted to correct their idea that as soon as he got to Jerusalem he would begin to rule as king over God's people.
Luke 19:12

A certain man of noble birth (ULT)
A prince prepared (UST)

“A certain man who was a member of the ruling class” or “A certain man from an important family”

to receive for himself a kingdom (ULT)
in order to receive from a higher king the right...become king over the country...to (UST)

This is the image of a lesser king going to a greater king. The greater king would give the lesser king the right and authority to rule over his own country. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT
  • to receive
  • to return
  • of noble birth
  • a kingdom

Translation Words - UST
  • in order to receive
  • he received the right of being king, he would return...rule his people
  • A prince prepared
  • from a higher king the...king over...country

ULT
12 Therefore he said, “A certain man of noble birth went into a far country to receive for himself a kingdom and then to return.

UST
12 He said, “A prince prepared to go to a distant country in order to receive from a higher king the right to become king over the country where he lived. After he received the right of being king, he would return to rule his people.”
Luke 19:13

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

he called (ULT)
he left, he summoned (UST)

“The nobleman called.” It may be helpful to state that the man did this before he left to receive his kingdom. Alternate translation: “Before he left, he called”

ten… and gave them...minas (ULT)
ten...He gave...each...money...to them (UST)

“gave each of them one mina”

ten minas (ULT)
an equal amount of money (UST)

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days’ wages, what people would be paid for about four months’ work, so ten minas would have been about three years’ wages. Alternate translation: “ten valuable coins” or “a large amount of money” (See: Biblical Weight and Numbers)

Conduct business (ULT)
Do business (UST)

“Trade with this money” or “Use this money in order to earn more”

Translation Words - ULT

- he called
- servants
- of his servants

Translation Words - UST

- he left, he summoned
- of his servants
- of his servants. He gave
Luke 19:14

But his citizens hated him and sent a delegation after him, saying, 'We do not want this man to rule over us.'

ULT
14 But his citizens hated him and sent a delegation after him, saying, 'We do not want this man to rule over us.'

UST
14 But many people of his country hated him. So they sent some messengers to follow him and say to the higher king, 'We do not want this man to be our king!'

Translation Words - ULT

- sent
- to rule
- citizens

Translation Words - UST

- So they sent
- to be...king
- many...of...country
Luke 19:15

Now it happened that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

having received the kingdom (ULT)

made king anyway. Later he...new king...the (UST)

“after he had become king”

be called to him (ULT)

he...called (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to come to him” (See: Active or Passive)

what profit they had made by doing business (ULT)

how much they had gained by doing business with...he had given them (UST)

“how much money they had earned”

Translation Words - ULT

• be called
• having received
• money
• profit they had made by doing business
• returned
• kingdom
• servants
• he might know

Translation Words - UST

• called
• made king anyway. Later he
• money
• they had gained by doing business with...he had given them
• returned as
• new king
• servants
• know
Luke 19:16

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

The first (ULT)
The first (UST)

“The first servant” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

came before him (ULT)
came (UST)

“came before the nobleman”

your mina has made ten minas (ULT)
with your money I have earned ten times as much (UST)

It is implied that the servant was the one who caused the profit. Alternate translation: “I used your mina to make a profit of ten more minas” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

mina (ULT)
with your (UST)

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days’ wages, what people would be paid for about four months’ work. See how you translated this in Luke 19:13. (See: Biblical Weight)

Translation Words - ULT

• Master

Translation Words - UST

• Sir
Luke 19:17

he said to him (ULT)
He said (UST)

“the nobleman said to the first servant”

Well done (ULT)
You have done very well (UST)

“You have done well.” Your language may have a phrase that an employer would use to show approval, such as “Good job.”

very little (ULT)
a small amount of money (UST)

This refers to the one mina, which the nobleman apparently did not consider to be a lot of money.

Translation Words - ULT

• authority
• faithful
• Well done
• good
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• I will give you
• faithfully
• You have done very well
• this man, ‘You are a good
• servant

ULT

17 And he said to him, ‘Well done, good servant. Because you were faithful in very little, you will have authority over ten cities.’

UST

17 He said to this man, ‘You are a good servant! You have done very well! Because you have faithfully taken care of a small amount of money, I will give you ten cities to rule over.’
Luke 19:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

the second (ULT)
Then the second servant (UST)

“The second servant” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Your mina, master, has made five minas (ULT)
Sir, the money you gave me is now worth five times as much (UST)

It is implied that the servant was the one who caused the profit. Alternate translation: “Lord, I used your mina to make a profit of five more minas” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

mina (ULT)
the...you gave me (UST)

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in Luke 19:13. (See: Biblical Weight)

Translation Words - ULT

• master

Translation Words - UST

• Sir
Luke 19:19

So he also said to this one (ULT)
He also said to that servant (UST)

“So the nobleman also said to that servant”

you will be over five cities (ULT)
Well done! I will put...you...over five cities (UST)

“You will have authority over five cities”
Luke 19:20

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

the other one came (ULT)
Then another servant came. He (UST)

“Another servant came”

mina (ULT)
money (UST)

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days’ wages, what people would be paid for about four months’ work. See how you translated this in Luke 19:13. (See: Biblical Weight)

I kept put away in a cloth (ULT)
I wrapped it up in a cloth...hid it...to keep it safe (UST)

“wrapped in a cloth and stored away”

Translation Words - ULT
  • Master

Translation Words - UST
  • Sir
Luke 19:21

a demanding man (ULT)
a hard man (UST)

“a stern man” or “a man who expects a lot from his servants”

You take up what you did not put down (ULT)
of what...who takes from others...does not really belong to you (UST)

This was probably a proverb. A person who takes out of storage or out of a bank things that he did not put in is a metaphor for someone who benefits from other people's hard work. Alternate translation: “You take out what you did not put in” or “You are like a person how takes out what other people put in” (See: Metaphor)

you reap what you did not sow (ULT)
which...You are like a farmer who harvests grain...planted (UST)

This was probably a proverb. A person who harvests food that someone else has planted is a metaphor for someone who benefits from other people's hard work. Alternate translation: “you are like a person who reaps the fruit of what other people sowed” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• I was afraid
• you...sow
• you reap

Translation Words - UST

• I was afraid
• planted
• You are like a farmer who harvests grain
Luke 19:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

By your mouth (ULT)
You...by the words you just said (UST)

His “words” refer to all that he had said. Alternate translation: “Based on what you have said” (See: Metonymy)

Did you know that I am a demanding man (ULT)
You knew I was a hard man, because I (UST)

The nobleman was repeating what the servant had said about him. He was not saying that it was true. Alternate translation: “You say that I am a demanding person”

Translation Words - ULT

• I will judge
• wicked
• I...sow
• reaping
• servant
• Did you know

Translation Words - UST

• I will condemn
• wicked
• I did...plant
• harvest
• servant
• You knew
Luke 19:23

for what reason did you not put the money...I would have collected it with interest (ULT)
So you should at least have given...my money to money lenders! Then when I returned...the...I could have collected...that amount plus...interest it would have earned (UST)

The nobleman uses a question to rebuke the wicked servant. Alternate translation: “you should have put my money...interest.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

put...the money in a bank (ULT)
So you should at least have given...money to money lenders! Then when I returned...the (UST)

“lent my money to a bank.” Cultures that do not have banks might translate it as “let someone borrow my money.”

a bank (ULT)
money to money lenders! Then when I returned (UST)

A bank is a business that safely holds money for people. A bank lends that money to others for a profit. Therefore it pays an extra amount, or interest, to the people who keep their money in the bank.

I would have collected it with interest (ULT)
I could have collected...that amount plus...interest it would have earned (UST)

“I could have collected that amount plus the interest it would have earned" or “I would have gained a profit from it”

interest (ULT)
plus...interest (UST)

Interest is money that a bank pays people who put their money in the bank.

Translation Words - ULT

- money

Translation Words - UST

- money to money lenders! Then when I returned
Luke 19:24

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

he said (ULT)
king said to (UST)

The nobleman had become king. See how you translated this in Luke 19:12.

to those who were standing by (ULT)
those who were standing near (UST)

“the people who were standing near them”

the mina (ULT)
the money (UST)

A mina was 600 grams, probably of silver. Each mina was equal to 100 days' wages, what people would be paid for about four months' work. See how you translated this in Luke 19:13. (See: Biblical Weight)
Luke 19:25

they said to him, 'Master, he has ten minas.'

They protested, 'But sir, he already has a lot of money!'

Translation Words - ULT
- Master

Translation Words - UST
- sir
Luke 19:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to tell the parable he began in Luke 19:11.

I say to you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

This was the king speaking. Some translators may want to start this verse with “And the king replied, ‘I say to you’” or “But the king said ‘I tell you this’”.

everyone who has will be given more (ULT)
this: To the people who use well what they have received, I will give even more (UST)

It is implied that what he has is the money he earned by using his mina faithfully. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “everyone who uses well what he has been given, I will give him more” or “to everyone who uses well what I have given him I will give more” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

from...the one who does not have (ULT)
from...the people who do not use well what they have received (UST)

It is implied that the reason he does not have money is because he did not use his mina faithfully. Alternate translation: “from the person who does not use well what I have given him” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

will be taken away (ULT)
I will take away (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I will take away from him” (See: Active or Passive)
Luke 19:27

these enemies of mine (ULT)
those enemies of mine (UST)

Since the enemies were not right there, some languages would say “those enemies of mine.”

Translation Words - ULT

• enemies
• to reign

Translation Words - UST

• enemies
• to rule over

ULT
27 But these enemies of mine, those who did not want me to reign over them, bring them here and kill them in front of me.”

UST
27 Now, as for those enemies of mine who did not want me to rule over them, bring them here and execute them while I am watching!”
Luke 19:28

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about Zacchaeus. This verse tells us what Jesus does after this part of the story. (See: End of Story)

when he had said these things (ULT)
Jesus said those things (UST)

“When Jesus had said these things”

going up to Jerusalem (ULT)
up to Jerusalem, going (UST)

Jerusalem was higher than Jericho, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

• Jerusalem
Luke 19:29

General Information:

Jesus approaches Jerusalem.

Now it happened that (ULT)
When (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

when he came near (ULT)
When...they got close to (UST)

The word “he” refers to Jesus. His disciples were also traveling with him.

Bethphage (ULT)
villages of Bethphage (UST)

Bethphage was (and still is) a village on the Mount of Olives, which is across the Kidron Valley from Jerusalem. (See: How to Translate Names)

the hill that is called Olivet

“the hill that is called the Mount of Olives” or “the hill that is called ‘Olive Tree Mountain’”

Translation Words - ULT

- is called
- disciples
- hill that is called Olivet
- Bethany
- he sent
- Olivet

Translation Words - UST

- Olives
- disciple
- the Mount...Olives
- Bethany
- send, sent, send out
- Olives
Luke 19:30

a colt (ULT)
a young donkey (UST)

“a young donkey” or “a young riding animal”

on which no man has ever sat (ULT)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that no one has ever ridden" (See: Active or Passive)
Luke 19:31

And if anyone...you...has need of it (ULT)
If anyone...you...needs it (UST)

Jesus tells the disciples how to answer a question that has not yet been asked. However, people in the village will soon ask the question. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

And if anyone asks you, ‘Why are you untying it?’ you will say thus (ULT)
If anyone asks you, ‘Why are you untying...donkey?’ say to (UST)

The inner quote can also be translated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “If any one asks you why you are untying it, say” (See: Quotes within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord

Translation Words - UST

• him, ‘The Lord
Luke 19:32

those who were sent (ULT)
two disciples...the village and (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The two disciples that Jesus sent” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• were sent
• just as

Translation Words - UST

• two disciples
• the donkey, just as

ULT
32 So those who were sent went and found it just as he had told them.

UST
32 So the two disciples went to the village and found the donkey, just as Jesus had told them.
Luke 19:33

owners (ULT)
owners (UST)

“the owners of the colt”

Translation Words - ULT
• owners

Translation Words - UST
• owners

ULT
33 Now as they were untying the colt, the owners of it said to them, “Why are you untying the colt?”

UST
33 As they were untying it, its owners said to them, “Why are you untying our donkey?”
Luke 19:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord

Translation Words - UST

- Lord

ULT

34 So they said, “The Lord has need of it.”

UST

34 They replied, “The Lord needs it.”
Luke 19:35

Jesus...they threw their cloaks upon...colt (ULT)
the...the donkey...They threw their cloaks on (UST)

“put their robes on the young donkey.” Cloaks are outer robes.

Jesus...and they put...on it (ULT)
the...Jesus...helped...get on it (UST)

“helped Jesus get up on and ride on the colt”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- cloaks

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- Jesus (2)
- cloaks
Luke 19:36

they were spreading their cloaks (ULT)
others spread their cloaks on the (UST)

“people spread their cloaks.” This is a sign of giving honor to someone. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT
• cloaks

Translation Words - UST
• cloaks
Luke 19:37

Then as he was already coming near (ULT)
As they came along (UST)

“As Jesus was going near.” Jesus’ disciples were traveling with him.

to the descent of the Mount of Olives (ULT)
the road that goes down from the Mount of Olives...to (UST)

“where the road goes down from the Mount of Olives”

the mighty works which they had seen (ULT)
great miracles that they had seen Jesus do (UST)

“great things they had seen Jesus do”

Translation Words - ULT

• the mighty works
• God
• disciples
• Mount of Olives
• loud
• with a...voice
• to rejoice
• of Olives
• to praise

Translation Words - UST

• great miracles
• God
• of his disciples
• Mount of Olives
• loudly
• loudly
• rejoice and
• Olives
• praise
Luke 19:38

Blessed is the king (ULT)
things like, “May God bless our king (UST)

They were saying this about Jesus.
in the name of the Lord (ULT)
with God's authority (UST)

Here “name” refers to power and authority. Also, “Lord” refers to God. (See: Metonymy)

in...Peace...heaven (ULT)
with...May there be peace...heaven (UST)

“May there be peace in heaven” or “We want to see peace in heaven”

glory in the highest (ULT)
between...us his people, and may everyone praise God (UST)

“May there be glory in the highest” or “We want to see glory in the highest.” The words “the highest” refer to heaven, which is a metonym for God, who lives in heaven. Alternate translation: “Let everyone give glory to God in the highest heaven” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- Blessed is
- of the Lord
- glory
- the name
- the highest
- king
- Peace

Translation Words - UST

- heaven
- things like, “May God bless
- God's
- us his people, and may everyone praise
- authority
- God
- our king
- May there be peace
Luke 19:39

from the crowd (ULT)
who were in the crowd (UST)

“in the large crowd”

rebuke your disciples (ULT)
tell your disciples to stop saying those things (UST)

“tell your disciples to stop doing these things”

Translation Words - ULT

• disciples
• Pharisees
• Teacher
• rebuke

Translation Words - UST

• disciples
• Pharisees
• Teacher
• tell...to stop saying

ULT
39 But some of the Pharisees from the crowd said to him, “Teacher, rebuke your disciples.”

UST
39 Some of the Pharisees who were in the crowd said to him, “Teacher, tell your disciples to stop saying those things!”
Luke 19:40

I tell you (ULT)
I tell you (UST)

Jesus said this to emphasize what he would say next.

if these were silent, the stones would cry out (ULT)
if...these people were silent, the stones themselves would shout (UST)

This is a hypothetical situation. Some translators may need to make it clear what Jesus was implying when he said this: “no, I will not rebuke them, for if these people were to be silent...cry out” (See: Hypothetical Situations and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the stones would cry out (ULT)
the stones themselves would shout (UST)

“the stones would call out praises”

Translation Words - ULT

• would cry out

Translation Words - UST

• themselves would shout
Luke 19:41

the city (ULT)
the city (UST)

This refers to Jerusalem.

he wept over it (ULT)
he cried about its people (UST)

The word “it” refers to the city of Jerusalem, but it represents the people who lived in that city. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• he wept

Translation Words - UST

• he cried
Luke 19:42

**ULT**

If...you had known...the things which bring peace (ULT)
I wish...people knew...how to have God’s peace (ULT)

Jesus expresses his sadness that the people of Jerusalem had missed the opportunity to be at peace with God.

**you had known (ULT)**

**people knew (UST)**

The word “you” is singular because Jesus is speaking to the city. But if this would be unnatural in your language, you could use a plural form of “you” to refer to the people of the city. (See: *Forms of You*)

**they are hidden from your eyes (ULT)**

**you are unable...know it (UST)**

“your eyes” refer to the ability to see. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can no longer see them” (See: *Metonymy and Active or Passive*)

**Translation Words - ULT**

- peace
- day
- you had known

**Translation Words - UST**

- have God’s peace
- today
- people knew
Luke 19:43

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues speaking.

For (ULT)
I want...know this (UST)

What follows is the reason for Jesus' sadness.

the days will come upon you and your enemies will build (ULT)
you to...Soon...enemies will come and will set up...your...the (UST)

This indicates that they will experience difficult times. Some languages do not talk about time “coming.” Alternate translation: “in the future these things will happen to you: Your enemies” or “soon you will endure troublesome times. Your enemies”

you...your (ULT)
you...your (UST)

The word “you” is singular because Jesus is speaking to the city as he would to a woman. But if this would be unnatural in your language, you could use a plural form of “you” to refer to the people of the city. (See: Forms of You and Apostrophe)

a barricade (ULT)
a barricade (UST)

This refers to a wall to keep the people from getting out of the city.

Translation Words - ULT

• enemies
• the days

Translation Words - UST

• enemies
• Soon
Luke 19:44

they will strike you down to the ground and your children with you (ULT)
They will break through...walls and destroy everything. They will destroy it...you...all your children. When they finish destroying everything, there will (UST)

Jesus is speaking to the people of the city as if he were speaking to the city itself as he would speak to a woman. He speaks of the people who live in the city as if they are the woman's children, and thus the city's children. To strike down a city is to destroy its walls and buildings, and to strike down its children is to kill those who live in it. Alternate translation: “They will completely destroy you and kill all who live in you” or “They will completely destroy your city and kill all of you” (See: Apostrophe)

they will not leave one stone upon another (ULT)
not be one stone left on top...another (UST)

“They will not leave any of the stones in place.” This is a hyperbole to express that the enemies will completely destroy the city, which is built of stones. (See: Hyperbole)

you...not...you...recognize (ULT)
you...not be...did...recognize (UST)

“you did not acknowledge”

Translation Words - ULT

- children
- time
- you...recognize

Translation Words - UST

- children
- time
- did...recognize

ULT
44 And they will strike you down to the ground and your children with you. And they will not leave one stone upon another in you, because you did not recognize the time of your visitation.”

UST
44 They will break through the walls and destroy everything. They will destroy it and you and all your children. When they finish destroying everything, there will not be one stone left on top of another. All this will happen because you did not recognize the time when God came to save you!”
Luke 19:45

Connecting Statement:

This is the next event in this part of the story. Jesus enters the temple in Jerusalem.

Then entering into the temple (ULT)
Jesus entered Jerusalem and went into the temple courtyard (UST)

You may need to make explicit that he first entered Jerusalem, where the temple was located. Alternate translation: “Jesus entered Jerusalem and then went to the temple courtyard” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Then entering into the temple (ULT)
Jesus entered Jerusalem and went into the temple courtyard (UST)

Only priests were allowed to enter the temple building. Alternate translation: “went into the temple courtyard” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

to cast out (ULT)
cast out (UST)

“throw out” or “force out”

Translation Words - ULT

• temple
• to cast out

Translation Words - UST

• temple courtyard
• cast out
Luke 19:46

It is written (ULT)
It has been written in...scriptures (UST)

This is a quotation from Isaiah. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The scriptures say” or “A prophet wrote these words in the scriptures” (See: Active or Passive)

My house (ULT)
the...I want my house (UST)

The word “My” refers to God and “house” refers to the temple.

will be a house of prayer (ULT)
to be a place where people pray (UST)

“a place where people pray to me”

a den of robbers (ULT)
a hideout for thieves (UST)

Jesus speaks of the temple as if it were a place where thieves come together. Alternate translation: “a place where thieves hide” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• of prayer
• of robbers
• It is written
• house
• will be a house

Translation Words - UST

• to be a place where people pray
• for thieves
• It has been written in...scriptures
• house
• to be a place where people pray
Luke 19:47

Connecting Statement:
This is the end of this part of the story. These verses tell about ongoing action that continues after the main part of the story ends. (See: End of Story)

in the temple (ULT)
in...temple courtyard (UST)

“in the temple courtyard” or “at the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• chief priests
• temple
• teaching
• people
• leaders
• were seeking
• daily

Translation Words - UST

• teachers of religious laws
• chief priests
• temple courtyard
• teaching people
• Jewish leaders
• Jewish leaders
• were trying...find a way
• day

ULT

47 So he was teaching daily in the temple. Now the chief priests and the scribes and the leaders of the people were seeking to kill him,

UST

47 Each day during that week Jesus was teaching people in the temple courtyard. The chief priests, the teachers of religious laws, and other Jewish leaders were trying to find a way to kill him.
Luke 19:48

were listening, hanging on to his words (ULT)
were eager to hear him (UST)

“were paying close attention to what Jesus was saying”

Translation Words - ULT
  • people

Translation Words - UST
  • people
Luke 20

Luke 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 20:17, 42-43, which are words from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Using questions to trap people

When Jesus asked the Pharisees who gave John the authority to baptize (Luke 20:4), they could not answer because any answer they gave would give someone a reason to say that they were wrong (Luke 20:5-6). They thought that they would be able to say that Jesus was wrong when they asked him if people should pay taxes to Caesar (Luke 20:22), but Jesus gave them an answer that they had not thought of.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. In this chapter, Jesus quotes a psalm that records David calling his son “lord,” that is, “master.” However, to the Jews, ancestors were greater than their descendants. In this passage, Jesus is trying to lead his hearers to the true understanding that the Messiah will himself be divine, and that he himself is the Messiah. (Luke 20:41-44).
Luke 20:1

Connecting Statement:

The chief priests, scribes, and elders question Jesus in the temple.

Now it happened that (ULT)
that week Jesus was...the...As (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the
story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

on...the temple (ULT)
in...temple courtyard (UST)

“in the temple courtyard” or “at the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• chief priests
• temple
• when...was teaching
• people
• preaching the gospel
• elders
• days

Translation Words - UST

• teachers of the Jewish laws
• doing that, the chief priests
• temple courtyard
• teaching
• the people
• telling them God's good message
• elders
• day

ULT

1 Now it happened that on one of the
days when Jesus was teaching the
people in the temple and preaching the
gospel, the chief priests and the scribes
came to him with the elders.

UST

1 One day during that week Jesus was
teaching the people in the temple
courtyard and telling them God's good
message. As he was doing that, the
chief priests, the teachers of the Jewish
laws, and other elders came to him.
Luke 20:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• authority
• authority

Translation Words - UST

• right do you have
• right

ULT
2 And they spoke, saying to him, “Tell us by what authority you do these things, or who is the one who gave you this authority.”

UST
2 They said to him, “Tell us, what right do you have to do these things? And who gave you this right?”
Luke 20:3

General Information:

Jesus responds to the chief priests, scribes, and elders.

So he answered and said to them (ULT)
He replied, “I will...ask you (UST)

“I will...ask you” are a statement. The words “you tell me” are a command.

ULT
3 So he answered and said to them, “I also will ask you a question, and you tell me.

UST
3 He replied, “I will also ask you a question. Tell me,
Luke 20:4

was it from heaven or from men (ULT)
people: Did God command him to baptize or did humans command him (UST)

Jesus knows that John's authority comes from heaven, so he is not asking for information. He asks the question so the Jewish leaders will have to tell what they think to all who are listening. This question is rhetorical, but you will probably have to translate it as a question. Alternate translation: “do you think John's authority to baptize people came from heaven or from men” or “was it God who told John to baptize people, or did people tell him to do it” (See: Rhetorical Question)

from heaven (ULT)
Did God command him to baptize (UST)

“from God.” Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name “Yahweh.” Often they used the word “heaven” to refer to him. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• baptism
• of John

Translation Words - UST

• Did God command him to baptize
• baptizing
• about John
Luke 20:5

they...reasoned (ULT)
They...discussed (UST)

“They discussed” or “They considered their answer”

among themselves (ULT)
among themselves (UST)

“among themselves” or “with each other”

If...we say, ‘From heaven,’ he will say (ULT)
If we answer, ‘God commanded...he will say (UST)

Some languages might prefer an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “If we say that John’s authority is from heaven, he” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

From heaven (ULT)
God commanded (UST)

“From God.” Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name “Yahweh.” Often they used the word “heaven” to refer to him. See how these words are translated in Luke 20:4. (See: Metonymy)

he will say (ULT)
he will say (UST)

“Jesus will say”

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• you...believe

Translation Words - UST

• God commanded
• believe
Luke 20:6

if...we say, 'From men (ULT)
if...we say...only humans who told him to baptize (UST)

Some languages might prefer an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “if we say that John's authority is from men,” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

will stone us (ULT)
will stone us...they (UST)

“kill us by throwing stones on us.” God's Law commanded that his people stone those of his people who mocked him or his prophets. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• a prophet
• will stone
• John
• people

Translation Words - UST

• a prophet that God sent
• will stone...they
• John
• people
Luke 20:7

So they answered that (ULT)
So they replied (UST)

“So the chief priests, scribes and elders answered.” The word “so” marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, they had reasoned with themselves (Luke 20:5-6), and they did not have an answer they wanted to say.

they answered that they did not know where it was from (ULT)
they replied that they did not know who told John to baptize (UST)

This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: “they said, ‘We do not know where it came from.’” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

where it was from (ULT)
who told John to baptize (UST)

“where John's baptism came from.” Alternate translation: “where John's authority to baptize came from” or “who authorized John to baptize people”

Translation Words - ULT

• they...know

Translation Words - UST

• know
Luke 20:8

Neither will I tell you (ULT)
Neither will I tell you...me (UST)

“And I will not tell you.” Jesus knew they were not willing to tell him the answer, so he responded in the same manner. Alternate translation: “Just as you will not tell me, I will not tell you”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- authority

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- who

ULT
8 Then Jesus said to them, “Neither will I tell you by what authority I am doing these things.”

UST
8 Then Jesus said to them, “Neither will I tell you who sent me to do those things.”
Luke 20:9

General Information:

Jesus begins to tell a parable to the people in the temple. (See: Parables)

rented it out to vine growers (ULT)
He rented the vineyard to some men to care for it (UST)

“allowed some vine growers to use it in exchange for payment” or “allowed some vine growers to use it and pay him later.” Payment might be in the form of money, or a portion of the harvest.

to vine growers (ULT)
to some men to care for (UST)

These are people who tend grape vines and grow grapes. Alternate translation: “grape farmers”

Translation Words - ULT

• parable
• people
• for a...time
• a vineyard

Translation Words - UST

• parable
• Then Jesus told the people
• time
• a vineyard
Luke 20:10

at the appointed time (ULT)
When it was time to harvest...grapes (UST)

“the time they had agreed to pay him.” This would have been at the harvest time.

of the fruit of the vineyard

“some of the grapes” or “some of what they produced in the vineyard.” It could also refer to the things they made from grapes or the money they earned by selling the grapes.

and sent him away...empty-handed (ULT)
sent him away...without any grapes (UST)

An empty hand is a metaphor for “nothing.” Alternate translation: “sent him away without paying him” or “sent him away without the grapes” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• fruit
• empty-handed
• at the appointed time
• he sent
• and sent...away
• vineyard
• a servant

Translation Words - UST

• share...grapes
• without any grapes
• When it was time to harvest...grapes
• he sent
• sent...away
• of...that the vineyard
• a servant
Luke 20:11

also beat that one (ULT)
beat...him (UST)
“beat that servant”

treating him shamefully (ULT)
shamed (UST)
“humiliated him”

they sent him away empty-handed (ULT)
They sent him away without any grapes (UST)

Having an empty hand is a metaphor for having nothing. Alternate translation: “sent him away without paying him” or “sent him away without any grapes” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• empty-handed
• to send
• they sent him away
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• without any grapes
• sent
• They sent him away
• servant
Luke 20:12

a third (ULT)  
third servant (UST)  

“even a third servant” or “yet another servant.” The word “yet” hints at the fact that the landowner should not have had to send the second servant, but he went beyond that and sent a third servant. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

wounded that one (ULT)  
servant. This...wounded (UST)  

“injured that servant”

and threw him out (ULT)  
they...threw out of the vineyard (UST)  

“threw him out of the vineyard”

Translation Words - ULT

• and threw him out  
• to send

Translation Words - UST

• they...threw out of the vineyard  
• sent
Luke 20:13

**What should I do (ULT)**
**to himself, ‘What should I do (UST)**

This question emphasizes that the vineyard owner thought carefully about what he was going to do. Alternate translation: “Here is what I will do:” (See: Rhetorical Question)

**Translation Words - ULT**
- lord
- son
- beloved
- I will send
- vineyard

**Translation Words - UST**
- owner
- son
- whom I love very much
- now? I will send
- of the vineyard

ULT
13 So the lord of the vineyard said, ‘What should I do? I will send my beloved son. Maybe they will respect him.’

UST
13 So the owner of the vineyard said to himself, ‘What should I do? now? I will send my son, whom I love very much. They will probably respect him.’
Luke 20:14

when...saw...the vine growers...him (ULT)
who were caring for the vineyard saw...coming...the men...him...they (UST)

“They were not asking permission. The said this to encourage each other to kill the heir.

Translation Words - ULT

- inheritance
- heir

Translation Words - UST

- the vineyard
- will some day inherit

ULT

14 But when the vine growers saw him, they discussed among themselves, saying, ‘This is the heir. Let us kill him so that the inheritance may be ours.’

UST

14 So he sent his son, but when the men who were caring for the vineyard saw him coming, they said to each other, ‘Here comes the man who will some day inherit the vineyard! Let us kill him so that this vineyard might become ours!’
Luke 20:15

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes telling his parable to the crowd.

they threw him out of the vineyard (ULT)
So they dragged him outside the vineyard (UST)

“The vine growers forced the son out of the vineyard”

What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them (ULT)
So I will tell you what the owner of the vineyard will do to them (UST)

Jesus uses a question to get his listeners to pay attention to what the owner of the vineyard will do. Alternate translation: “So now, listen to what the lord of the vineyard will do to them.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT
- lord
- they threw...out
- vineyard
- vineyard (2)

Translation Words - UST
- owner
- So they dragged
- vineyard
- of the vineyard (2)
Luke 20:16

May it never be (ULT)
May a situation like this never happen (UST)

“May it never happen”

Translation Words - ULT

• vineyard

Translation Words - UST

• vineyard

ULT
16 He will come and destroy these vine
growers, and will give the vineyard to
others.” But when they heard this, they
said, “May it never be!”

UST
16 He will come and kill those men who
were taking care of the vineyard. Then
he will arrange for other people to take
care of it.” When the people listening to
Jesus heard this, they said, “May a
situation like this never happen!”
Luke 20:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching the crowd.

But he looked at them (ULT)
But Jesus looked directly at them (UST)

“But Jesus stared at them” or “But he looked straight at them.” He did this to hold them accountable to understand what he was saying.

What then is this that is written: ‘The stone that the builders rejected, this has become the cornerstone (ULT)
that, but think about the meaning of these words that are written in the scriptures, ‘The stone which the builders rejected has become the most important stone in the building (UST)

Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: “You should be able to understand that which is written: ‘The stone...cornerstone.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

this...is written (ULT)
that...words...are written in the scriptures (UST)

“this scripture”

The stone that the builders rejected, this has become the cornerstone (ULT)
these...that...The stone which the builders rejected has become the most important stone in the building (UST)

This is the first of three metaphors in a prophecy from the book of Psalms. This one refers to the Messiah as if he were a stone that builders chose not to use, but that God made the most important stone. (See: Metaphor)

The stone that the builders rejected (ULT)
that...The stone which the builders rejected...building (UST)

“The stone that the builders said was not good enough to use for building.” In those days people used stones to build the walls of houses and other buildings.

the builders (ULT)
the...building (UST)

This refers to the religious rulers who are rejecting Jesus as Messiah.

the cornerstone (ULT)
the most important (UST)

“the chief stone of the building” or “the most important stone of the building”

ULT
17 But he looked at them, and said, “What then is this that is written: ‘The stone that the builders rejected, this has become the cornerstone’?

UST
17 But Jesus looked directly at them and said, “You can say that, but think about the meaning of these words that are written in the scriptures, ‘The stone which the builders rejected has become the most important stone in the building.”
Translation Words - ULT

- the cornerstone
- the cornerstone
- rejected
- is written

Translation Words - UST

- the most important
- the most important
- builders rejected
- words...are written in the scriptures
Luke 20:18

Every one who falls...will be broken to pieces (ULT)
Everyone who falls...will be broken to pieces, and (UST)

This second metaphor speaks of people who reject the Messiah as if they fall over a stone and are injured. (See: Metaphor)

will be broken to pieces (ULT)
will be broken to pieces, and (UST)

This is a result of falling onto the stone. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will break up into pieces” (See: Active or Passive)

But on whomever it falls (ULT)
on whom...falls (UST)

“But whomever that stone falls on.” This third metaphor speaks about the Messiah judging those who reject him as if he were a large stone that would crush them. (See: Metaphor)
Luke 20:19

sought...to lay hands on him (ULT)
tried to find a way...the...arrest him, but they did not arrest him (UST)

In this verse, to “lay hands on” someone is to arrest that person. Alternate translation: “looked for a way to arrest Jesus” (See: Metonymy)

in that very hour (ULT)
the...they immediately...but they did not arrest him (UST)

“immediately”

they were afraid of the people (ULT)
they were afraid of what...people would do if they did (UST)

This is the reason that they did not arrest Jesus right away. The people respected Jesus, and the religious leaders were afraid of what the people might do if they arrested him. Alternate translation: “they did not arrest him because they were afraid of the people” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• they were afraid
• parable
• chief priests
• hands
• people
• sought
• they knew
• hour

Translation Words - UST

• teachers of...Jewish laws
• they were afraid of what
• story
• The chief priests
• but they did not arrest him
• people would do if they did
• tried to find a way
• realized
• they immediately
Luke 20:20

they sent out spies (ULT)
They...sent spies who pretended (UST)

“the scribes and chief priests sent spies to watch Jesus”

so that they might find fault with his speech (ULT)
But they really wanted to get Jesus to say something wrong (UST)

“because they wanted to accuse Jesus of saying something bad”

to the rule and to the authority of the governor (ULT)
to...the governor of the province (UST)

“Rule” and “authority” are two ways of saying that they wanted the governor to judge Jesus. It can be translated with one or both expressions. Alternate translation: “so that the governor would punish Jesus” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• righteous
• authority
• rule
• they sent out
• watching him carefully
• governor

Translation Words - UST

• sincere
• to...the governor of
• to...the governor of
• They...sent
• So they watched him carefully
• to...the governor of
Luke 20:21

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of the next event in this part of the story. Some time has passed since Jesus was questioned in the temple by the chief priests. The spies are now questioning Jesus.

they asked him (ULT)
on one of the spies asked him (UST)

“The spies asked Jesus”

Teacher, we know...teach...the way of God in truth (ULT)
Teacher, we know...teach...the...truth...what God wants us to do (UST)

The spies were trying to deceive Jesus. They did not believe these things about Jesus.

we know (ULT)
we know (UST)

“we” refers only to the spies. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

do not show partiality (ULT)
if important people do not like it (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “you tell the truth even if important people do not like it” or 2) “you do not favor one person over another” (See: Active or Passive)

teach...but...the way of God in truth (ULT)
teach...the truth...what God wants us to do (UST)

This is part of what the spies were saying that they knew about Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• truth
• show partiality
• teach
• you teach (2)
• Teacher
• we know

Translation Words - UST

• God
• truth
• if important people do...like it
• teach
• You teach truthfully (2)
• Teacher
• we know
Luke 20:22

Is it lawful...or not (ULT)
So tell us what you think about this matter: Is it right that...or not (UST)

They hoped that Jesus would say either “yes” or “no.” If he said “yes,” then the Jewish people would be angry with him for telling them to pay taxes to a foreign government. If he said “no,” then the religious leaders could tell the Romans that Jesus was teaching the people to break the Roman laws.

Is it lawful (ULT)
So tell us what you think about this matter: Is it right that (UST)

They were asking about God’s law, not about Caesar’s law. Alternate translation: “Does our law permit us”

to Caesar (ULT)
the Roman government (UST)

Because Caesar was the ruler of the Roman government, they could refer to the Roman government by Caesar’s name. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• to Caesar
• Is it lawful
• taxes

Translation Words - UST

• the Roman government
• So tell us what you think about this matter: Is it right that
• taxes to
Luke 20:23

But he understood their craftiness (ULT)
But he knew that they were trying to trick him to get him into trouble, either with the Jews, who hated (UST)

“But Jesus understood how tricky they were” or “But Jesus saw that they were trying to trap him.” The word “their” refers to the spies.

Translation Words - ULT
• he understood

Translation Words - UST
• he knew that
Luke 20:24

a denarius (ULT)
a Roman coin (UST)

This is a Roman silver coin worth a day's wages. (See: Biblical Money)

Whose image and inscription does it have (ULT)
Then tell me whose picture is on it. And tell me whose name...showed him a coin and (UST)

Jesus uses a question to respond to those who were trying to trick him. (See: Rhetorical Question)

image and inscription (ULT)
picture...on on it. And tell me whose name...showed him a coin and (UST)

“picture and name”

Translation Words - ULT

• Caesar's
• image

Translation Words - UST

• Caesar, the head of the Roman government
• picture

ULT
24 “Show me a denarius. Whose image and inscription does it have?” So they said, “Caesar's.”

UST
24 “Show me a Roman coin. Then tell me whose picture is on on it. And tell me whose name is on it.” So they showed him a coin and said, “It has the picture and name of Caesar, the head of the Roman government.”
Luke 20:25

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of this event about the spies and the part of the story which began in Luke 20:1.

Then he said to them (ULT)
He said to them (UST)

“Then Jesus said to them”

to Caesar (ULT)
what belongs to them (UST)

Here “Caesar” refers to the Roman government. (See: Metonymy)

to God (ULT)
what belongs to him (UST)

The word “give” is understood from the previous phrase. It can be repeated here. Alternate translation: “and give to God” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- God's
- God
- that are Caesar's
- to Caesar

Translation Words - UST

- give to God
- what belongs to him
- government
- what belongs to them
Luke 20:26

So they were not able to trap him in what he said (ULT)
The spies...his answer, so much that they could not answer him...nothing that Jesus said (UST)

“The spies could not find anything wrong with what he said”

So...marveled at his answer, they became silent (ULT)
were amazed at his answer, so...standing around him that the spies could find anything wrong with (UST)

“but they were amazed at his answer and did not say anything”

Translation Words - ULT

• people
• marveling

Translation Words - UST

• people
• were amazed
Luke 20:27

General Information:

We do not know where this takes place, though it possibly took place in the temple courtyard. Jesus is talking with some Sadducees.

The ones who say that there is no resurrection (ULT)
who said that no one will rise from the dead (UST)

This phrase identifies the Sadducees as being the group of Jews that say that no one would rise from the dead. It does not imply that some Sadducees believed that there is a resurrection and some did not. (See: Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding)

Translation Words - ULT

• resurrection
• Sadducees

Translation Words - UST

• said that no one will rise from the dead
• Sadducees

ULT
27 Then some of the Sadducees came to him, the ones who say that there is no resurrection, and they questioned him,

UST
27 After that, some Sadducees came to Jesus. They were a group of Jews who said that no one will rise from the dead.
Luke 20:28

that if anyone's brother dies having a wife, and he is childless (ULT)
They also wanted to ask Jesus a question. One...Jews that if a man who has a wife...no children dies...this...is (UST)

“if a man's brother dies when he has a wife but does not have children”

brother...a wife...that his brother should take his (ULT)
a man...a wife...his...should marry the widow so that...way, people will consider that the child...the man who (UST)

“the man should marry his dead brother's widow”

raise up offspring for his brother (ULT)
brother...can have a child by him. In...the descendant of...died (UST)

The Jews considered the first son born to a woman who married her dead husband's brother as if he were the son of the woman's first husband. This son inherited the property of his mother's first husband and carried on his name. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• brother
• brother (2)
• brother
• offspring
• Moses
• dies
• Teacher
• wrote

Translation Words - UST

• a man
• the man who (2)
• brother...the
• descendant of
• Moses
• dies
• Teacher
• wrote for
Luke 20:29

General Information:

The Sadducees tell Jesus a short story in verses 29-32. This is a story they made up as an example. In verse 33, they ask Jesus a question about the story they told.

Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees finish asking Jesus their question.

seven...there were...brothers (ULT)
seven...there were...brothers (UST)

This may have happened, but it is probably a story that they made up to test Jesus.

the first (ULT)
in one family. The oldest one (UST)

“brother number one” or “the oldest” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

died childless (ULT)
she did not having any children. Later he died, leaving her to be a widow (UST)

“died without having any children” or “died, but did not have any children”

Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- died

Translation Words - UST

- brothers
- he died, leaving her to be a widow
Luke 20:30

and the second (ULT)
second brother followed this law and married the widow, but the (UST)

Jesus kept the story short by not repeating many of the details. Alternate translation: “the second married her and the same thing happened” or “the second brother married her and died without having any children” (See: Ellipsis)

the second (ULT)
second...the (UST)

“brother number two” or “the oldest brother who was still alive” (See: Ordinal Numbers)
Luke 20:31

the third took her (ULT)
the third brother married her (UST)

“The third married her”

the third (ULT)
the third brother (UST)

“Brother number three” or “The oldest brother who was still alive”  (See: Ordinal Numbers)

likewise...the seven also left no children, and died (ULT)
same thing happened...again. All seven brothers, one by one, married that woman, but they had no children, and one by one they died (UST)

They did not repeat many of the details to keep the story short. Alternate translation: “in the same way the rest of the seven brothers married her and had no children and died” (See: Ellipsis)

the seven (ULT)
All seven brothers, one by one, married that woman, but they (UST)

“all seven of the brothers” or “each of the seven brothers”

Translation Words - ULT

• children
• died
• likewise

Translation Words - UST

• children
• one by one they died
• same thing happened
Afterward the woman also died.

Afterwards, the woman died, too.

(There are no notes for this verse.)
Luke 20:33

In the...resurrection (ULT)
that...in...there will be a time when people...have died will become alive again (UST)

“When people are raised from the dead” or “When dead people will become alive again.” Some languages have a way of showing that the Sadducees did not believe that there would be a resurrection, such as “In the supposed resurrection” or “When dead people are supposedly raised from the dead.”

Translation Words - ULT

• resurrection

Translation Words - UST

• there will be a time when people...have died will become alive again

ULT
33 In the resurrection therefore, of which of them will she be a wife? For the seven had her as wife.”

UST
33 Therefore, if it is true that there will be a time when people who have died will become alive again, whose wife do you think that woman will be then? Keep in mind that she was married to all seven brothers!”
Luke 20:34

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins to answer the Sadducees.

The sons of this age (ULT)
In this world, men...people (UST)

“The people of this world” or “The people of this time.” This is in contrast with those in heaven or the people who live after the resurrection.

marry and are given in marriage (ULT)
take wives, and...give their daughters in marriage to men (UST)

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “get married” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT
• Jesus
• sons
• age

Translation Words - UST
• Jesus
• men
• world
Luke 20:35

those who are regarded as worthy...that age (ULT)
people...whom God considers worthy of being in heaven (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the people in that age whom God will consider to be worthy” (See: Active or Passive)

of the resurrection which is from the dead

“to be raised from the dead” or “to rise from death”

from the dead (ULT)
from...dead (UST)

From among all those who have died. This expression describes all dead people together in the underworld. To receive resurrection from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

will neither marry nor be given in marriage (ULT)
will not marry (UST)

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will not marry” or “will not get married.” This is after the resurrection. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• resurrection
• are regarded as worthy
• the dead
• age

Translation Words - UST

• they rise
• whom God considers worthy
• dead
• of being in heaven
Luke 20:36

neither...are they able to die anymore (ULT) 
cannot die anymore, because...cannot die anymore, 
because (UST)

This is after the resurrection. Alternate translation: “They will not be able to die anymore” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they are...sons of God, being sons of the resurrection (ULT) 
they are...the...God's children, since they are children whom God raised to new life (UST)

“are children of God because he has brought them back from the dead”

Translation Words - ULT

• resurrection
• as angels
• sons
• of God
• sons
• to die

Translation Words - UST

• whom God raised to new life
• like...angels
• children
• God's
• children
• cannot die anymore, because
Luke 20:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes answering the Sadducees.

But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed (ULT)
But...even Moses wrote about how God raises the dead...and...Moses showed us that (UST)

The word “even” is here because the Sadducees might not have been surprised that some scriptures say that the dead are raised, but they did not expect Moses to have written something like that. Alternate translation: “But even Moses showed that dead people rise from the dead” (See: Active or Passive)

the dead are raised (ULT)
God raises the dead (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God causes the dead to live again” (See: Active or Passive)

at the bush (ULT)
in the account of the bush...to (UST)

“in the part of scripture where he wrote about the burning bush” or “in the scripture about the burning bush” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

where he calls the Lord (ULT)
life. In the place where he wrote, he calls the Lord...when they die, still worship and honor God (UST)

“where Moses called the Lord”

the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob

“the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.” They all worshiped the same God.

Translation Words - ULT

- he calls
- the Lord
- God
- the God (2)
- the God (3)
- of Abraham
- of Isaac
- Moses
- of Jacob
- dead
- are raised
Translation Words - UST

- life. In the place where he wrote, he calls
- the Lord
- the God of
- the God (2)
- the God of (3)
- Abraham
- of Isaac
- even Moses wrote about
- Jacob
- dead
- God raises
Luke 20:38

Now (ULT)
Now (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Jesus explains how this story proves that people rise from the dead.

the God...he is not...of the dead, but of the living (ULT)
he is the God of...those who are alive. He is not the God of people who are dead! But (UST)

These two sentences have similar meaning said twice for emphasis. Some languages have different ways of showing emphasis. Alternate translation: “the Lord is the God of living people only” (See: Parallelism)

but of the living (ULT)
those who are alive...But (UST)

“but the God of living people.” Since these people died physically, they must still be alive spiritually. Alternate translation: “but the God of people whose spirits are alive, even though their bodies may have died” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

because all live to him (ULT)
all of us are given life so we can be with God, and when we are with him, we can honor him (UST)

“because in God's sight they all are still alive” or “because their spirits are alive in God's presence”

Translation Words - ULT

• of the living
• live
• the God
• of the dead

Translation Words - UST

• those who are alive
• are given life
• he is the God of
• the God of people who are dead
Luke 20:39

answered...some of the scribes (ULT)
replied...Some of the teachers of the Jewish law (UST)

“Some of the scribes said to Jesus.” There were scribes present when the Sadducees were questioning Jesus. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• Teacher

Translation Words - UST

• teachers of the Jewish law
• Teacher

ULT

39 Then some of the scribes answered and said, “Teacher, you have spoken well.”

UST

39 Some of the teachers of the Jewish law replied, “Teacher, you have answered very well!”
Luke 20:40

For they did not dare (ULT)
After that, no one dared (UST)

It is unclear if this refers to the scribes, or the Sadducees, or both. It is best to keep the statement general.

did not...they...dare to ask him anything (ULT)
After that, no one...dared to ask him any more questions like that to trap him (UST)

“They were afraid to ask...questions” or “they did not risk asking...questions.” They understood that they did not know as much as Jesus did, but they did not want to say that. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “they did ask him any more tricky questions because they feared that his wise answers would make them appear foolish again” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
Luke 20:41

General Information:

Jesus asks the scribes a question.

How do they say that...David's son (ULT)
I will show you that...people say that...they are wrong...
only a descendant of King David (UST)

“Why do they say...son?” Jesus uses a question to make the scribes think about who the Messiah is. Alternate translation: “Let's think about them saying...son.” or “I will talk about them saying...son” (See: Rhetorical Question)

they say that (ULT)
people say that (UST)

The prophets, the religious rulers, and the Jewish people in general knew that the Messiah was the son of David. Alternate translation: “everyone says” or “people say” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

David's son (ULT)
only a descendant of King David (UST)

“King David's descendant.” The word “son” is used here to refer to a descendant. In this case it refers to the one who would reign over God's kingdom. (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

• son
• Christ
• David's

Translation Words - UST

• only a descendant
• Messiah
• of King David
Luke 20:42

The Lord said to my Lord (ULT)
about the Messiah, God said to...Lord...my (UST)

This is a quotation from the book of Psalms which says “Yahweh said to my Lord.” But the Jews stopped saying “Yahweh” and often said “Lord” instead. Alternate translation: “The Lord God said to my Lord” or “God said to my Lord”

my Lord (ULT)
Lord...my (UST)

David was referring to the Christ as “my Lord.”

Sit at my right hand (ULT)
my...Sit here beside me at...right, where I will highly honor you (UST)

To sit at the “right hand of God” is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “Sit in the place of honor beside me” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• Lord
• right hand
• David

Translation Words - UST

• Messiah, God
• Lord
• right, where I will highly honor you
• David
Luke 20:43

until I make your enemies a footstool for your feet (ULT)
Sit here while I completely defeat your enemies (UST)

The Messiah’s enemies are spoken of as if they were furniture on which he would rest his feet. This was an image of submission. Alternate translation: “until I make your enemies like a footstool for you” or “until I conquer your enemies for you” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• a footstool
• enemies

Translation Words - UST

• completely
• Sit here while I...defeat...enemies
Luke 20:44

David therefore calls him ‘Lord’ (ULT)
King David calls the Messiah ‘my Lord’! So (UST)

In the culture of that time, a father was more respected than a son. David’s use of the title ‘Lord’ for the Christ implies that he was greater than David. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

so how is he his son (ULT)
the Messiah cannot be just someone descended from
King David! What I just said proves that he is much
greater than David, right (UST)

“so how can the Christ be David’s son?” This can be a statement.
Alternate translation: “this shows that the Christ is not merely David’s descendant” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• calls
• Lord
• son
• David

Translation Words - UST

• calls
• my Lord
• just someone descended
• King David
Luke 20:45

Connecting Statement:
Jesus now directs his attention to his disciples and speaks mainly to them.

Translation Words - ULT
• disciples
• people

Translation Words - UST
• disciples
• people

ULT
45 Now while all the people were listening, he said to his disciples.

UST
45 While all the other people were listening, Jesus said to his disciples,
Luke 20:46

Beware of (ULT)
Beware that you do not act like (UST)

“Be on guard against”

desire to walk in long robes (ULT)
like to put on long robes...walk around to make people think that they are very important...in (UST)

Long robes would show that they were important. Alternate translation: “who like to walk around wearing their important robes” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• synagogues
• love
• long robes
• feasts
• to walk

Translation Words - UST

• men who teach our Jewish laws
• the synagogues
• They...like people to
• put on long robes
• dinner parties
• walk around to make people think that they are very important
Luke 20:47

They devour the houses of widows (ULT)
They...steal all the property of widows (UST)

“They also eat up widows’ houses.” The scribes are spoken of as if they were hungry animals that eat up the widows’ houses. The word “houses” is a synecdoche for both where the widow lives and all the possessions she puts in her home. Alternate translation: “They also take away from widows all their possessions” (See: Metaphor and Synecdoche)

for a show they pray at length (ULT)
Then they pray for a long time in public (UST)

“They pretend to be righteous and make long prayers” or “they make long prayers so that people will see them”

These will receive greater condemnation (ULT)
God will certainly punish them very severely (UST)

“They will receive a more severe judgment.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God will certainly punish them very severely” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• condemnation
• they pray
• will receive
• devour
• houses

Translation Words - UST

• God will certainly punish
• Then they pray
• very severely
• steal all
• property
Luke 21

Luke 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting
Jesus told his disciples much about what would happen before he returned.

Special concepts in this chapter

“For many will come in my name, saying, 'I am he,'”
Jesus taught that before he returned many people would falsely claim to be him returning. It will also be a time when many people will hate Jesus’ followers and even want to kill them.

“Until the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled”
The Jews spoke of the time between when the Babylonians forced their ancestors to go to Babylon and the time when the Messiah would come as “the times of the Gentiles,” the time when the Gentiles would rule over the Jews.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Son of Man”
Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 21:27). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)
Luke 21:1

Connecting Statement:
This is the next event in the story. Jesus begins teaching his disciples, either on the same day that the Sadducees question Jesus (Luke 20:27) or on a different day. (See: Background Information)

gifts (ULT)
gifts...the (UST)

You may need to make explicit what the gifts were. Alternate translation: “gifts of money” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the treasury (ULT)
temple offering box (UST)

one of the boxes in the temple courtyard where people put money as a gift to God

Translation Words - ULT
• gifts

Translation Words - UST
• gifts
Luke 21:2

a certain poor widow (ULT)
a poor widow (UST)

This is a way of introducing a new character to the story. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

two mites (ULT)
two small coins of very little value (UST)

“two small coins” or “two tiny copper coins.” These were the least valuable of the coins people used then. Alternate translation: “two pennies” or “two small coins of little value” (See: Biblical Money)
Luke 21:3

**Translation Words - ULT**

- Truly

**Translation Words - UST**

- truth is

So he said, "Truly I say to you, this poor widow put in more than all of them.

Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word "you" is plural. (See: Forms of You)

this poor...widow...put in more than all of them (ULT)
The...this poor widow has put into the offering box more money than all these rich people (UST)

God considers her gift, a small amount of money, more significant than the large amounts of money the men gave. Alternate translation: “the small gift of this widow is more valuable than the larger gifts of the rich men” (See: Hyperbole)
Luke 21:4

“put in the gifts out of their abundance (ULT)
have a lot of money, but they gave only a small part...to (UST)
“have a lot of money but only gave a small portion of it”
out of...her poverty (ULT)
of...who is very poor (UST)
“who has very little money”

Translation Words - ULT
  • gifts
  • abundance

Translation Words - UST
  • only a small part
  • have a lot...money, but

ULT
4 for all these put in the gifts out of their abundance. But she, out of her poverty, put in all that she had to live on.”

UST
4 For they all have a lot of money, but they gave only a small part of it. But this widow, who is very poor, has given all the money that she had to buy what she needed.
Luke 21:5

Connecting Statement:
Jesus switches from talking about the widow to teaching about the temple.

offerings (ULT)
people had given (UST)
things people had given to God

Translation Words - ULT
• beautiful
• temple

Translation Words - UST
• beautiful
• temple

ULT
5 Now as some were speaking about the temple, that it was decorated with beautiful stones and offerings, he said,

UST
5 Some of Jesus’ disciples were talking about how the temple was adorned with beautiful stones and decorations that people had given. But Jesus said,

As for these things that you see (ULT)
These things you are looking (UST)

This refers to the beautiful temple and its decorations.

the days will come in which (ULT)
at...Yes, the time is coming when (UST)

“there will be a time when” or “someday”

will be left...on another which will not be torn down (ULT)
will be left...will be destroyed completely...on top of another (UST)

A new sentence can be started here. Alternate translation: “left on another. They will all be torn down” or “left on another. Enemies will tear down every stone” (See: Active or Passive)

not one stone will be left...will not be torn down (ULT)
not one of these stones will be left...will be destroyed completely (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “every stone will be removed from its place and they will all be torn down”

will be left...on another which will not be torn down (ULT)
will be left...will be destroyed completely...on top of another (UST)

A new sentence can be started here. Alternate translation: “left on another. They will all be torn down” or “left on another. Enemies will tear down every stone” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• the days

Translation Words - UST

• Yes, the time
Luke 21:7

they asked...him (ULT)
Then they asked him...Then they asked him (UST)

“the disciples asked Jesus” or “Jesus' disciples asked him”

these things (ULT)
these things (UST)

This refers to what Jesus has just said about enemies destroying the temple.

Translation Words - ULT
  • sign
  • Teacher

Translation Words - UST
  • will happen to show
  • Teacher

ULT
7 So they asked him, saying, “Teacher, when therefore will these things be, and what will be the sign when these things are about to happen?”

UST
7 Then they asked him, “Teacher, when will these things happen? And what will happen to show that these things are about to take place?”
Luke 21:8

you are not deceived (ULT)
no one deceives you (UST)

Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word “you” is plural. Alternate translation: “that you do not believe lies” or “that no one deceives you” (See: Forms of You and Active or Passive)

in my name (ULT)
and each will claim to be me...about himself (UST)

People coming in his name claim to represent him. Alternate translation: “claiming to be me” or “claiming to have my authority” (See: Metonymy)

I am he (ULT)
I am (UST)

“I am the Christ” or “I am the Messiah”

not...go after them (ULT)
no...follow after them to become their disciples (UST)

“Do not believe them” or “Do not become their disciples”

Translation Words - ULT

• name
• time
• you are...deceived

Translation Words - UST

• and each will claim...himself
• time
• one deceives you

ULT
8 Then he said, “Be careful that you are not deceived. For many will come in my name, saying, ‘I am he,’ and, ‘The time is near.’ Do not go after them.

UST
8 Jesus replied, “Be careful that no one deceives you. For many people will come and each will claim to be me. Each will say about himself, ‘I am the Messiah!’ They will also say, ‘The time is almost here, when God will rule as king!’ Do not follow after them to become their disciples!”
Luke 21:9

of wars and riots (ULT)
wars and people fighting each other (UST)

Here "wars" probably refers to fighting between countries, and "riots" probably refers to people fighting against their own leaders or against others in their country. Alternate translation: "wars and rebellions" or "wars and revolutions"

do not be terrified (ULT)
do not be terrified (UST)

"do not let these things terrify you" or "do not be afraid"

it will not immediately be the end (ULT)
the end of the world comes (UST)

This refers to the final judgment. Alternate translation: "the end of the world will not happen immediately after the wars and riots" or "the world will not end immediately after those things happen" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the end (ULT)
the end of the world comes (UST)

"the end of everything" or "the end of the age"

Translation Words - ULT

• be terrified

Translation Words - UST

• be terrified
Luke 21:10

Then he said to them (ULT)
Various people groups (UST)

“Then Jesus said to his disciples.” Since this is a continuation of Jesus speaking from the previous verse, some languages may prefer not to say “Then he said to them.”

Nation will rise against nation (ULT)
Various people groups...will attack each other (UST)

Here “nation” is a metonym for the people of the nation, and “rise against” is a metonym for attack. The word “nation” represents nations in general, not one particular nation. Alternate translation: “The people of one nation will attack the people of other nations” or “The people of some nations will attack the people of other nations” (See: Metonymy and Generic Noun Phrases)

Nation (ULT)
Various people groups (UST)

This refers to ethnic groups of people rather than to countries.

kingdom against kingdom (ULT)
various kings will fight each other (UST)

The words “will rise” are understood from the previous phrase and mean attack. Alternate translation: “kingdom will rise against kingdom” or “the people of some kingdoms will attack the people of other kingdoms” (See: Ellipsis and Metonymy and Generic Noun Phrases)

Translation Words - ULT

- Nation
- nation (2)
- will rise
- kingdom
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- Various people groups
- each other (2)
- Various people groups
- various kings
- each other
Luke 21:11

famines and plagues in various places (ULT)
And in various places...famines...terrible diseases (UST)

The words “there will be” are understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: “there will be famines and plagues in many places” or “there will be times of hunger and diseases in different places” (See: Ellipsis)

terrifying events (ULT)
Many things will happen that will cause people to be very afraid (UST)

“events that terrify people” or “events that cause people to be very afraid”

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• signs
• famines

Translation Words - UST

• the sky
• people will see strange things...that will show
• famines

ULT
11 There will be both great earthquakes, and famines and plagues in various places. There will be both terrifying events and great signs from heaven.

UST
11 And in various places there will be great earthquakes, as well as famines and terrible diseases. Many things will happen that will cause people to be very afraid, and people will see strange things in the sky that will show that something very important is going to happen.
Luke 21:12

This refers to the terrible things that Jesus has said will happen.

They will lay their hands on you and persecute you, delivering you over to the synagogues and prisons, bringing you before kings and governors because of my name.

Jesus was talking to his disciples. The word “you” is plural. (See: Forms of You)

The word “synagogues” is a metonym for the people in the synagogues, specifically the leaders. Alternate translation: “giving you over to the leaders of the synagogues” or “taking you to the synagogues so that the people there can do to you whatever they want to do” (See: Metonymy)

“And delivering you over to the prisons” or “putting you in prisons”

The word “name” is here used to refer to Jesus himself. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because you follow me” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• synagogues
• name
• hands
• prisons
• will persecute you
• kings
• governors
Translation Words - UST

- synagogues
- you follow
- things happen, they...hand...over
- prisons
- treat you badly
- kings
- high government authorities

for a testimony (ULT)
to tell them the truth about me (UST)

“for you to tell them your testimony about me”

Translation Words - ULT

• a testimony

Translation Words - UST

• tell them the truth about me
Luke 21:14

Therefore (ULT)
So (UST)

“Because of this,” referring to everything Jesus has said, beginning in Luke 21:10. (See: Connecting Words and Phrases)

resolve…in your hearts (ULT)
be determined…of…yourselves (UST)

Here “hearts” is a metonym for people's minds. Alternate translation: “make up your mind” or “decide firmly” (See: Metonymy)

not to prepare your defense ahead of time (ULT)
not to worry ahead…time about what you will say to defend (UST)

“not to figure out ahead of time what you will say in order to defend yourself against their accusations”

Translation Words - ULT

• hearts

Translation Words - UST

• yourselves
Luke 21:15

you...wisdom that all...adversaries will not be able to resist or contradict (ULT)
you the...wisdom so that you will know what to say. As a result, none of the people accusing you will be able to say...are wrong (UST)

“wisdom that none of your adversaries will be able to resist or contradict”

I...will give you speech and wisdom (ULT)
I...will give you...right words and wisdom so...you will know what to say (UST)

“I will tell you what wise things to say”

speech and wisdom (ULT)
right words and wisdom so...you will know what to say (UST)

These can be combined into one phrase. Alternate translation: “words of wisdom” or “wise words” (See: Hendiadys)

Translation Words - ULT

• will...be able
• wisdom

Translation Words - UST

• none...will be able
• wisdom so...you will know what to say
Luke 21:16

you will...be delivered up...also...by parents, and brothers, and relatives, and friends (ULT)
will betray you...even your parents and brothers and other relatives and friends...and (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “even your parents, brothers, relatives, and friends will give you over to the authorities” (See: Active or Passive)

they will put some of you to death (ULT)
will kill some of you (UST)

“they will kill some of you.” Possible meanings are 1) “the authorities will kill some of you” or 2) “those who deliver you up will kill some of you.” The first meaning is more likely.

Translation Words - ULT

• brothers
• you will...be delivered up
• relatives
• they will put...to death

Translation Words - UST

• brothers
• will betray you
• other relatives
• will kill some
Luke 21:17

you will be hated by everyone (ULT)
everybody will hate you (UST)

This can be translated in active form. The word “everyone” emphasizes how many people will hate the disciples, either through 1) exaggeration Alternate translation: “It will seem like you are hated by everyone” or “It will seem like everyone hates you” or 2) a generalization. Alternate translation: “You will be hated by most people” or “Most people will hate you” (See: Hyperbole)

because of my name (ULT)
because you believe in me (UST)

“my name” here refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: “because of me” or “because you follow me” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• name

Translation Words - UST

• you believe in
Luke 21:18

But not a hair of your head will perish (ULT)
But not even one hair from your head shall be destroyed (UST)

Jesus speaks of one of the smallest parts of a person. He is emphasizing that the whole person will not perish. Jesus had already said that some of them would be put to death, so some understand this to mean that they would not be harmed spiritually. Alternate translation: “But these things cannot really harm you” or “Even every hair on your head will be safe” (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT
  • will perish
  • head

Translation Words - UST
  • shall be destroyed
  • head
Luke 21:19

By your endurance (ULT)
If you go through difficult times and prove your trust in God (UST)

“By holding firm.” This can be stated in the opposite way. Alternate translation: “If you do not quit”

your...you will gain...souls (ULT)
your...will save yourselves (UST)

The “soul” was understood to represent the eternal part of a person. Alternate translation: “you will receive life” or “you will save yourselves”

Translation Words - ULT

• souls
• endurance

Translation Words - UST

• yourselves
• If you go through difficult times and prove...trust...God
Luke 21:20

Jerusalem surrounded by armies (ULT)  
armies surround Jerusalem (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “armies surrounding Jerusalem” (See: Active or Passive)

that its desolation is near (ULT)  
that they will soon destroy this city (UST)

“that it will soon be destroyed” or “that they will soon destroy it”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- desolation
- know

Translation Words - UST

- Jerusalem
- destroy
- you will know

ULT
20 But when you see Jerusalem surrounded by armies, then know that its desolation is near.

UST
20 “When you see armies surround Jerusalem, then you will know that they will soon destroy this city.
Luke 21:21

let...flee (ULT)
must flee (UST)

run away from danger

in...the country (ULT)
in...the nearby countryside (UST)

This refers to the rural areas outside Jerusalem, and not to the nation. Alternate translation: “outside the city”

to...let...enter...it (ULT)
to...come...the city (UST)

“enter Jerusalem”

Translation Words - ULT

• Judea

Translation Words - UST

• region of Judea
Luke 21:22

these are days of vengeance (ULT)
this will be the time when God will punish this city (UST)

“these are days of punishment” or “this will be the time when God will punish this city”

the things...all...that have been written (ULT)
the...when he does...words in the scriptures (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “all the things that the prophets wrote in the scriptures long ago” (See: Active or Passive)

to fulfill (ULT)
will come true (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “will happen” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• to fulfill
• of vengeance
• days
• have been written

Translation Words - UST

• will come true
• God will punish
• the time when
• words in...scriptures
Luke 21:23

to those who...are nursing (ULT)
How terrible it will be...those nursing their babies (UST)

“to mothers who are nursing their babies”

there will be...great distress upon the land (ULT)
there will be...for the...land...suffer enormously because (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the people of the land will be distressed or 2) there will be physical disasters in the land.

wrath to this people (ULT)
its people will...God will be angry with them (UST)

“there will be wrath to the people at that time.” God will bring this wrath. Alternate translation: “this people will experience God's anger” or “God will be very angry and will punish this people” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• woe
• wrath
• people
• are pregnant
• days

Translation Words - UST

• How terrible it will be
• God will be angry
• its people will
• pregnant women
• days
Luke 21:24

they will fall by the mouth of the sword (ULT)
Many of them will die...soldiers will attack them...wepons (UST)

“They will be killed by the edge of the sword.” Here “fall by the mouth of the sword” represents being killed by enemy soldiers. Alternate translation: “Enemy soldiers will kill them” (See: Metonymy)

they will be led captive into all the nations (ULT)
Others...prisoners...they will be sent to many places around the world. The Gentiles will keep (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “their enemies will capture them and take them to other countries” (See: Active or Passive)

into all the nations (ULT)
Others...to many places around the world. The Gentiles will keep (UST)

The word “all” is an exaggeration to emphasize that they will be led into many countries. Alternate translation: “into many other countries” (See: Hyperbole)

Jerusalem will be trampled by the Gentiles (ULT)
will become...marching their troops through the streets of Jerusalem for as long as God allows (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the Gentiles will conquer Jerusalem and occupy it or 2) the Gentiles will destroy the city of Jerusalem or 3) the Gentiles will destroy the people of Jerusalem. (See: Active or Passive)

trampled by the Gentiles (ULT)
marching their troops through...for as long as God allows (UST)

This metaphor speaks of Jerusalem as if the people of other nations was walking on it and crushing it down with their feet. This refers to domination. Alternate translation: “conquered by the Gentiles” or “destroyed by the other nations” (See: Metaphor)

the times of the Gentiles are fulfilled (ULT)
for as long as God allows (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the period of the Gentiles has come to an end” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• nations
• the Gentiles
• of the Gentiles (2)
• are fulfilled
• Jerusalem
They will be led captive the times of the sword.

Translation Words - UST

- The Gentiles will keep for as long as God allows for as long as God allows (2) for as long as God allows the streets of Jerusalem prisoners...they will be sent for as long as God allows weapons
Luke 21:25

Then there will be signs in the sun, in the moon, and in the stars, and on the earth nations will be distressed and anxious at the roaring and tossing of the sea.

ULT

25 Then there will be signs in the sun, in the moon, and in the stars, and on the earth the nations will be distressed and anxious at the roaring and tossing of the sea.

UST

25 “At this time, strange things will happen to the sun, the moon, and the stars. And on earth, people groups will become very frightened, and they will become confused because of the roaring ocean and its huge waves.

Translation Words - ULT

• signs
• the nations
• earth

Translation Words - UST

• this time, strange things
• people groups
• earth
Luke 21:26

of the things which are coming upon the world (ULT)
what will happen next in the world (UST)

“the things that will happen in the world“ or “the things that will happen to the world“

the...powers of the heavens will be shaken (ULT)
The...stars in the sky will have to leave...their usual places (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) that God will shake the sun moon and stars so they do not move in their normal way or 2) God will trouble the powerful spirits in the heavens. The first is recommended. (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• heavens
• fear
• powers
• world

Translation Words - UST

• sky
• will be so afraid that
• stars in...will have to
• world
Luke 21:27

the Son of Man coming (ULT)
me, the Son of Man, coming (UST)

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: “me, the Son Man, coming” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

coming in a cloud (ULT)
coming in the clouds (UST)

“coming down in a cloud”

And...with power...great glory (ULT)
Then...with power...brilliant light (UST)

Here “power” probably refers to his authority to judge the world. Here “glory” may refer to a bright light. God sometimes shows his greatness with a very bright light. Alternate translation: “powerfully and gloriously” or “and he will be powerful and very glorious”

Translation Words - ULT

• power
• great
• Son of Man

Translation Words - UST

• power
• light
• Son of Man
Luke 21:28

stand up (ULT)
look upward (UST)

Sometimes when people are afraid, they crouch down in order to avoid being seen or hurt. When they are no longer afraid, they get up. Alternate translation: “stand up with confidence”

lift up your heads (ULT)
stand up straight (UST)

Lifting the head is a metonym for looking up. When they lift their heads up, they will be able to see their rescuer coming to them. Alternate translation: “look up” (See: Metonymy)

because your deliverance is coming near (ULT)
because God will soon rescue you (UST)

God, who delivers, is spoken of as if he were the deliverance that he causes. The word “deliverance” is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: “because God will soon deliver you” (See: Metonymy and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

• deliverance
• heads

Translation Words - UST

• God...rescue
• stand up straight
Luke 21:29

Connecting Statement:
As Jesus continues teaching his disciples, he tells them a parable. (See: Parables)

Translation Words - ULT
• a parable
• fig tree

Translation Words - UST
• a parable
• fig trees

ULT
29 Then he spoke a parable to them: “Look at the fig tree, and all the trees.

UST
29 Then Jesus told them a parable: “Think about the fig trees, and even all the trees.
Luke 21:30

**ULT**
When they...sprout buds
Whenever...their leaves are sprouting

“When new leaves start to grow”

**ULT**
the summer is already near
that...summer is near

“summer is about to start.” Summer in Israel follows the sprouting of fig tree leaves and is the time when the figs ripen. Alternate translation: “harvest time is ready to start” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

**ULT**
30 When they already sprout buds, you see for yourselves and know that the summer is already near.

**UST**
Whenever you see that their leaves are sprouting, you know that summer is near.

**Translation Words - UST**
• you know
Luke 21:31

So also, when you see these things happening (ULT)
In the same way, when you see these things...I have
just described happening...then (UST)

The appearance of the signs that Jesus just described signal the
arrival of the kingdom of God just as appearance of the leaves of the
fig tree signal the arrival of summer.

the kingdom of God is near (ULT)
that God will soon show himself as king (UST)

“God will soon establish his kingdom.” Alternate translation: “God will
soon rule as king” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• kingdom of God
• kingdom
• you know

Translation Words - UST

• that God
• that God...as king
• as king
• you will know
Luke 21:32

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching his disciples.

Truly I say to you (ULT)
I am telling you...truth (UST)

This expression emphasizes the importance of what Jesus is about to say.

this generation (ULT)
the...These types (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) the generation that will see the first of the signs Jesus speaks of or 2) the generation Jesus is speaking to. The first is more likely.

will...not...pass away...until (ULT)
of people will not come...an end...to...before (UST)

This could be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “will still be alive when”

Translation Words - ULT

• Truly
• generation

Translation Words - UST

• truth
• These types
Luke 21:33

The heaven and the earth will pass away (ULT)
the earth and sky will continue to exist (UST)

“Heaven and earth will cease to exist.” The word “heaven” here refers to the sky and the universe beyond it.

words...my...words...will never pass away (ULT)
the earth and sky will continue to exist...You can be certain that these things that I have told you about will happen. That they will happen is more certain than that (UST)

“my words will never cease to exist” or “my words will never fail.” Jesus uses “words” here to refer to everything he says. (See: Metonymy)

will pass away...never (ULT)
You can be certain that these things that I have told...the earth and sky will continue to exist (UST)

This could be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “will remain forever”

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven
- words
- earth

Translation Words - UST

- the earth and sky will continue to exist
- you about will happen. That they will happen is more certain than that
- the earth and sky will continue to exist
Luke 21:34

so that your hearts are not burdened (ULT)
do not carry the cares of (UST)

The “heart” here refers to the mind and thoughts of the person. Alternate translation: “so that you are not occupied” (See: Metonymy)

so that...are not burdened (ULT)
do not carry the cares of (UST)

Jesus here speaks of the following sins as if they were a physical weight that a person had to carry. (See: Metaphor)

the effects of drinking (ULT)
parties where people are acting immorally (UST)

“what drinking too much wine will do to you” or “drunkenness”

the worries of life (ULT)
this life...If you live...way, you will stop waiting for me (UST)

“worrying too much about this life”

that day will close on you suddenly

Just as a trap closes on an animal when the animal does not expect it, that day will happen when people do not expect it. Alternate translation: “that day will happen when you are not expecting it, as when a trap closes suddenly on an animal” (See: Simile)

that day will close on you suddenly

The coming of that day will appear to be sudden and unexpected to those who are not ready and watching for it. Alternate translation: “life. For if you are not careful, that day will close on you suddenly” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

that day (ULT)
this...at that moment, I will surprise...when I come. I will come...it will be like when an animal trap springs closed without warning (UST)

This refers to the day when the Messiah returns. Alternate translation: “the day when the Son of Man comes”

Translation Words - ULT

• of life
• hearts
• are...burdened
• intoxication
• day
Translation Words - UST

• this life
• carry the cares of
• carry the cares of
• getting drunk
• at that moment, I will surprise...when I come. I will come
Luke 21:35

it will come...upon everyone (ULT)
Indeed, I will return without warning...day will come when you are not ready to see me (UST)

“it will affect everyone” or “the events of that day will affect everyone”

on the face of the whole earth (ULT)
day will come when you are not ready to see me (UST)

The surface of the earth is spoken of as if it were the outward part of the face of a person. Alternate translation: “on the surface of the whole earth” or “on the entire earth” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• the face
• earth
• as
• a trap

Translation Words - UST

• day will come when you are not ready to see me
• day will come when you are not ready to see me
• that
• Indeed, I will return without warning

ULT 35 as a trap, for it will come upon everyone who is living on the face of the whole earth.

UST 35 Indeed, I will return without warning, and that day will come when you are not ready to see me.
Luke 21:36

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples.

be alert (ULT)
you must be...ready for my coming (UST)

“be ready for my coming”

you may be strong enough to escape all these things (ULT)
that you may be able...go through all these hard things...safety (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “strong enough to endure these things” or 2) “able to avoid these things.”

all these things that are about to take place (ULT)
that...all...that I, the...I come (UST)

“these things that will happen.” Jesus has just told them about terrible things that will happen, such as persecution, war, and captivity.

to stand before the Son of Man

“to stand with confidence before the Son of Man.” This probably refers to when the Son of Man judges everyone. A person who is not ready will be afraid of the Son of Man and will not stand with confidence.

Translation Words - ULT

• Son of Man
• praying
• times
• you may be strong enough
• be alert

Translation Words - UST

• Son of Man
• pray
• always
• you may be able
• you must be...ready for my coming
Luke 21:37

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that begins in Luke 20:1. These verses tell about ongoing action that continues after the main part of the story ends. (See: End of Story)

he was...during the days...teaching (ULT)
Jesus was...Each day...the...teaching people (UST)

“during the daytime he would teach” or “he would teach each day.”
The following verses tell about things that Jesus and the people did each day during the week before he died.

in the temple (ULT)
in...temple...of (UST)

Only priests were allowed in the temple. Alternate translation: “at the temple” or “in the temple courtyard” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

during the...Now...night he went out (ULT)
Each...the...every evening he went out...city and (UST)

“at night he would go out of the city” or “he went out each night”

Translation Words - ULT

- is called
- temple
- hill that is called Olivet
- teaching
- Olivet
- days

Translation Words - UST

- of
- temple
- the...Mount...of Olives
- teaching people
- Olives
- day
Luke 21:38

all the people (ULT)
all the people (UST)

The word “all” is probably an exaggeration to emphasize that the crowd was very large. Alternate translation: “A very large number of people in the city” or “Almost everyone in the city” (See: Hyperbole)

were coming...early in the morning (ULT)
early every morning...came (UST)

“would come early each morning”

to hear him (ULT)
to listen (UST)

“to hear him teach”

Translation Words - ULT

• temple
• people

Translation Words - UST

• temple
• people

ULT
38 Now all the people were coming to him early in the morning in the temple to hear him.

UST
38 And early every morning all the people came to the temple to listen to him.
Luke 22

Luke 22 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The eating of the body and blood

Luke 22:19-20 describes Jesus’ last meal with his followers. At this time, Jesus told them that what they were eating and drinking were his body and his blood. Nearly all Christian churches celebrate “the Lord's Supper,” the “Eucharist”, or “Holy Communion” to remember this meal.

The new covenant

Some people think that Jesus established the new covenant during the supper. Others think he established it after he went up to heaven. Others think it will not be established until Jesus comes again. Your translation should say no more about this than the ULT does. (See: covenant)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 22:22). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)
Luke 22:1

General Information:
Judas agrees to betray Jesus. These verses give background information about this event. (See: Background Information)

Now (ULT)
It was now (UST)

This word is used here to introduce a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

the Festival of Unleavened Bread (ULT)
the Celebration of Unleavened Bread (UST)

The festival was called by this name because during the festival, the Jews did not eat bread that was made with yeast. Alternate translation: “festival when they would eat unleavened bread” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

was approaching (ULT)
almost time for (UST)

“was almost ready to begin”

Translation Words - ULT
- is called
- Unleavened Bread
- the Passover
- Festival

Translation Words - UST
- which people also call
- Unleavened Bread
- Passover
- Celebration
Luke 22:2

how they might put him to death (ULT)
the...a way to kill Jesus...him (UST)

The priests and scribes did not have the authority to kill Jesus themselves, but they hoped to get others to kill him. Alternate translation: “how they might cause Jesus to be put to death” or “how they could cause someone to kill Jesus”

they were afraid...of the people (ULT)
they feared...the people who followed (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “scared of what the people might do” or 2) “scared that the people would make Jesus king.”

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• they were afraid
• chief priests
• people
• were seeking

Translation Words - UST

• teachers of...Jewish laws
• they feared
• chief priests
• people who followed
• were looking for

ULT
2 And the chief priests and the scribes were seeking how they might put him to death, for they were afraid of the people.

UST
2 Now the chief priests and the teachers of the Jewish laws were looking for a way to kill Jesus because they feared the people who followed him.
Luke 22:3

General Information:
This is the beginning of the action in this part of the story.

entered...Satan...into Judas...Iscariot (ULT)
entered...Satan...into Judas...Iscariot (UST)

This was probably very similar to demon possession.

Translation Words - ULT

- called
- twelve
- Satan
- Judas, the one called Iscariot

Translation Words - UST

- called
- twelve disciples
- Satan
- Judas, the one called Iscariot
Luke 22:4

the chief priests (ULT)
with the chief priests (UST)

“the leaders of the priests”

captains (ULT)
the officers of...temple guard (UST)

officers of the temple guards

about how he might betray him to them (ULT)
the...about how he might turn Jesus over to them (UST)

“how he would help them arrest Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• chief priests
• he might betray

Translation Words - UST

• chief priests
• he might turn...over
Luke 22:5

they were glad (ULT)
They were very pleased (UST)

“They the chief priests and captains were glad”

to give him money (ULT)
pay him money for doing this (UST)

“to give Judas money”

Translation Words - ULT

• money
• they were glad

Translation Words - UST

• money for doing this
• They were very pleased

he agreed (ULT)
Judas agreed...he (UST)

“He agreed”

began seeking an opportunity to betray him to them away from the crowd (ULT)
started looking for a way to help them arrest Jesus when there was no crowd around him (UST)

This is an ongoing action that continues after this part of the story ends. (See: End of Story)

to betray him (ULT)
to help...arrest Jesus...him (UST)

“take him”

away from the crowd (ULT)
when there was no crowd (UST)

“privately” or “when there was no crowd around him”

Translation Words - ULT

• to betray
• began seeking

Translation Words - UST

• to help...arrest
• started looking

General Information:

Jesus sends Peter and John to prepare for the Passover meal. Verse 7 gives background information about the event. (See: Background Information)

the day of unleavened bread (ULT)
the Day of Unleavened Bread (UST)

“the day of bread without yeast.” This was the day the Jews would take all bread made with yeast out of their homes. Then they would celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days.

it was necessary to sacrifice the Passover lamb (ULT)
the Passover Celebration had to be killed (UST)

Each family or group of people would kill a lamb and eat it together, so many lambs were killed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “people had to kill a lamb for their Passover meal” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• unleavened bread
• Passover lamb
• day

Translation Words - UST

• Unleavened Bread
• Passover Celebration
• Day
Luke 22:8

he sent (ULT)
So Jesus said to Peter and John (UST)

“Jesus sent”

prepare (ULT)
prepare (UST)

This is a general word meaning “make ready.” Jesus was not necessarily telling Peter and John to do all the cooking.

so that we may eat it (ULT)
so...can eat it together (UST)

Jesus was including Peter and John when he said “we.” Peter and John would be part of the group of the disciples that would eat the meal. (See: Inclusive and Exclusive “We”)

Translation Words - ULT

• Passover meal
• Peter
• John
• he sent

Translation Words - UST

• Passover Celebration for us
• So Jesus said to Peter and John
• So Jesus said to Peter and John
• So Jesus said to Peter and John

ULT
8 So he sent Peter and John, saying, “Go prepare for us the Passover meal, so that we may eat it.”

UST
8 So Jesus said to Peter and John, “Go and prepare the meal for the Passover Celebration for us so we can eat it together.”
Luke 22:9

you want us to make preparations (ULT)
do you want us to prepare to eat it (UST)

The word “us” does not include Jesus. Jesus would not be part of the group that would prepare the meal. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

to make preparations (ULT)
us to prepare to eat it (UST)

“make preparations for the meal” or “prepare the meal”
Luke 22:10

he...answered them (ULT)
He...answered (UST)

“Jesus answered Peter and John”

Look (ULT)
Listen carefully (UST)

Jesus used this word to tell them to pay close attention and to do exactly what he tells them.

a man bearing a pitcher of water will meet you (ULT)
a man carrying a large jar of water will meet you (UST)

“you will see a man carrying a pitcher of water”

bearing a pitcher of water (ULT)
carrying a large jar of water (UST)

“carrying a jar with water in it.” He probably would be carrying the jar on his shoulder.

into the...Follow him...house (ULT)
into the...follow him...house (UST)

“Follow him, and go into the house”

Translation Words - ULT

• of water
• bearing
• house

Translation Words - UST

• water
• carrying
• house
Luke 22:11

The Teacher says to you, “Where is the guest room where I will eat the Passover with my disciples (ULT) of the...Our teacher says to show us the room where he can eat the Passover meal together with us, his disciples (UST)

The quote beginning with “Where is the guest room” is a direct quote of what Jesus, the teacher, wants to say to the master of his house. It can be translated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: “Our teacher asks where the guest room is in which he will eat the Passover with his disciples.” or “Our teacher says to show us the guest room where he will eat the Passover with us and the rest of his disciples.” (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

The Teacher (ULT)
Our teacher (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

the...Passover...I will eat (ULT)
the...Passover meal...he can eat (UST)

“eat the Passover meal”

Translation Words - ULT

• master
• Passover
• disciples
• Teacher
• house

Translation Words - UST

• owner
• Passover meal
• his disciples
• Our teacher
• house
Luke 22:12

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues giving instructions to Peter and John.

He will show you (ULT)
He will show you (UST)

“The owner of the house will show you”

a...upper room (ULT)
room that is on the upper floor of the house (UST)

“room upstairs.” If your community does not have houses with rooms above other rooms, you may need to consider how to describe buildings in the city.

ULT
12 He will show you a large furnished upper room. Make the preparations there.”

UST
12 He will show you a large room that is on the upper floor of the house. It will be all set up, with everything ready for guests. Prepare the meal for us there.”

And they went (ULT)
So the two disciples went into the city (UST)

“So Peter and John went”

Translation Words - ULT
- Passover meal
- just as

Translation Words - UST
- Passover Celebration there
- just as

ULT
13 And they went and found it just as he had said to them. Then they prepared the Passover meal.

UST
13 So the two disciples went into the city. They found everything to be just as Jesus had told them. So they prepared the meal for the Passover Celebration there.
Luke 22:14

Connecting Statement:
This is the next event in the part of the story about the Passover. Jesus and his disciples are sitting to eat the Passover meal.

Now when the hour came (ULT)
When it was time to...the (UST)

“When it was time to eat the meal”

he reclined at the table (ULT)
eat...meal...came...sat down (UST)

“Jesus sat down”

Translation Words - ULT
- apostles
- hour

Translation Words - UST
- apostles
- time
Luke 22:15

I have greatly desired (ULT)
I have wanted very much (UST)

“I have wanted very much”

before I suffer (ULT)
before I suffer (UST)

Jesus is referring ahead to his death. The word for “suffer” here means to go through an unusually difficult or painful experience.

Translation Words - ULT

• Passover
• I suffer

Translation Words - UST

• Passover meal
• suffer

ULT
15 Then he said to them, “I have greatly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer.

UST
15 He said to them, “I have wanted very much to eat this Passover meal with you before I suffer and die.
Luke 22:16

For I say to you (ULT)
I tell you...I do so when (UST)

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

until when it is fulfilled (ULT)
until...when he finishes what he started to do (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) until the purpose of the Passover Festival is accomplished. Alternate translation: “until God fulfills it” or “until God completes the purpose of the Passover Festival” or 2) “until we celebrate the final Passover Festival” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• God
• it is fulfilled
• kingdom of God
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• God
• he finishes what he started to do
• God rules everyone everywhere
• rules everyone everywhere
Luke 22:17

he took a cup (ULT)
Then he took a cup of wine (UST)

“picked up a cup of wine”

and when he had given thanks (ULT)
thanked God for it (UST)

“when he had given thanks to God”

he said (ULT)
He said (UST)

“he said to his apostles”

divide it among yourselves (ULT)
share it among yourselves (UST)

They were to share the contents of the cup, and not the cup itself. Alternate translation: “share the wine in the cup among yourselves” or “each of you drink some of the wine from the cup” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• he took

Translation Words - UST

• Then he took
Luke 22:18

For I say to you (ULT)
For I tell you (UST)

This phrase is used to emphasize the importance of what Jesus will say next.

fruit of the vine...now on (ULT)
any...of this wine...again (UST)

This refers to the juice that is squeezed from the grapes that grow on grapevines. Wine is made from fermented grape juice.

now on, until the kingdom...God comes (ULT)
that...any...again...until God rules everyone everywhere (UST)

“until God establishes his kingdom” or “until God rules in his kingdom”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- kingdom of God
- vine
- fruit
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- God rules everyone everywhere
- God rules everyone everywhere
- of this wine
- of this wine
- God rules everyone everywhere
Luke 22:19

bread (ULT)  
some bread (UST)

This bread did not have yeast in it, so it was flat.

he broke it (ULT)  
He broke it (UST)

“he ripped it” or “he tore it.” He may have divided it into many pieces or he may have divided it into two pieces and given them to the apostles to divide among themselves. If possible, use an expression that would apply to either situation.

This is my body (ULT)  
This bread is my body (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “This bread is my body” and 2) “This bread represents my body.”

my body, which is given for you (ULT)  
my body, which I am about to sacrifice for you (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “my body, which I will give for you” or “my body, which I will sacrifice for you” (See: Active or Passive)

Do this (ULT)  
Do this (UST)

“Eat this bread”

in the remembrance of me (ULT)  
later to honor me (UST)

“in order to remember me”

Translation Words - ULT

• body
• bread

Translation Words - UST

• body
• some bread
Luke 22:20

This cup (ULT)  
he took the...This is (UST)

The word “cup” refers to the wine in the cup. Alternate translation: “The wine in this cup” or “This cup of wine” (See: Metonymy)

is the new covenant in my blood (ULT)  
In...of...new covenant I will make using my own blood (UST)

This new covenant will take effect as soon his blood is shed. Alternate translation: “the new covenant that will be ratified through my blood”

which is poured out for you (ULT)  
the...which will pour out for you (UST)

Jesus speaks of his death by referring to his blood being poured out. Alternate translation: “which is poured out in death for you” or “which will flow out of my wounds for you when I die” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- blood
- covenant
- in the same way

Translation Words - UST

- blood
- covenant I will make using
- same way
Luke 22:21

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues speaking to his apostles.

of the one who betrays me (ULT)
person who will...to my enemies (UST)

“The one who will betray me”

Translation Words - ULT

• hand
• betrays

Translation Words - UST

• hand me
• to...enemies
Luke 22:22

For the Son of Man indeed...goes (ULT)
Indeed, I, the Son of Man...that is what...will die (UST)

“For, indeed, the Son of Man will go” or “For the Son of Man will die”

the Son of Man indeed...goes (ULT)
Indeed, I, the Son of Man...will die (UST)

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man, indeed go” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

as it has been determined (ULT)
because...God has planned...for the (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as God has determined” or “as God has planned” (See: Active or Passive)

But woe to that man through whom he is betrayed (ULT)
But how terrible it will be...man who hands me over to my enemies (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But woe to the man who betrays the Son of Man” or “But how terrible it will be for that man who betrays the Son of Man” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• woe
• Son of Man indeed
• he is betrayed
• has been determined

Translation Words - UST

• how terrible it will be
• Indeed, I...Son of Man
• hands me over to my enemies
• God has planned
Luke 22:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
23 Then they began to question among themselves as to which of them therefore might be the one who was about to do this.

UST
23 Then the apostles began to ask one another, “Which one of us is planning to do this thing?”
Luke 22:24

Then there arose also a quarrel among them (ULT)
After that, the apostles began to argue among themselves (UST)

“Then the apostles began to argue among themselves”

was considered to be greatest (ULT)
most honor when Jesus becomes king (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “was the most important” or “the people would think was most important” (See: Active or Passive)

ULT
24 Then there arose also a quarrel among them as to which of them was considered to be greatest.

UST
24 After that, the apostles began to argue among themselves; they said, “Which one of us will have the most honor when Jesus becomes king?”
Luke 22:25

But he said to them (ULT)
Jesus answered them, “The...that (UST)

“Jesus said to the apostles”

lord it over them (ULT)
like to show...they (UST)

“rule forcefully over the Gentiles”

are referred to as (ULT)
give themselves...title (UST)

The people probably did not think of those rulers as people who do
good to their people. Alternate translation: “like to be called” or “call
themselves”

Translation Words - ULT

- are referred to as
- Gentiles
- have authority over
- lord it over
- kings

Translation Words - UST

- give themselves...title
- Gentile nations
- are powerful
- like to show
- kings
Luke 22:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues teaching his apostles.

with you...it must not be like this (ULT)
you...should not be like those rulers (UST)

“you should not act like that”

the youngest (ULT)
the youngest (UST)

Older people were respected in that culture. The leaders were usually older people and were called “elders.” The youngest person would be the least likely to lead, and the least important. Alternate translation: “the least important” (See: Metaphor)

the...serves (ULT)
the...a servant (UST)

“a servant”

Translation Words - ULT

- serves
- like
- like (2)

Translation Words - UST

- a servant
- should act as if they were
- must act like (2)
Luke 22:27

For (ULT)
For you know (UST)

This connects Jesus’ commands in verse 26 with the whole of verse 27. It means that the most important person should serve because Jesus is a servant.

For who is greater…the one who reclines at the table (ULT)
For you know...important person is...who...the one...eats (UST)

“For who is more important...serves?” Jesus uses this question to begin to explain to the apostles who is truly great. Alternate translation: “I want you to think about who is greater...serves.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the one who reclines at the table (ULT)
the...the one...eats (UST)

“the one who is dining”

Is it not the one who reclines at the table (ULT)
the one...eats (UST)

Jesus uses another question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: “Of course the one who sits at the table is more important than the servant!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the one who...serves...Yet I am among you as (ULT)
that the...the one...eats...the servant who brings...food. But I am your (UST)

“But I am with you to be a servant” or “But I am with you to show you how a servant acts.” The word “yet” is here because there is a contrast between what people would expect Jesus to be like and what he really was like.

Translation Words - ULT

- serves
- serves (2)
- as

Translation Words - UST

- the one...eats
- servant (2)
- that

the ones who have continued with me in my temptations (ULT)
the persons who have stayed with me during all the hard things I have suffered (UST)

“have stayed with me through my struggles”

Translation Words - ULT
  • temptations

Translation Words - UST
  • all the hard...have suffered

ULT
28 But you are the ones who have continued with me in my temptations.

UST
28 You are the persons who have stayed with me during all the hard things I have suffered.
Luke 22:29

I grant to you, just as my Father has granted to me, a kingdom (ULT)
So now, I will make you powerful officials when God rules everyone, just as my Father appointed me to rule as a king (UST)

Some languages may need to change the order. Alternate translation: “just as my father has given a kingdom to me, I give a kingdom to you”

I grant to you...a kingdom (ULT)
So now, I will make you powerful officials when God rules everyone...to rule as a king (UST)

“I make you rulers in God's kingdom” or “I give you authority to rule in the kingdom” or “I will make you kings”

just as my Father has granted to me (ULT)
just as my Father appointed me (UST)

“just as my Father has given me authority to rule as king in his kingdom”

Translation Words - ULT

• grant
• Father
• a kingdom
• just as

Translation Words - UST

• will make
• Father
• to rule as a king
• just as
Luke 22:30

you will sit on thrones (ULT)

fact, you will sit on thrones (UST)

Kings sit on thrones. Sitting on a throne is a symbol of ruling. Alternate translation: “you will work as kings” or “you will do the work of kings” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel
• kingdom
• judging
• thrones
• twelve tribes
• tribes

Translation Words - UST

• of Israel
• when...become king
• judge
• thrones
• twelve tribes
• tribes

ULT

30 so that you may eat and drink at my table in my kingdom, and you will sit on thrones judging the twelve tribes of Israel.

UST

30 You will sit and eat and drink with me when I become king. In fact, you will sit on thrones to judge the people of the twelve tribes of Israel.”
Luke 22:31

General Information:

Jesus speaks directly to Simon.

Simon, Simon

Jesus said his name twice to show that what he was about to say to him was very important.

you (ULT)
you (UST)

The word “you” refers to all of the apostles. Languages that have different forms of “you” should use the plural form. (See: Forms of You)

to sift you as wheat (ULT)
test you, like someone shakes grain in a sieve, and God has permitted him to do it (UST)

This means that Satan wanted to test the disciples to find something wrong. Alternate translation: “test you like someone passes grain through a sieve” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• Satan
• Simon
• Simon (2)
• to sift
• wheat
• as

Translation Words - UST

• Satan
• Simon
• Simon (2)
• test
• someone shakes grain in a sieve, and God has permitted him to do it
• like
Luke 22:32

But I have prayed for you (ULT)
But I have prayed for you, Simon (UST)

The word “you” here refers specifically to Simon. Languages that have different forms of you should use the singular form. (See: Forms of You)

so that your faith may not fail (ULT)
that you will not completely stop believing in me...you (UST)

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “that you will continue to have faith” or “that you will continue to trust me”

when you have turned back (ULT)
when...come back to me (UST)

Here “turned back again” is a metaphor for starting to believe in someone again. Alternate translation: “After you start believing in me again” or “After you start serving me again” (See: Metaphor)

your...strengthen...brothers (ULT)
you...give courage again to these...brothers (UST)

“encourage your brothers to be strong in their faith” or “help your brothers believe in me”

your...brothers (ULT)
you...to these...brothers (UST)

This refers to the other disciples. Alternate translation: “your fellow believers” or “the other disciples”

Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- have prayed
- faith
- you have turned back
- strengthen

Translation Words - UST

- brothers
- have prayed
- believing in me
- when...come back to me
- give courage again
Luke 22:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lord
- prison
- death

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- prison
- die

ULT

33 But Peter said to him, “Lord, I am ready to go with you both to prison and to death.”

UST

33 Peter said to him, “Lord, I am ready to go with you to prison; I am willing to die with you!”
Luke 22:34

The rooster will not crow today, before you deny three times that you know me (ULT)

to...this night...rooster crows...three times that you do not know me (UST)

The order of the parts of the verse can be reversed. Alternate translation: “you will deny three times that you know me before the rooster crows this day”

the rooster will not crow today, before...you deny...that (ULT)
to...this night...rooster crows...not...that you do (UST)

This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: “the rooster will crow this day only after you deny” or “before the rooster crows today, you will deny”

will not crow...the rooster (ULT)
crows...not...rooster (UST)

Here, the crowing of the rooster refers to a certain time of day. Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the morning. Therefore, this refers to dawn. (See: Metonymy)

the rooster (ULT)
rooster (UST)

a bird that calls out loudly around the time the sun comes up

today (ULT)
this night (UST)

The Jewish day begins at sunset. Jesus was speaking after the sun had set. The rooster would crow just before morning. The morning was part of “this day.” Alternate translation: “tonight” or “in the morning” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Peter
• you know

Translation Words - UST

• Peter
• know
Luke 22:35

Connecting Statement:

Jesus turns his attention back to speaking to all of his disciples.

Then he said to them, “When...you did not lack anything, did you?” And they said, “Nothing (ULT) Then Jesus asked the disciples, “When...was there anything you needed but could not get?” They replied, “Nothing (UST)

Jesus uses a question to help the apostles remember how well the people provided for them as they traveled. Though this is a rhetorical question and Jesus is not asking for information, you should translate it as a question unless only a statement would cause the disciples to reply that they had lacked nothing. (See: Rhetorical Question)

When I sent you out (ULT)
When I sent you (UST)

Jesus was talking to his apostles. So languages that have different forms of “you” should use the plural form. (See: Forms of You)

a purse (ULT)
any money (UST)

A purse is a bag for holding money. Here it is used to refer to “money.” (See: Metonymy)

a bag of provisions (ULT)
food (UST)

“travelers' bag” or “bag of food”

Nothing (ULT)
Nothing (UST)

It may be helpful to some audiences to include more about the conversation. Alternate translation: "We did not lack anything" or “We had everything we needed” (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- I sent...out
- shoes

Translation Words - UST

- I sent
- sandals
Luke 22:36

the one who has...does not...should sell his cloak...a sword (ULT)
But, now, if anyone among you...has...he...not...should sell his coat...a sword (UST)

Jesus was not referring to a specific person who did not have a sword. Alternate translation: “If anyone does not have a sword, he should sell his cloak”

cloak (ULT)
cloak (UST)

“coat” or “outer garment”

Translation Words - ULT

• a sword
• likewise
• cloak

Translation Words - UST

• a sword
• Also, whoever has
• coat

ULT

36 Then he said to them, “But now, the one who has a purse, let him take it, and likewise a bag of provisions. And the one who does not have a sword should sell his cloak and buy one.

UST

36 And he said, “But, now, if anyone among you has some money, he should take it with him. Also, whoever has food should take it with him, and whoever does not have a sword should sell his coat and buy one!”
Luke 22:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking with his disciples.

which is written (ULT)
what a prophet wrote about...the...written (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “what a prophet wrote about me in the scriptures” (See: Active or Passive)

must be fulfilled (ULT)
must happen (UST)

The apostles would have understood that God would cause everything written in the scriptures to happen. Alternate translation: “God will fulfill” or “God will cause to happen” (See: Active or Passive)

was counted with the lawless ones (ULT)
People considered him...to...be a criminal (UST)

Here Jesus is quoting the scriptures. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “People counted him as a member of the group of lawless men” (See: Active or Passive)

the lawless ones (ULT)
be a criminal (UST)

“those who break the law” or “the criminals”

For indeed the things concerning me are being fulfilled (ULT)
Everything that is...about me in the scriptures is happening (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “For what the prophet predicted about me is about to happen” or 2) “For my life is coming to an end” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• the lawless ones
• be fulfilled
• is written

Translation Words - UST

• be a criminal
• happen
• what a prophet wrote about...written
Luke 22:38

they...said (ULT)
The disciples...replied (UST)

This refers to at least two of Jesus' apostles.

It is enough (ULT)
Enough. Do not talk like this any longer (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) they have enough swords. “We now have enough swords.” or 2) Jesus wants them to stop talking about having swords. “No more of this talk about swords.” When Jesus said that they should buy swords, he was mainly telling them about the danger they would all face. He may not have really wanted them to buy swords and fight.

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• swords

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• swords
Luke 22:39

General Information:
Jesus goes to the Mount of Olives to pray.

Translation Words - ULT
• disciples
• Mount of Olives
• Olives

Translation Words - UST
• his disciples
• Mount of Olives
• Olives

ULT
39 Then going out, he went according to his custom, to the Mount of Olives, and the disciples also followed him.

UST
39 Jesus left the city and went to the Mount of Olives, as he usually did; his disciples went with him.
Luke 22:40

Pray that you do not enter into temptation (ULT) where he wanted to go...Pray that God will help you not to be tempted to sin (UST)

“that you are not tempted” or “that nothing tempts you and causes you to sin”

Translation Words - ULT

- temptation
- Pray that

Translation Words - UST

- to be tempted
- Pray
Luke 22:41

about a stone's throw (ULT)
about thirty meters (UST)

“about the distance that someone can throw a stone.” Alternate translation: “a short distance” or with an estimated measurement like “about thirty meters” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - UST

41 Then he went away from them about thirty meters, knelt down and prayed. He said.
Luke 22:42

Father, if you are willing (ULT)
Father...If you are willing (UST)

Jesus will bear the guilt of every person's sin on the cross. He prays to his Father, asking if there is another way.

Father (ULT)
Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

remove this cup from me (ULT)
the terrible things that are about to happen to me...to keep from happening, do it (UST)

Jesus refers to what he will soon experience as if it were a cup of bitter liquid that he would have to drink. Alternate translation: “allow me to not drink from this cup” or “allow me to not experience what is about to happen” (See: Metaphor)

Nevertheless not my will, but yours, be done (ULT)
But do not do what I want, but what you want (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "However, do what is according to your will rather than what is according to my will" (See: Active or Passive)
Luke 22:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
43[1] [Now an angel from heaven appeared to him, strengthening him.

UST
43[1] [Then an angel from heaven came and gave him courage.
Luke 22:44

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
44[2] Being in agony, he was praying intently, and his sweat became like drops of blood falling on the ground.

UST
44[2] He was suffering greatly. So he prayed more intensely. His sweat was falling to the ground like large drops of blood.
Luke 22:45

when he rose up from the prayer, he came (ULT)
he got up from praying, he returned (UST)

“When Jesus got up after praying, he” or “After praying, Jesus got up and he”

from the...and found them sleeping...sorrow (ULT)
from praying...He found that they were so tired out...their sorrow...that they were sleeping (UST)

“saw that they were sleeping because they were tired from their sadness”

Translation Words - ULT

• disciples
• prayer
• sleeping
• when he rose up

Translation Words - UST

• disciples
• praying
• were sleeping
• he got up
Luke 22:46

Why are you sleeping (ULT)
You should not be sleeping (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “I am surprised that you are sleeping now.” or 2) “You should not be sleeping now!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

so that you may not enter into temptation (ULT)
that God will help you so that nothing will persuade you to sin (UST)

“so that you may not be tempted” or “so that nothing tempts you and causes you to sin”

Translation Words - ULT

- temptation
- and pray
- are you sleeping
- Rise

Translation Words - UST

- sin
- Pray
- be sleeping
- Get up
While he was still speaking, see, a crowd appeared, and the one who is called Judas, one of the twelve, was leading them. And he came near to Jesus to kiss him.

Judas was showing the people where Jesus was. He was not telling the crowd what to do. Alternate translation: "leading them to Jesus"

“to greet him with a kiss” or “to greet him by kissing him.” When men greeted other men who were family or friends, they would kiss them on one cheek or both cheeks. If your readers would find it embarrassing to say that a man would kiss another man, you could translate it in a more general way: “to give him a friendly greeting.” (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• twelve
• Judas
• to kiss

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• twelve disciples
• Judas
• kiss
Luke 22:48

are you betraying the Son of Man with a kiss (ULT)
will you really kiss me, the Son of Man, in order to hand me over to my enemies (UST)

Jesus uses a question to rebuke Judas for betraying him with a kiss. Normally a kiss is a sign of love. Alternate translation: “it is a kiss you are using to betray the Son of Man!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

the Son of Man (ULT)
the Son of Man (UST)

Jesus is using this term to refer to himself. Alternate translation: “me, the Son of Man, with” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Son of Man
• Judas
• are you betraying
• with a kiss

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• Son of Man
• Judas
• in order to hand me over to my enemies
• will you really kiss me
Luke 22:49

those who were around Jesus (ULT)
what...them (UST)

This refers to Jesus’ disciples.

what was going to happen (ULT)
the...was happening (UST)

This refers to the priests and soldiers coming to arrest Jesus.

should we strike with the sword (ULT)
shall we strike...with our swords (UST)

The question is about the type of fight they should engage in (a sword fight), not what weapon they should use (the swords that they brought, Luke 22:38), but your translation may need to speak of the weapons they brought. Alternate translation: “fight against them with the swords we brought” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• the sword

Translation Words - UST

• Lord
• our swords
Luke 22:50

a certain one of them (ULT)
One of them...of (UST)

“one of the disciples”

struck...the servant of the high priest (ULT)
struck...the servant...high priest (UST)

“struck the servant of the high priest with a sword”

Translation Words - ULT

• high priest
• servant

Translation Words - UST

• high priest
• servant

ULT
50 Then a certain one of them struck the servant of the high priest, and cut off his right ear.

UST
50 One of them struck the servant of the high priest, but only cut off his right ear.
Luke 22:51

No more of this (ULT)
Do not do any more of that (UST)

“Do not do any more of that”

touching his ear, he healed him (ULT)
Then he touched the servant's ear...healed him (UST)

“Jesus touched the ear of the servant and healed him”

touching his ear (ULT)
Then he touched the servant's ear (UST)

“touched the servant where his ear had been cut off”

Translation Words - ULT

  • Jesus
  • he healed

Translation Words - UST

  • But Jesus said
  • healed

ULT

51 But Jesus answered and said, “No more of this!” Then touching his ear, he healed him.

UST

51 But Jesus said, “Do not do any more of that.” Then he touched the servant's ear and healed him.
Luke 22:52

Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs (ULT)

“Do you come out with swords and clubs because you think I am a robber?” Jesus uses this question to scold the Jewish leaders. Alternate translation: “You know that I am not a robber, yet you come out to me bringing swords and clubs.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- chief priests
- temple
- a robber
- elders
- swords
- as

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus
- high priest, chief priests
- temple
- thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits
- elder, older, old
- sword, swordsmen
- like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

ULT

52 Then Jesus said to those who had come out against him, chief priests, and captains of the temple, and elders, “Do you come out as against a robber, with swords and clubs?

UST

52-53 Then Jesus said to the chief priests, the officers of the temple guards, and the Jewish elders who had come to arrest him, “It is surprising that you have come here with swords and clubs to arrest me, as if I were a robber. For many days I was with you in the temple, but you did not try to arrest me at all! But this is the time you are doing what you want. It is also the time when Satan is doing the evil things as he wants to do.
Luke 22:53

When I was daily with you (ULT)

“I was among you every day”

in the temple (ULT)

Only priests entered the temple. Alternate translation: “in the temple courts” or “at the temple”

you did not lay your hands on me (ULT)

In this verse, to lay hands on someone is to arrest that person. Alternate translation: “arrest me” (See: Metonymy)

you...this...hour (ULT)

“this is the time for you to do whatever you want”

the authority of the darkness (ULT)

It may be helpful to repeat the reference to time. “Darkness” is a metonym for Satan. Alternate translation: “the time of the authority of darkness” or “the time when God is allowing Satan to do whatever he wants” (See: Ellipsis and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- authority
- temple
- hands
- darkness
- hour
- daily

Translation Words - UST

- authority
- temple
- hand
- darkness
- hour
- day
Luke 22:54

they led him away (ULT)
They brought him (UST)

“led Jesus away from the garden where they had arrested him”

into the house of the high priest (ULT)
to the high priest’s house (UST)

“into the courtyard of the high priest's house”

Translation Words - ULT
  • high priest
  • Peter
  • seizing
  • house

Translation Words - UST
  • high priest's
  • Peter
  • seized
  • house

ULT
54 Then seizing him, they led him away, and brought him into the house of the high priest. But Peter was following from a distance.

UST
54 They seized Jesus and led him away. They brought him to the high priest’s house, Peter followed them far behind.

after they had kindled...a fire (ULT)
The people lit...a fire (UST)

“some people had made a fire.” The fire was to keep the people warm during the cool night. Alternate translation: “some people started a fire to keep warm”

the middle of the courtyard (ULT)
middle of the courtyard (UST)

This was the courtyard at the high priest’s house. It had walls around it, but no roof.

in the midst of them (ULT)
among them (UST)

“together with them”

Translation Words - ULT

• Peter
• courtyard
• a fire

Translation Words - UST

• Peter
• courtyard
• a fire
Luke 22:56

as he sat in the light of the fire (ULT)
Peter sitting there as the fire shone...at (UST)

He sat near the fire and its line shone on him.

and looking straight at him, said (ULT)
She looked...him carefully and said (UST)

“and she looked straight at Peter and said to the other people in the courtyard”

and...at him...This man...was with (ULT)
him...and...This man was...with (UST)

The woman was telling the people about Peter being with Jesus. She probably did not know Peter's name.

Translation Words - ULT

• light of the fire
• a...female servant

Translation Words - UST

• there as...fire shone
• female servant
Luke 22:57

But he denied it (ULT)
But he denied it (UST)

“But Peter said that it was not true”

Woman, I do not know him (ULT)
Woman, I do not know him (UST)

Peter did not know the woman’s name. He was not insulting her by calling her “woman.” If people would think he was insulting her, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a woman he does not know, or you could leave out the word.

Translation Words - ULT

• I...know

Translation Words - UST

• I do...know
Luke 22:58

And... You are... one of them (ULT)
You also are one of... one of them (UST)

“You are also one of those who were with Jesus”

Man, I am not (ULT)
Man... am not (UST)

Peter did not know the man's name. He was not insulting him by calling him “Man.” If people would think he was insulting him, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a man he does not know, or you could leave out the word.

Translation Words - ULT

• Peter

Translation Words - UST

• Peter
Luke 22:59

insisted, saying (ULT)
said loudly (UST)

“said insistently” or “said loudly”

In truth...this one (ULT)
Certainly...this man (UST)

Here “this man” refers to Peter. The speaker probably did not know Peter’s name.

he is...a Galilean (ULT)
he is from...the region of Galilee (UST)

The man could probably tell Peter was from Galilee from the way he talked. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• truth
• a Galilean
• hour

Translation Words - UST

• Certainly
• the region of Galilee
• an hour
Luke 22:60

Man (ULT)
Man (UST)

Peter did not know the man's name. He was not insulting him by calling him "Man." If people would think he was insulting him, you could use a culturally acceptable way for a man to address a man he does not know, or you could leave out the word. See how you translated this in Luke 22:58.

I do not know what you are saying (ULT)
I do not know what you are talking about (UST)

“I do not know what you are talking about.” This expression means that Peter completely disagrees with the man. Alternate translation: “what you said is not true at all” or “what you said is completely false” (See: Idiom)

while he was still speaking (ULT)
while he was still speaking (UST)

“while Peter was speaking”

a rooster crowed (ULT)
a rooster crowed (UST)

Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the morning. See how you translated a similar phrase in Luke 22:34.

Translation Words - ULT

• Peter
• 1...know

Translation Words - UST

• Peter
• know

turning, the Lord looked at Peter (ULT)
The Lord Jesus turned around...looked right at Peter (UST)

“The Lord turned and looked at Peter”

corn the word of the Lord
what Jesus had said when Jesus had said that Peter would betray Jesus

a rooster crows (ULT)
rooster crows (UST)

Roosters often crow just before the sun appears in the morning. See how you translated a similar phrase in Luke 22:34.

today (ULT)
This night (UST)

The Jewish day started at sundown and continued to the next evening. Jesus had spoken the previous evening about what would happen shortly before dawn or at dawn. Alternate translation: “tonight” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

you will deny me three times (ULT)
you will deny three times...you know me (UST)

“deny three times that you know me”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• Lord
• Peter
• Peter
• turning

Translation Words - UST

• The Lord Jesus
• Lord
• Peter
• Peter
• turned around

he went outside (ULT)
he went out of the courtyard (UST)

“Peter went out of the courtyard”

Translation Words - ULT
- and wept

Translation Words - UST
- and cried

ULT
62 So he went outside and wept bitterly.

UST
62 And he went out of the courtyard and cried with great sorrow.
Luke 22:63

the...guarding him mocked and beat him (ULT)
The men...were guarding...made fun of him...beat him (UST)

“who were guarding Jesus mocked and beat Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• mocked

Translation Words - UST

• made fun of
Luke 22:64

they put a cover over him (ULT)
They put a blindfold on him (UST)

“They covered his eyes so that he could not see”

Prophesy! Who is the one who hit you (ULT)
to him, “Show us that you are a prophet! Tell us who it
was that struck you (UST)

The guards did not believe that Jesus was a prophet. Rather, they
believed that a real prophet would know who hit him even if he could
not see. They called Jesus a prophet, but they were teasing him and
showing him why they did not think that he was a prophet. Alternate translation: “Prove that you are a prophet. Tell
us who hit you!” or “Hey prophet, who hit you?” (See: Irony)

Prophesy (ULT)
to him, “Show us that you are a prophet! Tell us (UST)

“Speak words from God!” The implied information is that God would have to tell Jesus who struck him since Jesus
was blindfolded and could not see. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Prophesy

Translation Words - UST

• to him, “Show us that you are a prophet! Tell us
They also spoke many other things to him, blaspheming him.

They said many other evil things about him, insulting him.

General Information:
It is now the next day and Jesus is brought before the council.

Now when it was day (ULT)
At dawn the next morning, many...In this group were the (UST)
“At dawn the next morning”

they led him into their council (ULT)
They took Jesus to the Jewish council chamber. There they said...him (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) “The elders had Jesus brought into the council” or 2) “The guards led Jesus into the council of the elders.”
Some languages may avoid saying who led him by using the pronoun “they” or by using a passive verb: “Jesus was led into the council” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• chief priests
• people
• gathered together
• elders
• day
• council

Translation Words - UST

• the men who taught the Jewish laws
• chief priests
• of...Jewish leaders
• gathered
• of...Jewish leaders
• dawn the next morning, many
• Jewish council chamber
Luke 22:67

saying (ULT)
If (UST)

A new sentence can be started here. Alternate translation: “The elders said to Jesus”

If you are the Christ, tell us (ULT)
If...you are the Messiah, tell us (UST)

“Tell us if you are the Christ”

If I tell you, you will certainly not believe (ULT)
If I say that I am he, you will not believe me (UST)

This is the first of two hypothetical statements by Jesus. It was a way for Jesus to respond without giving them a reason to say that he was guilty of blasphemy. Your language may have a way of indicating that the action has not actually happened. (See: Hypothetical Situations)

Translation Words - ULT  
• you will...believe
• Christ

Translation Words - UST  
• will...believe me
• Messiah
Luke 22:68

if...I ask you, you will certainly not answer (ULT)
If...I ask you what you think about the Messiah...you will not answer me (UST)

This is the second hypothetical statement. It was a way for Jesus to rebuke them without giving them a reason to convict him. These words, along with “If I tell you, you will not believe” (verse 67), show that Jesus did not believe that the council was really looking for the truth. Your language may have a way of indicating that the action has not actually happened. Jesus is saying that whether he speaks or asks them to speak, they will not respond correctly. (See: Hypothetical Situations)
Luke 22:69

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the council.

from now on (ULT)
from now on (UST)

“from this day” or “starting from today”

the Son of Man will be (ULT)
the Son of Man, will (UST)

Jesus uses this phrase to refer to himself. Alternate translation: “I, the Son of Man, will” (See: First, Second or Third Person)

seated at the right hand of the power of God (ULT)
I...be sitting next to almighty God and ruling (UST)

To sit at the “right hand of God” is a symbolic action of receiving great honor and authority from God. Alternate translation: “seated in the place of honor beside the power of God” (See: Symbolic Action)

of the power of God (ULT)
almighty God (UST)

“the all-powerful God.” Here “power” refers to his supreme authority. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- power
- the right hand
- Son of Man

Translation Words - UST

- God
- almighty
- and ruling
- Son of Man
Luke 22:70

Then are you the Son of God (ULT) so, are you...Son of God?” He (UST)

The council asked this question because they wanted Jesus to explicitly confirm their understanding that he was saying he was the Son of God. Alternate translation: “So when you said that, did you mean that you are the Son of God?” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the Son of God (ULT)
Son of God?” He (UST)

This is an important title for Jesus. (See: Translating Son and Father)

You are saying that I am (ULT) saying that you...Yes, it is just like you say (UST)

“Yes, it is just like you say”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Son of God

Translation Words - UST

- of God
- Son of God
Luke 22:71

What further need do we have of a witness (ULT) need any more people to testify against him (UST)

They use a question for emphasis. Alternate translation: “We have no further need for witnesses!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

we...have heard from his own mouth (ULT) have heard him say that he is equal to God (UST)

The phrase “his own mouth” refers to his speech. Alternate translation: “heard him say that he believes he is the Son of God” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
  • of a witness

Translation Words - UST
  • any...people to testify against him

ULT

71 And they said, “What further need do we have of a witness? For we ourselves have heard from his own mouth.”

22:43 [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verses 43 and 44.


UST

71 Then they said to each other, “We certainly do not need any more people to testify against him! We ourselves have heard him say that he is equal to God!”

22:43 [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verses 43 and 44.

Luke 23

Luke 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The ULT sets the last line of this chapter apart because it is more connected with chapter 24 than with chapter 23.

Special concepts in this chapter

Accuse

The chief priests and scribes accused Jesus of doing evil because they wanted Pilate to kill Jesus. But they were accusing him falsely, because Jesus had never done what they accused him of doing.

“The curtain of the temple was split in two”

The curtain in the temple was an important symbol that showed that people needed to have someone speak to God for them. They could not speak to God directly because all people are sinful and God hates sin. God split the curtain to show that Jesus' people can now speak to God directly because Jesus has paid for their sins.

The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried (Luke 23:53) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“I find no fault in this man”

Pilate was saying that he did not know of any reason why he should punish Jesus because Jesus had not broken any laws. Pilate was not saying that Jesus was perfect.
Luke 23:1

General Information:
Jesus is brought before Pilate.

the whole group of them (ULT)
Then the whole group (UST)
“All of the Jewish leaders” or “All the members of the Council”

rose up (ULT)
got up (UST)

“stood” or “stood to their feet”

before Pilate (ULT)
to Pilate, the Roman governor (UST)

To appear before someone means to enter into their authority. Alternate translation: “to be judged by Pilate” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT
• Pilate
• rose up

Translation Words - UST
• Pilate
• got up
Luke 23:2

We found (ULT) in front of Pilate: “We have seen (UST)
“We” refers only the Council members, and not to Pilate of any other people nearby. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

perverting our nation (ULT)
fellow causing trouble by telling lies to our people (UST)
“causing our people to do things that are not right” or “causing trouble by telling lies to our people”

forbidding...tribute...to give (ULT)
He has been telling them...not...taxes...pay (UST)
“telling them not to pay taxes”

to Caesar (ULT)
to Caesar, the Roman emperor (UST)

Caesar represents the Emperor of Rome. Alternate translation: “to the Emperor” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Christ
- to Caesar
- nation
- tribute
- a king
- to accuse
- perverting

Translation Words - UST

- the Messiah
- to Caesar, the Roman emperor
- people
- taxes
- a king
- They accused
- fellow causing trouble by telling lies
Luke 23:3

Then Pilate questioned him (ULT)
Pilate then asked him (UST)

“Pilate asked Jesus”

You say so (ULT)
you have asked me (UST)

Possible meanings are 1) by saying this, Jesus implied that he is the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: “Yes, as you said, I am” or “Yes. It is as you said” or 2) by saying this, Jesus was saying that Pilate, not Jesus, was the one calling him the King of the Jews. Alternate translation: “You yourself have said so” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jews
• King of the Jews
• Pilate
• King

Translation Words - UST

• Jews
• King of the Jews
• Pilate
• King
Luke 23:4

the...crowds (ULT)
the...crowd (UST)

large groups of people

I find no fault in this man (ULT)
to...This man is not guilty of any crime (UST)

“I do not find this man guilty of anything”

Translation Words - ULT

• fault
• chief priests
• Pilate

Translation Words - UST

• is not guilty of
• chief priests
• Pilate
Luke 23:5

He stirs up (ULT)
He is trying to get...riot (UST)

“causes trouble among”

all Judea, and beginning from Galilee, even to this place

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “all Judea. He began causing trouble in Galilee and now is causing trouble here”

Translation Words - ULT
• Judea
• Galilee
• teaching
• people

Translation Words - UST
• the region of Judea
• of Galilee
• He has been teaching his ideas
• people

ULT
5 But they were insisting, saying, “He stirs up the people, teaching throughout all Judea, and beginning from Galilee, even to here.”

UST
5 But they kept on accusing Jesus; they said, “He is trying to get the people to riot! He has been teaching his ideas throughout all the region of Judea. He started doing this in the region of Galilee and now he is doing it here, also!”

when...heard this (ULT)
heard their words (UST)

“heard that Jesus began to teach in Galilee”

he asked whether the man was a Galilean (ULT)
he asked, “Does this man come from the district of Galilee (UST)

Pilate wanted to know from which area Jesus came because he wanted to have a lower-ranking government official judge Jesus. If Jesus were from Galilee, Pilate could have Herod judge Jesus because Herod had authority over Galilee.

the man (ULT)
this man...the (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- Pilate
- a Galilean

Translation Words - UST

- Pilate
- come...district of Galilee

ULT
6 Now when Pilate heard this, he asked whether the man was a Galilean.

UST
6 When Pilate heard their words, he asked, “Does this man come from the district of Galilee?”
Luke 23:7

when he discovered (ULT)
Pilate learned (UST)

“Pilate found out”

he was under the authority of Herod (ULT)
Jesus was from Galilee, where Herod Antipas ruled, he sent (UST)

The passage does not state the implied fact that Herod was the ruler of Galilee. Alternate translation: “Jesus was under the authority of Herod because Herod ruled over Galilee” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he sent (ULT)
he sent (UST)

“Pilate sent”

who...was...him (ULT)
was...Jesus (UST)

This refers to Herod.

at...those days (ULT)
at that time (UST)

“at that time”

Translation Words - ULT

• authority
• of Herod
• Herod
• Jerusalem
• he sent
• days
• when he discovered

Translation Words - UST

• Galilee, where...ruled
• Herod Antipas
• Herod
• Jerusalem
• he sent
• time
• Pilate learned
Luke 23:8

he was very glad (ULT)
was very glad. He had been (UST)

“Herod was very glad”

he had wanted to see him (ULT)
to see...him...wanted (UST)

“Herod had wanted to see Jesus”

he had heard about him (ULT)
he was hearing many things about (UST)

“Herod had heard about Jesus”

he was hoping (ULT)
wanting (UST)

“Herod hoped”

to see some sign done by him (ULT)
to see him perform a miracle (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to see him perform some kind of miracle” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• sign
• he was hoping
• Herod
• time
• glad

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• a miracle
• wanting
• Herod
• time
• was very glad
Luke 23:9

Then he questioned him in many words (ULT)
So...asked Jesus many questions...to (UST)

“He asked Jesus a lot of questions”

answered him nothing (ULT)
Jesus did not reply...any of them (UST)

“did not reply” or “did not give Herod an answer”
Luke 23:10

stood...the...scribes (ULT)
stood near him...some experts in the Jewish laws (UST)

“the scribes were standing there”

violently accusing him (ULT)
accusing him very of all kinds of crimes (UST)

“severely accusing Jesus” or “accusing him of all kinds of crimes”

Translation Words - ULT

• scribes
• chief priests
• accusing

Translation Words - UST

• Jewish laws
• chief priests
• accusing

ULT
10 Now the chief priests and the scribes stood, violently accusing him.

UST
10 And the chief priests and some experts in the Jewish laws stood near him, accusing him very of all kinds of crimes.
Luke 23:11

Herod and his soldiers (ULT)
Herod...his soldiers...Jesus...on...to (UST)

“Herod and his soldiers”

Dressing him in elegant clothes (ULT)
They put expensive clothes...Herod sent (UST)

“put beautiful clothes on him.” The translation should not imply that this was done to honor or care for Jesus. They did it to mock Jesus and to make fun of him.

Translation Words - ULT

• Pilate
• Herod
• soldiers
• they sent...back
• mocked him
• Dressing him in...clothes

Translation Words - UST

• Pilate
• Herod
• soldiers
• back to
• made fun of
• They put expensive clothes

ULT

11 Then both Herod and his soldiers insulted him and mocked him. Dressing him in elegant clothes, they sent him back to Pilate.

UST

11 Then Herod and his soldiers made fun of Jesus. They put expensive clothes on him to pretend that he was a king. Then Herod sent him back to Pilate.
Luke 23:12

became...both Herod and Pilate...friends with each other on that day (ULT)
but...became...that...Herod and Pilate...each other...that very day...friends (UST)

The implied information is that they became friends because Herod appreciated Pilate allowing him to judge Jesus. Alternate translation: “Herod and Pilate became friends with each other that very day because Pilate had sent Jesus to Herod for judgment” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for previously there had been hostility between them (ULT)
Until...time...had been very hostile to...they (UST)

This information is enclosed in parentheses to show that it is background information. Use a format that your audience would understand. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Pilate
- Herod
- hostility
- day

Translation Words - UST

- Pilate
- Herod
- very hostile
- day

called together the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people

“called the chief priests and the rulers and the crowd of people to come meet together”

the people (ULT)
crowd that was still there (UST)

It is not likely that Pilate asked a crowd to come. The crowd was probably still there waiting to see what would happen to Jesus. Alternate translation: “the crowd that was still there” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- called together
- chief priests
- Pilate
- people
- rulers

Translation Words - UST

- gathered together
- chief priests
- Pilate
- crowd that was still there
- other Jewish leaders
Luke 23:14

this man (ULT)
this man...the (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

as perverting (ULT)
saying that he has been leading...to revolt...after (UST)

“saying that he”

having questioned him before you (ULT)
having examined him...you were listening (UST)

“I have questioned Jesus in your presence, and.” It is implied that they were witnesses to the proceedings. Alternate translation: “I have questioned Jesus with you here as witnesses, and” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

I...find no...in this man (ULT)
I...while...I do not think...guilty of (UST)

“do not think that he is guilty’

Translation Words - ULT

- fault
- people
- having questioned him
- what you are accusing
- as
- perverting

Translation Words - UST

- guilty of
- people
- having examined him
- any of...things you have told me about
- after
- saying that he has been leading...to revolt
Luke 23:15

Connecting Statement:

Pilate continues speaking to the Jewish leaders and to the crowd.

But neither did Herod (ULT)
Even Herod does not think he is (UST)

It may be helpful to add information that is not included in the short statement. Alternate translation: “Even Herod does not think he is guilty” or “Even Herod thinks he is innocent” (See: Ellipsis)

neither did Herod...for (ULT)
Herod does not think he is...I know this, because (UST)

“nor does Herod, because” or “nor does Herod. We know this because”

he sent...back...him...to us (ULT)
back to...he sent him...us without punishing...to (UST)

“Herod sent Jesus to return to us.” The word “us” refers to Pilate, his soldiers, and the priests and scribes, but not those who were listening to Pilate. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’)

nothing that is worthy of death has been done by him (ULT)
guilty...him...is...that this man does not deserve...die (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he has not done anything to deserve a death sentence” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- worthy
- Herod
- of death
- he sent...back

Translation Words - UST

- guilty
- Herod
- die
- back to
Luke 23:16

I will therefore punish him (ULT)
So I will tell my soldiers to whip him (UST)

Because Pilate had found no fault in Jesus he should have released him without punishment. It is not necessary to try to make this statement fit logically into the translation. Pilate punished Jesus, whom he knew to be innocent, only because he was afraid of the crowd.

Translation Words - ULT
  * I will...punish

Translation Words - UST
  * I will tell my soldiers to whip
Luke 23:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

17[1] [Now Pilate was obligated to release to the Jews one prisoner at the feast.]

UST

17[1] [(Pilate said this because he had to set free one prisoner at the Passover Celebration.)]
Luke 23:18

General Information:
Verse 19 tells us background information about who Barabbas is. (See: Background Information)

they cried out...all together (ULT)
crowd shouted...whole...together (UST)

“All the people in the crowd shouted”

Away with this man, but release (ULT)
Put this man to death (UST)

“They are asking him to have his soldiers kill Jesus. Alternate translation: “Take this man away and execute him! Release” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

release...to us (ULT)
to death...for us (UST)

“us” refers to the crowd only, and not to Pilate and his soldiers. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

Translation Words - ULT

• Barabbas
• they cried out

Translation Words - UST

• Set Barabbas free
• crowd shouted
Luke 23:19

He was...put into prison...for murder (ULT)
Now Barabbas was...in the...He was also a murderer. He was...prison (UST)

This is background information that Luke gives about who Barabbas was. (See: Background Information)

He was...put into prison (ULT)
Now Barabbas was...in the...He was...prison (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the Romans had put in prison" (See: Active or Passive)

a certain rebellion that happened in the city (ULT)
a man who had led some people...city to rebel against the Roman government...in (UST)

“trying to persuade the people of the city to rebel against the Roman government”

Translation Words - ULT

• prison
• rebellion

Translation Words - UST

• prison
• a man who had led some people...to rebel against...Roman government
Luke 23:20

again...addressed them (ULT)
again...tried to speak to...crowd (UST)

“spoke to them again” or “spoke again to the people in the crowd and to the religious rulers”

desiring to release Jesus (ULT)
wanted very much to set Jesus free...the (UST)

“because he wanted to set Jesus free”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• Pilate

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• Pilate
Luke 23:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Crucify
• crucify (2)
• shouted

Translation Words - UST

• Crucify
• Crucify him (2)
• kept on shouting

ULT
21 But they shouted, saying, “Crucify, crucify him.”

UST
21 But they kept on shouting, saying, “Crucify him! Crucify him!”
Luke 23:22

Then he said to them a third time (ULT)
Pilate spoke to them a third time and asked them...has he committed? He (UST)

“Pilate said to the crowd again, for the third time” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

what...evil has this man done (ULT)
Why? What...crime...has done...he (UST)

Pilate uses this question to cause the crowd to understand that Jesus is innocent. Alternate translation: “this man has not done anything wrong!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

I have found no fault deserving death in him (ULT)
nothing...which...deserves to die...him (UST)

“He has done nothing for which he deserves to die”

after punishing...him, I will release him (ULT)
I will have my soldiers whip...set him free (UST)

As in Luke 23:16, Pilate should have released Jesus without punishment because he was innocent. However, he offered to punish Jesus to appease the crowd.

I will release him (ULT)
set...free (UST)

“I will set him free”

Translation Words - ULT

• fault
• evil
• has...done
• deserving death
• after punishing

Translation Words - UST

• nothing...which...deserves...die
• crime
• has done
• nothing...which...deserves...die
• I will have my soldiers whip

ULT
22 Then he said to them a third time, “Why, what evil has this man done? I have found no fault deserving death in him. Therefore after punishing him, I will release him.”

UST
22 Pilate spoke to them a third time and asked them, “Why? What crime has he committed? He has done nothing for which he deserves to die. So I will have my soldiers whip him and then set him free.”
Luke 23:23

they...were insistent (ULT)
But...they kept insisting (UST)

“the crowd insisted”

with loud voices (ULT)
with loud voices (UST)

“with shouting”

for him to be crucified (ULT)
Jesus...die on a cross (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “for Pilate to have his soldiers crucify Jesus” (See: Active or Passive)

their voices prevailed (ULT)
Finally...they continued to shout so loudly, they persuaded Pilate (UST)

“The crowd kept shouting until they convinced Pilate”

Translation Words - ULT

• to be crucified
• with...voices
• voices

Translation Words - UST

• die on a cross
• voices
• continued to shout so loudly
Luke 23:24

to grant their demand (ULT)
to do what they requested (UST)

“to do what the crowd requested”

Translation Words - ULT
  • Pilate

Translation Words - UST
  • Pilate
Luke 23:25

But he released the one...whom they asked for (ULT)
So he set free the...who was...people (UST)

Pilate released Barrabas from prison. Alternate translation: “Pilate freed Barabbas, whom the crowd had asked be released”

who had been put in prison for rioting and murder (ULT)
man...in prison because he had fought against the government and murdered (UST)

This is background information about where Barrabas was at that time. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom the Romans had put in prison...murder” (See: Background Information)

But...the one...he handed over...Jesus...to their will (ULT)
So...the...soldiers to take Jesus and do what the crowd wanted (UST)

“Pilate commanded the soldiers to bring Jesus to them to do whatever the crowd wanted to do”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• prison
• rioting

Translation Words - UST

• soldiers to take Jesus and do what
• prison
• he had fought against the government
Luke 23:26

as they led him away (ULT)
in Africa. He was...As the soldiers were leading Jesus away (UST)

“While the soldiers led Jesus away from where Pilate was”

they seized (ULT)
they grabbed hold (UST)

The Roman soldiers had the authority to compel people to carry their loads. Do not translate this in a way that indicates that Simon was arrested or had done anything wrong.

a certain Simon of Cyrene (ULT)
Now there was a man named Simon, who was from the city of Cyrene (UST)

“a man named Simon, from the city of Cyrene” (See: How to Translate Names)

coming from the country (ULT)
coming into Jerusalem from the countryside (UST)

“who was coming into Jerusalem from the countryside”

putting the cross on him (ULT)
the cross that they had made him...they they put it on Simon's shoulders (UST)

“put the cross on his shoulders”

behind Jesus (ULT)
of Simon. They took from Jesus...They told him to carry it and follow behind Jesus (UST)

“and he followed behind Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• cross
• of Cyrene
• as

Translation Words - UST

• Simon. They took from Jesus
• cross
• from the city of Cyrene
• As
Luke 23:27

a great crowd (ULT)
a large crowd (UST)

“A large crowd”

a great crowd of the people, and of women (ULT)
a large crowd...many women (UST)

The woman were part of the large crowd, and not a separate crowd.

mourned for him (ULT)
wailing for him (UST)

“mourned for Jesus”

were following...him (ULT)
was following...Jesus. It had (UST)

This does not mean that they were Jesus' disciples. It simply means they were walking along behind him.

Translation Words - ULT

• people

Translation Words - UST

• many
Luke 23:28

turning...to them (ULT)
turned...to them (UST)

This indicates that Jesus turned to face the women and address them directly.

Daughters of Jerusalem (ULT)
You women of Jerusalem (UST)

The “daughter” of a city means the women of the city. This was not rude. It was a normal form of address to a group of women from one location. Alternate translation: “You women who are from Jerusalem”

do not weep for me, but weep for yourselves and for your children (ULT)
do not weep for me! Instead, weep because of what is going to happen to yourselves and your children (UST)

The person is a metonym for what happens to the person. Alternate translation: “do not weep about the bad things that will happen to me. Instead, weep because worse things will happen to you and to your children” or “you are weeping because bad things are happening to me, but you will weep even more when worse things happen to you and your children” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• children
• of Jerusalem
• turning
• weep
• weep (2)

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• children
• Jerusalem
• turned
• weep
• Instead, weep (2)
Luke 23:29

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes speaking to the crowd.

For see (ULT)
I want you to know that (UST)

This introduces the reason why the women of Jerusalem should weep for themselves.

days are coming (ULT)
there will soon be a time (UST)

“there will soon be a time”

in which they will say (ULT)
For...when people will say (UST)

“when people will say”

the barren (ULT)
the women who...never (UST)

“women who have not given birth to children”

the wombs that did not bear, and the breasts that did not nurse

These clauses are used to more fully describe “the barren.” Those women neither gave birth nor nursed children. It may be helpful to combine these together with “the barren.” Alternate translation: “the women who have never given birth to children or nursed babies”

they will say (ULT)
people will say (UST)

This can refer to either the Romans or the Jewish leaders, or no one in particular.

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed are
- barren
- wombs
- days
- bear

Translation Words - UST

- How fortunate are
- the women who...never
- the women who...never
- there will soon be a time
- have...given birth to children
Luke 23:30

Then (ULT)
Then (UST)
at that time
to the hills (ULT)
the hills (UST)

Words are left out to keep the phrase short. Alternate translation: “they will say to the hills” (See: Ellipsis)
Luke 23:31

For if they do these things while the tree is green, what will happen when it is dry (ULT)
If I have to die, even though I have nothing wrong, terrible things will certainly happen to people who deserve to die (UST)

Jesus uses a question to help the crowd understand that people are doing bad things now in good times, so certainly they will do worse things in the bad times in the future. Alternate translation: “You can see that they are doing these bad things while the tree is green, so you can be sure that they will do worse things when the tree is dry.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

The green tree is a metaphor for something that is good. If your language has a similar metaphor, you should use it here. (See: Metaphor)

The dry wood is a metaphor for something that will be useful only to burn. (See: Metaphor)
Luke 23:32

Now two other criminals, were also being led away with him to be put to death (ULT)
Two other men who were criminals were also walking to the place where they would die with Jesus (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The soldiers led away with Jesus two criminals to execute them also” (See: Active or Passive)

two other criminals (ULT)
Two other men who were criminals (UST)

“Two other men who were criminals” or “Two criminals.” Luke avoids saying "other criminals" because Jesus was innocent, even though he was treated as a criminal. Luke calls the other two men criminals, but not Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

• criminals

Translation Words - UST

• who were criminals
Luke 23:33

when they came (ULT)
When they came (UST)

The word “they” includes the soldiers, the criminals, and Jesus.

they crucified him (ULT)
they crucified Jesus by nailing him (UST)

“the Roman soldiers crucified Jesus”

one on his right and one on his left

“they crucified one criminal on Jesus’ right side and the other criminal on Jesus’ left side”

Translation Words - ULT

• is called
• they crucified
• The Skull
• criminals

Translation Words - UST

• named
• they crucified
• Skull
• criminals
Luke 23:34

they cast lots (ULT)
by gambling with something like dice, to decide which piece of clothing each one would get (UST)

The soldiers participated in a type of gambling. Alternate translation: “they gambled“

dividing up...his garments, they cast lots (ULT)
soldiers divided...this, because they do not really know whom they are doing this to.”] Then the...his clothes by gambling with something like dice, to decide which piece of clothing each one would get (UST)

“cast lots to decide who among the soldiers would take home each piece of Jesus’ clothing”

Translation Words - UST

• to decide which piece of clothing each one would get
• clothes

Translation Words - ULT

• lots
• garments
Luke 23:35

the people stood by (ULT)
Many people stood...Even the Jewish leaders (UST)

“The people were standing there”

Let him save (ULT)
should save (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

He saved others. Let him save himself (ULT)
saved other people...should save himself (UST)

Luke records the ironic words of the rulers. The only way Jesus could save others was by dying instead of saving himself. (See: Irony)

Let him save himself (ULT)
should save himself (UST)

“Jesus should be able to save himself.” They said this to mock Jesus. They did not believe he could save himself. Alternate translation: “We would like to see him prove who he is by saving himself from the cross”

the...chosen one (ULT)
Even the Jewish leaders...has really chosen him (UST)

“the one that God has chosen”

Translation Words - ULT

• He saved
• Let him save
• God
• chosen one
• Christ
• people
• rulers

Translation Words - UST

• saved
• should save
• God
• has really chosen him
• the Messiah
• Many people
• were mocking
Luke 23:36

ULT
36 Then the soldiers also ridiculed him, coming up and offering him vinegar,

UST
36 The soldiers also mocked him. They came up to him and offered him some sour wine.

“offering Jesus vinegar to drink.” Vinegar is a cheap drink that common people drink. The soldiers were mocking Jesus by giving a cheap drink to someone who claims to be a king.

Translation Words - ULT
• soldiers
• ridiculed

Translation Words - UST
• soldiers
• also mocked him
Luke 23:37

If you are the King of the Jews, save yourself (ULT) him, “If you are the King of the Jews, save yourself (UST)

The soldiers were mocking Jesus. Alternate translation: “We do not believe you are the King of the Jews, but if you are, prove us wrong by saving yourself” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- save
- Jews
- King of the Jews
- King

Translation Words - UST

- save
- Jews
- King of the Jews
- King
Luke 23:38

an inscription over him (ULT)
fastened on the cross above his head a sign that stated (UST)

“This is the King of the Jews (ULT)
This is the King of the Jews (UST)

The people who put this sign above Jesus were mocking him. They did not really think he was a king.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jews
• King of the Jews
• King

Translation Words - UST

• Jews
• King of the Jews
• King
Luke 23:39

insulted him (ULT)
on a cross also insulted Jesus (UST)

“insulted Jesus”

Are you not the Christ? Save yourself (ULT)
You are the Messiah, are you not...save yourself (UST)

The criminal uses a question to mock Jesus. Alternate translation:
“You claim to be the Christ. Save yourself” or “If you really were the Christ, you would save yourself” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Save yourself and us (ULT)
save yourself, and save us too (UST)

The criminal did not really think that Jesus could rescue them from the cross. (See: Irony)

Translation Words - ULT

• Save
• Christ
• insulted
• criminals

Translation Words - UST

• save
• Messiah
• on a cross also insulted
• criminals
Luke 23:40

the other rebuked him (ULT)
But the other criminal stopped...him...from speaking (UST)

“the other criminal rebuked him”

Do you not even fear God, since you are under the same condemnation (ULT)
should be afraid of God punishing you! They are punishing him and us in the same way (UST)

The criminal uses a question to scold the other criminal. Alternate translation: “You should fear God, because they are punishing you the same way they are punishing him” or “You must have no fear of God, since you mock him while you are hanging on a cross the same as he is” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

• fear
• God
• condemnation
• rebuked

Translation Words - UST

• be afraid
• God
• punishing
• But the other criminal stopped...from speaking
Luke 23:41

we rightly...we are receiving...we did (ULT)
We two...as we deserve...die. They are punishing us...the evil things...we did (UST)

These usages of “we” refer only to the two criminals, and not to Jesus or the other people. (See: First, Second or Third Person)

we rightly (ULT)
We two...as we deserve (UST)

“Truly we deserve this punishment”

this man (ULT)
this man (UST)

This refers to Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

• things worthy
• rightly
• we are receiving
• wrong

Translation Words - UST

• deserve
• as we deserve
• die. They are punishing us
• wrong
Luke 23:42

Then he said (ULT)
Then he said (UST)

“The criminal also said”

remember me (ULT)
please remember to save me (UST)

“think about me and treat me well”

when you come into your kingdom (ULT)
when you begin to rule as king (UST)

To “come into” a kingdom means to begin to rule. Alternate translation: “begin to rule as king” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• kingdom

Translation Words - UST

• to Jesus, “Jesus
• begin to rule...king
Luke 23:43

he said to him (ULT)
Jesus replied, “I want you (UST)

“Jesus said to the criminal”

Truly I say to you, today (ULT)
Jesus replied...I want you...know that today (UST)

“Truly” adds emphasis to what Jesus is saying. Alternate translation: “I want you to know that today”

paradise (ULT)
paradise (UST)

This is the place that righteous people go to when they die. Jesus was assuring the man that he would be with God and God would accept him. Alternate translation: “the place where the righteous people live” or “the place where people live well”

Translation Words - ULT

• Truly

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus replied...I want you
Luke 23:44

about the sixth hour (ULT)
about...noontime (UST)

“about noon.” This reflects the custom at the time of counting hours beginning with daybreak at 6 a.m.

darkness came over the whole land (ULT)
became dark over all the land...in the afternoon (UST)

“the entire land became dark”

until the ninth hour (ULT)
until three o’clock (UST)

“until 3 p.m.” This reflects the custom at the time of counting hours beginning with daybreak at 6 a.m.

Translation Words - ULT

• darkness
• the...hour
• the...hour

Translation Words - UST

• dark
• noontime
• three o’clock

ULT
44 Now it was already about the sixth hour, and darkness came over the whole land until the ninth hour.

UST
44 Then it was about noontime. But it became dark over all the land until three o’clock in the afternoon.
Luke 23:45

The sun was darkened (ULT)
There was no light from the sun (UST)

This does not refer to sundown. Rather, the light of the sun darkened during the middle of the day. Use a term to describe the sun becoming dark rather than the sun going down.

The...the curtain...temple (ULT)
the...And the thick curtain...closed off the most holy place...temple (UST)

“the curtain inside the temple.” This was the curtain that separated the most holy place from the rest of the temple.

Then the curtain of the temple was torn in two (ULT)
And the thick curtain that closed off the most holy place in the temple split into two pieces (UST)

“the curtain of the temple was torn into two pieces.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God tore the temple curtain into two pieces from the top to the bottom” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• temple
• was darkened
• curtain

Translation Words - UST

• temple
• There was no light from
• And the thick curtain...closed off...most holy place
Luke 23:46

crying out with a loud voice (ULT)
shouted loudly (UST)

“Shouting loudly.” It may be helpful to show how this is related to the events of the previous verses. Alternate translation: “When that happened, Jesus shouted loudly”

Father (ULT)
Father (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

into your hands I commit my spirit (ULT)
When that happened...I put my spirit into your care (UST)

“The phrase “into your hands” refers to God's care. Alternate translation: “I entrust my spirit to your care” or “I give my spirit to you, knowing you will care for it” (See: Metonymy)

Now having said this (ULT)
After...that, he stopped breathing...died (UST)

“After Jesus said this”

he breathed his last (ULT)
he stopped breathing...died (UST)

“Jesus died”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• spirit
• Father
• hands
• with a...voice
• I commit
• crying out

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• spirit
• Father
• care
• shouted
• I put
• shouted
Luke 23:47

the centurion (ULT)
centurion...the (UST)

This was the title for the Roman officer who was in charge of the other Roman soldiers. He supervised the crucifixion.

what happened (ULT)
the...what happened (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “all the things that had happened” (See: Active or Passive)

the...this...man...was righteous (ULT)
who was over the...this man has done nothing wrong (UST)

“this man did nothing wrong” or “this man did not do anything wrong”

Translation Words - ULT

• righteous
• God
• centurion
• he began glorifying

Translation Words - UST

• has done nothing wrong
• said...God
• centurion
• honored
Luke 23:48

And all the crowds who had come together for this spectacle, seeing the things that had happened, returned, beating their breasts.

When the crowd of people who had gathered to see these men die saw what actually happened, they returned to their homes, hitting their own chests to show that they were sorrowful.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “what had happened” (See: Active or Passive)

“returned to their homes beating”

This was a symbol of sorrow and regret. Alternate translation: “hitting their own chests to show that they were sorrowful” (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- returned

Translation Words - UST

- they returned to their homes
Luke 23:49

him...who followed (ULT)
including the...had come with him (UST)

“traveled with Jesus”

at a distance (ULT)
of...at a little distance away (UST)

“some distance away from Jesus”

these things (ULT)
everything happen (UST)

“what happened”

Translation Words - ULT

• Galilee
• who knew

Translation Words - UST

• region of Galilee
• acquaintances

ULT
49 But all those who knew him, and the women who followed him from Galilee, stood at a distance, watching these things.

UST
49 All of Jesus’ acquaintances, including the women who had come with him from the region of Galilee, stood at a little distance away and watched everything happen.
Luke 23:50

General Information:

Joseph asks Pilate for Jesus' body. These verses give us background information about who Joseph is. It may be helpful to reorder some of this information with a verse bridge, as the UST does. (See: Background Information and Verse Bridges)

Now there was a man (ULT)
There was a man named Joseph (UST)

The word “behold” alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: “There was a man who was” (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

a council member (ULT)
and he was a member of the Jewish Council (UST)

“The Jewish Council”

Translation Words - ULT

• righteous
• named
• good
• a council member

Translation Words - UST

• righteous
• There was a man named Joseph
• He was a good...a...man
• and he was a member of the Jewish Council
Luke 23:51

He did not agree with the council and their action (ULT)
But he had not agreed with the other Council members when they decided to kill Jesus and when they planned how to do it (UST)

What the decision was can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “with either the Council's decision to kill Jesus or with their action in killing him” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

He was from Arimathea (ULT)

Here “Judean town” means it was located in Judea. Alternate translation: “the town called Arimathea, which is in Judea” (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Jews
- God
- kingdom of God
- council
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- Jew, Jewish
- God
- God would send his king to begin to rule
- other Council members
- would send his king to begin to rule

ULT
51 (He did not agree with the council and their action.) He was from Arimathea, a city of the Jews, and he was waiting for the kingdom of God.

UST
51 But he had not agreed with the other Council members when they decided to kill Jesus and when they planned how to do it. He was waiting expectantly for the time when God would send his king to begin to rule.
Luke 23:52

He approached Pilate, asking for the body of Jesus (ULT)
Joseph went to Pilate and asked Pilate to permit him to take Jesus’ body to bury it. Pilate gave him permission (UST)

“This man went to Pilate and requested the body of Jesus, to bury it.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jesus
- body
- Pilate

Translation Words - UST

- Jesus
- body to bury it. Pilate gave him permission
- Pilate
Luke 23:53

he took it down (ULT)
he took...body down (UST)

“Joseph took Jesus' body from the cross”

wrapped it in a linen cloth (ULT)
Jesus...from the cross. He wrapped it in a linen cloth (UST)

“wrapped the body in a fine linen cloth.” This was the normal burial custom at that time.

that was cut in the rock (ULT)
someone had cut in a rock cliff (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which someone had cut in a rock cliff” (See: Active or Passive)

in which no one had yet been laid (ULT)
that...No one had ever put a body in it before (UST)

This can be translated as a new sentence. Alternate translation: “No one had ever before put a body in that tomb”

Translation Words - ULT

• a tomb

Translation Words - UST

• a burial chamber
Luke 23:54

the Day...of the Preparation (ULT)
day...It was the day...people got ready for the Jewish...of rest called (UST)

“the day when people got ready for the Jewish day of rest called the Sabbath”

the Sabbath was about to begin (ULT)
the Sabbath...It...soon going to be sunset, the start of the Sabbath (UST)

For the Jews, the day began at sunset. Alternate translation: “It was soon going to be sunset, the start of the Sabbath” (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

• the Sabbath
• the Day

Translation Words - UST

• the Sabbath
• day
Luke 23:55

who had come out of Galilee with him (ULT)
come with Jesus from the district of Galilee...were with him. They (UST)

“who had traveled with Jesus from the region of Galilee”

had followed...and saw the tomb and how his body was laid (ULT)
who had...saw the burial chamber, and they saw how the men laid Jesus’ body inside it (UST)

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “walked along behind Joseph and the men who were with him; the women saw the tomb and how the men laid Jesus’ body inside the tomb” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- body
- Galilee
- tomb

Translation Words - UST

- body
- district of Galilee
- burial chamber
Luke 23:56

they returned (ULT)

women went back to where they were staying in order (UST)

“The women went to the houses where the women were staying”

and prepared spices and ointments (ULT)
to get spices...ointments to put on Jesus' body (UST)

Because they had had no time to honor Jesus by putting fragrant spices and ointments on his body on the day he died, they were going to do it on the morning of the first day of the week. Alternate translation: “prepared spices and ointments to put on Jesus' body”

(See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they rested (ULT)

However, they did no work on (UST)

“the women did no work”

according to the commandment (ULT)
just as the Jewish law required (UST)

“according to the Jewish law” or “as the Jewish law required.” They were not allowed to prepare his body on the Sabbath according to the law.

Translation Words - ULT

• commandment
• Sabbath
• they returned
• they rested

Translation Words - UST

• Jewish law required
• the Sabbath
• women went back to where they were staying in order
• However, they did no work on
Luke 24

Luke 24 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The tomb

The tomb in which Jesus was buried (Luke 24:1) was the kind of tomb in which wealthy Jewish families buried their dead. It was an actual room cut into a rock. It had a flat place on one side where they could place the body after they had put oil and spices on it and wrapped it in cloth. Then they would roll a large rock in front of the tomb so no one could see inside or enter.

The faith of the women

Most of Luke's original readers would have thought of women as less important than men, but Luke carefully shows that some women loved Jesus very much and had more faith than the twelve disciples had.

Resurrection


Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Son of Man”

Jesus refers to himself as the “Son of Man” in this chapter (Luke 24:7). Your language may not allow people to speak of themselves as if they were speaking about someone else. (See: Son of Man, son of man and First, Second or Third Person)

“On the third day”

Jesus told his followers that he would become alive again “on the third day” (Luke 18:33). He died on a Friday afternoon (before sunset) and became alive again on a Sunday, so he became alive again “on the third day” because the Jews said that the day began and ended at sunset, and they counted any part of the day as a day. Friday was the first day, Saturday was the second day, and Sunday was the third day.

Two men in bright shining robes

Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John all wrote about angels in white clothing with the women at Jesus' tomb. Two of the authors called them men, but that is only because the angels were in human form. Two of the authors wrote about two angels, but the other two authors wrote about only one of them. It is best to translate each of these passages as it appears in the ULT without trying to make the passages all say exactly the same thing. (See: Matthew 28:1-2 and Mark 16:5 and Luke 24:4 and John 20:12)
Luke 24:1

General Information:

The women (Luke 23:55) return to the tomb with spices to put on Jesus’ body.

Now at early dawn on the first day of the week (ULT)
Before dawn on Sunday those...the...They (UST)

“Before dawn on Sunday” (See: Ordinal Numbers)

they came to the tomb (ULT)
women went to...burial chamber...with (UST)

“the women arrived at the tomb.” These were the women spoken of in Luke 23:55.

the tomb (ULT)
to...burial chamber (UST)

This tomb was cut in the rock of a cliff.

bringing...the spices (ULT)
took...them the spices (UST)

These were the same spices they prepared in Luke 23:56.

Translation Words - ULT

• tomb

Translation Words - UST

• to...burial chamber
Luke 24:2

they found...the stone (ULT)
When they arrived, they discovered...somebody...the stone (UST)

“They saw that the stone was“

the stone rolled away (ULT)
had rolled the stone (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that someone had rolled the stone" (See: Active or Passive)

the stone (ULT)
the stone (UST)

This was a large, cut, round stone big enough to completely block the doorway to the tomb. It required several men to roll it.

Translation Words - ULT

• tomb

Translation Words - UST

• entrance to the burial chamber

ULT
2 And they found the stone rolled away from the tomb.

UST
2 When they arrived, they discovered that somebody had rolled the stone away from the entrance to the burial chamber.
Luke 24:3

they did not find the body of the Lord Jesus (ULT)
the...the body of the Lord Jesus was not there (UST)

You can state explicitly that they did not find it because it was not there. Alternate translation: “the body of the Lord Jesus was not there” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord Jesus
• Lord
• body

Translation Words - UST

• of the Lord Jesus
• of the Lord
• body
Luke 24:4

General Information:
Two angels appear and begin speaking to the women.

And it happened that (ULT) did (UST)
This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Translation Words - ULT
• robes

Translation Words - UST
• wearing...clothes

ULT
4 And it happened that, while they were confused about this, then suddenly, two men stood by them in bright shining robes.

UST
4 They did not know what to think about that. Then suddenly two men stood by them wearing bright, shining clothes!
Luke 24:5

terrified...they became (ULT)
women were frightened...As they (UST)

“became afraid”

bowed down their faces to the ground (ULT)
bowed...down low to the ground, the (UST)

“bowed low to the ground.” This action expresses their humility and submission to the men. (See: Symbolic Action)

They said to them (ULT)
two men said to them (UST)

“the men said to the women”

Why do you seek the living among the dead (ULT)
The...You should not be looking for someone who is alive in a place where they bury dead people (UST)

The men use a question to mildly criticize the women for looking in a tomb for a living person. Alternate translation: “You are looking for a living person among dead people!” or “You should not be looking for someone who is alive in a place where they bury dead people!” (See: Rhetorical Question)

Why do you seek (ULT)
You should not be looking for someone (UST)

Here “you” is plural, referring to the women who came. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• living
• dead
• faces
• you seek
• ground
• terrified
• bowed down

Translation Words - UST

• who is alive
• dead
• down low
• be looking for someone
• ground
• women were frightened
• bowed
Luke 24:6

Connecting Statement:

The angels finish speaking to the women.

but has been raised (ULT)
he has been made alive again (UST)

“but he has been made alive again.” “Raised” here is an idiom for “caused to live again.” This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because God has made him alive again” (See: Active or Passive and Idiom)

Remember how (ULT)
Remember that (UST)

“Remember what”

to you (ULT)
with you (UST)

The word “you” is plural. It refers to the women and possibly the other disciples in addition. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• Galilee
• has been raised

Translation Words - UST

• Galilee
• he has been made alive again
Luke 24:7

that the Son of Man (ULT)
the...Son of Man...that (UST)

This is the beginning of an indirect quote. It can also be translated with a direct quote as in the UST. (See: Direct and Indirect Quotations)

the Son of Man...must be delivered up into the hands of sinful men and be crucified (ULT)
the...Son of Man...They will have to hand me...over to sinful men. They will kill me by nailing me to a cross. But (UST)

The phrase “must be” means this is something that would certainly happen because God had already decided that it would happen. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “it was necessary that they hand the Son of Man over to sinful men who would crucify him” (See: Active or Passive)

into the hands (ULT)
hand me...over to (UST)

Here “hands” refers to power or control. (See: Metonymy)

on the third day (ULT)
on the third day (UST)

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the “third day” because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• sinful
• be crucified
• Son of Man
• the hands
• rise again
• day

Translation Words - UST

• sinful
• They will kill me by nailing me to a cross
• Son of Man
• hand me...over to
• I will become alive again
• day
Luke 24:8

Connecting Statement:

The women go to tell the apostles about what they found at the tomb.

they remembered his words (ULT)
The women remembered...what Jesus had said to them (UST)

Here “words” refers to the statement that Jesus made. Alternate translation: “remembered what Jesus said” (See: Metonymy)
Luke 24:9

to the eleven and to all the rest

“the eleven apostles and all the rest of the disciples who were with them”

to the eleven (ULT)
went to the eleven apostles (UST)

This is Luke’s first reference to the eleven, because Judas left the twelve and betrayed Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

- eleven
- they reported
- tomb
- when they returned

Translation Words - UST

- eleven apostles
- told them what happened
- burial chamber
- So they left

ULT
9 and when they returned from the tomb, they reported all these things to the eleven and to all the rest.

UST
9 So they left the burial chamber and went to the eleven apostles and his other disciples and told them what happened.
Luke 24:10

Now (ULT)
were (UST)

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Luke gives the names of some of the women who came from the tomb and told the apostles what had happened there.

Translation Words - ULT
• apostles
• Mary...Magdalene

Translation Words - UST
• apostles
• from Magdala village...Mary

ULT
10 Now they were Mary Magdalene, and Joanna, and Mary the mother of James, and the other women with them, reporting these things to the apostles.

UST
10 The women who told these things to the apostles were Mary from Magdala village, Joanna, Mary the mother of James, and the other women who were with them.
Luke 24:11

But these words seemed like idle talk to the apostles (ULT)
But the apostles dismissed their words as nonsense (UST)

“But the apostles thought that what the women said was foolish talk”

Translation Words - ULT

- like

Translation Words - UST

- the apostles dismissed their words as nonsense
Luke 24:12

Peter, however (ULT)
However, Peter...He...but (UST)

This phrase contrasts Peter to the other apostles. He did not dismiss what the women said, but ran to the tomb to see for himself.

rose up (ULT)
got up (UST)

This is an idiom that means “began to act.” Whether Peter was sitting or standing when he decided to act is not important. Alternate translation: “started out” (See: Idiom)

stooping down (ULT)
stooped down (UST)

Peter had to bend over in order to see inside the tomb because tombs cut in solid rock were very low. Alternate translation: “bending himself at the waist”

only the linen cloths (ULT)
the linen (UST)

“only the linen cloths.” This refers to the clothes that had been wrapped around Jesus’ body when he was buried in Luke 23:53. It is implied that the body of Jesus was not there. Alternate translation: “the linen cloths in which Jesus’ body had been wrapped, but Jesus was not there” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

he went away to his home (ULT)
to...he went home (UST)

“went away to his home”

Translation Words - ULT

• Peter
• tomb
• rose up
• ran

Translation Words - UST

• However, Peter
• burial chamber anyway
• got up
• ran
Luke 24:13

General Information:

Two of the disciples are on their way to Emmaus. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

see (ULT)
That (UST)

The author uses this word to mark the beginning of a new event. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

two of them (ULT)
two of Jesus' disciples (UST)

“two of the disciples”

on that same day (ULT)
same day (UST)

“that same day.” This refers to the day when the women found the tomb to be empty.

Emmaus (ULT)
Emmaus (UST)

This is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

sixty stadia (ULT)
ten kilometers (UST)

“eleven kilometers.” A “stadium” was 185 meters. (See: Biblical Distance)

Translation Words - ULT

• was named
• Jerusalem
• day

Translation Words - UST

• named
• Jerusalem
• day
Luke 24:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
14 And they discussed with each other about all these things that had happened.

UST
14 They were talking with each other about all the things that had happened to Jesus.
Luke 24:15

And it happened that (ULT) they were (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. It starts with Jesus approaching them. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Jesus himself (ULT) those things, Jesus himself (UST)

The word “himself” emphasizes the fact that the very Jesus they were talking about actually appeared to them. So far the women had seen the angels, but no one had seen Jesus.

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus

Translation Words - UST

• those things, Jesus

ULT
15 And it happened that, while they discussed and questioned together, indeed Jesus himself approached and went with them.

UST
15 While they were talking and discussing those things, Jesus himself approached them and started walking with them.
Luke 24:16

eyes...their...eyes...were prevented from recognizing him (ULT)
But...God did not allow them to recognize him (UST)

“their eyes were kept from recognizing Jesus.” The men's ability to recognize Jesus is spoken of as their eyes' ability to recognize him. This can be stated in active form. It is most likely that it was God who prevented them from recognizing Jesus. Alternate translation: “something happened to them so they could not recognize him” or “God prevented them from recognizing him” (See: Synecdoche and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• from recognizing

Translation Words - UST

• to recognize
Luke 24:17

he said...to them (ULT)
Jesus said...to them (UST)

“Jesus said to the two men”

Translation Words - ULT
  • as you are walking

Translation Words - UST
  • you were walking

ULT
17 Then he said to them, “What are these words that you are exchanging with each other as you are walking?” So they stood there, looking sad.

UST
17 Jesus said to them, “What have you two been talking about while you were walking?” They stopped, and their faces looked very sad.
Luke 24:18

Cleopas (ULT)
One...them, whose name was Cleopas, said (UST)

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Are you alone visiting...in these days (ULT)
You must be the only person who is visiting...the events that...in recent days (UST)

Cleopas uses this question to show his surprise that this man appears not to know about the things that have happened in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “You must be the only person...days” (See: Rhetorical Question)

you (ULT)
You (UST)

Here “you” is singular. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• named
• Jerusalem
• days
• have...known

Translation Words - UST

• One...them, whose name was Cleopas, said
• Jerusalem
• recent days
• know

ULT
18 But one named Cleopas answered and said to him, “Are you alone visiting Jerusalem and have not known the things which have happened in it in these days?”

UST
18 One of them, whose name was Cleopas, said, “You must be the only person who is visiting Jerusalem who does not know the events that have happened there in recent days!”
Luke 24:19

What things (ULT)
events (UST)

“What things have happened?” or “What things have taken place?”

a prophet, mighty in deed and word before God and all the people

This means that God caused Jesus to be mighty and that the people saw that he was mighty. Alternate translation: “a prophet to whom God gave power to do and teach great things that were amazing to all the people”

Translation Words - ULT

• Jesus
• a prophet
• God
• deed
• Nazarene
• mighty
• people

Translation Words - UST

• Jesus
• was a prophet
• God
• to perform
• Nazareth
• enabled
• people thought he was wonderful
Luke 24:20

delivered him up (ULT)
handed...him over (UST)

“gave him over”

to be condemned to death and crucified him (ULT)
sentenced him to die, and they killed him by nailing him to a cross (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “in order for the governor to put Jesus to death by crucifying him” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- be condemned
- crucified
- chief priests
- rulers
- to death

Translation Words - UST

- sentenced him
- they killed...by nailing him to a cross
- chief priests
- leaders
- die
Luke 24:21

Connecting Statement:
The two men continue responding to Jesus.

the one who was going to redeem Israel (ULT)
the one who would free us Israelites from our enemies (UST)

The Romans ruled over the Jews. Alternate translation: “who would free the Israelites from our Roman enemies” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

But in addition to all these things (ULT)
does not seem possible now, because three (UST)

This introduces another reason why they believed Jesus would not free Israel. Alternate translation: “Now that does not seem possible because"

the third...day (ULT)
three...days (UST)

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the “third day” because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day. See how you translated this in Luke 24:7. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

since these things happened (ULT)
since he was killed (UST)

“since all the many actions that led up to the death of Jesus have taken place”

Translation Words - ULT

- to redeem
- Israel
- were hoping
- day

Translation Words - UST

- free...from our enemies
- us Israelites
- were hoping
- days
Luke 24:22

Connecting Statement:

The two men finish responding to Jesus.

But also (ULT)
In spite...this (UST)

This introduces another reason why it the men did not understand what was happening concerning Jesus.

among us (ULT)
of...from our group (UST)

“in our group”

having been...at the tomb (ULT)
they went...to the burial chamber (UST)

The women were the ones who were at the tomb.

Translation Words - ULT

• amazed
• tomb

Translation Words - UST

• amazed
• burial chamber
Luke 24:23

a vision of angels (ULT)
some angels in a vision (UST)

“angels in a vision”

Translation Words - ULT

• is alive
• of angels
• body
• a vision
• saying that

Translation Words - UST

• was alive
• some angels in
• body
• a vision
• said that

ULT

23 and not finding his body, they came saying that they had also seen a vision of angels who said that he is alive.

UST

23 but the body of Jesus was not there! They came back and said that they had seen some angels in a vision. The angels said that he was alive!
Luke 24:24

But they did not see him (ULT)
They saw...But they did not...Jesus (UST)

“they did not see Jesus”

Translation Words - ULT

• tomb
• as

Translation Words - UST

• burial chamber
• things were exactly

ULT

24 Then some of those with us went to the tomb and found it just as the women had indeed said. But they did not see him.”

UST

24 Then some of those who were with us went to the burial chamber. They saw that things were exactly as the women had reported. But they did not see Jesus.”
Luke 24:25

he said to them (ULT)
He said to them (UST)

Jesus is speaking to the two disciples.

slow of heart to believe (ULT)
slow...believe...the (UST)

Here “heart” is a metonym for a person’s mind. Alternate translation: “your minds are slow to believe” or “you are slow to believe” (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

• foolish men
• prophets
• heart
• to believe

Translation Words - UST

• You two foolish men! You are
• prophets
• believe
• believe

ULT

25 Then he said to them, “O foolish men and slow of heart to believe in all that the prophets have spoken!

UST

25 He said to them, “You two foolish men! You are so slow to believe all that the prophets have written about the Messiah!
Luke 24:26

Was it not necessary for the Christ to suffer these things, and to enter into his glory?

You should certainly have known that it was necessary that the Messiah should suffer all those things and die, and then enter his glorious home in heaven!

Jesus uses a question to remind the disciples about what the prophets said. Alternate translation: "It was necessary...glory." (See: Rhetorical Question)

to enter into his glory (ULT)
and then enter his glorious home in heaven (UST)

This refers to Jesus beginning to rule and to receive honor and glory.

Translation Words - ULT

• glory
• Christ
• to suffer

Translation Words - UST

• glorious home...heaven
• Messiah
• should suffer...die
Luke 24:27

**beginning from Moses (ULT)**

He started with what Moses wrote (UST)

Moses wrote the first books of the Bible. Alternate translation: “beginning with the writings of Moses” (See: Metonymy)

he interpreted to them (ULT)

then explained to them (UST)

“Jesus explained to them”

**Translation Words - ULT**

- prophets
- scriptures
- Moses
- he interpreted

**Translation Words - UST**

- prophets
- scriptures
- Moses wrote
- then explained

ULT

27 Then beginning from Moses and from all the prophets, he interpreted to them the things concerning himself in all the scriptures.

UST

27 Then he explained to them all the things that the prophets had written in the scriptures about himself. He started with what Moses wrote and then explained to them what all the other prophets wrote.
Luke 24:28

he acted as though he were going further (ULT)
He...indicated that he would go further (UST)

The two men understood from his actions that he was going on to another destination. Perhaps he kept walking on the road when they turned off to enter the gate into the village. There is no indication that Jesus deceived them with words.

ULT
28 Now they approached the village where they were going, and he acted as though he were going further.

UST
28 They came near to the village to which the two men were going. He indicated that he would go further,
Luke 24:29

they compelled him (ULT)
they urged him (UST)

You may need to make explicit what they compelled him to do. This is probably an exaggeration to show that they needed to speak with him for a long time before they could change his mind. The word “compel” means to use physical force, but it seems that they persuaded him using only words. Alternate translation: “they were able to persuade him to stay” (See: Hyperbole)

But…it is toward evening…the day is already over (ULT)
but…not to do…tonight, because it is late in the afternoon (UST)

The Jewish day ended at sundown.

he went in (ULT)
he went (UST)

“Jesus entered the house”

to stay with them (ULT)
in the house to stay with them (UST)

“stay with the two disciples”

Translation Words - ULT

• day

Translation Words - UST

• afternoon
Luke 24:30

And it happened that (ULT) When...and (UST)

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

the bread (ULT) some bread (UST)

This refers to bread made without yeast. It does not refer to food in general.

blessed it (ULT) thanked God for it (UST)

“gave thanks for it” or “thanked God for it”

Translation Words - ULT
  • blessed it
  • bread

Translation Words - UST
  • thanked God for it
  • some bread
Luke 24:31

Then their eyes were opened (ULT)
God enabled...to recognize...But immediately (UST)

Their “eyes” represent their understanding. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Then they understood” or “Then they realized” (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

they recognized him (ULT)
to recognize...him (UST)

“they recognized him.” These disciples had known him before his death.

their...he vanished from...sight (ULT)
God...them...he disappeared (UST)

This means that suddenly he was no longer there. It does not mean that he became invisible.

Translation Words - ULT

• they recognized

Translation Words - UST

• to recognize
Luke 24:32

Was not our heart burning...the scriptures (ULT)
we were walking along the...we started thinking...
something very, very good was going to happen,
although we did not know what. We should not stay...
the scriptures (UST)

They use a question to emphasize how amazed they were about their encounter with Jesus. The intense feelings they had while talking to Jesus are spoken of as if they were a fire burning inside them. Alternate translation: “Our hearts were burning...scriptures.”

(See: Metaphor and Rhetorical Question)

while...to us...he opened...the scriptures (ULT)
us and enabled us to understand the scriptures...that (UST)

Jesus did not open a book or scroll. “opened“ refers to their understanding. Alternate translation: “while he explained the scriptures to us“ or “while he enabled us to understand the scriptures“

Translation Words - ULT

• heart
• scriptures
• while

Translation Words - UST

• we started thinking...something very, very good...going to happen
• scriptures
• that
Luke 24:33

Connecting Statement:

The two men go to Jerusalem to the eleven disciples to tell them about Jesus.

So they rose up (ULT) immediately and returned...There...the (UST)

“They” refers to the two men.

they rose up (ULT) immediately...returned...There...the (UST)

“got up” or “stood up”

the eleven (ULT) eleven apostles (UST)

This refers to Jesus’ apostles. Judas was no longer included with them.

Translation Words - ULT

• eleven
• Jerusalem
• gathered together
• they rose up
• and returned
• hour

Translation Words - UST

• eleven apostles
• Jerusalem
• who had gathered together
• immediately...returned...There...the
• immediately...returned...There...the
• immediately...returned...There...the
Luke 24:34

saying (ULT)
They told (UST)

“and those people told the two men”

Translation Words - ULT

• Lord
• to Simon
• is risen

Translation Words - UST

• the Lord
• Simon
• has become alive again

ULT
34 saying, “The Lord is risen indeed, and has appeared to Simon.”

UST
34 They told those two men, “It is true that the Lord has become alive again, and he has appeared to Simon!”
Luke 24:35

“Then they told (ULT) 
Then...told...others what had happened...they (UST)

“So the two men told them”

the things that happened on the way (ULT) 
the...as...road (UST)

This refers to Jesus appearing to them while they were on their way to the village of Emmaus.

how he was made known to them (ULT) 
those two men...how they both recognized him (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “how they recognized Jesus” (See: Active or Passive)

on the...breaking of the bread (ULT) 
as...road...he broke some bread for them (UST)

“when Jesus broke the bread” or “when Jesus tore the bread”

Translation Words - ULT

• bread
• he was made known

Translation Words - UST

• bread for them
• they both recognized him

ULT

35 Then they told the things that happened on the way, and how he was made known to them in the breaking of the bread.

UST

35 Then those two men told the others what had happened as they were walking along the road. They also told them how they both recognized him as he broke some bread for them.
Luke 24:36

General Information:

Jesus appears to the disciples. When the two men previously arrived at the house where the Eleven were, Jesus was not with them.

he himself (ULT)
Jesus himself (UST)

The word “himself” focuses on Jesus and the surprise of Jesus actually appearing to them. Most of them had not seen him after his resurrection. (See: Reflexive Pronouns)

they...in the midst (ULT)
they...among (UST)

“among them”

Peace be to you (ULT)
May God give you peace (UST)

“May you have peace” or “May God give you peace!” The word “you” is plural. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

• Peace be

Translation Words - UST

• May God give...peace
Luke 24:37

But they were terrified (ULT)
They were startled and (UST)

―But‖ indicates a strong contrast. Jesus told them to be at peace, but they were very afraid instead.

they were terrified...and became very afraid (ULT)
They were startled and...They were startled and...afraid, because they thought that (UST)

―startled and afraid.‖ These two phrases mean about the same thing, and are used together to emphasize their fear. (See: Doublet)

thinking that they saw a spirit (ULT)
they thought that...they were seeing a ghost (UST)

―thought that they were seeing a ghost.‖ They did not yet truly understand that Jesus was really alive.

a spirit (ULT)
a ghost (UST)

Here it refers to the spirit of a dead person.

Translation Words - ULT

- very afraid
- a spirit
- they were terrified

Translation Words - UST

- afraid, because
- a ghost
- They were startled and
Luke 24:38

Why are you troubled (ULT)
You should not be alarmed (UST)

Jesus uses a question to comfort them. Alternate translation: “Do not be frightened.” (See: Rhetorical Question)

why do doubts arise in your heart (ULT)
you should not doubt that I am alive (UST)

Jesus uses a question to mildly rebuke them. Jesus was telling them not to doubt that he was alive. The word “heart” is a metonym for a persons’ mind. Alternate translation: “Do not doubt in your minds!” or “Stop doubting!” (See: Rhetorical Question and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT
  • heart
  • troubled

Translation Words - UST
  • doubt that I am alive
  • alarmed
Luke 24:39

See...and...Touch me...you see me having (ULT)
Look at...and...You can touch me...you see that I have (UST)

Jesus asks them to confirm by touch that he is not a ghost. It may be helpful to combine and reorder these two sentences. Alternate translation: “Touch me and feel that I have flesh and bones that a ghost would not have”

and...flesh...bones (ULT)
and...body...bodies (UST)

This is a way of referring to the physical body.

Translation Words - ULT

• flesh
• a spirit
• hands
• as

Translation Words - UST

• body...bodies
• really alive because ghosts
• hands
• as

ULT

39 See my hands and my feet, that it is I myself. Touch me and see. For a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me having."

UST

39 Look at the wounds in my hands and my feet! You can touch me and see my body. Then you can see that it is really I myself. You can tell that I am really alive because ghosts do not have bodies, as you see that I have!”
Luke 24:40

And...his hands...his feet (ULT)
After...his hands...his feet (UST)

It is understood that his hands and feet contained the nail marks from his crucifixion that would prove it was really Jesus. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “the wounds in his hands and his feet”

Translation Words - ULT

• hands

Translation Words - UST

• his hands
Luke 24:41

Now when they still could not believe it because of the joy (ULT)
They were joyful…but they still could hardly believe (UST)

“They were so full of joy that they still could not believe it was really true”

Translation Words - ULT

• when...could not believe it
• amazement
• joy

Translation Words - UST

• could hardly believe
• amazed
• They were joyful
Luke 24:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT
42 So they gave him a piece of a broiled fish,

UST
42 So they gave him a piece of broiled fish.
Luke 24:43

and ate it before them (ULT)
While they were watching...ate it (UST)

Jesus did this to prove that he had a physical body. Spirits would not be able to eat food. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

before them (ULT)
While they were watching (UST)

“in front of them” or “while they were watching”
Luke 24:44

while I was still with you (ULT)
you while I was with (UST)

“When I was with you before”

everything that was written...must be fulfilled...about me...the Psalms (ULT)
Everything...was written...the...all must be fulfilled...
about me...Psalms (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God would fulfill all that was written...Psalms” or “God would cause all that was written...Psalms to happen” (See: Active or Passive)

everything that was written about me in the law of Moses, and the prophets, and the Psalms (ULT)
Everything...was written about me in the Law of Moses, the writings of the Prophets, and in the Psalms (UST)

The words “law of Moses,” “the Prophets,” and “the Psalms” are proper names for parts of the Hebrew Bible. This can be stated in active form and using common nouns. Alternate translation: “all that Moses wrote in the law, all that the prophets wrote, and all that the writers of the Psalms wrote about me” (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• prophets
• law of Moses
• be fulfilled
• of Moses
• was written

Translation Words - UST

• of...Prophets
• the Law of Moses
• be fulfilled
• of Moses
• was written
Luke 24:45

Then he opened their minds to understand the scriptures (ULT)
Then he enabled them to understand the...in the scriptures (UST)

To “open the mind” is an idiom that means to enable someone to understand. Alternate translation: “Then he enabled them to understand the scriptures” (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

• scriptures
• minds
• to understand

Translation Words - UST

• scriptures
• to understand
• to understand

ULT
45 Then he opened their minds to understand the scriptures, and said to them,

UST
45 Then he enabled them to understand the things that had been written about him in the scriptures.
Luke 24:46

Thus...it has been written (ULT)
He said to them, “This is what you can read in... scriptures (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “This is what people long ago wrote” (See: Active or Passive)

rise again from the dead (ULT)
die...after that he would become alive again (UST)

In this verse, “to rise” is to come alive again. The words “from the dead” speak of all dead people together in the underworld.

on the third day (ULT)
but on the third day (UST)

The Jews counted any portion of a day as a day. Therefore, the day Jesus was raised was the “third day” because it followed the day of his burial and the Sabbath day. See how you translated this in Luke 24:7. (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

• Christ
• the dead
• rise again
• would suffer
• day
• it has been written

Translation Words - UST

• the Messiah
• die
• that he would become alive again
• would suffer
• day
• is what you can read in...scriptures
Luke 24:47

repentance for forgiveness of sins would be proclaimed in his name to all the nations (ULT)
those who believe in him must preach everywhere that people should turn...committing sin and turn to God, so that he would forgive their sins. The followers of the Messiah should preach that message because God sent them to...and then go and preach it to all people groups (UST)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Followers of the Christ should preach to people in all the nations that they need to repent and that they need God to forgive their sins through Jesus” (See: Active or Passive)

in his name (ULT)
those who believe in him...so that he would...The (UST)

His “name” here refers to his authority. Alternate translation: “by the Christ’s authority” (See: Metonymy)

all the nations (ULT)
followers of the Messiah should preach that message because God sent them...and then go and preach it to all people groups (UST)

“all the ethnic communities” or “all the people groups”

beginning from Jerusalem (ULT)
away from...do so. They wrote that they should start preaching it in Jerusalem (UST)

“starting in Jerusalem”

Translation Words - ULT

- of sins
- forgiveness
- name
- repentance
- Jerusalem
- would be proclaimed
- nations

Translation Words - UST

- their sins
- forgive
- those who believe...him
- everywhere that people should turn...committing sin and turn...God
- Jerusalem
- must preach
- people groups
Luke 24:48

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues speaking to the disciples.

You are witnesses (ULT)
You must tell people that you know that those...happened to me are true (UST)

“You are to tell others that what you saw about me is true.” The disciples had observed Jesus’ life, death and resurrection, and could describe to other people what he did.

Translation Words - ULT

• witnesses

Translation Words - UST

• You must tell people that...those...happened to me are true
Luke 24:49

I am sending upon you the promise of my Father (ULT)
I want you to know that I will send the Holy Spirit to you, as my Father promised...the (UST)

“I will give you what my Father promised to give you.” God had promised to give the Holy Spirit. The UST makes this explicit. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

of...Father (ULT)
Father...the (UST)

This is an important title for God. (See: Translating Son and Father)

you are clothed...with power (ULT)
God fills you with...power (UST)

God's power will cover them in the same way that clothes cover a person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you receive power” (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

from on high (ULT)
of...Holy Spirit (UST)

“from above” or “from God”

Translation Words - ULT

• with power
• Father
• promise
• am sending
• on high
• you are clothed

Translation Words - UST

• power
• Father
• promised
• want you to know that I will send
• Holy Spirit
• God fills you with
Luke 24:50

he led...out...them (ULT)
Jesus led...outside the city...them (UST)

“Jesus led the disciples outside the city”

lifting up his hands (ULT)
There he lifted up his hands (UST)

This was the action that priests performed when they blessed the people. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT
• he blessed
• Bethany
• hands

Translation Words - UST
• blessed
• the village of Bethany
• his hands
Luke 24:51

Now it happened that (ULT)
was (UST)

“It came about.” This introduces a new event in the story. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

while he was blessing them (ULT)
As he...doing that, he left them (UST)

“while Jesus was asking God to do good to them”

was carried up (ULT)
went up (UST)

Since Luke does not specify who carried Jesus up, we do not know if it was God himself or one or more angels. If your language would have to specify who did the carrying, it would be better to use “went” instead, as the UST does. (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• heaven
• was blessing

Translation Words - UST

• heaven
• doing
Luke 24:52

General Information:
These verses tell us about the ongoing actions of the disciples as the story ends. (See: End of Story)

they worshiped him (ULT)
they worshiped him (UST)
“the disciples worshiped Jesus”

and returned (ULT)
they returned (UST)
“and then returned”

Translation Words - ULT

- worshiped
- Jerusalem
- joy
- and returned

Translation Words - UST

- worshiped
- Jerusalem
- joyfully
- they returned
Luke 24:53

continually...in the temple (ULT)
Each day...went into...temple courtyard (UST)

This is an exaggeration to express that they went into the temple courtyard every day. (See: Hyperbole)

in the temple (ULT)
went into...temple courtyard (UST)

Only priests were allowed into the temple building. Alternate translation: “in the temple courtyard” (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

blessing God (ULT)
the...praising God (UST)

“praising God”

Translation Words - ULT

- blessing
- God
- temple

Translation Words - UST

- praising
- God
- temple courtyard
Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

**Description**

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, “I believe in the forgiveness of sin.” But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns “forgiveness” and “sin,” but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, “I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned,” using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

**Reason this is a translation issue**

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, “What is its weight?” could be expressed as “How much does it weigh?” or “How heavy is it?”

**Examples from the Bible**

- ...from *childhood* you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)
  
  The abstract noun “childhood” refers to when someone is a child.

- But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)
  
  The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

- Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)
  
  The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)
  
  The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

- He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)
  
  The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.
Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...from childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But being godly and content is very beneficial.
But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house have been saved...
Today God has saved the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them.

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)
This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

**Translation Strategies**

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
3. Use a different verb.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/fi/figs-order]]

Apostrophe

Definition
An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

Description
He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue
Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible
Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies
If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied
He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: “Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, ‘See, on you they will burn human bones.’” (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

He said this about the altar: “This is what Yahweh says about this altar. ‘See, they will burn people’s bones on it.’”

Mountains of Gilboa
, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on them
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

• Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

• When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
  • Explicit information is what the speaker states directly.
  • Implicit information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker’s message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is assumed knowledge.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be implicit information that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is implicit information that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But
Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all assumed knowledge.

An important piece of implicit information here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged because they did not repent.

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was assumed knowledge that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

...it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people he was speaking to knew that washing hands before eating was a tradition among the elders. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is implicit information that they wanted him to understand from what they said.
when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, “Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go.” Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, “Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.”

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you.

or:

At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc//en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]
Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day,” “that they had brought with them,” and “Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were”, rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “Peter was the best hunter in the village” and “it was his own pig.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

A writer may use background information

• To help their listeners be interested in the story
• To help their listeners understand something in the story
• To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
• To tell the setting of a story
• Setting includes:
  ◦ where the story takes place
  ◦ when the story takes place
  ◦ who is present when the story begins
  ◦ what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
• You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
• You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, “But some of the Pharisees said.”

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word “now” to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb “was” shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in “had done” shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.
Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.

"When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

Connecting Words and Phrases
Introduction of a New Event

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Metric Measure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>handbreadth</td>
<td>8 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>span</td>
<td>23 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cubit</td>
<td>46 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>“long” cubit</td>
<td>54 centimeters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stadia</td>
<td>185 meters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters”, readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter”, “45 centimeters”, or “50 centimeters”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.
Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.” (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.”

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.
“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: Luke 24:13)
Biblical Money

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit in OT</th>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Weight</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>daric</td>
<td>gold coin</td>
<td>8.4 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>various metals</td>
<td>11 grams</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>various metals</td>
<td>33 kilograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit in NT</th>
<th>Metal</th>
<th>Day's Wage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>denarius/denarii</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>drachma</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mite</td>
<td>copper coin</td>
<td>1/64 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>silver coin</td>
<td>4 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>silver</td>
<td>6,000 days</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.
The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.”

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

“The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins.”

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

“The one owed five hundred days’ wages, and the other owed fifty days’ wages.”

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

“The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii.²”

The footnotes would look like:

¹ five hundred days’s wages
² fifty day’s wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

“The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii.” (Luke 7:41 ULT)

¹ A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]]

Translate Unknowns

(Go back to: Luke 7:41; 10:35; 20:24; 21:2)
Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Liters</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>omer</td>
<td>2 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>ephah</td>
<td>22 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>homer</td>
<td>220 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>cor</td>
<td>220 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>seah</td>
<td>7.7 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dry</td>
<td>lethek</td>
<td>114.8 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>metrete</td>
<td>40 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>bath</td>
<td>22 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>hin</td>
<td>3.7 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>kab</td>
<td>1.23 liters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Liquid</td>
<td>log</td>
<td>0.31 liters</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.
When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa.”

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters.”

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters³.”

The footnotes would look like:

¹
²
³
When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.
(Go back to: Luke 16:6; 16:7)
Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Original Measure</th>
<th>Shekels</th>
<th>Grams</th>
<th>Kilograms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shekel</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>11 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bekah</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>5.7 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pim</td>
<td>2/3</td>
<td>7.6 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerah</td>
<td>1/20</td>
<td>0.57 grams</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mina</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>550 grams</td>
<td>1/2 kilogram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talent</td>
<td>3,000</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>34 kilograms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.
Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

“The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.”

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms.”

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds.”

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms).”

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.

1 This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/to/man/translate/translate-decimal]]
[[rc://en/to/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. Usually, we want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. Connecting Words and Phrases show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the underlined Connecting Words:

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Connecting Words or Phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after. Very often, the Connecting Words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Now I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word "now" connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a Connecting Word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context. Some languages do not use Connecting Words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using Connecting Words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how Connecting Words and Phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a Connecting Word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different Connecting Words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the
right Connecting Word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information simply click the colored word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause – a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.
- Simultaneous Clause – a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause – a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship – one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition – the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary to Fact Condition – a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship – a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship - a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, which is the result.
- Contrast Relationship – one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

The word “but” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word “then” introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, for we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. Instead, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God's servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).
General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” Immediately they left the nets and went after him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word “so”.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but

instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “but” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

Therefore
whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

*Because of that,* whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven.

*And* whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

(Go back to: Luke 12:2; 21:14)
**Direct and Indirect Quotations**

**Description**

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said “I” when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word “I” in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: “”.

- John said, “I do not know at what time I will arrive.”

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as “he” in the quotation and uses the word “would”, to replace the future tense indicated by “will”.

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

**Why this is a translation issue**

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

**Examples from the Bible**

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

```
He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)
```

- Indirect quote: He instructed him to tell no one,
- Direct quote: but told him, *Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...*

```
Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, “The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.” (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)
```

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, *The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, ‘Look here!’ or, ‘Look there!’ because the kingdom of God is among you.*
Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

He instructed him **to tell no one, but told him**, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

“(Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but **to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**”

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

**He instructed him, to tell no one**

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “**Tell no one. Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**”

You may also want to watch the video at [http://ufw.io/figs_quotations](http://ufw.io/figs_quotations).

(Next we recommend you learn about: **Quotes within Quotes**

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister who was very thankful.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary's from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister, who was very thankful.
  - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary's sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause any problem in translation.

- ... The curtain is to separate the holy place from the most holy place. (Exodus 26:33 ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

- A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to the woman who bore him. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.

This page answers the question: When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/fi/gs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/fi/gs-sentences]]
...for your righteous judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgements from his unrighteous judgements, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind whom I have created from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

I hate those who serve worthless idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT) - By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.

...for your righteous judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULT)

...for your judgments are good because they are righteous.

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17-18 ULT) - The phrase “who is ninety years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

Can Sarah bear a son even when she is ninety years old?

I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised (2 Samuel 22:4 ULT) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.

I will call on Yahweh, because he is worthy to be praised

(2) Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.
You are my Son, whom I love. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)

You are my Son. I love you and I am pleased with you. Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Double Negatives

(Go back to: Luke 9:31; 20:27)
Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “ nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “un happy,” “im possible,” and “use less.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)
And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)
Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence No vi a nadie is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

...in order not to be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULT)
This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.
Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

   For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)
   “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”
   ...in order not to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)
   “…so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

   Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)
   “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished...”

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

   “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about: [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

(Go back to: Luke 1:37; 7:6; 7:23; 8:17; 14:26; 14:27; 14:33; 18:30)
Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

- King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)
  
  The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

- ...he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)
  
  This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

- You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  
  This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

- ...as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)
  
  This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

- You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)
  
  “You have decided to prepare false things to say.”
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

- King David was old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

- “King David was very old.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

- …a lamb without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

- “…a lamb without any blemish at all...”

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor will sinners stand in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, for your comfort,...
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:
But if we are afflicted, we are afflicted for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, we are comforted for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, I want you to heal me so that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus...Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...May you receive grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

Different purposes for end of story information

• To summarize the story
• To give a comment about what happened in the story
• To connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
• To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
• To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
• To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know these things:

• That this information is ending the story
• What the purpose of the information is
• How the information is related to the story

Principles of translation

• Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
• Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
• If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples from the Bible

1. To summarize the story

   Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. In this way it happened that all of us came safely to land. (Acts 27:44 ULT)

1. To give a comment about what happened in the story

   Many who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways. (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

1. To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
Mary said, “My soul praises the Lord, and my spirit has rejoiced in God my savior…” Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house. (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

1. To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart. (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

1. To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

“Woe to you teachers of Jewish laws, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering.” After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, trying to trap him in his own words. (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so he did not say specifically what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order to be polite, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole”
“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)
Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since *I do not know a man*?” (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)
  
  “they found Saul and his sons *dead* on Mount Gilboa.”

Exclamations

Description
Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue
Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible
Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah”. The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word “Ah” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, “Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as “how” or “why”, even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God’s judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies
1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are”.
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied
(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are”.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)
“You are such a worthless person!”

**Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God are so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” (Mark 7:36 ULT)

“They were absolutely astonished, saying, **Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”

**Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Oh no, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

**Help,** Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

**How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULT)

“His judgments are so unsearchable and his ways are far beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, “Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, **Ah,** Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you”. The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us”, “our”, “ours”, and “ourselves”. Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we”, then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

…the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us”, they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)
When Jesus said “us”, he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

(Next we recommend you learn about:
When Masculine Words Include Women)

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “...Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.
Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s?

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like mine?

Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Can you thunder with a voice like me?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you
does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Forms of You

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The singular form refers to one person, and the plural form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a dual form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the formal form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the informal form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is the man who goes into his neighbor’s wife; the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples from the Bible

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
“Yahweh gives favor to the good man, but he condemns the man who makes evil plans.”
(Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse a man who refuses to sell them grain”

(3) Use the word “any, as in “any person” or “anyone.”

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse any man who refuses to sell them grain.”

(4) Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse men who refuse to sell them grain”

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse whoever refuses to sell them grain.”

Next we recommend you learn about:
When Masculine Words Include Women

(10) Next we recommend you learn about:
When Masculine Words Include Women

(2) People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse a man who refuses to sell them grain”

(3) People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse any man who refuses to sell them grain.”

(4) People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse men who refuse to sell them grain”

(5) People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

“People curse whoever refuses to sell them grain.”
**Hendiadys**

**Description**

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with "and," it is called "hendiadys." In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

...his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or a **glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ.** (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

**Examples from the Bible**

...for I will give you **words and wisdom...** (Luke 21:15 ULT)

"Words" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes "words."

...if you are willing and obedient... (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

**Translation Strategies**

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom
(Luke 21:15 ULT)
for I will give you wise words

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory
(1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)
that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own glorious kingdom.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

for I will give you words and wisdom
(Luke 21:15 ULT)
for I will give you words of wisdom.

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory
(1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)
that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom of glory.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

if you are willing
and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)
if you willingly obedient

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

if you are willing and obedient
(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)
The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."
if you obey willingly

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

while we look forward to receiving the blessed hope and appearing of the glory of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)
The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.
while we look forward to receiving what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing of Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior.

(Go back to: Luke 21:15)
How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

• Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
• Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
• Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
• Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)
Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

*Saul* was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that *Paul* and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

**Translation Strategies**

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the *Jordan* and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the *Jordan River* and came to the *city of Jericho*. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with *the tribe of the Amorites*

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *Herod* wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because *King Herod* wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him *Moses* and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him *Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)*, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called *Beerlahairoi*
...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named Paul

The footnote would look like:

[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)
[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.
Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
  1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
  2. The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
  3. The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses exaggeration. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

- They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULT)
- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.
- Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULT)
- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

- The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)
- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.
  And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)
- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean exactly “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)
Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed...
(Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
   
   The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

   (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

   The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.

2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.
   
   The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

   In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

   And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

   “And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

   The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

   Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
   or:
   Many of the country of Judea and many of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

   The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)
The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining...”; “What if the sun stopped shining...”; “Suppose the sun stopped shining...”; and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

"Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.
Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

**Hypothetical situations in the present**

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. *If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed.* (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

**Hypothetical situation in the future**

*Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved;* but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

**Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation**

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. *I wish that you were either cold or hot!* (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

**Translation Strategies**

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
• that something could be true now, but is not.
• that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
• that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
• that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

- I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULT)
- The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.
- Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULT)
- This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

- Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
- This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”
- the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)
This means, “The Israelites went out defiantly.”

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, “the one who helps me.”

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your flesh and bone.

...Look, we all belong to the same nation.

He resolutely set his face
to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

(Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter my house.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

“My eyes grow dim
from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my eyes out

Imperatives - Other Uses

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. In the Bible, sometimes imperative sentences have other uses.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 26, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, “Do not go down to Egypt; live in the land that I tell you to live in.” (Genesis 26:2 ULT)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. (In this context, the command “Be clean” means to “be healed” so that others around would know that it was safe to touch the man again.)

“I am willing. Be clean.” Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general second-person command, as in the ULT:

God said, “Let there be light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like, “light must be”.

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, “Be fruitful, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.”

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the condition under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen if they love wisdom.
...do not abandon wisdom and she will watch over you; 
love her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULT)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6 below is teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

Teach a child the way he should go, 
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.

Be clean. (Matthew 8:3 ULT)

“Let there be light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God blessed them and said to them, “There is now light” and there was light.

God blessed them and said to them, “My will for you is that you be fruitful, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. I want you to have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.” (Genesis 1:28 ULT)

(2) If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like “so” to show that what happened was a result of what was said.

God said, “Let there be light,” and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULT)

God said, “Let there be light,” so there was light.

God said, “I now cleanse you.”

(3) If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words “if” and “then.”

Teach a child the way he should go, 
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULT)

Translated as:

“If you teach a child the way he should go, 
then when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.”
(Go back to: Luke 5:13; 18:42)
Inclusive and Exclusive “We”

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an inclusive form that means “I and you” and an exclusive form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

Inclusive

...the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Exclusive

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULT)
In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

(Go back to: Luke 1:1; 2:15; 22:8)
Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a certain priest named Zechariah, from the division of Abijah. His wife was from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened after Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)
The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

**Translation Strategies**

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: “another time” or “someone.”
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

- Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

- There was a man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council. One night he came to Jesus and said...

- A man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council, came to Jesus and said...

- As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

- As he passed by, Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said...

- As he passed by, there was a man sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

- As he passed by, there was a tax collector sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

- Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began
to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and began to teach people again there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come.
Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are new participants. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are old participants.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus...This man came to Jesus at night time...

Jesus replied to him (John 3:1)

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as “This man” and “him” when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples from the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as “There was a man” in the example below. The phrase “There was” tells us that this man existed. The word “a” in “a man” tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah’s wife is simply referred to as “his wife”. This phrase shows her relationship to him.

There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. His wife was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun “his”, and his wife is referred to with the pronoun “she”.

His wife was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)
Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase “the woman”.

The angel of Yahweh appeared to the woman and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh... (Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

**Translation Strategies**

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement). (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.

There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).

There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

It happened when he

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.” (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who “he” refers to.

It happened when Jesus finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, “Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Joseph's master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

Joseph's master took him and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and he stayed there in the prison.
Next we recommend you learn about:
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else’s words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else’s belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, “People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.” (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of “righteous people,” he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

• If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

*How well you reject the commandment of God* so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus prays the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God’s commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee’s sin more obvious and startling.

“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshipping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

*Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; “the number of your days is so large!”* (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God’s questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.
Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and
that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the
Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how
far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other
strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not
found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal
meaning of the speaker’s words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God

You think that you are doing well when you reject God’s commandment so you may keep your
tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God’s commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people
to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call
sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your
tradition!

“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let
them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen
so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them
and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of
Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what
will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot
speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know
how they were fulfilled.
Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Litotes

(Go back to: Luke 7 General Notes; 10:21; 13:33; Notes; 22:64; 23:35; 23:39)
Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no”, “not”, “none”, and “never”. The opposite of “good” is “bad”. Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was very useful.

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a lot of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah, are not the least among the leaders of Judah, for from you will come a ruler who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a very important city.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the positive meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you did much good.”

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)
“Now when it became day, there was great excitement among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”
“Now when it became day, the soldiers were very concerned because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: Luke 1:33; 11:42; 12:6; 12:10)
Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything...
From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.

I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.

He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the Topic. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the Image to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the Idea that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the Point of Comparison.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The Topic, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The Image, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The Idea, the abstract concept or quality that the physical Image brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the Image and the Topic are similar. Often, the Idea of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the Idea himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical Image to apply an abstract Idea to the speaker's Topic.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a Topic, with at least one Point of Comparison (Idea) between the Topic and the Image. Often in metaphors, the Topic and the Image are explicitly stated, but the Idea is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the Topic and the Image and to figure out for themselves the Idea that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table leg”, “family tree”, “book leaf” (meaning a page in
a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

**Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors**

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going up,” “A highly intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going down,” and “I am feeling very low.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat up.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us go ahead with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You defend your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A flow of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

**Active Metaphors**

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
> (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,”  
> (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.
Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

**Purposes of Metaphor**

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

**Translation Principles**

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

**Examples from the Bible**

**Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you”, the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

**NOTE:** Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

**And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The **Topic(s)** are “we” and “you,” and the **Image(s)** are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The **Idea** being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**
Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the Idea) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the Idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)
We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay.

You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the Image, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.

(Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.

(5) If the target audience would not use that Image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay.

“You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the Topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.

(Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.
I will make you become fishers of men. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.
Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

* and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

* He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

• as a shorter way of referring to something
• to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonym, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

* The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. “Throne” is a metonym for “kingly authority,” “kingship,” or “reign.” This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

* Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

* ...who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word “wrath” or “anger” is a metonym for “punishment.” God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

“He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

“The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David.”
or:

“The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David.”

who warned you to flee from the wrath to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

“who warned you to flee from God’s coming punishment?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

- The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man”.

- He will not be rich; his wealth will not last... (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He”.

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

- The rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich”, and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

- The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

- Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

- The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)
The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.

Blessed are the meek...

...(Matthew 5:5 ULT)

Blessed are people who are meek...

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

- Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

- That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

- When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

- Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house \(100,000\) talents of gold, \(1,000,000\) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house \(100,000\) talents of gold, \(1,000,000\) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house \(one\) hundred thousand talents of gold, \(one\) million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house \(one\) hundred thousand \((100,000)\) talents of gold, \(one\) million \((1,000,000)\) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house \(one\) hundred thousand talents of gold, \(a\) thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house \(a\) great amount of gold \((100,000\ talents)\), \(ten\) times \(that\) amount of silver \((1,000,000\ talents)\), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The unfoldingWord® Literal Text (ULT) and the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived \(130\) years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived \(eight\) hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived \(930\) years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)
Next we recommend you learn about:

Ordinal Numbers
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, “Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.” (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

Before John was put in prison, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to open the scroll after breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams’ horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... 10 But Joshua commanded the people, saying, “Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.” (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams’ horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... 10 But Joshua had commanded the people, saying, “Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

8-10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, “Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.” Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

- Background Information
- Connecting Words and Phrases
- Introduction of a New Event
- Verse Bridges

(Go back to: Luke 3:21; 10:2; 10:34)
Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>four</td>
<td>fourth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ten</td>
<td>tenth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>one hundred</td>
<td>one hundredth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1,000</td>
<td>one thousand</td>
<td>one thousandth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeral</th>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Ordinal Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>one</td>
<td>first</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>two</td>
<td>second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>three</td>
<td>third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>five</td>
<td>fifth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>twelve</td>
<td>twelfth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row...
must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim,...another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.
Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and teaches in such a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

Then he also told them a parable. “Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?” (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See Translate Unknowns.)

2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”.

“. (Mark 4:21 ULT) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.
Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a high shelf.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and planted in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Jesus said to them, “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand”. (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. “Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand.” (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them.

He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

(2) Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.”

Parallelism

Description

In parallelism two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles’ letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God’s word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere, keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.
I lift up my voice to Yahweh, and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

**(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.**

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous, but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath, but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

**Translation Strategies**

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

**Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

**For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

**Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

1350 / 1953
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

You have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)
   “All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
   “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

- Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

- sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people:

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

- You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

- Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it:

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

- ...sin crouches
at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...even the winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.
Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language, so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples from the Bible

A good name is to be chosen over great riches, and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes, so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity, but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
2. If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
3. Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
4. Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

A good name is to be chosen over great riches, and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

- It is better to have a good name than to have great riches, and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.
- Wise people choose a good name over great riches, and favor over silver and gold.
- Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.
- Will riches really help you? I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

Like snow in summer

or rain in harvest,

so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)

- It is not natural for a cold wind to blow in the hot season or for it to rain in the harvest season; And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

Do not boast about tomorrow (Proverbs 27:1 ULT)

- Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

A generation that curses their father and does not bless their mother, that is a generation that is pure in their own eyes, but they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)

- People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous, and they do not turn away from their sin.

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I”, the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples from the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

- But Paul said, “I was born a Roman citizen.” (Acts 22:28 ULT)

Quotations with two layers

- Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

- Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

- Abraham said, “…I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, ‘He is my brother.’”’ “ (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

- They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’”’ ” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)
The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

**Translation Strategies**

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations.](#))

**Examples of Translation Strategies Applied**

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

   Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things

   But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor’s decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar.” (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

   Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner....I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, 'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?' But when Paul said, 'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,' I told the guard, 'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'"

2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

   Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, “I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, ‘At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'” (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

   Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, “I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them that at twilight they will eat meat, and in the morning they will be filled with bread. Then they will know that I am Yahweh their God.”

   They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’’” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

   They told him that a man had come to meet them who said to them, “Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him that Yahweh says this: ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’"
Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]

(See back to: Luke 19:31)
Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: "myself", "yourself", "himself", "herself", "itself", "ourselves", "yourselves", and "themselves". Other languages may have other ways to show this.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

- If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)
- Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

- Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULT)
- So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

- When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

- He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULT)
Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

- If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)
- “If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify. (John 11:55)

- “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

- He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)
- “It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

- “It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone”.

- When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself
“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again alone up the mountain."

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying in its own place.”

(John 6:15)

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

(John 20:6-7 ULT)

(Go back to: Luke 24:36)
Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, “Is this how you insult God's high priest?” (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.
And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, “Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?” If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed...

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

**Description**

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

**Purposes of Simile**

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

**Reasons this is a translation issue**

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

**Examples from the Bible**

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

**for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day**. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.
Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus’ disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

(Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings,

but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

(Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT)
See, I send you out among people who will want to harm you.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Statements - Other Uses

Description

Normally statements are used to give information. But sometimes they are used in the Bible for other functions.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use a statement for some of the functions that statements are used for in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Statements are normally used to give information. All of the sentences in John 1:6-8 below are statements, and their function is to give information.

There was a man who was sent from God, whose name was John. He came as a witness to testify about the light, that all might believe through him. John was not the light, but came that he might testify about the light. (John 1:6-8 ULT)

A statement can also be used as a command to tell someone what to do. In the examples below, the high priest used statements with the verb “will” to tell people what to do.

He commanded them, saying, “This is what you must do. A third of you who come on the Sabbath will keep watch over the king’s house, and a third will be at the Sur Gate, and a third at the gate behind the guardhouse.” (2 Kings 11:5 ULT)

A statement can also be used to give instructions. The speaker below was not just telling Joseph about something Joseph would do in the future; he was telling Joseph what he needed to do.

She will give birth to a son, and you will call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

A statement can also be used to make a request. The man with leprosy was not just saying what Jesus was able to do. He was also asking Jesus to heal him.

Behold, a leper came to him and bowed before him, saying, “Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean.” (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

A statement can also be used to perform something. By telling Adam that the ground was cursed because of him, God actually cursed it.

...cursed is the ground because of you; (Genesis 3:17 ULT)

By telling a man that his sins were forgiven, Jesus forgave the man's sins.

Seeing their faith, Jesus said to the paralyzed man, “Son, your sins are forgiven.” (Luke 2:5 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a sentence type that would express that function.
2. If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, add a sentence type that would express that function.
3. If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a verb form that would express that function.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a sentence type that would express that function.

- **She will give birth to a son, and** you will call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

The phrase “you will call his name Jesus” is an instruction. It can be translated using the sentence type of a normal instruction.

- **She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus, because he will save his people from their sins.**

(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, add a sentence type that would express that function.

- **Lord, if you are willing,** you can make me clean. (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

The function of “you can make me clean” is to make a request. In addition to the statement, a request can be added.

- **Lord, if you are willing, you can make me clean. Please do so.**
- **Lord, if you are willing, please make me clean. I know you can do so.**

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a verb form that would express that function.

- **She will give birth to a son, and** you will call his name Jesus, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

- **She will give birth to a son, and you must call his name Jesus,** for he will save his people from their sins.

**Son, your sins are forgiven.** Luke 2:5 ULT)

- **Son, I forgive your sins.**
- **Son, God has forgiven your sins.**

(Go back to: Luke 13:12)
Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

• In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
• In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)
   Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)
   Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41)
   Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)
   Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
   Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

*My soul* exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

*the Pharisees* said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...?" (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that *my hands* had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

"My soul
exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)

"I exalt the Lord."

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...*a representative of the Pharisees* said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that *my hands*
had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metonymy

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook a word for another that looked like it. Occasionally they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident, or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles have some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples from the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

10 See that you do not despise any of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. 11 [1]

[1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11. For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then every man went to his own house.... 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go your way; from now on sin no more.”] [2]

[2] The best earliest manuscripts do not have John 7:53-8:11

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

1. Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
2. Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.
14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand.  
15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him.  
It is what comes out of the person that defiles him.”[^1]

[^1] The best ancient copies omit v. 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(1) Translate the verses that the ULT does and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand.  
15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what  
comes out of the person that defiles him.”[^1]

[^1] The best ancient copies omit verse 16. *If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.*

(2) Translate the verses as another version does, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

14 He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand.  
15 There is nothing from outside of a person that can defile him when it enters into him. It is what  
comes out of the person that defiles him. 16 If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.”[^1]

[^1] Some ancient copies do not have verse 16.

(Go back to: Introduction to the Gospel of Luke)
Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins...will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)
People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.

.(Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

your sins...will be white like snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

your sins...will be white like milk your sins...will be white like the moon

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh.

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread
and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

- We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

- I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

- We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- to him who made great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

- to him who made the sun and the moon

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-transliterate]

How to Translate Names

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and...a voice came out of the heavens saying, “This is my beloved Son. I am very pleased with him.” (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

Jesus said, “I praise you Father, Lord of heaven and earth,...no one knows the Son except the Father, and no one knows the Father except the Son “ (Matthew 11:25-27 ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that “Father” and “Son” are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

Baptize them into the name of the Father, of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 28:19 ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal.

The Father loves the Son. (John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

I love the Father, I do what the Father commands me, just as he gave me the commandment. (John 14:31 ULT)

...no one knows who the Son is except the Father, and no one knows who the Father is except the Son. (Luke 10:22 ULT)

The terms "Father" and "Son" also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

Jesus said, “Father, glorify your Son so that the Son may glorify you...I glorified you on the earth,...Now Father, glorify me...with the glory that I had with you before the world was created.” (John 17:1-5 ULT)

But in these last days, he [God the Father] has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. It is through him that God also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory, the very character of his essence. He even holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3 ULT)

Jesus said to him, “I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, ‘Show us the Father’? (John 14:9 ULT)
Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human “father” and “son.” In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

1. Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
2. If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
3. If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

(See God the Father and Son of God pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating “Father” and “Son.”)

Verse Bridges

Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Examples from the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, Dishon, Ezer,
Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

1. If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in translationStudio.
Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

2 you must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3)

2-3 you must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:
[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-chapverse]

(Go back to: Luke 1:54; 2:4; 2:6; 23:50)
When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men”, “brothers” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says ‘brothers’ when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his”, but it is not limited to males.

A wise child makes his father rejoice but a foolish child brings grief to his mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

• In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
• In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples from the Bible

We want you to know, brothers, about the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but men and women.

Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24-26 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of men and women.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The underlined words below are specifically about men.

Moses said, ‘If a man dies, having no children, his brother must marry his wife and have a child for his brother.’ (Mark 22:24 ULT)
Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

1. Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
2. Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
3. Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

- The wise man dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16 ULT)
- “The wise person dies just like the fool dies.”
- “Wise people die just like fools die.”

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

- For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) - Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
- “For we do not want you to be ignorant, brothers and sisters, about the troubles we had in Asia.” (2 Corinthians 1:8)

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

- If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT) - English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, “he,” “himself,” and “his” to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, “they,” “themselves,” and “their” in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.
- “If people want to follow me, they must deny themselves, take up their cross, and follow me.”

(Go back to: Luke 6:26; 6:45; 11:32; 16:10; 17:2; 18:4)
Writing Styles

Description

There are different kinds or types of writing, and each type of writing has its own purpose. Because these purposes are different, the different kinds of writing are organized in different ways. They use different verbs, different kinds of sentences, and refer to the people and things that they write about in different ways. These differences help the reader to quickly know the purpose of the writing, and they work to communicate the author’s meaning in the best way.

Types of Writing

The following are four basic types of writing that exist in every language. Each type of writing has a different purpose.

- **Narrative** or **Parable** - tells a story or event
- **Explanatory** - explains facts or teaches principles
- **Procedural** - tells how to do something
- **Argumentative** - tries to persuade someone to do something

Why This Is a Translation Issue

Every language has its own way of organizing these different types of writing. You (the translator) must understand the type of writing that you are translating, understand how it is organized in the source language, and also know how your language organizes this kind of writing. You must put the writing into the form that your language uses for that type of writing so that people will understand it correctly. In every translation, the way that words, sentences, and paragraphs are arranged will affect how people will understand the message.

Writing Styles

The following are ways of writing that may combine with the four basic types above. These writing styles often present challenges in translation.

- **Poetry** - expresses ideas and feelings in a beautiful way
- **Proverbs** - briefly teaches a truth or gives wise advice
- **Symbolic Language** - uses symbols to represent things and events
- **Symbolic Prophecy** - uses symbolic language to show what will happen in the future
- **Hypothetical Situations** - tells about what would happen if something were real or expresses an emotion about something that is not real

Discourse Features

The differences between the different types of writing in a language can be called their discourse features. The purpose of a particular text will influence what kinds of discourse features are used. For example, in a narrative, discourse features would include:

- Telling about events that happen before and after other events
- Introducing people in the story
- Introducing new events in the story
- Conversation and the use of quotes
- Referring to people and things with nouns or pronouns
Languages have different ways of using these different discourse features. The translator will need to study the way his language does each of these things, so that his translation communicates the right message in a clear and natural way. Other types of writing have other discourse features.

Specific discourse topics

1. **Introduction of a New Event** - Phrases like “One day” or “It came about that” or “This is how it happened” or “Sometime after that” signal to the reader that a new event is about to be told.
2. **Introduction of New and Old Participants** - Languages have ways of introducing new people and of referring to those people again.
3. **Background Information** - An author may use background information for several reasons: 1) to add interest to the story, 2) to provide information that is important for understanding the story or 3) to explain why something in the story is important.
4. **Pronouns - When to Use Them** - Languages have patterns for how frequently to use pronouns. If that pattern is not followed, wrong meaning can result.
5. **End of Story** - Stories can end with various kinds of information. Languages have different ways of showing how that information is related to the story.
6. **Quotations and Quote Margins** - Languages have different ways of reporting what someone said.
7. **Connecting Words** - Languages have patterns for how to use connecting words (such as “and,” “but,” or “then”).

Next we recommend you learn about:

- Background Information
- Connecting Words and Phrases
- Introduction of a New Event
- Introduction of New and Old Participants
- Order of Events
- Proverbs
- Quotations and Quote Margins

(Go back to: Luke 18:2)
Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 09:15 God warned Moses and Aaron that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- 10:05 Pharaoh called Moses and Aaron and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- 13:09 God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- 13:11 So they (the Israelites) brought gold to Aaron and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- 14:07 They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and Aaron and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(Go back to: Luke 1:5)
Abel

Facts:

Abel was Adam and Eve's second son. He was Cain's younger brother.

- Abel was a shepherd.
- Abel sacrificed some of his animals as an offering to God.
- God was pleased with Abel and his offerings.
- Adam and Eve's firstborn son Cain murdered Abel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Genesis 04:02
- Genesis 04:09
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 23:35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1893, G6

(Go back to: Luke 11:51)
Abijah

Facts:
Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel’s sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Bible References: 1 Kings 15:03, 1 Samuel 08:1-3, 2 Chronicles 13:02, 2 Chronicles 13:19, Luke 01:05)

Word Data:
- Strong's: H29, G7

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)
abomination, abominable

Definition:
The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn't want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, false god, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 01:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

(Go back to: Luke 16:15)
Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:06 When Abram arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- 05:04 Then God changed Abram’s name to Abraham, which means “father of many.”
- 05:05 About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- 05:06 When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- 06:01 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- 06:04 After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- 21:02 God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H87, H85, G11

abyss, bottomless pit

Definition:
The term “abyss” refers to a very large, deep hole or chasm that has no bottom.

• In the Bible, “the abyss” is a place of punishment.
• For example, when Jesus commanded evil spirits to come out of a man, they begged him not to send them to the abyss.
• The word “abyss” could also be translated as “bottomless pit” or “deep chasm.”
• This term should be translated differently from “hades,” “sheol,” or “hell.”

(See Also: Hades, hell, punish)

Bible References:

• Luke 08:30-31
• Romans 10:07

Word Data:

• Strong’s: G12, G5421

(Go back to: Luke 8:31)
accuse, accused, accuser, accusation

Definition:

The terms "accuse" and "accusation" refer to blaming someone for doing something wrong. A person who accuses others is an "accuser."

- A false accusation is when a charge against someone is not true, as when Jesus was falsely accused of wrongdoing by the leaders of the Jews.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Satan is called "the accuser."

Bible References:

- Acts 19:40
- Hosea 04:04
- Jeremiah 02:9-11
- Luke 06:6-8
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3198, H6818, G1458, G2147, G2596, G2724

( Go back to: Luke 3:14; 6:7; 23:2; 23:10; 23:14)
Adam

Facts:
Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: death, descendant, Eve, image of God, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 02:14
- Genesis 03:17
- Genesis 05:01
- Genesis 11:05
- Luke 03:38
- Romans 05:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:09 Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- 01:10 This man's name was Adam. God planted a garden where Adam could live, and put him there to care for it.
- 01:12 Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be Adam's helper.
- 02:11 And God clothed Adam and Eve with animal skins.
- 02:12 So God sent Adam and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- 49:08 When Adam and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, G76

(Go back to: Luke 3:38)
Definition:
The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person's spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else's wife” or “being intimate with another person's spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else's spouse” or “being unfaithful to one's wife.” (See: euphemism)

(See also: commit, covenant, sexual immorality, sleep with, faithful)

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 04:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 05:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 02:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:06 “Do not commit adultery.”
- 28:02 Do not commit adultery.
- 34:07 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5003, H5004, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

(Go back to: Luke 16:18; 18:11; 18:20)
adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 7:30; 14:31; 23:51)
afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 7:21)
**age, aged**

**Definition:**

The term "age" refers to the number of years a person has lived. It also used to refer generally to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could also be translated as “era” or “number of years old” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “at a very old age” could be translated as “at many years old” or “when he was very old” or “when he had lived a very long time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 29:28
- 1 Corinthians 02:07
- Hebrews 06:05
- Job 05:26

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: G165, G1074

*(Go back to: Luke 1:33; 1:55; 16:8; 18:30; 20:34; 20:35)*
alien, foreign, foreigner

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 17:18)
**alms**

**Definition:**

The term “alms” refers to money, food, or other things that are given to help poor people.

- Often the giving of alms was seen by people as something that their religion required them to do in order to be righteous.
- Jesus said that giving alms should not be done publicly for the purpose of getting other people to notice.
- This term could be translated as “money” or “gifts to poor people” or “help for the poor.”

**Bible References:**

- Acts 03:1-3
- Matthew 06:01
- Matthew 06:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: G1654

*(Go back to: Luke 11:41; 12:33)*
altar

Definition:
An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the altar to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379
altar of incense, incense altar

Facts:

The altar of incense was a piece of furniture on which a priest would burn incense as an offering to God. It was also called the golden altar.

- The altar of incense was made of wood, and its top and sides were covered with gold. It was about a half meter long, a half meter wide, and one meter tall.
- At first it was kept in the tabernacle. Then it was kept in the temple.
- Every morning and evening a priest would burn incense on it.
- This can also be translated as “altar for burning incense” or “golden altar” or “incense burner” or “incense table.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: incense)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:11-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4196, H7004, G2368, G2379

(Go back to: Luke 1:11)
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marvelous, wonder, dumbfounded

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: miracle, sign)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:9-11
- Acts 09:20-22
- Galatians 01:06
- Mark 02:10-12
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 15:29-31
- Matthew 19:25

Word Data:


amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 05:19
- Jude 01:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 01:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H543, G281

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:
The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Andrew

Facts:

Andrew was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his closest disciples (later called apostles).

- Andrew's brother was Simon Peter. Both of them were fishermen.
- Peter and Andrew were fishing in the Sea of Galilee when Jesus called them to be his disciples.
- Before Peter and Andrew met Jesus, they had been disciples of John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, disciple, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 01:40
- Mark 01:17
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G406

(Go back to: Luke 6:14)
angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God's heavenly servant” or “God's spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 02:13
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 01:20
- Zechariah 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:12 God placed large, powerful angels at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- 22:03 The angel responded to Zechariah, “I was sent by God to bring you this good news.”
Suddenly, a shining angel appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The angel said, “Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you.”

Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God’s glory…

Then angels came and took care of Jesus.

Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an angel to strengthen him.

“I could ask the Father for an army of angels to defend me.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

anguish

Definition:
The term “anguish” refers to severe pain or distress.

- Anguish can be physical or emotional pain or distress.
- Often people who are in extreme anguish will show it in their face and behaviors.
- For example, a person in severe pain or anguish might grit his teeth or cry out.
- The term “anguish” could also be translated as “emotional distress” or “deep sorrow” or “severe pain.”

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 06:24
- Jeremiah 19:09
- Job 15:24
- Luke 16:24
- Psalms 116:3-4

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 16:24; 16:25)
Annas

Facts:
Annas was the Jewish high priest in Jerusalem for 10 years, from approximately AD 6 to AD 15. Then he was removed from the high priesthood by the Roman government, although he continued to be an influential leader among the Jews.

- Annas was father-in-law to Caiaphas, the official high priest during the ministry of Jesus.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Annas's son-in-law Caiaphas was the official high priest. Annas is also mentioned as a high priest, however, because he was a former high priest who still had power and authority over the people.
- During his trial before the Jewish leaders, Jesus was first brought to Annas for questioning.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: high priest, priest)

Bible References:
- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:22-24
- Luke 03:02

Word Data:
- Strong's: G452

(Go back to: Luke 3:2)
anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term "anoint" means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles "Messiah" (Hebrew) and "Christ" (Greek) mean "the Anointed (One)."
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "anoint" could be translated as "pour oil on" or "put oil on" or "consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on."
- To "be anointed" could be translated as "be consecrated with oil." or "be appointed" or "be consecrated."
- In some contexts the term "anoint" could be translated as "appoint."
- A phrase like "the anointed priest," could be translated as "the priest who was consecrated with oil" or "the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil."

(See also: Christ, consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, priest, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:20
- 1 John 02:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 04:27-28
- Amos 06:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 05:13-15

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 4:18; 7:38; 7:46)
apostle, apostleship

Definition:
The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 01:17-19
- Luke 09:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his apostles. The apostles traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:02** Judas was one of Jesus’ apostles. He was in charge of the apostles’ money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the apostles’ teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:08** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the apostles and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

(Go back to: Luke 6:13; 9:10; 11:49; 17:5; 22:14; 24:10)
**appoint, appointed**

**Definition:**

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.”
  That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God's “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

**Word Data:**


ark

Definition:
The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: ark of the covenant, basket)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 30:06
- Genesis 08:4-5
- Luke 17:27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

(Go back to: Luke 17:27)
armor, armory

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier's armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: faith, Holy Spirit, peace, save, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- Ephesians 06:11
- Jeremiah 51:3-4
- Luke 11:22
- Nehemiah 04:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

(See back to: Luke 11:22)
ash, ashes

Facts:
The term “ash” (or “ashes”) refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned.

- In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving. When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or put ashes on the head.
- Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
- An “ash heap” is a pile of ashes.
- Sometimes the word "dust" is used with the term "ashes" in the phrase, "dust and ashes." This phrase can be translated as "dust and ashes" or simply as "ashes."
- When translating “ashes,” use the word in the target language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.

(See also: fire, sackcloth)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 20:10
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Psalms 102:09
- Psalms 113:07

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H80, H665, H1854, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

(Go back to: Luke 9:5; 10:11; 10:13)
Asher

Facts:
Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called “Asher.”

• Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
• His name means “happy” or “blessed.”
• Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
• 1 Kings 04:16
• Ezekiel 48:1-3
• Genesis 30:13
• Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H836

(Go back to: Luke 2:36)
asleep, fall asleep, sleep, sleeper, sleepless

Definition:

These terms can have figurative meanings relating to death.

- To “sleep” or “be asleep” can be a metaphor meaning to “be dead.” (See: Metaphor)
- The expression “fall asleep” means start sleeping, or, figuratively, die.
- To “sleep with one's fathers” means to die, as one's ancestors have, or to be dead, as one's ancestors are.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “fall asleep” could be translated as to “suddenly become asleep” or to “start sleeping” or to “die,” depending on its meaning.
- Note: It is especially important to keep the figurative expression in contexts where the audience did not understand the meaning. For example, when Jesus told his disciples that Lazarus was “sleeping” they thought he meant that Lazarus was just sleeping naturally. In this context, it would not make sense to translate this as “he died.”
- Some project languages may have a different expression for death or dying which could be used if the expressions “sleep” and “asleep” do not make sense.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:27-29
- 1 Thessalonians 04:14
- Acts 07:60
- Daniel 12:02
- Psalms 044:23
- Romans 13:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H3462, H3463, H7290, H7901, H8139, H8142, H8153, H8639, G879, G1852, G1853, G2518, G2837, G5258

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

• In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
• Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

• In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

• Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
• When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
• The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: hyperbole)
• A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 08:14
• Acts 07:38
• Ezra 10:12-13
• Hebrews 12:22-24
• Leviticus 04:20-21
• Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

• Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(See also: Luke 5:15; 8:4; 22:66; 24:33)
astray, go astray, went astray, lead astray, stray

Definition:
The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: disobey, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:07
- 2 Timothy 03:13
- Exodus 23:4-5
- Ezekiel 48:10-12
- Matthew 18:13
- Matthew 24:05
- Psalms 058:03
- Psalms 119:110

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105, G5351

(Go back to: Luke 21:8; 23:2; 23:14)
authority

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, obey, power, ruler)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:10
- Esther 09:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 03:6-7
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 01:22
- Matthew 08:09
- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God's vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, just, righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G1556, G1557, G1558, G3709

(Go back to: Luke 18:3; 18:5; 18:7; 18:8; 21:22)
ax

Definition:

An ax is a tool used for cutting or chopping trees or wood.

- An ax usually has a long wooden handle with a large metal blade attached to the end.
- If your culture has a tool that is similar to an ax, the name of that tool could be used to translate “ax.”
- Other ways to translate this term could include “tree-cutting tool” or “wooden tool with blade” or “long-handled wood-chopping tool.”
- In one Old Testament event, the blade of an ax fell into a river, so it is best if the tool that is described has a blade that can come loose from the wooden handle.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:7-8
- 2 Kings 06:05
- Judges 09:48-49
- Luke 03:9
- Matthew 03:10
- Psalm 035:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1631, H4621, H7134, G513

(Go back to: Luke 3:9)
banquet

Definition:
A banquet is a large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as, "elaborate meal" or "important feast" or "multi-course meal."

Bible References:
- Daniel 05:10
- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Jeremiah 16:08
- Luke 05:29-32
- Song of Solomon 02:3-4

Word Data:
- Strong's: H4960, H4961, H8354, G1173, G1403

(Go back to: Luke 5:29; 14:13)
baptize, baptized, baptism

Definition:

In the New Testament, the terms “baptize” and “baptism” usually refer to ritually bathing a Christian with water to show that he has been cleansed from sin and has been united with Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- Christians have different views about how a person should be baptized with water. It is probably best to translate this term in a general way that allows for different ways of applying the water.
- Depending on the context, the term “baptize” could be translated as “purify,” “pour out on,” “plunge (or dip) into,” “wash.” For example, “baptize you with water” could be translated as, “plunge you into water.”
- The term “baptism” could be translated as “purification,” “a pouring out,” “a dipping,” “a cleansing.”
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: John (the Baptist), repent, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:38
- Acts 08:36
- Acts 09:18
- Acts 10:48
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:14
- Matthew 28:18-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:03 When people heard John's message, many of them repented from their sins, and John baptized them. Many religious leaders also came to be baptized by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins.
- 24:06 The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John.
- 24:07 John said to Jesus, “I am not worthy to baptize you. You should baptize me instead.”
- 42:10 So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- 43:12 About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the church at Jerusalem.
- 45:11 As Philip and the Ethiopian traveled, they came to some water. The Ethiopian said, “Look! There is some water! May I be baptized?”
- 46:05 Saul immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- 49:14 Jesus invites you to believe in him and be baptized.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G907

Barabbas

Facts:

Barabbas was a prisoner in Jerusalem at the time when Jesus was arrested.

- Barabbas was a criminal who had committed crimes of murder and rebellion against the Roman government.
- When Pontius Pilate offered to either release Barabbas or Jesus, the people chose Barabbas.
- So Pilate allowed Barabbas to go free, but condemned Jesus to be killed.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Pilate, Rome)

Bible References:

- John 18:40
- Luke 23:19
- Mark 15:07
- Matthew 27:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G912

(Go back to: Luke 23:18)
barren, dry

Definition:
To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:
- 1 Samuel 02:5
- Galatians 04:27
- Genesis 11:30
- Job 03:07

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7921, G692, G4723

(Go back to: Luke 1:7; 1:36; 23:29)
Bartholomew

Facts:

Bartholomew was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- Along with the other apostles, Bartholomew was sent out to preach the gospel and do miracles in Jesus’ name.
- He was also one of those who saw Jesus return to heaven.
- A few weeks after that, he was with the other apostles in Jerusalem at Pentecost when the Holy Spirit came upon them.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, good news, Holy Spirit, miracle, Pentecost, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G918

(Go back to: Luke 6:14)
**basket, basketfuls**

**Definition:**

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: ark, Moses, Nile River, Noah)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 11:33
- Acts 09:25
- Amos 08:01
- John 06:13-15
- Judges 06:19-20
- Matthew 14:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

(Go back to: Luke 9:17; 11:33)
bear, bearer, carry

Facts:

The term “bear” literally means “carry” something. There are also many figurative uses of this term.

- When speaking of a woman who will bear a child, this means “give birth to” a child.
- To “bear a burden” means to “experience difficult things.” These difficult things could include physical or emotional suffering.
- A common expression in the Bible is “bear fruit,” which means “produce fruit” or “have fruit.”
- The expression “bear witness” means “testify” or “report what one has seen or experienced.”
- The statement that “a son will not bear the iniquity of his father” means that he “will not be held responsible for” or “will not be punished for” his father’s sins.
- In general, this term could be translated as “carry” or “be responsible for” or “produce” or “have” or “endure,” depending on the context.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: burden, Elisha, endure, fruit, iniquity, report, sheep, strength, testimony, testimony)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 03:27

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H3201, H3205, H5375, H5445, H5449, H6030, H6509, H6779, G142, G430, G941, G1080, G1627, G2592, G3140, G4160, G4722, G4828, G5041, G5088, G5342, G5409, G5576

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 10:34)
Beelzebul

Facts:

Beelzebul is another name for Satan, or the devil. It is also sometimes spelled, “Beelzebub.”

- This name literally means “lord of flies” which means, “ruler over demons.” But it is best to translate this term close to the original spelling rather than translate the meaning.
- It could also be translated as “Beelzebul the devil” to make it clear who is being referred to.
- This name is related to the name of the false god “Baal-zebub” of Ekron.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, Ekron, Satan)

Bible References:

- Luke 11:15
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 12:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G954

(Go back to: Luke 11:15; 11:18; 11:19)
**beg, beggar, needy**

**Definition:**

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

**Bible References:**

- Luke 16:20
- Mark 06:56
- Matthew 14:36
- Psalm 045:12-13

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs.
- **29:08** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.’”
- **32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!”
- **32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus.
- **35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.”
- **44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

• To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
• To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

• To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
• When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
• The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
• To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

• The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
• The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

• In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
• A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

• To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
• To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
• Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
• This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
• Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
• The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
• Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
• The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: believe, apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, trust)
Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not believe him.
- **04:08** Abram believed God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he believed God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who believed in him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The believers there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the believers were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the believers.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became believers.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:09** Some believers who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus! It was at Antioch that believers in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the believers in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

beloved

Definition:
The term “beloved” is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term “beloved” literally means “loved (one)” or “(who is) loved.”
- God refers to Jesus as his “beloved Son.”
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as “beloved.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “loved” or “loved one” or “well-loved,” or “very dear.”
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as “my dear friend” or “my close friend.” In English it is natural to say “my dear friend, Paul” or “Paul, who is my dear friend.” Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word “beloved” comes from the word for God’s love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:14
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 John 04:07
- Mark 01:11
- Mark 12:06
- Revelation 20:09
- Romans 16:08
- Song of Solomon 01:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G27, G5207

(Go back to: Luke 3:22; 20:13)
Bethany

Facts:
The town of Bethany was located at the base of the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives, about 2 miles east of Jerusalem.

- Bethany was near the road that ran between Jerusalem and Jericho.
- Jesus often visited Bethany where his close friends Lazarus, Martha, and Mary lived.
- Bethany is especially known as the place where Jesus raised Lazarus from the dead.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jericho, Jerusalem, Lazarus, Martha, Mary (sister of Martha), Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- John 01:26-28
- Mark 11:01
- Matthew 21:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: G963

(Go back to: Luke 19:29; 24:50)
Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: Caleb, David, Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16
- John 07:42
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 02:16
- Ruth 01:02
- Ruth 01:21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem.
- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of Bethlehem.
- 23:04 Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- 23:06 “The Messiah, the Master, has been born in Bethlehem!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H376, H672, H1035, G965

(Go back to: Luke 2:4; 2:15)
**betray, betrayer**

**Definition:**

The term “betray” means to act in a way that deceives and harms someone. A “betrayer” is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

- Judas was “the betrayer” because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
- The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus’ unjust death.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “betray” could be translated as “deceive and cause harm to” or “turn over to the enemy” or “treat treacherously.”
- The term “betrayer” could be translated as “person who betrays” or “double dealer” or “traitor.”

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [apostle](#))

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:52
- John 06:64
- John 13:22
- Matthew 10:04
- Matthew 26:22

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **21:11** Other prophets foretold that those who killed the Messiah would gamble for his clothes and he would be **betrayed** by a friend. The prophet Zechariah foretold that the friend would be paid thirty silver coins as payment for **betraying** the Messiah.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to **betray** Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to **betray** Jesus.
- **38:06** Then Jesus said to the disciples, “One of you will **betray** me.” ᾧ ἐγὼ ὁ δίδωμι τό ψωμί ἐμύ με ὃς ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ διδωμι. “’” Jesus said, “The person to whom I give this piece of bread is the **betrayer**.”
- **38:13** When he returned the third time, Jesus said, “Wake up! My **betrayer** is here.”
- **38:14** Then Jesus said, “Judas, do you **betray** me with a kiss?”
- **39:08** Meanwhile, Judas, the **betrayer**, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H7411, G3860, G4273

**bind, bond, bound**

**Definition:**

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

**Bible References:**

- Leviticus 08:07

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Luke 8:29; 10:34; 13:16; 17:10)
blameless

Definition:
The term “blameless” literally means “without blame.” It is used to refer to a person who obeys God wholeheartedly, but it does not mean that the person is sinless.

- Abraham and Noah were considered blameless before God.
- A person who has a reputation for being “blameless” behaves in a way that honors God.
- According to one verse, a person who is blameless is “one who fears God and turns away from evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “with no fault to his character” or “completely obedient to God” or “avoiding sin” or “keeping away from evil.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:10
- 1 Thessalonians 03:11-13
- 2 Peter 03:14
- Colossians 01:22
- Genesis 17:1-2
- Philippians 02:15
- Philippians 03:06

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5352, H5355, H8535, G273, G274, G298, G299, G338, G410, G423

(Go back to: Luke 1:6)
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

• Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
• It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
• Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:
• To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
• Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 01:12-14
• Acts 06:11
• Acts 26:9-11
• James 02:5-7
• John 10:32-33
• Luke 12:10
• Mark 14:64
• Matthew 12:31
• Matthew 26:65
• Psalms 074:10

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

(Go back to: Luke 5:21; Notes; 12:10; 22:65; 23:39)
bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:07 God saw that it was good and he blessed them.
- 01:15 God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He blessed them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- 01:16 So God rested from all he had been doing. He blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- 04:04 “I will make your name great. I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be blessed because of you.”
- 04:07 Melchizedek blessed Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth bless Abram.”
- 07:03 Isaac wanted to give his blessing to Esau.
• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

**blood**

**Definition:**

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person's skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person's entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal's life to pay for people's sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **08:03** Before Joseph's brothers returned home, they tore Joseph's robe and dipped it in goat's blood.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had blood around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's blood.
- **13:09** The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131


1447 / 1953
Boaz

Facts:

Boaz was an Israelite man who lived during the time when there were judges ruled Israel. He married a Moabite woman named Ruth and became both the great grandfather of King David and an ancestor of Jesus Christ.

- He was a relative of an Israelite woman named Naomi who had returned to Israel after her husband and sons died in Moab.
- Boaz “redeemed” Naomi’s widowed daughter-in-law Ruth by marrying her and giving her a future with a husband and children.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Moab, redeem, Ruth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 2 Chronicles 03:17
- Luke 03:30-32
- Matthew 01:05
- Ruth 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1162

(Go back to: Luke 3:32)
Definition:
The term “body” literally refers to the physical body of a person or animal. This term is also used figuratively to refer to an object or whole group that has individual members.

- Often the term “body” refers to a dead person or animal. Sometimes this is referred to as a “dead body” or a “corpse.”
- When Jesus said to the disciples at his last Passover meal, “This (bread) is my body,” he was referring to his physical body that would be “broken” (killed) to pay for their sins.
- In the Bible, Christians as a group are referred to as the “body of Christ.”
- Just as a physical body has many parts, the “body of Christ” has many individual members.
- Each individual believer has a special function in the body of Christ to help the whole group work together to serve God and bring him glory.
- Jesus is also referred to as the “head” (leader) of the “body” of his believers. Just as a person’s head tells his body what to do, so Jesus is the one who guides and directs Christians as members of his “body.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The best way to translate this term would be with the word that is most commonly used to refer to a physical body in the project language. Make sure that the word used is not an offensive term.
- When referring collectively to believers, for some languages it may be more natural and accurate to say “spiritual body of Christ.”
- When Jesus says, “This is my body,” it is best to translate this literally, with a note to explain it if needed.
- Some languages may have a separate word when referring to a dead body, such as “corpse” for a person or “carcass” for an animal. Make sure the word used to translate this makes sense in the context and is acceptable.

(See also: head, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:12
- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- Ephesians 04:04
- Judges 14:08
- Numbers 06:6-8
- Psalm 031:09
- Romans 12:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H990, H1320, H1460, H1465, H1472, H1480, H1655, H3409, H4191, H5038, H5085, H5315, H6106, H6297, H7607, G4430, G4954, G4983, G5559

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: Luke 5:8; 5:12; 8:28; 8:41; 8:47; 17:16; 24:5)
bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

bridegroom

Definition:
In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the “Bridegroom” who will someday come for his “Bride,” the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

Bible References:
- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2860, G3566

(Go back to: Luke 5:34; 5:35)
brother

Definition:
The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:
A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:
- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: Luke 9:32; 11:46; 21:34)
**bury, buried, burial**

**Definition:**

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: Jericho, tomb)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(See back to: Luke 9:59; 9:60; 16:22)
Caesar

Facts:

The term “Caesar” was the name or title used by many of the rulers of the Roman Empire. In the Bible, this name refers to three different Roman rulers.

- The first Roman ruler named Caesar was “Caesar Augustus,” who was ruling during the time that Jesus was born.
- About thirty years later, at the time when John the Baptist was preaching, Tiberius Caesar was the ruler of the Roman Empire.
- Tiberius Caesar was still ruling Rome when Jesus told the people to pay Caesar what was due him and to give to God what is due him.
- When Paul appealed to Caesar, this referred to the Roman emperor, Nero, who also had the title “Caesar.”
- When “Caesar” is used by itself as a title, it can also be translated as: “the Emperor” or “the Roman Ruler.”
- In names such as Caesar Augustus or Tiberius Caesar, “Caesar” can be spelled close to the way a national language spells it.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: king, Paul, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:06
- Luke 02:01
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 12:13-15
- Matthew 22:17
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2541

(Go back to: Luke 2:1; 3:1; 20:22; 20:24; 20:25; 23:2)
Caiaphas

Facts:
Caiaphas was the high priest of Israel during the time of John the Baptist and Jesus.

- Caiaphas played a major role in the trial and condemnation of Jesus.
- The high priests Annas and Caiaphas were at the trial of Peter and John when they were arrested after healing a crippled man.
- Caiaphas is the one who said that it was better for one man to die for the whole nation than for the whole nation to perish. God caused him to say this as a prophecy about how Jesus would die to save his people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Annas, high priest)

Bible References:
- Acts 04:5-7
- John 18:12
- Luke 03:02
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:57-58

Word Data:
- Strong’s: G2533

(Go back to: Luke 3:2)
call, call out

Definition:
The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God's purpose for you” or “God's special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14
Word Data:


camel

Definition:
A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

• In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
• The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
• Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
• Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, clean)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 05:21
• 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
• Exodus 09:1-4
• Mark 10:25
• Matthew 03:04
• Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: Luke 18:25)
Capernaum

Facts:

Capernaum was a fishing village on the northwest shore of the Sea of Galilee.

• Jesus lived in Capernaum whenever he was teaching in Galilee.
• Several of his disciples were from Capernaum.
• Jesus also did many miracles in this city, including bringing a dead girl back to life.
• Capernaum was one of three cities that Jesus publicly rebuked because their people rejected him and did not believe his message. He warned them that God would punish them for their unbelief.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

• John 02:12
• Luke 04:31
• Luke 07:1
• Mark 01:21
• Mark 02:02
• Matthew 04:12-13
• Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

• Strong’s: G2584

(Go back to: Luke 4:23; 4:31; 7:1; 10:15)
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: Luke 4:18; 21:24)
**cast out, driving out, throw out**

**Definition:**

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”
- To “cast out” someone from a synagogue or church could be translated as “banish them” or “put them out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 07:17-19
- Mark 03:13-16
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 12:24
- Matthew 17:19-21

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

centurion

Definition:
A centurion was a Roman army officer who had a group of 100 soldiers under his command.

- This could also be translated with a term that means, “leader of a hundred men” or “army leader” or “officer in charge of a hundred.”
- One Roman centurion came to Jesus to request healing for his servant.
- The centurion in charge of Jesus' crucifixion was amazed when he witnessed how Jesus died.
- God sent a centurion to Peter so that Peter could explain to him the good news about Jesus.

(See also: Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 10:01
- Acts 27:01
- Acts 27:42-44
- Luke 07:04
- Mark 15:39
- Matthew 08:07
- Matthew 27:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1543, G2760

(Go back to: Luke 7 General Notes; 7:2; 7:6; 23:47)
chaff

Definition:
Chaff is a dry protective covering of a grain seed. The chaff is not good for food so people separate it from the seed and throw it away.

- Often, the chaff is separated from the seed by throwing the heads of grain up into the air. The wind blows the chaff away and the seed falls on the ground. This process is called “winnowing.”
- In the Bible, this term is also used figuratively to refer to evil people and evil, worthless things.

(See also: grain, wheat, winnow)

Bible References:
- Daniel 02:35
- Job 21:18
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12

Word Data:
- Strong's: H2842, H4671, H5784, H8401, G892

(Go back to: Luke 3:17)
chief

Definition:
The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: Luke 19:47)
children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term “child” (plural “children”) refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

• In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
• Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
• Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
• The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
• The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
  • children of the light
  • children of obedience
  • children of the devil
• This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as “children of God.”

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
• Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
• If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
• When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
• When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
• The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, seed, promise, son, spirit, believe, beloved)

Bible References:

• 1 John 02:28
• 3 John 01:04
• Galatians 04:19
• Genesis 45:11
• Joshua 08:34-35
• Nehemiah 05:05
• Acts 17:29
• Exodus 13:11-13
• Genesis 24:07
• Isaiah 41:8-9
• Job 05:25
• Luke 03:7
• Matthew 12:34

1467 / 1953
Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, 
H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, 
H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, 
G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, 
G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

20:31; 23:28)
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God's chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God's chosen One” or “God's specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 01:01
- Colossians 03:12
- Ephesians 01:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:07
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 08:33

Word Data:


**Christ, Messiah**

**Facts:**

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 05:1-3
- Acts 02:35
- Acts 05:40-42
- John 01:40-42
- John 03:27-28
- John 04:25
- Luke 02:10-12
- Matthew 01:16

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 17:07 The Messiah was God’s Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- 17:08 As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the Messiah came, almost 1,000 years.
- 21:01 From the very beginning, God planned to send the Messiah.
- 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own descendants.
- 21:05 The Messiah would start the New Covenant.
- 21:06 God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 43:07 “But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
• 43:09 “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
• 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
• 46:06 Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the Messiah.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision, uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This a figurative way of saying that these people are not God's people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.
- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God's people” or “rebellious like those who don't belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Abraham, covenant)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:11
- Genesis 17:14
- Exodus 12:48
- Leviticus 26:41
- Joshua 05:03
• Judges 15:18
• 2 Samuel 01:20
• Jeremiah 09:26
• Ezekiel 32:25
• Acts 10:44-45
• Acts 11:03
• Acts 15:01
• Acts 11:03
• Romans 02:27
• Galatians 05:03
• Ephesians 02:11
• Philippians 03:03
• Colossians 02:11
• Colossians 02:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 05:03 “You must **circumcise** every male in your family.”
• 05:05 That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H4135, H4139, H5243, H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564, G1986, G4059, G4061

*(Go back to: Luke 1:59; 2:21)*
cistern, well

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

• A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
• A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
• Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
• Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
• Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
• Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
• Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
• Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

• Ways to translate “well” could include “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
• The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
• These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: Jeremiah, prison, strife)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 11:17
• 2 Samuel 17:17-18
• Genesis 16:14
• Luke 14:4-6
• Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H875, H883, H953, H1360, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

(Go back to: Luke 14:5)
citizen, citizenship

Definition:

A citizen is someone who lives in a specific city, country, or kingdom. It especially refers to someone who is recognized officially as being a legal resident of that place.

- Depending on the context, this could also be translated as “inhabitant” or “official resident.”
- A citizen could live in a region that is part of a larger kingdom or empire that is governed by a king, emperor, or other ruler. For example, Paul was a citizen of the Roman Empire, which consisted of many different provinces; Paul lived in one of those provinces.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Jesus are called “citizens” of heaven in the sense that they will live there someday. Like a citizen of a country, Christians belong to God's kingdom.

(See: kingdom, Paul, province, Rome)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 03:03
- Luke 15:15
- Luke 19:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6440, G4175, G4177, G4847

(Go back to: Luke 15:15; 19:14)
city of David

Facts:

The term “city of David” is another name for both Jerusalem and Bethlehem.

  • Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
  • Bethlehem is where David was born.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, Bethlehem, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

  • 1 Kings 08:1-2
  • 2 Samuel 05:6-7
  • Isaiah 22:8-9
  • Luke 02:04
  • Nehemiah 03:14-15

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H1732, H5892, G1138, G4172

(Go back to: Luke 2:4; 2:11)
clean, wash

Definition:
The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29
Colossians 03:05
1 Thessalonians 04:07
James 04:08

Word Data:


clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed, garments

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- Luke 24:49

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H899, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2224, G2439, G2440, G4016, G4749, G5509

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:
The terms “comfort” and “comforter” refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a “comforter.”
- In the Old Testament, the term “comfort” is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression “comforter of Israel” referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the “Comforter” who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “comfort” could also be translated as, “ease the pain of” or “help (someone) overcome grief” or “encourage” or “console.”
- A phrase such as “our comfort” could be translated as “our encouragement” or “our consoling of (someone)” or “our help in times of grieving.”
- The term “comforter” could be translated as “person who comforts” or “someone who helps ease pain” or “person who encourages.”
- When the Holy Spirit is called “the Comforter” this could also be translated as “the Encourager” or “the Helper” or “the One who helps and guides.”
- The phrase “comforter of Israel” could be translated as, “the Messiah, who comforts Israel.”
- An expression like, “they have no comforter” could also be translated as, “No one has comforted them” or “There is no one to encourage or help them.”

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)
**command, commandment**

**Definition:**

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

**Translation Suggestions**

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

**Bible References:**

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

**Word Data:**


commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: adultery, faithful, promise, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 28:07
- 1 Peter 02:21-23
- Jeremiah 02:12-13
- Matthew 13:41
- Psalm 058:02

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 1:66; 12:48; 23:22; 23:46)
companion, fellow worker, friend

Facts:

The term “companion” refers to a person who goes with someone else or who is associated with someone else, such as in a friendship or marriage. The term “fellow worker” refers to someone who works with another person.

- Companions go through experiences together, share meals together, and support and encourage each other.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated with a word or phrase that means, “friend” or “fellow traveler” or “supporting-person who goes with” or “person who works with.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 37:16
- Hebrews 01:09
- Proverbs 02:17
- Psalms 038:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H251, H441, H2269, H2270, H2273, H2278, H3674, H3675, H4828, H7453, H7462, H7464, G2844, G3353, G4898, G4904

(Go back to: Luke 5:7)
compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

• The word “compassion” refers to caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
• The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.

Translation Suggestions:

• Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “deep caring” or “pity” or “helpful mercy.”
• The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

• Daniel 01:8-10
• Hosea 13:14
• James 05:9-11
• Jonah 04:1-3
• Mark 01:41
• Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

(Go back to: Luke 1:78; 7:13; 10:33; 15:20)
conceive, conception

Definition:
The terms “conceive” and “conception” usually refer to becoming pregnant with a child. It can also be used for animals that become pregnant.

- The phrase “conceive a child” could be translated as, “become pregnant” or some other term that is an acceptable way of referring to this.
- The related term “conception” could be translated as, “beginning of a pregnancy” or “moment of becoming pregnant.”
- These terms can also refer to creating something or thinking of something, such as an idea, a plan, or a task. Ways to translate this could include, “think of” or “plan” or “create,” depending on the context.
- Sometimes this term can be used figuratively as in, “when sin is conceived” which means “when sin is first thought of” or “at the very start of a sin” or “when a sin first begins.”

(See also: create, womb)

Bible References:
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Hosea 02:4-5
- Job 15:35
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 02:21

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H2029, H2030, H2032, H2232, H2254, H2803, H3179, G1080, G1722, G2845, G4815

(Go back to: Luke 1:24; 1:31; 1:36; 2:21)
condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms “condemn” and “condemnation” refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word “condemn” includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes “condemn” means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term “condemnation” refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “harshly judge” or “criticize falsely.”
- The phrase “condemn him” could be translated as, “judge that he is guilty” or “state that he must be punished for his sin.”
- The term “condemnation” could be translated as, “harsh judging” or “declaring to be guilty” or “punishment of guilt.”

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:20
- Job 09:29
- John 05:24
- Luke 06:37
- Matthew 12:07
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 034:22
- Romans 05:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G176, G843, G2607, G2613, G2631, G2632, G2633, G2917, G2919, G2920, G5272, G6048

(Go back to: Luke 6:37; 11:31; 11:32; 20:47; 24:20)
confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, testimony)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 2 John 01:7-8
- James 05:16
- Leviticus 05:5-6
- Matthew 03:4-6
- Nehemiah 01:6-7
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 038:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

(Go back to: Luke 12:8)
consume, devour

Definition:
The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 9:54)
cornerstone

Definition:
The term “cornerstone” refers to a large stone that has been specially cut and placed in the corner of the foundation of a building.

- All the other stones of the building are measured and placed in relation to the cornerstone.
- It is very important for the strength and stability of the whole structure.
- In the New Testament, the Assembly of believers is metaphorically compared to a building which has Jesus Christ as its “cornerstone.”
- In the same way that the cornerstone of a building supports and determines the position of the whole building, so Jesus Christ is the cornerstone on which the Assembly of believers is founded and supported.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cornerstone” could also be translated as “main building stone” or “foundation stone.”
- Consider whether the target language has a term for a part of a building's foundation that is the main support. If so, this term could be used.
- Another way to translate this would be, “a foundation stone used for the corner of a building.”
- It is important to keep the fact that this is a large stone, used as a solid and secure building material. If stones are not used for constructing buildings, there may be another word that could be used that means “large stone” (such as “boulder”) but it should also have the idea of being well-formed and made to fit.

Bible References:

- Acts 04:11
- Ephesians 02:20
- Matthew 21:42
- Psalms 118:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H6438, H7218, G204, G1137, G2776, G3037

(Go back to: Luke 20:17)
corrupt witness, false report, false testimony, false witness

Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:19
- Exodus 20:16
- Matthew 15:18-20
- Matthew 19:18-19
- Proverbs 14:5-6
- Psalms 027:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5707, H6030, H8650, H8267, G1965, G3144, G5571, G5575, G5576, G5577

(Go back to: Luke 18:20)
**corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved**

**Definition:**

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term to “corrupt” could be translated as to “influence to do evil” or to “cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: evil)

**Bible References:**

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Genesis 06:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 014:1

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: Luke 6:43; 12:33)
council

Definition:
A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means, “wise advice.”

(See also: assembly, counsel, Pharisee, law, priest, Sadducee, scribe)

Bible References:
- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 24:20
- John 03:02
- Luke 22:68
- Mark 13:09
- Matthew 05:22
- Matthew 26:59

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H4186, H5475, G1010, G4824, G4892

(Go back to: Luke 22:66; 23:50)
**court, courtyard**

**Definition:**

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh's dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, judge, king, tabernacle, temple)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:09
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 03:26
- Psalms 065:4

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G833, G4259

(Go back to: [Luke 22:55])
**covenant**

**Definition:**
In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: covenant, promise)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
Examples from the Bible stories:

• **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
• **05:04** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
• **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
• **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
• **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
• **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
• **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
• **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
• **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
• **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it.”
• **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

**Word Data:**

• Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

*(Go back to: Luke 1:72; Notes; 22:20)*
**cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox**

**Definition:**

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2:3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

**Word Data:**


create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means, “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as, “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase "Let all creation rejoice" means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 04:17-19
- Colossians 01:15
- Galatians 06:15
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G2041, G2602, G2675, G2936, G2937, G2939, G4160, G5480

(See also: God, good news, world)

(See also: Luke 11:50)
crime, criminal

Definition:

The term “crime” usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term “criminal” refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone's property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: thief)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:09
- Hosea 06:8-9
- Job 31:26-28
- Luke 23:32
- Matthew 27:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G2556, G2557, G4467

(Go back to: Luke 23:32; 23:33; 23:39)
**CROSS**

**Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: crucify, Rome)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 01:17
- Colossians 02:15
- Galatians 06:12
- John 19:18
- Luke 09:23
- Luke 23:26
- Matthew 10:38
- Philippians 02:08

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.
- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4716

(Go back to: Luke 9:23; 14:27; 23:26)
**crucify, crucified**

**Definition:**

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: cross, Rome)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:23
- Galatians 02:20-21
- Luke 23:34
- Matthew 20:17-19
- Matthew 27:23-24

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 39:11 But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him (Jesus)!”
- 39:12 Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus. He played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ.
- 40:01 After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die.
- 40:04 Jesus was crucified between two robbers.
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you crucified him!”
- 43:09 “You crucified this man, Jesus.”
- 44:08 Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

(Go back to: Luke 23:21; 23:23; 23:33; 24:7; 24:20)
cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: call, plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:


cure, cured, heal, healed, healing, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms "heal" and "cure" both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is "healed" or "cured" has been "made well" or "made healthy."
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: miracle)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:16
- Acts 08:06
- Luke 05:13
- Luke 06:19
- Luke 08:43
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 09:35
- Matthew 13:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:14 One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to heal him.
- 21:10 He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would heal sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk.
- 26:06 Jesus continued saying, "And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not heal any of them. He only healed the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel's enemies."
- 26:08 They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus healed them.
- 32:14 She had heard that Jesus had healed many sick people and thought, "I'm sure that if I can just touch Jesus' clothes, then I will be healed, too!"
- 44:03 Immediately, God healed the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God.
- 44:08 Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah."
- 49:02 Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:09 God said to the snake, “You are cursed!”
- 02:11 “Now the ground is cursed, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- 04:04 “I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you.”
- 39:07 Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God curse me if I know this man!”
- 50:16 Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 6:28)
**curtain**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, tabernacle, temple)

**Bible References:**

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 04:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 04:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

(Go back to: Luke 23:45)
cut off

Definition:
The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 3:9; 13:7; 13:9)
Cyrene

Facts:

Cyrene was a Greek city on the north coast of Africa on the Mediterranean Sea, directly south of the island of Crete.

- In New Testament times, both Jews and Christians lived in Cyrene.
- Cyrene is probably most well-known in the Bible as the home city of a man named Simon who carried the cross of Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Crete)

Bible References:

- Acts 11:19-21
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2956, G2957

(Go back to: Luke 23:26)
**darkness**

**Definition:**

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: Metaphor)
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, kingdom, light, redeem, righteous)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 01:06
- 1 John 02:08
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- 2 Samuel 22:12
- Colossians 01:13
- Isaiah 05:30
- Jeremiah 13:16
- Joshua 24:7
- Matthew 08:12

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

(See also: Luke 1:79; 11:34; 11:35; 11:36; 12:3; 22:53; 23:44; 23:45)
David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Goliath, Philistines, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 God chose a young Israelite named David to be king after Saul. David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:03 David was also a great soldier and leader. When David was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- 17:04 Saul became jealous of the people's love for David. Saul tried many times to kill him, so David hid from Saul.
- 17:05 God blessed David and made him successful. David fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 17:09 David ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was. David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, David followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:06
- Daniel 10:04
- Ezra 06:15
- Ezra 06:19
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh's declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 9:60; 22:22; 24:23)
decree, decreed

Definition:
The term "decree" means to give an order that must be obeyed. The order itself can also be called a "decree."

- A "decree" is similar to a "law," but is generally used more often to refer to something spoken rather than written.
- The term "decree" could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.

(See also: command, declare, law)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- Acts 17:5-7
- Daniel 02:13
- Esther 01:22
- Luke 02:01

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 2:1)
Delight

Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to "take pleasure in" or “take joy in” or “be happy about” it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:


(For back to: Luke 2:14; 3:22; 12:32)
demon, evil spirit, unclean spirit

Definition:

All these terms refer to demons, which are spirit beings that oppose God's will.

- God created angels to serve him. When the devil rebelled against God, some of the angels also rebelled and were thrown out of heaven. It is believed that demons and evil spirits are these “fallen angels.”
- Sometimes these demons are called “unclean spirits.” The term “unclean” means “impure” or “evil” or “unholy.”
- Because demons serve the devil, they do evil things. Sometimes they live inside people and control them.
- Demons are more powerful than human beings, but not as powerful as God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “demon” could also be translated as “evil spirit.”
- The term “unclean spirit” could also be translated as “impure spirit” or “corrupt spirit” or “evil spirit.”
- Make sure that the word or phrase used to translate this term is different from the term used to refer to the devil.
- Also consider how the term “demon” is translated in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: demon-possessed, Satan, false god, false god, angel, evil, clean)

Bible References:

- James 02:19
- James 03:15
- Luke 04:36
- Mark 03:22
- Matthew 04:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 26:09 Many people who had demons in them were brought to Jesus. When Jesus commanded them, the demons came out of the people, and often shouted, “You are the Son of God!”
- 32:08 The demons came out of the man and entered the pigs.
- 47:05 Finally one day when the slave girl started yelling, Paul turned to her and said to the demon that was in her, “In the name of Jesus, come out of her.” Right away the demon left her.
- 49:02 He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2932, H7307, H7451, H7700, G169, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G4190, G4151, G4152, G4189

demon-possessed

Definition:
A person who is demon-possessed has a demon or evil spirit that controls what he does and thinks.

- Often a demon-possessed person will hurt himself or other people because the demon causes him to do that.
- Jesus healed demon-possessed people by commanding the demons to come out of them. This is often called “casting out” demons.

Translation Suggestions:
- Other ways to translate this term could include “demon-controlled” or “controlled by an evil spirit” or “having an evil spirit living inside.”

(See also: demon)

Bible References:
- Mark 01:32
- Matthew 04:24
- Matthew 08:16
- Matthew 08:33

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 26:09 Many people who had demons in them were brought to Jesus.
- 32:02 When they reached the other side of the lake, a demon-possessed man came running up to Jesus.
- 32:06 The man with the demon cried out in a loud voice, “What do you want with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? Please do not torture me!”
- 32:09 The people from the town came and saw the man who used to have the demons.
- 47:03 Every day as they (Paul and Silas) walked there, a slave girl possessed by a demon followed them.

Word Data:
- Strong’s: G1139

(Go back to: Luke 8:36)
descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, ancestor, Jacob, Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:09 “The woman’s descendant will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- 04:09 “I give the land of Canaan to your descendants.”
- 05:10 “Your descendants will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- 17:07 “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your descendants!”
- 18:13 The kings of Judah were descendants of David.
- 21:04 God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own descendants.
- 48:13 God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his descendants. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special descendant of David.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 1:55)
desert, wilderness

Definition:
A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:
- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

Word Data:
- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(Go back to: Luke 1:80; 3:2; 3:4; 4:1; 4:42; 5:16; 7:24; 8:29; 9:12; 15:4)
**desolate, desolation, alone, deserted**

**Definition:**

The terms “desolate” and “desolation” refer to destroying an inhabited region so that it becomes uninhabited.

- When referring to a person, the term “desolate” describes a condition of ruin, loneliness, and grief.
- The term “desolation” is the state or condition of being desolated.
- If a field where crops are growing is made desolate, it means that something has destroyed the crops, such as insects or an invading army.
- A “desolate region” refers to an area of land where few people live because few crops or other vegetation grow there.
- A “desolate land” or “wilderness” was often where outcasts (such as lepers) and dangerous animals lived.
- If a city is “made desolate” it means that its buildings and goods have been destroyed or stolen, and its people have been killed or captured. The city becomes “empty” and “ruined.” This is similar to the meaning of “devastate” or “devastated,” but with more emphasis on the emptiness.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “ruined” or “destroyed” or “laid waste” or “lonely and outcast” or “deserted.”

(See also: desert, devastate, ruin, waste)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 22:19
- Acts 01:20
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Lamentations 03:11
- Luke 11:17
- Matthew 12:25

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Luke 21:20)
devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

• Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
• Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
• This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

• 1 Peter 05:08
• Amos 01:10
• Exodus 24:17
• Ezekiel 16:20
• Luke 15:30
• Matthew 23:13-15
• Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: Luke 8:5; 15:30; 20:47)
die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:
The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death
   • To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
   • The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death
   • Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
   • This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
   • This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:
   • To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
   • In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
   • Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
   • In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
   • In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
   • The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
   • The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:
   • 1 Corinthians 15:21
   • 1 Thessalonians 04:17
   • Acts 10:42
   • Acts 14:19
   • Colossians 02:15
   • Colossians 02:20
   • Genesis 02:15-17
   • Genesis 34:27
   • Matthew 16:28
   • Romans 05:10
   • Romans 05:12
   • Romans 06:10
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac died, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **07:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who believes in me will never die.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus died, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:


discern, discernment, distinguish

Definition:

The term “discern” means to be able to understand something, especially being able to know whether something is right or wrong.

• The term “discernment” refers to understanding and deciding wisely about a certain matter.
• It means to have wisdom and good judgment.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, “discern” could also be translated as “understand” or “know the difference between” or “distinguish good and evil” or “judge rightly about” or “perceive right from wrong.”
• “Discernment” could be translated as “understanding” or “ability to distinguish good and evil.”

(See also: judge, wise)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 03:7-9
• Genesis 41:33-34
• Proverbs 01:05
• Psalms 019:12

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H995, H2940, H5234, H8085, G350, G1252, G1253, G2924

(Go back to: Luke 12:56; 23:14)
disciple

Definition:
The term “disciple” refers to a person who spends much time with a teacher, learning from that teacher’s character and teaching.

- The people who followed Jesus around, listening to his teachings and obeying them, were called his “disciples.”
- John the Baptist also had disciples.
- During Jesus’ ministry, there were many disciples who followed him and heard his teachings.
- Jesus chose twelve disciples to be his closest followers; these men became known as his “apostles.”
- Jesus’ twelve apostles continued to be known as his “disciples” or “the 12.”
- Just before Jesus went up to heaven, he commanded his disciples to teach other people about how to become Jesus’ disciples, too.
- Anyone who believes in Jesus and obeys his teachings is called a disciple of Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “disciple” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “follower” or “student” or “pupil” or “learner.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term does not refer only to a student who learns in a classroom.
- The translation of this term should also be different from the translation of “apostle.”

(See also: apostle, believe, Jesus, John (the Baptist), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:1
- Acts 09:26-27
- Acts 11:26
- Acts 14:22
- John 13:23
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 11:03
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Matthew 27:64

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 30:08 He (Jesus) gave the pieces to his disciples to give to the people. The disciples kept passing out the food, and it never ran out!
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 38:11 Then Jesus went with his disciples to a place called Gethsemane. Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- 42:10 Jesus said to his disciples, “All authority in heaven and on earth has been given to me. So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3928, G3100, G3101, G3102
**disobey, disobeyed, disobedience, rebellious**

**Definition:**

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: authority, evil, sin, obey)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 13:21
- Acts 26:19
- Colossians 03:07
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 06:49
- Psalms 089:30-32

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 02:11 God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and disobeyed me.”
- 13:07 If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 16:02 Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- 35:12 “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never disobeyed you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

(Go back to: Luke 1:17)
**divorce**

**Definition:**
A divorce is the legal act of ending a marriage. The term to “divorce” means to formally and legally separate from one's spouse in order to end the marriage.

- The literal meaning of the term to “divorce” is to “send away” or to “formally separate from.” Other languages may have similar expressions to refer to divorce.
- A “certificate of divorce” could be translated as a “paper stating that the marriage has ended.”

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 08:8-11
- Leviticus 21:7-9
- Luke 16:18
- Mark 10:04
- Matthew 05:32
- Matthew 19:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1644, H3748, H5493, H7971, G630, G647, G863

(Go back to: Luke 16:18)
**donkey, mule**

**Definition:**

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: Luke 13:15)
**dove, pigeon**

**Definition:**

Doves and pigeons are two kinds of small, gray-brown birds that look similar. A dove is often thought of as being lighter in color, almost white.

- Some languages have two different names for them, while others use the same name for both.
- Doves and pigeons were used in sacrifices to God, especially for people who could not afford to buy a larger animal.
- A dove brought the leaf of an olive tree to Noah when the flood waters were going down.
- Doves sometimes symbolize purity, innocence, or peace.
- If doves or pigeons are not known in the language area where the translation is being done, this term could be translated as "a small grayish brown bird called a dove" or "a small gray or brown bird, similar to a (name of local bird)."
- If both a dove and a pigeon are referred to in the same verse, it is best to use two different words for these birds, if possible.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: olive, innocent, pure)

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 08:09
- Luke 02:22-24
- Mark 01:10
- Matthew 03:16
- Matthew 21:12-14

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1469, H1686, H3123, H8449, G4058

(Go back to: Luke 2:24; 3:22)
drunk, drunkard

Facts:

The term “drunk” means to be intoxicated from drinking too much of an alcoholic beverage.  
• A “drunkard” is a person who is often drunk. This kind of person could also be referred to as an “alcoholic.”  
• The Bible tells believers not to be drunk with alcoholic drinks, but to be controlled by God's Holy Spirit.  
• The Bible teaches that drunkenness is unwise and influences a person to sin in other ways.  
• Other ways to translate “drunk” could include “inebriated” or “intoxicated” or “having too much alcohol” or “filled with fermented drink.”

(See also: wine)

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 05:11-13
• 1 Samuel 25:36
• Jeremiah 13:13
• Luke 07:34
• Luke 21:34
• Proverbs 23:19-21

Word Data:

• Strong's: H5433, H7301, H7910, H7937, H7941, H7943, H8354, H8358, G3178, G3182, G3183, G3184, G3630, G3632

(Go back to: Luke 7:34; 12:45; 21:34)
eagle

Definition:
An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar’s hair length was compared to the length of an eagle’s feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Daniel, free, Nebuchadnezzar, power)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:23
- Daniel 07:04
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- Revelation 04:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, G105

(Go back to: Luke 17:37)
earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

• “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
• This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
• The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
• The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

• This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
• Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
• When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
• Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: spirit, world)

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 01:38-40
• 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
• Daniel 04:35
• Luke 12:51
• Matthew 06:10
• Matthew 11:25
• Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

elder, older, old

Definition:
The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

**Eliakim**

**Facts:**

Eliakim was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Eliakim was the manager of the palace under King Hezekiah.
- Another man named Eliakim was a son of King Josiah. He was made king of Judah by the Egyptian pharaoh Necho.
- Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Hezekiah, Jehoiakim, Josiah, Pharaoh)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 18:18
- 2 Kings 18:26
- 2 Kings 18:37
- 2 Kings 23:34-35

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H471, G1662

(Go back to: Luke 3:30)
**Elijah**

**Facts:**

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: miracle, prophet, Yahweh)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- James 05:16-18
- John 01:19-21
- John 01:24-25
- Mark 09:05

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- 19:02 Elijah was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel.
- 19:02 Elijah said to Ahab, “There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so.”
- 19:03 God told Elijah to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat.
- 19:04 But they took care of Elijah, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty.
- 19:05 After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again.
- 19:07 Then Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.”
- 19:12 Then Elijah said, “Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!”
- 36:03 Then Moses and the prophet Elijah appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H452, G2243

(Go back to: Luke 1:17; 4:25; 4:26; Notes; 9:8; 9:19; 9:30; 9:33)
Elisha

Facts:

Elisha was a prophet in Israel during the reigns of several kings of Israel: Ahab, Ahaziah, Jehoram, Jehu, Jehoahaz, and Jehoash.

- God told the prophet Elijah to anoint Elisha as prophet.
- When Elijah was taken to heaven in a fiery chariot, Elisha became God's prophet to the kings of Israel.
- Elisha did many miracles, including healing a man from Syria who had leprosy and raising from the dead the son of a woman from Shunem.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Elijah, Naaman, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:15-16
- 2 Kings 03:15
- 2 Kings 05:08
- Luke 04:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H477

(Go back to: Luke 4:27)
Elizabeth

Facts:

Elizabeth was the mother of John the Baptist. Her husband's name was Zechariah.

- Zechariah and Elizabeth had never been able to have children, but in their old age, God promised Zechariah that Elizabeth would bear him a son.
- God kept his promise, and soon Zechariah and Elizabeth were able to conceive, and she gave birth to a son. They named the baby John.
- Elizabeth was also a relative of Mary, Jesus' mother.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: John (the Baptist), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Luke 01:05
- Luke 01:24-25
- Luke 01:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1665

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, to “endure” could be translated as to “experience” or to “go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- James 01:03
- James 01:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 21:19)
Enoch

Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Seth)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:03
- Genesis 05:18-20
- Genesis 05:24
- Jude 01:14
- Luke 03:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G1802

(Go back to: Luke 3:37)
envy, covet

Definition:

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 02:01
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 07:20-23
- Proverbs 03:31-32
- Romans 01:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

(Go back to: Luke 12:15)
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David's throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David's descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David's throne lasting forever could be translated as “David's descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:08
- Genesis 48:04
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:04
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God's laws.”
- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive eternal life.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

*(Go back to: Luke 10:25; 16:9; 18:18; 18:30)*
evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

• While “evil” may describe a person's character, “wicked” may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
• The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
• The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:
• Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
• Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
• Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:
• 1 Samuel 24:11
• 1 Timothy 06:10
• 3 John 01:10
• Genesis 02:17
• Genesis 06:5-6
• Job 01:01
• Job 08:20
• Judges 09:57
• Luke 06:22-23
• Matthew 07:11-12
• Proverbs 03:07
• Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
• 03:01 After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very wicked and violent.
• 03:02 But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among wicked people.
• 04:02 God saw that if they all kept working together to do evil, they could do many more sinful things.
• 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
• 14:02 They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
• 17:01 But then he (Saul) became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
• 18:11 In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were evil.
• 29:08 The king was so angry that he threw the wicked servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
• 45:02 They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak evil things about Moses and God!”
• 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 09:12 One day while Moses was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- 17:02 David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- 30:03 To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a shepherd.
- 38:08 Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the sheep will be scattered.’”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 15:4; 15:6)
exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:
To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, worship, glory, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

exhort, exhortation

Definition:
The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:
- 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 1 Timothy 05:02
- Luke 03:18

Word Data:
- Strong’s: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

(Go back to: Luke 3:18; 15:28)
exult, exultant

Definition:

The terms “exult” and “exultant” refer to being very happy because of a success or special blessing.

- To “exult” includes a feeling of celebrating something wonderful.
- A person can exult in God’s goodness.
- The term “exultant” can also include being arrogant in one’s feeling of gladness about success or prosperity.
- The term “exult” could also be translated as “celebrate joyfully” or “praise with great joy.”
- Depending on the context, the term “exultant” could be translated as “praising triumphantly” or “celebrating with self praise” or “arrogant.”

(See also: arrogant, joy, praise, rejoice)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:1
- Isaiah 13:03
- Job 06:10
- Psalm 068:1-3
- Zephaniah 02:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5539, H5947, H5970

(Go back to: Luke 1:14; 1:44)
face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

• To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
• To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
• True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
• Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
• In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

• In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
• For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
• The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
• The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
• The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

• 2 Timothy 04:07
• Acts 06:7
• Galatians 02:20-21
• James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 05:06 When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
• 31:07 Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little faith, why did you doubt?”
• 32:16 Jesus said to her, “Your faith has healed you. Go in peace.”
• 38:09 Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(1549 / 1953)
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:
To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.“

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

faithless, faithlessness

Definition:
The term “faithless” means to not have faith or to not believe.

- This word is used to describe people who do not believe in God. Their lack of belief is seen by the immoral way they act.
- The prophet Jeremiah accused Israel of being faithless and disobedient to God.
- They worshiped idols and followed other ungodly customs of people groups who did not worship or obey God.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “faithless” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “unbelieving” or “disobedient to God” or “not believing.”
- The term “faithlessness” could be translated as “unbelief” or “unfaithfulness” or “rebellion against God.”

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believe, faithful, disobey)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- Ezra 09:1-2
- Jeremiah 02:19
- Proverbs 02:22
- Revelation 21:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G571

(Go back to: Luke 24:41)
false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as “person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman” or “someone who falsely claims to speak God’s words.”
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: fulfill, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:1-3
- 2 Peter 02:01
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 06:26
- Matthew 07:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5578

(Go back to: Luke 6:26)
family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(Go back to: Luke 2:4)
famine

Definition:
The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

• Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
• Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
• In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
• In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
• Acts 07:11
• Genesis 12:10
• Genesis 45:06
• Jeremiah 11:21-23
• Luke 04:25
• Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:01 Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he fasted for forty days and forty nights.
- 34:08 “For example, I fast two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- 46:10 One day, while the Christians at Antioch were fasting and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(Go back to: Luke 2:37; Notes; 5:33; 5:34; 5:35; 18:12)
favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

• Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
• The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
• When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
• A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
• The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

• Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
• The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
• The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 02:25-26
• 2 Chronicles 19:07
• 2 Corinthians 01:11
• Acts 24:27
• Genesis 41:16
• Genesis 47:25
• Genesis 50:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 1:28; 1:30; 2:52; 4:19)
fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term “dread” refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or, “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or, “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:


feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 12:36; 14:8; 14:12; 14:16; 14:17; 14:24; 20:46)
festival

Definition:
In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
  - Passover
  - Festival of Unleavened Bread
  - Firstfruits
  - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
  - Festival of Trumpets
  - Day of Atonement
  - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: feast)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 2 Chronicles 08:13
- Exodus 05:01
- John 04:45
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

(Go back to: Luke 2:41; 2:42; 22:1)
fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

filled with the Holy Spirit

Definition:

The term “filled with the Holy Spirit” is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God's will.

- The expression “filled with” is an expression that often means “controlled by.”
- People are “filled with the Holy Spirit” when they follow the Holy Spirit's leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “empowered by the Holy Spirit” or “controlled by the Holy Spirit.” But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
- A sentence such as “he was filled with the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “he was living fully by the Spirit's power” or “he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit” or “the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely.”
- This term is similar in meaning to the expression “live by the Spirit,” but “filled with the Holy Spirit” emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:31
- Acts 05:17
- Acts 06:8-9
- Luke 01:15
- Luke 01:39-41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

(Go back to: Luke 1:15; 1:41; 1:67)
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:


**firstborn**

**Definition:**

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(Go back to: Luke 2:7)
fishermen, fishers

Definition:
Fishermen are men who catch fish from the water as a means of earning money. In the New Testament, the fishermen used large nets to catch fish. The term "fishers" is another name for fishermen.

- Peter and other apostles worked as fishermen before being called by Jesus.
- Since the land of Israel was near water, the Bible has many references to fish and fishermen.
- This term could be translated with a phrase such as “men who catch fish” or “men who earn money by catching fish.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 47:9-10
- Isaiah 19:08
- Luke 05:1-3
- Matthew 04:19
- Matthew 13:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1728, H1771, H2271, G231

(Go back to: Luke 5:2)
flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: Luke 3:6; 24:39)
flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only "herds."

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 2:8; 12:32)
flood

Definition:
The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

• This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
• In Noah's time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
• This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:
• Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
• The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
• For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
• This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “don't let me be devastated by disasters” or “don't let your anger devastate me.” (See: Metaphor)
• The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:
• Daniel 11:10
• Genesis 07:6-7
• Luke 06:46-48
• Matthew 07:24-25
• Matthew 07:26-27
• Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:
• Strong's: H3999, G2627

(Go back to: Luke 6:48; 17:27)
fool, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

• In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
• In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
• The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
• The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
• Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: wise)

Bible References:

• Ecclesiastes 01:17
• Ephesians 05:15
• Galatians 03:03
• Genesis 31:28
• Matthew 07:26
• Matthew 25:08
• Proverbs 13:16
• Psalms 049:13

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 11:40; 12:20; 24:25)
footstool

Definition:
The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God's will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God's “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

- Acts 07:49
- Isaiah 66:1
- Luke 20:43
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 22:44
- Psalm 110:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

(Go back to: Luke 20:43)
forgive, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:
To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Psalms 025:11
- Psalms 025:17-19
- Isaiah 55:6-7
- Isaiah 40:02
- Luke 05:21
- Acts 08:22
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 07:10 But Esau had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- 13:15 Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would forgive the people. God listened to Moses and forgave them.
- 17:13 David repented of his sin and God forgave him.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
• 29:01 One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me?”
• 29:08 I forgave your debt because you begged me.
• 38:05 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.

Word Data:

• H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

found, founder, foundation

**Definition:**

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:29
- Matthew 13:35
- Matthew 25:34

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H134, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

(Go back to: Luke 6:48; 6:49; 11:50; 14:29)
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:
The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person's actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person's words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces—"that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “wine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul's expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17
Word Data:


fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: prophet, Christ, minister, call)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:04 John fulfilled what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- 40:03 The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they fulfilled a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- 42:07 Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be fulfilled.”
- 43:05 “This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- 43:07 “This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- 44:05 “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

Gabriel

Facts:
Gabriel is the name of one of God's angels. He is mentioned by name several times, in both the Old and New Testaments.

- God sent Gabriel to tell the prophet Daniel the meaning of a vision he had seen.
- Another time, while Daniel was praying, the angel Gabriel flew to him and prophesied about what would happen in the future. Daniel described him as a "man."
- In the New Testament it is recorded that Gabriel came to Zechariah to prophesy that his aged wife Elizabeth would have a son, John.
- Sixth months after that, Gabriel was sent to Mary to tell her that God would miraculously enable her to conceive a child who would be the "Son of God." Gabriel told Mary to name her son "Jesus."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: angel, Daniel, Elizabeth, John (the Baptist), Mary, prophet, Son of God, Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Daniel 08:15-17
- Daniel 09:21
- Luke 01:19
- Luke 01:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1403, G1043

(Go back to: Luke 1:19; 1:26)
Galilee, Galilean

Facts:

Galilee was the most northern region of Israel, just north of Samaria. A “Galilean” was a person who lived in Galilee or who lived in Galilee.

- Galilee, Samaria, and Judea were the three main provinces of Israel during New Testament times.
- Galilee is bordered on the east by a large lake called the “Sea of Galilee.”
- Jesus grew up and lived in the town of Nazareth in Galilee.
- Most of the miracles and teachings of Jesus took place in the region of Galilee.

(See also: Nazareth, Samaria, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:32
- Acts 13:31
- John 02:1-2
- John 04:03
- Luke 13:03
- Mark 03:07
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:13-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:10 The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- 39:06 Finally, the people said, “We know that you were with Jesus because you both are from Galilee.”
- 41:06 Then the angel told the women, “Go and tell the disciples, Jesus has risen from the dead and he will go to Galilee ahead of you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1551, G1056, G1057

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: Luke 7:12; 16:20)
generation

Definition:
The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now."
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: descendant, evil, ancestor)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

Gentile

Facts:
The term “Gentile” refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

• In the Bible, the term “uncircumcised” is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
• Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
• The Jews were also called “Israelites” or “Hebrews” at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a “Gentile.”
• Gentile could also be translated as “not a Jew” or “non-Jewish” or “not an Israelite” (Old Testament) or “non-Jew.”.
• Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Jew)

Bible References:
• Acts 09:13-16
• Acts 14:5-7
• Galatians 02:16
• Luke 02:32
• Matthew 05:47
• Matthew 06:5-7
• Romans 11:25

Word Data:
• Strong’s: H1471, G1482, G1484, G1672

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return.

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: spirit, Holy Spirit)

**Bible References:**

1. 1 Corinthians 12:01
2. 2 Samuel 11:08
3. Acts 08:20
4. Acts 10:04
5. Acts 11:17
6. Acts 24:17
7. James 01:17
8. John 04:9-10
9. Matthew 05:23
10. Matthew 08:4

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Luke 11:13; 21:1; 21:4)
glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesome majesty.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:08** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?”

**Word Data:**


**goat, goatskins, scapegoat, kids**

**Definition:**

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a "kid."

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
  - Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
  - The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
  - Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people's sins.

(See also: flock, sacrifice, sheep, righteous, wine)

**Bible References:**

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:32
- Genesis 31:10
- Genesis 37:31
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- Matthew 25:33

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Luke 15:29)
God

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:01 God created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- 01:15 God made man and woman in his own image.
- 05:03 "I am God Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- 09:14 God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- 10:02 Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- 16:01 The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- 22:07 You, my son, will be called the prophet of the Most High God who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!
- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 25:07 "Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him."
- 28:01 "There is only one who is good, and that is God."
- 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- 50:16 But some day God will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:


God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Facts:

The terms “God the Father” and “heavenly Father” refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is “Father,” used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase “God the Father,” it is best to translate “Father” with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term “heavenly Father” could be translated by “Father who lives in heaven” or “Father God who lives in heaven” or “God our Father from heaven.”
- Usually “Father” is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
- 1 John 02:01
- 1 John 02:23
- 1 John 03:01
- Colossians 01:1-3
- Ephesians 05:18-21
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 23:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 40:07 Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.”
- 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:08 “Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of God the Father.”
- 50:10 “Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, G3962
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:04 God saw that what he had created was good.
- 01:11 God plantedâ€¦the tree of the knowledge of good and evil."
- 01:12 Then God said, “It is not good for man to be alone.”
- 02:04 “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and evil like he does.”
- 08:12 “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for good!”
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 18:13 Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
28:01 "Good teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good'? There is only one who is good, and that is God."

Word Data:


govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:
A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:
- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, king, power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 2:2; 3:1; 20:20; 21:12)
grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God's favor” or “God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 04:33
- Acts 06:08
- Acts 14:04
- Colossians 04:06
- Colossians 04:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 04:07
- John 01:16
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

(Go back to: Luke 2:40; 4:22; 6:32; 6:33; 6:34; Notes)
grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: head, wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

(Go back to: Luke 6:1; 12:18; 13:19; 17:6)
grape, grapevine

Definition:
A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: vine, vineyard, wine)

Bible References:
- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 06:43-44
- Matthew 07:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H811, H891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G288, G4718

(Go back to: Luke 6:44)
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms "tomb" and "grave" refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A "burial place" is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include "cave" or "hole in the side of a hill."
- The phrase "the grave" is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, death)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 32:04 The man lived among the tombs in the area.
- 37:06 Jesus asked them, "Where have you put Lazarus?" They told him, "In the tomb. Come and see."
- 37:07 The tomb was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- 40:09 Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus' body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a tomb cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front of the tomb to block the opening.
- 41:04 He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the tomb and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the tomb were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- 41:05 When the women arrived at the tomb, the angel told them, "Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the tomb and see." The women looked into the tomb and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: Luke 8:27; 11:44; 11:47; 23:53; 23:55; 24:1; 24:2; 24:9; 24:12; 24:22; 24:24)
guilt, guilty

Definition:
The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: innocent, iniquity, punish, sin)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:07
- James 02:10-11
- John 19:04
- Jonah 01:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 39:02 They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was guilty of anything.
- 39:11 After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no guilt in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not guilty.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not guilty!”
- 40:04 Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don't you fear God? We are guilty, but this man is innocent.
- 49:10 Because of your sin, you are guilty and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

(Go back to: Luke 23:4; 23:14; 23:22)
Hades, Sheol

Definition:
The terms “Hades” (in Greek) and “Sheol” (in Hebrew) are proper names for the "underworld," meaning an underground dwelling place where people from ancient cultures believed a dead person would go after he had died.

• In the Old Testament, the Hebrew term "Sheol" can be used either as a proper name or as a common noun meaning "underground."
• In the New Testament, the Greek term "Hades" is described as a place for dead people who have rejected Jesus. The New Testament describes people as "going down" to Hades.

Translation Suggestions

• The Old Testament term "Sheol" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “place of the dead;” “place for dead spirits;” “the pit;” or “death.”
• The New Testament term "Hades" can also be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: “place for unbelieving dead souls;” “place of torment for the dead;” or “place for the souls of unbelieving dead people.”
• Some translations keep the proper names “Sheol" and “Hades,” spelling them to fit the sound patterns of the language of translation. (See: How to Translate Unknowns).
• A phrase could also be added to each term to explain it, examples of doing this are, “Sheol, place where dead people are” and “Hades, place of death.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: death, heaven, hell, tomb)

Bible References:

• Acts 02:31
• Genesis 44:29
• Jonah 02:02
• Luke 10:15
• Luke 16:23
• Matthew 11:23
• Matthew 16:18
• Revelation 01:18

Word Data:

• Strong's: H7585, G86

(Go back to: Luke 10:15; 16:23)
hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:


1599 / 1953
**Definition:**

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: disobey, evil, heart, labor pains, stiff-necked)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Corinthians 11:23
- Deuteronomy 15:07
- Exodus 14:04
- Hebrews 04:07
- John 12:40
- Matthew 19:08

**Word Data:**

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(Go back to: Luke 10:2; 12:24; 19:21; 19:22)
head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:


heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:


heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:
The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:02 They even began building a tall tower to reach heaven.
- 14:11 He (God) gave them bread from heaven, called “manna.”
- 23:07 Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- 29:09 Then Jesus said, “This is what my heavenly Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- 37:09 Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- 42:11 Then Jesus went up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772
heir

Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

- In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
- The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
- As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
- The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: firstborn, inherit)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:1-2
- Galatians 04:07
- Genesis 15:01
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 20:14
- Mark 12:07
- Matthew 21:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

(Go back to: Luke 20:14)
**hell, lake of fire**

**Definition:**

Hell is the final place of unending pain and suffering where God will punish everyone who rebels against him and rejects his plan of saving them through Jesus' sacrifice. It is also referred to as the "lake of fire."

- Hell is described as a place of fire and severe suffering.
- Satan and the evil spirits who follow him will be thrown into hell for eternal punishment.
- People who do not believe in Jesus' sacrifice for their sin and do not trust in him to save them, will be punished forever in hell.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- These terms should probably be translated differently since they occur in different contexts.
- Some languages cannot use "lake" in the phrase "lake of fire" because it refers to water.
- The term "hell" could be translated as "place of suffering" or "final place of darkness and pain."
- The term "lake of fire" could also be translated as, "sea of fire" or "huge fire (of suffering)" or "field of fire."

(See also: heaven, death, Hades, abyss)

**Bible References:**

- James 03:06
- Luke 12:05
- Mark 09:42-44
- Matthew 05:21-22
- Matthew 05:29
- Matthew 10:28-31
- Matthew 23:33
- Matthew 25:41-43
- Revelation 20:15

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **50:14** He (God) will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever. A fire that never goes out will continually burn them, and worms will never stop eating them.
- **50:15** He will throw Satan into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7585, G86, G439, G440, G1067, G3041, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G5020, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: Luke 12:5)
Herod, Herod Antipas

Facts:

During most of Jesus' lifetime, Herod Antipas was the ruler of the part of the Roman Empire that included Galilee province.

- Like his father Herod the Great, Antipas was sometimes referred to as “King Herod” even though he was not really a king.
- Herod Antipas ruled about one-fourth of the provinces of Israel, so he was also called “Herod the tetrarch.” “Tetrarch” was a title for a person who ruled one-fourth of a country.
- Antipas is the “Herod” who gave the order for John the Baptist to be killed by beheading.
- It was also Herod Antipas who questioned Jesus before his crucifixion.
- The other Herods in the New Testament were Antipas' son (Agrippa) and grandson (Agrippa 2) who ruled during the time of the apostles.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: crucify, Herod the Great, John (the Baptist), king, Rome)

Bible References:

- Luke 03:20
- Luke 09:09
- Luke 23:09
- Mark 06:20
- Matthew 14:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2264, G2265, G2267

(Go back to: Luke 3:1; 3:19; 8:3; 9:7; 9:9; 13:31; 23:7; 23:8; 23:11; 23:12; 23:15)
Herod, Herod the Great

Facts:

Herod the Great was ruling over Judea at the time Jesus was born. He was the first of several Edomite rulers named Herod who ruled over parts of the Roman Empire.

- His ancestors converted to Judaism and he was raised as a Jew.
- Caesar Augustus named him "King Herod" even though he was not a true king. He ruled over the Jews in Judea for 33 years.
- Herod the Great was known for the beautiful buildings he ordered to be built and for the rebuilding of the Jewish temple in Jerusalem.
- This Herod was very cruel and had many people killed. When he heard that a "king of the Jews" had been born in Bethlehem, he had all the baby boys in that town killed.
- His sons Herod Antipas and Herod Philip and his grandson Herod Agrippa also became Roman rulers. His great-grandson Herod Agrippa II (called "King Agrippa") ruled over the entire area of Judea.

(See How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod Antipas, Judea, king, temple)

Bible References:

- Matthew 02:03
- Matthew 02:12
- Matthew 02:16
- Matthew 02:20
- Matthew 02:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2264

(Go back to: Luke 1:5)
Herodias

Facts:

Herodias was the wife of Herod Antipas in Judea during the time of John the Baptist.

• Herodias was originally the wife of Herod Antipas's brother Philip, but later she unlawfully married Herod Antipas.
• John the Baptist rebuked Herod and Herodias for their unlawful marriage. Because of this, Herod put John in prison and because of Herodias eventually was beheaded.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod Antipas, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

• Luke 03:19
• Mark 06:17
• Mark 06:22
• Matthew 14:04

Word Data:

• Strong’s: G2266

(Go back to: Luke 3:19)
**high priest, chief priests**

**Definition:**

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all of the other Israelite priests. In New Testament times, some other priests were also considered very important Jewish religious leaders, with authority over other priests and the people. These were the chief priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the tabernacle or the temple to offer a special sacrifice once per year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- After high priests retired, they still kept the title, along with some of the responsibilities of the office. For example, Annas was still referred to as high priest during the priesthood of Caiaphas and others.
- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- The chief priests were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus’ main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- The term “chief priests” could be translated as “head priests” or “leading priests” or “ruling priests.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, priest, temple)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 05:27
- Acts 07:01
- Acts 09:01
- Exodus 30:10
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Leviticus 16:32
- Luke 03:02
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Matthew 26:51-54

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the high priest, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect high priest who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the high priest in order for the high priest to question him.
- **39:03** Finally, the high priest looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the high priest and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
The high priest gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.

Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 01:01 But God's Spirit was there over the water.
- 24:08 When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, the Spirit of God appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- 26:03 Jesus read, “God has given me his Spirit so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed.”
- 42:10 “So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 43:03 They were all filled with the Holy Spirit and they began to speak in other languages.
- 43:08 “And Jesus has sent the Holy Spirit just as he promised he would do. The Holy Spirit is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing.”
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the Holy Spirit.”
- 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God's glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:01** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:05** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H6918, H6922, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, glory, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 04:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 06:04
- Matthew 15:06

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 7:2; 14:8; 18:20; Notes)
Hope, hoped

Definition:
Hope is strongly desiring something to happen. Hope can imply either certainty or uncertainty regarding a future event.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” also has the meaning of “trust,” as in “my hope is in the Lord.” It refers to a sure expectation of receiving what God has promised his people.
- Sometimes the ULT translates the term in the original language as “confidence.” This happens mostly in the New Testament in situations where people who believe in Jesus as their Savior have the assurance (or confidence or hope) of receiving what God has promised.
- To have “no hope” means to have no expectation of something good happening. It means that it is actually very certain that it will not happen.

Translation Suggestions:
- In some contexts, the term to “hope” could also be translated as to “wish” or to “desire” or to “expect.”
- The expression “nothing to hope for” could be translated as “nothing to trust in” or “no expectation of anything good”
- To “have no hope” could be translated as “have no expectation of anything good” or “have no security” or “be sure that nothing good will happen.”
- The expression “have set your hopes on” could also be translated as “have put your confidence in” or “have been trusting in.”
- The phrase “I find hope in your Word” could also be translated as “I am confident that your Word is true” or “Your Word helps me trust in you” or “When I obey your Word, I am certain to be blessed.”
- Phrases such as “hope in” God could also be translated as, “trust in God” or “know for sure that God will do what he has promised” or “be certain that God is faithful.”

(See also: bless, confidence, good, obey, trust, word of God)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 29:14-15
- 1 Thessalonians 02:19
- Acts 24:14-16
- Acts 26:06
- Acts 27:20
- Colossians 01:05
- Job 11:20

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 23:8; 24:21)
horn, horned

Facts:
Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram's horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: authority, cow, deer, goat, power royal, sheep, trumpet)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 01:39
- 2 Samuel 22:03
- Jeremiah 17:01
- Psalms 022:21

Word Data:
- Strong’s:H3104, H7160, H7161, H7162, H7782, G2768

(Go back to: Luke 1:69)
hour

Definition:
In addition to being used to refer to when or how long something took place, the term “hour” is also used in several figurative ways:

- Sometimes “hour” refers to a regular, scheduled time to do something, such as the “hour of prayer.”
- When the text says that the “hour had come” for Jesus to suffer and be put to death, this means that it was the appointed time for this to happen—the time that God had selected long ago.
- The term “hour” is also used to mean “at that moment” or “right then.”
- When the text talks about the “hour” being late, this means that it was late in the day, when the sun would soon be setting.

Translation Suggestions:

- When used figuratively, the term “hour” can be translated as “time” or “moment” or “appointed time.”
- The phrase “in that very hour” or “the same hour” could be translated as “at that moment” or “at that time” or “immediately” or “right then.”
- The expression “the hour was late” could be translated as “it was late in the day” or “it would soon be getting dark” or “it was late afternoon.”

(See also: hour)

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 15:30
- Acts 10:30
- Mark 14:35

Word Data:
- Strong’s: G5610

hour, moment, immediately, for a while

Definition:
The term “hour” is often used in the Bible to tell what time of day a certain event took place. It is also used figuratively to mean “time” or “moment.”

- The Jews counted daylight hours starting at sunrise (around 6 a.m.). For example, “the ninth hour” meant “around three in the afternoon.”
- Nighttime hours were counted starting at sunset (around 6 p.m.). For example, “the third hour of the night” meant “around nine in the evening” in our present-day system.
- Since references to time in the Bible will not correspond exactly to the present-day time system, phrases such as “around nine” or “about six o’clock” could be used.
- Some translations might add phrases like “in the evening” or “in the morning” or “in the afternoon” to make it clear what time of day is being talked about.
- The phrase, “in that hour” could be translated as, “at that time” or “in that moment.”
- Referring to Jesus, the expression “his hour had come” could be translated as, “the time had come for him to” or “the appointed time for him had come.”

Bible References: ##
- Acts 02:15
- John 04:51-52
- Luke 23:44
- Matthew 20:03

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H8160, G5610

(Go back to: Luke 12:25; 22:59; 23:44)
house

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include “people of Israel” or “Israel's descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh's temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

house of David

Facts:

The expression “house of David” refers to the family or descendants of King David.

- This could also be translated as “descendants of David” or “family of David” or “King David’s clan.”
- Because Jesus was descended from David, he was part of the “house of David.”
- Sometimes “house of David” or “household of David” refers to the people in David’s family who were still living.
- Other times this term is more general and refers to all his descendants, including those who had already died.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, descendant, house, Jesus, king)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 10:19
- 2 Samuel 03:06
- Luke 01:69-71
- Psalms 122:05
- Zechariah 12:07

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1732, G1138, G3624

(Go back to: Luke 1:27)
house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God's house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh's house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

• This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
• Sometimes “God's house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

• When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as “a house for worshiping God” or “a place for worshiping God.”
• If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
• The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: people of God, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

• 1 Timothy 03:14-15
• 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
• Ezra 05:13
• Genesis 28:17
• Judges 18:30-31
• Mark 02:26
• Matthew 12:04

Word Data:

• Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

(Go back to: Luke 6:4)
humble, humbled, humility

Definition:
The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don't be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:10 “God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(Go back to: Luke 1:48; 1:52; 14:11; 18:14)
hypocrite, hypocrisy

Definition:
The term “hypocrite” refers to a person who does things to appear righteous, but who secretly is acting in evil ways. The term “hypocrisy” refers to the behavior that deceives people into thinking a person is righteous.

- Hypocrites want to be seen doing good things so that people will think that they are good people.
- Often a hypocrite will criticize other people for doing the same sinful things that they themselves do.
- Jesus called the Pharisees hypocrites because although they acted religiously like wearing certain clothes and eating certain foods, they were not kind or fair to people.
- A hypocrite points out faults in other people, but doesn't admit his own faults.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages have an expression like “two-faced” that refers to a hypocrite or a hypocrite's actions.
- Other ways to translate “hypocrite” could include “fraud” or “pretender” or “arrogant, deceitful person.”
- The term “hypocrisy” could be translated by, “deception” or “fake actions” or “pretending.”

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:13
- Luke 06:41-42
- Luke 12:54-56
- Luke 13:15
- Mark 07:6-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Romans 12:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H120, H2611, H2612, G505, G5272, G5273

(Go back to: Luke 6:42; 12:1; 12:56; 13:15)
Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: false god, God, false god, image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- Acts 07:43
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- Matthew 22:21
- Romans 01:23

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 20:24)
**incense**

**Definition:**

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, burnt offering, frankincense)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Kings 14:04
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 01:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

*(Go back to: Luke 1:9; 1:10; 1:11)*
**inherit, inheritance, heir**

**Definition:**

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the thing(s) that is received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **35:03** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my inheritance now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: Luke 10:25; 12:13; 18:18; 20:14)
iniquity

Definition:
The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”

Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: Luke 13:27; 16:8; 16:9; 18:6)
interpret, interpretation, interpreter

Facts:

The terms “interpret” and “interpretation” refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The “interpretation” of the dream is the “explanation” of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term “interpret” can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term “interpret” could include, “figure out the meaning of” or “explain” or “give the meaning of.”
- The term “interpretation” could also be translated as “explanation” or “meaning.”

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, dream, prophet, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 04:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 07:15-16
- Luke 12:56

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G1252, G1328, G1329, G1381, G1955, G2058, G3177, G4793

(Go back to: Luke 24:27)
Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac's son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, descendant, eternity, fulfill, Jacob, Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:28-29
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:08
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:18
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him Isaac.”
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of Isaac.
- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:05** Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **07:10** Then Isaac died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

(Go back to: Luke 3:34; 13:28; 20:37)
Isaiah

Facts:
Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ahaz, Assyria, Christ, Hezekiah, Jotham, Judah, prophet, Uzziah)

Bible References:
- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- Acts 28:26
- Isaiah 01:1
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 01:01
- Mark 07:06
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 04:14

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 21:10 The prophet Isaiah said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners.
- 21:11 The prophet Isaiah also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected.
- 21:12 Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
- 26:02 They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet Isaiah so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people.
- 45:08 When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet Isaiah wrote.
- 45:10 Philip explained to the Ethiopian that Isaiah was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:
- Strong's: H3470, G2268

(Go back to: Luke 3:4; 4:17)
Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob’s name means “he grabs the heel” which is an expression meaning “he deceives.” As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob’s name to “Israel,” which means “he struggles with God.”
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph’s father in Matthew’s genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Israel, Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved Jacob, but Isaac loved Esau. Jacob loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** Jacob lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.
- **08:01** Many years later, when Jacob was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: Luke 1:33; 3:34; 13:28; 20:37)
Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 08:15 The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- 09:03 The Egyptians forced the Israelites to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- 09:05 A certain Israelite woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- 10:01 They said, “This is what the God of Israel says, ‘Let my people go!’”
- 14:12 But despite all this, the people of Israel complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- 15:09 God fought for Israel that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- 15:12 After this battle, God gave Israel its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- 16:16 So God punished Israel again for worshiping idols.
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

it is written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: command, law, prophet, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:13-15
- Acts 13:29
- Exodus 32:15-16
- John 21:25
- Luke 03:4
- Mark 09:12
- Matthew 04:06
- Revelation 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, G1125

James (son of Alphaeus)

Facts:

James, the son of Alphaeus, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles.

- His name is given in the lists of Jesus' disciples in the gospels of Matthew, Mark, and Luke.
- He is also mentioned in the book of Acts as one of the eleven disciples who were together praying in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up to heaven.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, disciple, James (brother of Jesus), James (son of Zebedee), the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Mark 14:32-34
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: Luke 6:15)
James (son of Zebedee)

Facts:

James, a son of Zebedee, was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He had a younger brother named John who was also one of Jesus' apostles.

- James and his brother John worked by fishing with their father Zebedee.
- James and John were nicknamed the “Sons of Thunder,” perhaps because they got angry quickly.
- Peter, James, and John were Jesus' closest disciples and were with him for amazing events such as when Jesus was on a mountaintop with Elijah and Moses and when Jesus caused a dead little girl to come back to life.
- This is a different James than the one who wrote a book in the Bible. Some languages may have to write their names differently to make it clear that they were two different men.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, Elijah, James (brother of Jesus), James (son of Alphæus), Moses)

Bible References:

- Luke 09:28-29
- Mark 01:19-20
- Mark 01:29-31
- Mark 03:17
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Matthew 17:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2385

(Go back to: Luke 5:10; 6:14; 8:51; 9:28; 9:54)
Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, Jordan River, Joshua, miracle, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:01 Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of Jericho.
- 15:03 After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- 15:05 Then the walls around Jericho fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: Luke 10:30; 18:35; 19:1)
Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:05 David conquered Jerusalem and made it his capital city.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- 20:12 So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 38:02 After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- 42:08 "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419
**Jesse**

**Facts:**

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the region of Ephrathah. The town of Bethlehem was located in the region of Ephrathah.
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Boaz, descendant, Jesus, king, prophet, Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 02:12
- 1 Kings 12:16
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- Luke 03:32
- Matthew 01:4-6

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3448, G2421

(Go back to: Luke 3:32)
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name “Jesus” means “Yahweh saves.” The term “Christ” is a title that means “anointed one” and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as “Jesus Christ” or “Christ Jesus.” These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him “Jesus” because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages “Jesus” and “Christ” are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, “Jesucristo,” “Jezus Christus,” “Yesus Kristus”, and “Hesukristo” are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term “Christ,” some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term “Messiah” throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:11
- 1 John 02:02
- 1 John 04:15
- 1 Timothy 01:02
- 2 Peter 01:02
- 2 Thessalonians 02:15
- 2 Timothy 01:10
- Acts 02:23
- Acts 05:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 09:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 01:21
- Matthew 04:03
- Philippians 02:05
- Philippians 02:10
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:04 The angel said, “You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah.”
- 23:02 “Name him Jesus (which means, ‘Yahweh saves’), because he will save the people from their sins.”
- 24:07 So John baptized him (Jesus), even though Jesus had never sinned.
- 24:09 There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
• 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan’s temptations, so Satan left him.
• 26:08 Then Jesus went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus healed them.
• 31:03 Then Jesus finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
• 38:02 He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
• 40:08 Through his death, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
• 42:11 Then Jesus was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. Jesus sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
• 50:17 Jesus and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

• Strong's: G2424, G5547
**Jew, Jewish**

**Facts:**

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word “Jew” comes from the word “Judah.”

- People began to call the Israelites “Jews” after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: Abraham, Jacob, Israel, Babylon, Jewish leaders)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called Jews and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the Jews were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, “King of the Jews” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: Luke 7:3; 23:3; 23:37; 23:38; 23:51)
John (the apostle)

Facts:

John was one of Jesus’ twelve apostles and one of Jesus’ closest friends.

- John and his brother James were sons of a fisherman named Zebedee.
- In the gospel that he wrote about Jesus’ life, John referred to himself as “the disciple whom Jesus loved.” This seems to indicate that John was an especially close friend of Jesus.
- The Apostle John wrote five New Testament books: the gospel of John, the Revelation of Jesus Christ, and three letters written to other believers.
- Note that the Apostle John was a different person than John the Baptist.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, reveal, James (son of Zebedee), John (the Baptist), Zebedee)

Bible References:

- Galatians 02:9-10
- John 01:19-21
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 04:21-22
- Revelation 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 36:01 One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and John with him. (The disciple named John was not the same person who baptized Jesus.) They went up on a high mountain by themselves.
- 44:01 One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was begging for money.
- 44:06 The leaders of the Temple were very upset by what Peter and John were saying. So they arrested them and put them into prison.
- 44:07 The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other religious leaders. They asked Peter and John, “By what power did you heal this crippled man?”
- 44:09 The leaders were shocked that Peter and John spoke so boldly because they could see that these men were ordinary men who were uneducated. But then they remembered that these men had been with Jesus. After they threatened Peter and John, they let them go.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2491

John (the Baptist)

Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since “John” was a common name, he is often called “John the Baptist” to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called “John the Baptist” because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: baptize, Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:11-13
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 03:15-16
- Matthew 03:13
- Matthew 11:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:02 The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him John. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!”
- 22:07 After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby John, as the angel had commanded.
- 24:01 John, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair.
- 24:02 Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- 24:06 The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G910 G2491

Jonah

Definition:

Jonah was a Hebrew prophet in the Old Testament.

- The book of Jonah tells the story of what happened when God sent Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh.
- Jonah refused to go to Nineveh and instead got on a ship headed for a Tarshish.
- God caused a huge storm to overwhelm that ship.
- Jonah told the men sailing the ship that he was running away from God, and he suggested that they throw him into the sea. When they did that, the storm stopped and the sailors offered a sacrifice to Yahweh.
- Jonah was swallowed by a huge fish, and he was inside the belly of that fish for three days and nights.
- After that, Jonah went to Nineveh and preached to the people there, and the people stopped acting so violently toward others.
- Jonah became angry at God for not destroying Nineveh, and God used a plant and a worm to teach Jonah a lesson about compassion.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disobey, Nineveh, turn)

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:03
- Luke 11:30
- Matthew 12:39
- Matthew 16:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3124, G2495

(Go back to: Luke 11:29; 11:30; 11:32)
Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:02 The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the Promised Land.
- 15:03 After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- 19:14 Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the Jordan River.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: Luke 3:3; 4:1)
**Joseph (NT)**

**Facts:**

Joseph was Jesus’ earthly father and raised him as his son. He was a righteous man who worked as a carpenter.

- Joseph became engaged to a Jewish girl named Mary, while they were engaged God chose her to become the mother of Jesus the Messiah.
- An angel told Joseph that the Holy Spirit had miraculously caused Mary to be pregnant, and that Mary’s baby was the Son of God.
- After Jesus was born, an angel warned Joseph to take the baby and Mary to Egypt in order to escape from Herod.
- Joseph and his family later lived in the city of Nazareth of Galilee, where he earned a living doing carpentry work.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Christ, Galilee, Jesus, Nazareth, Son of God, virgin)

**Bible References:**

- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Luke 02:4-5
- Luke 02:15-16
- Matthew 01:18-19
- Matthew 01:24-25
- Matthew 02:19-21
- Matthew 13:54-56

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **22:04** She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a righteous man. When he heard that Mary was pregnant, he knew it was not his baby. He did not want to shame her, so he planned to quietly divorce her.
- **23:02** The angel said, “Joseph, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit. She will give birth to a son. Name him Jesus (which means, ‘Yahweh saves’), because he will save the people from their sins.”
- **23:03** So Joseph married Mary and took her home as his wife, but he did not sleep with her until she had given birth.
- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **26:04** Jesus said, “The words I just read to you are happening right now.” All the people were amazed. “Isn’t this the son of Joseph?” they said.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: G2501

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philemon 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy.”
- **34:04** “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with joy, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field.”
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great joy. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:


Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)
(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: Luke 1:39; 3:33)
Judas Iscariot

Facts:

Judas Iscariot was one of Jesus’ apostles. He was the one who betrayed Jesus to the Jewish leaders.

- The name “Iscariot” may mean “from Kerioth,” perhaps indicating that Judas grew up in that city.
- Judas Iscariot managed the apostles' money and regularly stole some of it to use for himself.
- Judas betrayed Jesus by telling the religious leaders where Jesus was so they could arrest him.
- After the religious leaders condemned Jesus to die, Judas regretted that he had betrayed Jesus, so he gave the betrayal money back to the Jewish leaders and then killed himself.
- Another apostle was also named Judas, as was one of Jesus' brothers. Jesus' brother was also known as “Jude.”

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, betray, Jewish leaders, Judas the son of James)

Bible References:

- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:19
- Mark 14:10-11
- Matthew 26:23-25

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 38:02 One of Jesus' disciples was a man named Judas. ... After Jesus and the disciples arrived in Jerusalem, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- 38:03 The Jewish leaders, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- 38:14 Judas came with the Jewish leaders, soldiers, and a large crowd. They were all carrying swords and clubs. Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, teacher,” and kissed him.
- 39:08 Meanwhile, Judas, the betrayer, saw that the Jewish leaders had condemned Jesus to die. He became full of sorrow and went away and killed himself.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2455, G2469

Judas son of James

Facts:

Judas son of James was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. Note that he was not the same man as Judas Iscariot.

- Often in the Bible, men with the same name were distinguished by mentioning whose son they were. Here, Judas was identified as the “son of James.”
- Another man named Judas was Jesus' brother. He was also known as “Jude.”
- The New Testament book called “Jude” was probably written by Jesus' brother Judas, since the author identified himself as the “brother of James.” James was another brother of Jesus.
- It is also possible that the book of Jude was written by Jesus' disciple, Judas, the son of James.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: James (son of Zebedee), Judas Iscariot, son, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2455

(Go back to: Luke 6:16)
Judea

Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

**judge**

**Definition:**

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: governor, judge, law)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:08
- Acts 07:27
- Luke 11:19
- Luke 12:14
- Matthew 05:25
- Ruth 01:01

**Word Data:**


**judge, judgment**

**Definition:**

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always judge honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **50:14** But God will judge everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.
Word Data:


judgment day

Definition:

The term "judgment day" refers to a future time when God will judge every person.

- God has made his Son, Jesus Christ, the judge of all people.
- On judgment day, Christ will judge people on the basis of his righteous character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "judgment time" since it could refer to more than one day.
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the end time when God will judge all people."
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is the name of a special day or time: "Judgment Day" or "Judgment Time."

(See also: judge, Jesus, heaven, hell)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:12
- Luke 11:31
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 10:14-15
- Matthew 12:36-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2962, H3117, H4941, G2250, G2920, G2962

(Go back to: Luke 10:12)
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.”
  (See: abstractnouns)
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, judge, righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

* **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
* **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
* **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
* **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 3 General Notes; 7:29; 7:35; 10:29; 11:42; 16:15; Notes; 18:14; 23:41)
kin, kinfolk, kindred, kinsman

Definition:
The term “kin” refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word “kinsman” refers specifically to a male relative.

- “Kin” can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as aunts, uncles, or cousins.
- In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a “kinsman-redeemer.”
- This term “kin” could also be translated as, “relative” or “family member.”

Bible References:
- Romans 16:9-11
- Ruth 02:20
- Ruth 03:09

Word Data:
- Strong's: H251, H1350, H4129, H4130, H7138, H7607, G4773

**kind [NOT kindness]**

**Definition:**

The term “kind” refers to a group or classification of something(s) that share some common characteristics but not all characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

**Translation Suggestions**

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

**Bible References:**

- Genesis 01:21
- Genesis 01:24
- Mark 09:29
- Matthew 13:47

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

*(Go back to: Luke 6:35)*
King of the Jews

Definition:

The term “King of the Jews” is a title that refers to Jesus, the Messiah.

- The first time the Bible records this title is when it was used by the wise men who traveled to Bethlehem looking for the baby who was "King of the Jews."
- The angel revealed to Mary that her son, a descendant of King David, would be a king whose reign would last forever.
- Before Jesus was crucified, Roman soldiers mockingly called Jesus “King of the Jews.” This title was also written on a piece of wood and nailed to the top of Jesus’ cross.
- Jesus truly is the King of the Jews and the king over all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "King of the Jews" could also be translated as “king over the Jews” or “king who rules over the Jews” or “supreme ruler of the Jews.”
- Check to see how the phrase “king of” is translated in other places in the translation.

(See also: descendant, Jew, Jesus, king, kingdom, kingdom of God, wise men)

Bible References:

- Luke 23:03
- Luke 23:38
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 27:11
- Matthew 27:35-37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 23:09 Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky. They realized it meant a new king of the Jews was born.
- 39:09 Pilate asked Jesus, “Are you the King of the Jews?”
- 39:12 The Roman soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- 40:02 Pilate commanded that they write, “King of the Jews” on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus’ head.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G935, G2453

(Go back to: Luke 23:3; 23:37; 23:38)
king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s).
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 08:06 One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- 16:01 The Israelites had no king, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- 16:18 Finally, the people asked God for a king like all the other nations had.
- 17:05 Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became king of Israel. He was a good king, and the people loved him.
- 21:06 God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe!

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: Luke 1:5; 10:24; 14:31; 19:38; 21:12; 22:25; 23:2; 23:3; 23:37; 23:38)
kingdom

Definition:
A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:
- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king's territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God's reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God's kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, king, kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, Judah, priest)

Bible References:
- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 13:02 God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- 18:04 God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- 18:07 Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the kingdom of Judah.
- 18:08 The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the kingdom of Israel.
- 21:08 A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and judges the people.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:
The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- The term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:05
- Acts 08:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 04:11
- John 03:03
- Luke 07:28
- Luke 10:09
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 03:02
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 05:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 24:02 He (John) preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!"
- 28:06 Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the kingdom of God! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God."
- 29:02 Jesus said, "The kingdom of God is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants."
- 34:01 Jesus told many other stories about the kingdom of God. For example, he said, "The kingdom of God is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."
- 34:03 Jesus told another story, "The kingdom of God is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
• 34:04 “The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again.”
• 34:05 “The kingdom of God is also like a perfect pearl of great value.”
• 42:09 He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the kingdom of God.
• 49:05 Jesus said that the kingdom of God is more valuable than anything else in the world.
• 50:02 When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will preach the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

• Strong’s: G932, G2316, G3772

kiss

Definition:
A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression to “kiss someone farewell” means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word “kiss” is used to mean “say goodbye to.” When Elisha said to Elijah, “Let me first go and kiss my father and mother,” he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:25-28
- Genesis 27:26-27
- Genesis 29:11
- Genesis 31:28
- Genesis 45:15
- Genesis 48:10
- Mark 14:45
- Matthew 26:48

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5390, H5401, G2705, G5368, G5370

**Definition:**

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

**Translation Suggestions**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

**Word Data:**


labor, laborer, work, hard work

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:09
- 1 Thessalonians 03:05
- Galatians 04:10-11
- James 05:04
- John 04:38
- Luke 10:02
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:


(See also: hard, labor pains)
**lamb, Lamb of God**

**Definition:**

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: *How to Translate Unknowns*)

(See also: sheep, shepherd)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Samuel 12:03
- Ezra 08:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 01:29
- John 01:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:03
- Revelation 15:3-4

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the lamb?”
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect lamb or goat and kill it.
- **24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:08** He read, “They led him like a lamb to be killed, and as a lamb is silent, he did not say a word.
- **48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a lamb for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.
- **48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect lamb and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.
unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Lamb, Lamb of God

Word Data:

• Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

(Go back to: Luke 10:3)
Lamech

Facts:

Lamech was the name of two men mentioned in the book of Genesis.

- The first Lamech mentioned was a descendant of Cain. He boasted to his two wives that he had killed a man for injuring him.
- The second Lamech was a descendant of Seth. He was also the father of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cain, Noah, Seth)

Bible References:

- Genesis 04:18-19
- Genesis 04:24
- Genesis 05:25
- Genesis 05:29
- Genesis 05:31
- Luke 03:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3929, G2984

(Go back to: Luke 3:36)
lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, life, light)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 08:16-18
- Matthew 05:15
- Matthew 06:22
- Matthew 25:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

(Go back to: Luke 8:16; 11:33; 11:34; 11:36; 12:35; 15:8)
Lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: bronze, gold, lamp, light, silver, temple)

Bible References:

- Daniel 05:5-6
- Exodus 37:17
- Mark 04:21-23
- Matthew 05:15-16
- Revelation 01:12-13
- Revelation 01:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

( Go back to: Luke 8:16; 11:33 )
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:
All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God's law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:
- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God's laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God's laws” could include “laws from God” or “God's commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God's instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh's laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:
- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 13:07 God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- 15:13 Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow his laws.
- 16:01 After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey God's laws.
- 21:05 In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- 27:01 Jesus answered, "What is written in God's law?"
28:01 Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘good?’ There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey God’s laws.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H3068, H4687, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

law, principle

Definition:
A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior, and is usually not written down or enforced. However, sometimes the term “law” is used to mean a “principle.”

- A “law” is similar to a “decree,” but the term “law” is generally used to refer to something written rather than spoken.
- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: law of Moses, decree, command, declare)

Bible References:
- Deuteronomy 04:02
- Esther 03:8-9
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:05
- John 18:31
- Romans 07:1

Word Data:

lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term “lawful” refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is “unlawful,” which simply means “not lawful.”

- In the Bible, something was “lawful” if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was “unlawful” was “not permitted” by those laws.
- To do something “lawfully” means to do it “properly” or “in the right way.”
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “lawful” could include “permitted” or “according to God's law” or “following our laws” or “proper” or “fitting.”
- The phrase “Is it lawful?” could also be translated as “Do our laws allow?” or “Is that something our laws permit?”

The terms “unlawful” and “not lawful” are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something “unlawful” if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something “unlawful” because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was “unlawful” for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term “lawless” describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of “lawlessness,” there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a “man of lawlessness,” or a “lawless one,” who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means “not lawful” or "lawbreaking."
- Other ways to translate “unlawful” could be “not permitted” or “not according to God's law” or “not conforming to our laws.”
- The expression “against the law” has the same meaning as “unlawful.”
- The term “lawless” could also be translated as “rebellious” or “disobedient” or “law-defying”.
- The term “lawlessness” could be translated as “not obeying any laws” or “rebellion (against God's laws).”
- The phrase “man of lawlessness” could be translated as “man who does not obey any laws” or “man who rebels against God's laws.”
- It is important to keep the concept of “law” in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term “unlawful” has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, law, Moses, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Matthew 07:21-23
- Matthew 12:02
• Matthew 12:04
• Matthew 12:10
• Mark 03:04
• Luke 06:02
• Acts 02:23
• Acts 10:28
• Acts 22:25
• 2 Thessalonians 02:03
• Titus 02:14
• 1 John 03:4-6

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H6530, G111, G113, G266, G458, G459, G1832, G3545

(Go back to: Luke 6:2; 6:4; 6:9; 14:3; 20:22; 22:37)
leper, leprosy

Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, clean)

Bible References:

- Luke 05:13
- Luke 17:12
- Mark 01:40
- Mark 14:03
- Matthew 08:03
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 11:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

(Go back to: Luke 4:27; 5:12; 5:13; 7:22; 17:12)
Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(Go back to: Luke 10:32)
life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives' could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life" could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph’s brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?”
- **35:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the **Life**.”
- **44:05** “You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

light, lighting, lightning, daylight, sunlight, twilight, enlighten

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: Metaphor)

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: darkness, holy, righteous, true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 John 02:08
- 2 Corinthians 04:06
- Acts 26:18
- Isaiah 02:05
- John 01:05
- Matthew 05:16
- Matthew 06:23
- Nehemiah 09:12-13
- Revelation 18:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

like, likeminded, likeness, likewise, alike, unlike, as if

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: Simile)
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God's “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or to “be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as to “be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: beast, flesh, image of God, image, perish)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 01:05
- Mark 08:24
- Matthew 17:02
- Matthew 18:03
- Psalms 073:05
- Revelation 01:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1823, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G2596, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4833, G5108, G5613, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

**loins, waist**

**Definition:**

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: euphemism)
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: euphemism)
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: descendant, gird, offspring)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:13
- 2 Chronicles 06:09
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34
- Job 15:27

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2504, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

(Go back to: Luke 12:35)
lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God's word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the Lord your God.’”
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:03** This is the year of the Lord's favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, “Love the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, “Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **43:09** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and Messiah!”
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her masters as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be saved.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

Lot

Facts:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

- He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
- Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
- Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
- When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
- The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that they could escape.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Ammon, Haran, Moab, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3876, G3091

(Go back to: Luke 17:28; 17:29; 17:32)
lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using "lots" to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the "lots") were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the "lots" actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or "by throwing lots," etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, priest, Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:07
- Luke 01:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1486, H5307, G2819, G2975

(Go back to: Luke 23:34)
love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
   - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
   - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.

3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:07
- 1 John 03:02
- 1 Thessalonians 04:10
- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:06
- Jeremiah 02:02
- John 03:16
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
- **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:


majesty

Definition:
The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

  • In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
  • “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

  • This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
  • “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: king)

Bible References:

  • 2 Peter 01:16-18
  • Daniel 04:36
  • Isaiah 02:10
  • Jude 01:25
  • Micah 05:04

Word Data:

  • Strong’s: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

(Go back to: Luke 9:43)
manager, steward, stewardship

Definition:
The term “manager” or “steward” in the Bible refers to a servant who was entrusted with taking care of his master’s property and business dealings.

• A steward was given a lot of responsibility, which included supervising the work of other servants.
• The term “manager” is a more modern term for a steward. Both terms refer to someone who manages practical affairs for someone else.

Translation Suggestions:
• This could also be translated as “supervisor” or “household organizer” or “servant who manages” or “person who organizes.”

(See also: servant)

Bible References:
• 1 Timothy 03:4-5
• Genesis 39:04
• Genesis 43:16
• Isaiah 55:10-11
• Luke 08:03
• Luke 16:02
• Matthew 20:8-10
• Titus 01:07

Word Data:
• Strong’s: H376, H4453, H5057, H6485, G2012, G3621, G3623

(Go back to: Luke 8:3; 12:42; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:4; 16:8)
Martha

Facts:

Martha was a woman from Bethany who followed Jesus.

- Martha had a sister named Mary and a brother named Lazarus, who also followed Jesus.
- One time when Jesus was visiting them in their home, Martha was distracted by meal preparation while her sister Mary sat and listened to Jesus teach.
- When Lazarus died, Martha told Jesus that she believed that Jesus is the Christ, the Son of God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Lazarus, Mary (sister of Martha))

Bible References:

- John 11:02
- John 12:1-3
- Luke 10:39

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3136

(Go back to: Luke 10:38; 10:40; 10:41)
Mary (sister of Martha)

Facts:

Mary was a woman from Bethany who followed Jesus.

- Mary had a sister named Martha and a brother named Lazarus who also followed Jesus.
- One time Jesus said that Mary had chosen what was best when she chose to listen to him teach rather than being anxious about preparing him a meal as Martha was.
- Jesus brought Mary's brother Lazarus back to life.
- Sometime after that, while Jesus was eating in someone's home in Bethany, Mary poured expensive perfume on his feet in order to worship him.
- Jesus praised her for doing this and said that she was preparing his body for burial.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethany, frankincense, Lazarus, Martha)

Bible References:

- John 11:1-2
- John 12:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

(Go back to: Luke 10:39; 10:42)
Mary Magdalene

Facts:

Mary Magdalene was one of several women who believed in Jesus and followed him in his ministry. She was known as the one whom Jesus had healed from seven demons who had controlled her.

- Mary Magdalene and some other women helped support Jesus and his apostles by giving to them.
- She is also mentioned as one of the women who were the first to see Jesus after he rose from the dead.
- As Mary Magdalene stood outside the empty tomb, she saw Jesus standing there and he told her to go tell the other disciples that he was alive again.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, demon-possessed)

Bible References:

- Luke 08:1-3
- Luke 24:8-10
- Mark 15:39-41
- Matthew 27:54-56

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3094, G3137

(Go back to: Luke 8:2; 24:10)
Mary, the mother of Jesus

Facts:

Mary was a young woman living in the city of Nazareth who was pledged to be married to a man named Joseph. God chose Mary to be the mother of Jesus the Messiah, the Son of God.

- The Holy Spirit miraculously caused Mary to become pregnant while she was a virgin.
- An angel told Mary that the baby to be born to her was the Son of God and that she must name him Jesus.
- Mary loved God and praised him for being gracious to her.
- Joseph married Mary, but she remained a virgin until after the baby was born.
- Mary thought deeply about the amazing things that the shepherds and wise men said about the baby Jesus.
- Mary and Joseph took the baby Jesus to be dedicated at the temple. Later they took him to Egypt to escape King Herod's plot to kill the baby. Eventually they moved back to Nazareth.
- When Jesus was an adult, Mary was with him when he changed water to wine at a wedding in Cana.
- The gospels also mention that Mary was at the cross when Jesus was dying. He told his disciple John to take care of her like his own mother.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Cana, Egypt, Herod the Great, Jesus, Joseph (NT), Son of God, virgin)

Bible References:

- John 02:04
- John 02:12
- Luke 01:29
- Luke 01:35
- Mark 06:03
- Matthew 01:16
- Matthew 01:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** When Elizabeth was six months pregnant, the same angel appeared to Elizabeth's relative, whose name was Mary. She was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him Jesus and he will be the Messiah."
- **22:05** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God." Mary believed and accepted what the angel said.
- **22:06** Soon after the angel spoke to Mary, she went and visited Elizabeth. As soon as Elizabeth heard Mary's greeting, Elizabeth's baby jumped inside her.
- **23:02** The angel said, "Joseph, do not be afraid to take Mary as your wife. The baby in her body is from the Holy Spirit."
- **23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- **49:01** An angel told a virgin named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3137

Matthew, Levi

Facts:
Matthew was one of the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his apostles. He was also known as Levi, son of Alpheus.

- Levi (Matthew) was a tax-collector from Capernaum before he met Jesus.
- Matthew wrote the gospel that bears his name.
- There are several other men named Levi in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, Levite, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Luke 05:27
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 02:14
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 09:09
- Matthew 10:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3017, G3156

(Go back to: Luke 5:27; 5:29; 6:15)
mediator

Definition:
A mediator is a person who helps two or more people to resolve their disagreements or conflicts with each other. He helps them to become reconciled.

- Because people have sinned, they are God's enemies who deserve his wrath and punishment. Because of sin, the relationship between God and his people is broken.
- Jesus is the mediator between God the Father and his people, restoring that broken relationship through his death as payment for their sin.

Translation Suggestions:
- Ways to translate “mediator” could be “go-between person” or “reconciler” or “person who brings peace.”
- Compare this term with how the term “priest” is translated. It is best if the term “mediator” is translated differently.

(See also: priest, reconcile)

Bible References:
- 1 Timothy 02:05
- Galatians 03:20
- Hebrews 08:06
- Hebrews 12:24
- Luke 12:14

Word Data:
- Strong's: H3887, G3312, G3316

(See back to: Luke 12:14)
mercy, merciful

Definition:
The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

• The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
• A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
• Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
• We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
• God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
• The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
• To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: compassion, forgive)

Bible References:

• 1 Peter 01:3-5
• 1 Timothy 01:13
• Daniel 09:17
• Exodus 34:06
• Genesis 19:16
• Hebrews 10:28-29
• James 02:13
• Luke 06:35-36
• Matthew 09:27
• Philippians 02:25-27
• Psalms 041:4-6
• Romans 12:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 19:16 They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and mercy to others.
• 19:17 He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
• 20:12 The Persian Empire was strong but merciful to the people it conquered.
• 27:11 Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was merciful to him.”
• 32:11 But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had mercy on you.”
• 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be merciful to me because I am a sinner.’”
Word Data:


messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

• In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
• An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
• John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
• Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

• 1 Kings 19:1-3
• 1 Samuel 06:21
• 2 Kings 01:1-2
• Luke 07:27
• Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: Luke 7:24; 7:27; 9:52)
might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:
The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:


mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 06:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

(Go back to: Luke 1:51; 10:27; 24:45)
miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:
A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God's power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 16:08 Gideon asked God for two signs so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- 19:14 God did many miracles through Elisha.
- 37:10 Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
• **49:02** Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Luke 8 General Notes; 10:13; 19:37)
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

• Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
• The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
• A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
• The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
• A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

• 2 Peter 03:04
• Acts 02:12-13
• Galatians 06:6-8
• Genesis 39:13-15
• Luke 22:63-65
• Mark 10:34
• Matthew 09:23-24
• Matthew 20:19
• Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 21:12 Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah.
• 39:05 The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and mocked him.
• 39:12 The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
• 40:04 Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
• 40:05 The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 14:29; 18:32; 22:63; 23:11; 23:36)
**month, monthly**

**Definition:**

The term “month” refers to a period of time lasting about four weeks. The number of days in each month varies depending on whether a lunar or solar calendar is used.

- In the lunar calendar, the length of each month is based on the amount of time it takes for the moon to go around the earth, about twenty-nine days. In this system there are twelve or thirteen months in a year. Despite the year being twelve or thirteen months, the first month is always called the same name even though it may be a different season.
- The “new moon,” or beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light, marks the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar.
- All the names of months referred to in the Bible are those of the lunar calendar since this was the system used by the Israelites. Modern Jews still use this calendar for religious purposes.
- The modern-day solar calendar is based on how long it takes the earth to go around the sun (about 365 days). In this system, the year is always divided up into twelve months, with the length of each month ranging from twenty-eight to thirty-one days.

**Bible References:**

- 1 Samuel 20:34
- Acts 18:9-11
- Hebrews 11:23
- Numbers 10:10

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2320, H3391, H3393, G3376

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses’ parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses’ sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses’ life was spared when the pharaoh’s daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites’ escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 09:12 One day while Moses was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- 12:05 Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you.”
- 12:07 God told Moses to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 13:07 Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to Moses.

\n
Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

Most High

Facts:
The term “Most High” is a title for God. It refers to his greatness or authority.

- The meaning of this term is similar to the meaning of “Sovereign” or “Supreme.”
- The word “high” in this title does not refer to physical height or distance. It refers to greatness.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can also be translated as “Most High God” or “Most Supreme being” or “God Most High” or “Greatest One” or “Supreme One” or “God, who is Greater than all.”
- If a word like “high” is used, make sure it does not refer to being physically high or tall.

(See also: God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Acts 16:16-18
- Daniel 04:17-18
- Deuteronomy 32:7-8
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Hebrews 07:1-3
- Hosea 07:16
- Lamentations 03:35
- Luke 01:32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5945, G5310

(Go back to: Luke 1:32; 1:35; 1:76; 6:35; 8:28)
Mount of Olives

Definition:

The Mount of Olives is a mountain or large hill located near the east side of the city of Jerusalem. It is about 787 meters high.

• In the Old Testament, this mountain is sometimes referred to as “the mountain that is east of Jerusalem.”
• The New Testament records several occasions when Jesus and his disciples went to the Mount of Olives to pray and rest.
• Jesus was arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane, which is located on the Mount of Olives.
• This could also be translated as “Olive Hill” or “Olive Tree Mountain.”

(See also: Translate Names)

(See also: Gethsemane, olive)

Bible References:

• Luke 19:29
• Luke 19:37
• Mark 13:03
• Matthew 21:1-3
• Matthew 24:3-5
• Matthew 26:30

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2022, H2132, G3735, G1636

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

• In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
• The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
• Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
• The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
• The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, sin)

Bible References:

• 1 Samuel 15:34-35
• 2 Samuel 01:11
• Genesis 23:02
• Luke 07:31-32
• Matthew 11:17

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 6:25; 8:52)
multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 08:01
- Genesis 09:07
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 04:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G4052, G4129

( Go back to: Luke 12:15; 21:4 )
mystery, hidden truth

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “mystery” refers to something unknown or difficult to understand that God is now explaining.

- The New Testament states that the gospel of Christ was a mystery that was not known in past ages.
- One of the specific points described as a mystery is that Jews and Gentiles would be equal in Christ.
- This term could also be translated as “secret” or “hidden things” or “something unknown.”

(See also: Christ, Gentile, good news, Jew, true)

Bible References:
- Colossians 04:2-4
- Ephesians 06:19-20
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:10-12
- Matthew 13:11

Word Data:
- Strong's: H1219, H7328, G3466

(Go back to: Luke 8:10)
Naaman

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, Jordan River, leprosy, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:6-7
- 2 Kings 05:01
- Luke 04:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 19:14 One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- 19:15 At first Naaman was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- 26:06 “He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel's enemies.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G3497

(Go back to: Luke 4:27)
Nahor

Facts:

Nahor was the name of two relatives of Abraham, his grandfather and his brother.

- Abraham's brother Nahor was the grandfather of Isaac's wife Rebekah.
- The phrase "city of Nahor" could mean "the city named Nahor" or "the city where Nahor had lived" or "Nahor's city."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Rebekah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:24-27
- Genesis 31:53
- Joshua 24:02
- Luke 03:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5152, G3493

(Go back to: Luke 3:34)
name

Definition:
The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

• In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
• The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
• Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
• The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

• An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
• Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
• The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
• The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
• The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
• The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

• 1 John 02:12
• 2 Timothy 02:19
• Acts 04:07
• Acts 04:12
• Acts 09:27
• Genesis 12:02
• Genesis 35:10
• Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(See also: call)

Bible References:

• 1 John 02:12
• 2 Timothy 02:19
• Acts 04:07
• Acts 04:12
• Acts 09:27
• Genesis 12:02
• Genesis 35:10
• Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(See also: call)
Nathan

Facts:
Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

• God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
• Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
• David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: David, faithful, prophet, Uriah)

Bible References:
• 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
• 2 Chronicles 09:29
• 2 Samuel 12:1-3
• Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:
• 17:07 God sent the prophet Nathan to David with this message, “Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me.”
• 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.

Word Data:
• Strong’s: H5416, G3481

(Go back to: Luke 3:31)
nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonjews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: Luke 7:5; 12:30; 21:10; 21:25; 23:2; 24:47)
Nazareth, Nazarene

Facts:

Nazareth is a town in the region of Galilee in northern Israel. It is about 100 kilometers north of Jerusalem, and it takes about three to five days to travel there on foot.

- Joseph and Mary were from Nazareth, and this is where they raised Jesus. That is why Jesus was known as “the Nazarene.”
- Many of the Jews living in Nazareth did not respect Jesus’ teaching because he had grown up among them, and they thought he was just an ordinary person.
- Once, when Jesus was teaching in Nazareth’s synagogue, the Jews there tried to kill him because he claimed to be the Messiah and had rebuked them for rejecting him.
- The remark Nathaniel made when he heard that Jesus was from Nazareth indicated that this city was not thought of very highly.

(See also: Christ, Galilee, Joseph (NT), Mary)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:9-11
- John 01:43-45
- Luke 01:26-29
- Mark 16:5-7
- Matthew 02:23
- Matthew 21:9-11
- Matthew 26:71-72

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 23:04 Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to Bethlehem because their ancestor was David whose hometown was Bethlehem.
- 26:02 Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood.
- 26:07 The people of Nazareth dragged Jesus out of the place of worship and brought him to the edge of a cliff to throw him off of it in order to kill him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3478, G3479, G3480

(See also: Luke 1:26; 2:4; 2:39; 2:51; 4:16; 4:34; 18:37; 24:19)
neighbor, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: adversary, parable, people group, Samaria)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26-28
- Ephesians 04:25-27
- Galatians 05:14
- James 02:08
- John 09:8-9
- Luke 01:58
- Matthew 05:43
- Matthew 19:19
- Matthew 22:39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

Nineveh, Ninevite

Facts:

Nineveh was the capital city of Assyrian empire. A “Ninevite” was a person who lived in Nineveh.

- God sent the prophet Jonah to warn the Ninevites to turn from their wicked ways. The people stopped acting so violently and God did not destroy them at that time.
- The prophets Nahum and Zephaniah both prophesied that God would destroy Nineveh as judgment for their sin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Assyria, Jonah, repent, turn)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Jonah 01:03
- Jonah 03:03
- Luke 11:32
- Matthew 12:41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5210, G3535, G3536

(Go back to: Luke 11:30; 11:32)
Noah

Facts:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: descendant, ark)

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:30-31
- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:08
- Genesis 08:01
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:02 But Noah found favor with God.
- 03:04 Noah obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- 03:13 Two months later God said to Noah, “You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.” So Noah and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G3575

(Go back to: Luke 3:36; 17:26; 17:27)
noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 19:12)
oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well. Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: Luke 1:73)
obey, obedient

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what has been commanded by a person or law. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Sometimes a command prohibits doing something, as in “do not steal.” In this case, to “obey” means not to steal.

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority. For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, command, disobey, kingdom, law)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:32
- Acts 06:7
- Genesis 28:6-7
- James 01:25
- James 02:10
- Luke 06:47
- Matthew 07:26
- Matthew 19:20-22
- Matthew 28:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** “Because you (Abraham) have _obeyed_ me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or obey his commands.
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G3980, G3982, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

(Go back to: Luke 8:15; 8:25; 11:28; 17:6)
oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: Luke 7:37; 7:38; 7:46; 10:34; 16:6)
olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

on high, in the highest

Definition:

The terms “on high” and “in the highest” are expressions that usually mean “in heaven.”

- Another meaning for the expression “in the highest” could be “the most honored.”
- This expression could also be used literally, as in the expression “in the highest tree,” which means “in the tallest tree.”
- The expression “on high” could also refer to being high in the sky, such as a bird’s nest that is on high. In that context it could be translated as “high in the sky” or “at the top of a tall tree.”
- The word “high” could also indicate the elevated location or importance of a person or thing.
- The expression “from on high” could be translated as “from heaven.”

(See also: heaven, honor)

Bible References:

- Lamentations 01:13
- Psalms 069:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4605, H4791, H7682, G1722, G5308, G5310, G5311

(Go back to: Luke 1:78; 2:14; 19:38; 24:49)
ordain, ordained, ordination, planned long ago, set up, prepared

Definition:
To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, to “ordain” could be translated as to “assign” or to “appoint” or to “command” or to “make a rule” or to “institute.”

(See also: command, covenant, decree, law, law, priest)

Bible References:
- 1 Kings 12:31-32
- 2 Samuel 17:13-14
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Numbers 03:03
- Psalms 111:7-9

Word Data:
- Strong's: H3245, H4390, H6186, H6213, H6680, H7760, H8239, G1299, G2525, G4270, G4282

(Go back to: Luke 3:13)
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: Luke 1:6)
palace

Definition:
The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: courtyard, high priest, king)

Bible References:
- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Samuel 11:2-3
- Daniel 05:5-6
- Matthew 26:3-5
- Psalms 045:08

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 7:25)
parable

Definition:

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Luke 05:36
- Luke 06:39
- Luke 08:04
- Luke 08:9-10
- Mark 04:01
- Matthew 13:03
- Matthew 13:10
- Matthew 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1819, H4912, G3850, G3942

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

• The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
• The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
• God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

• The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
• It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

• 1 Corinthians 05:07
• 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
• 2 Kings 23:23
• Deuteronomy 16:02
• Exodus 12:26-28
• Ezra 06:21-22
• John 13:01
• Joshua 05:10-11
• Leviticus 23:4-6
• Numbers 09:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

• 12:14 God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the Passover every year.
• 38:01 Every year, the Jews celebrated the Passover. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
• 38:04 Jesus celebrated the Passover with his disciples.
• 48:09 When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the Passover.
• 48:10 Jesus is our Passover Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the Passover celebration.

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H6453, G3957

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 15:06 God had commanded the Israelites not to make a peace treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- 15:12 Then God gave Israel peace along all its borders.
- 16:03 Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- 21:13 He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 48:14 David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and peace, forever.
- 50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

people of God

Definition:
The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the "Church," meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the "sons of God" or "children of God."
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God's people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God's people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: Israel, people group)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:02
- Acts 07:34
- Acts 07:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- Micah 06:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

(Go back to: Luke 1:68; 1:77; 2:32; 7:16)
people, people group,

Definition:
The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the people groups of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere.”
42:10 "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."

48:11 Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

50:03 He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

**Word Data:**


1745 / 1953
perfect, perfected, perfection, complete

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

- Hebrews 12:02
- James 03:02
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Psalms 019:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3632, H3634, H4359, H8003, H8503, H8537, H8549, H8552, G199, G2675, G2676, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050

(Go back to: Luke 2:43; 13:32; 22:37)
**perish**

**Definition:**

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

**Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"**

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or “cease to exist.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or persecution, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you persecute me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are persecuting me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has persecuted the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(Go back to: Luke 11:49; 21:12)
persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: patient, trial)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:11
- Ephesians 06:18
- James 05:9-11
- Luke 08:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong's: G3115, G4343, G5281

(Go back to: Luke 8:15)
perverse, perversion, pervert, depraved, malicious, devious, dishonest, distortion

Definition:

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God's standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God's straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God's commands” or “living in a way that rejects God's teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, deceive, disobey, evil, turn)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:47
- 1 Samuel 20:30
- Job 33:27-28
- Luke 23:02
- Psalms 101:4-6

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 3:5; 9:41)
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

Facts:

Peter was one of Jesus’ twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter’s name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him “Cephas,” which means “stone” or “rock” in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means “stone” or “rock” in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disciple, apostle)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:25
- Galatians 02:6-8
- Galatians 02:12
- Mark 03:16
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 28:09 Peter said to Jesus, “We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?”
- 29:01 One day Peter asked Jesus, “Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?”
- 31:05 Then Peter said to Jesus, “Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water.” Jesus told Peter, “Come!”
- 36:01 One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, Peter, James, and John with him.
- 38:09 Peter replied, “Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!” Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times.”
- 38:15 As the soldiers arrested Jesus, Peter pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- 44:08 Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2786, G4074, G4613

Pharisee

Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name “Pharisee” comes from the word to “separate.”
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: council, Jewish leaders, law, Sadducee)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:04
- John 03:1-2
- Luke 11:44
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 05:20
- Matthew 09:11
- Matthew 12:02
- Matthew 12:38
- Philippians 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5330

Philip, the apostle

Facts:

Philip the apostle was one of the original twelve disciples of Jesus. He was from the town of Bethsaida.

- Philip brought Nathanael to meet Jesus.
- Jesus questioned Philip about how to provide food for a crowd of over 5,000 people.
- At the last Passover supper that Jesus ate with his disciples, he talked to them about God, his Father. Philip asked Jesus to show them the Father.
- Some languages may prefer to spell this Philip's name in a different way from the other Philip (the evangelist) to avoid confusion.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:14
- John 01:44
- John 06:06
- Luke 06:14
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G5376

(Go back to: Luke 6:14)
pierce, pierced

Definition:

The term “pierce” means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus’ side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: cross, Jesus, servant, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Job 16:13
- Job 20:23-25
- John 19:37
- Psalms 022:16

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 2:35)
pig, pork, swine

Definition:
A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called “pork.” The general term for pigs and related animals is “swine.”

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a “wild boar.” Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as “hogs.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:22
- Mark 05:13
- Matthew 07:6
- Matthew 08:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2386, G5519

(Go back to: Luke 8:32; 8:33; 15:15; 15:16)
Pilate

Facts:

Pilate was the governor of the Roman province of Judea who sentenced Jesus to death.

- Because Pilate was the governor, he had the authority to put criminals to death.
- The Jewish religious leaders wanted Pilate to crucify Jesus, so they lied and said that Jesus was a criminal.
- Pilate realized that Jesus was not guilty, but he was afraid of the crowd and wanted to please them, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: crucify, governor, guilt, Judea, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:27-28
- Acts 13:28
- Luke 23:02
- Mark 15:02
- Matthew 27:13
- Matthew 27:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 39:09 Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to Pilate, the Roman governor. They hoped that Pilate would condemn Jesus as guilty and sentenced him to be killed. Pilate asked Jesus, “Are you the King of the Jews?”
- 39:10 Pilate said, “What is truth?”
- 39:11 After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no guilt in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not guilty.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not guilty!”
- 39:12 Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to crucify Jesus.
- 40:02 Pilate commanded that a sign be put above Jesus’ head that read, “King of the Jews.”
- 41:02 Pilate said, “Take some soldiers and make the tomb as secure as you can.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G4091, G4194

(Go back to: Luke 3:1; 13:1; 23:1; 23:3; 23:4; 23:6; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:20; 23:24; 23:52)
pit, pitfall, trenches

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, hell, prison)

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- Job 33:18
- Luke 06:39
- Proverbs 01:12

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 6:39)
plant, planted, implanted, replanted, transplanted, sow

Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, a if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person's good actions will bring a good result and a person's evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: evil, good, harvest)

Bible References:

- Galatians 06:08
- Luke 08:05
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:04
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2221, H2232, H2233, H2236, H4218, H4302, H5193, H7971, H8362, G4687, G4703, G5452

(Go back to: Luke 8:5; 12:24; 19:21; 19:22)
plow, plowed, plowers, plowman, plowshares, unplowed

Definition:
A “plow” is a farm tool that is used for breaking up soil to prepare a field for planting.

- Plows have sharp, pointed prongs that dig into the soil. They usually have handles that the farmer uses to guide the plow.
- In Bible times, plows were usually pulled by a pair of oxen or other work animals.
- Most plows were made of hard wood, except for the sharp points which were made of a metal, such as bronze or iron.

(See also: bronze, ox)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Deuteronomy 21:04
- Luke 09:62
- Luke 17:07
- Psalm 141:5-7

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 9:62; 17:7)
possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:


power, powerful, powerfully

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, miracle)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:05
- Colossians 01:11-12
- Genesis 31:29
- Jeremiah 18:21
- Jude 01:25
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 01:17
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 26:64
- Philippians 03:21
- Psalm 080:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:05 The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- 26:01 After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- 32:15 Immediately Jesus realized that power had gone out from him.
- 42:11 Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, “Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you power when the Holy Spirit comes on you.”
- 43:06 “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”
- 44:08 Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”
Word Data:


praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:13 The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- 17:08 When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and praised God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- 22:07 Zechariah said, “Praise God, because he has remembered his people!”
- 43:13 They (disciples) enjoyed praising God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- 47:08 They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of praise to God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

pray, prayer

Definition:
The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 06:05 Isaac prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- 13:12 But Moses prayed for them, and God listened to his prayer and did not destroy them.
- 19:08 Then the prophets of Baal prayed to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- 21:07 Priests also prayed to God for the people.
- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.
- 43:13 The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and prayed with each other.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:


preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:
To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:
- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 24:02 He (John) preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- 30:01 Jesus sent his apostles to preach and to teach people in many different villages.
- 38:01 About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- 45:06 But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- 45:07 He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- 46:10 Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
• **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

• **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

**priest, priesthood**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the priest of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was
sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.

- 19:07 So the priests of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- 21:07 An Israelite priest was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. Priests also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: Luke 1:5; 1:9; 5:14; 6:4; 10:31; 17:14)
prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: captive)

Bible References:

- Acts 25:04
- Ephesians 04:01
- Luke 12:58
- Mark 06:17
- Matthew 05:26
- Matthew 14:03
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:


**profit, profitable, unprofitable**

**Definition:**

In general, the terms “profit” and “profitable” refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is “profitable” to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

- More specifically, the term “profit” often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is “profitable” if it gains more money than it spends.
- Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
- 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is “profitable” for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible’s teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God’s will.

The term “unprofitable” means to not be useful.

- It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
- Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
- This could be translated as “useless” or “worthless” or “not useful” or “unworthy” or “not beneficial” or “giving no benefit.”

(See also: worthy)

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “profit” could also be translated as “benefit” or “help” or “gain.”
- The term “profitable” could be translated as “useful” or “beneficial” or “helpful.”
- To “profit from” something could be translated as “benefit from” or “gain money from” or “receive help from.”
- In the context of a business, “profit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “money gained” or “surplus of money” or “extra money.”

**Bible References:**

- Job 15:03
- Proverbs 10:16
- Jeremiah 02:08
- Ezekiel 18:12-13
- John 06:63
- Mark 08:36
- Matthew 16:26
- 2 Peter 02:1-3

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1215, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7737, H7939, G147, G255, G512, G888, G889, G890, G1281, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G4297, G4298, G4851, G5539, G5622, G5623, G5624

(See also: worthy)

(See also: Luke 9:25; 18:12; 19:15)
promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term "promise" refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term "promise" refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
- To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:09
- James 01:12
- Numbers 30:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- 03:16 God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his promise. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he promised and so would his people.
- 04:08 God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God's promise.
- 05:04 “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise.”
- 08:15 The covenant promises that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- 17:14 Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his promises.
- 50:01 Jesus promised he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his promise.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

(Go back to: Luke 24:49)
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 17:13 God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- 19:01 Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them prophets. The prophets heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- 19:06 All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the prophets and sometimes even killed them.

The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.

This fulfills the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’

This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’

Moses was a great prophet who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

(See back to: Luke 15:30)
prostrate, worship

Definition:
To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:
- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 13:04 Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- 14:02 The Canaanites did not worship or obey God. They worshiped false gods and did many evil things.
- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 18:12 All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped idols.
- 25:07 Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- 26:02 On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of worship.
- 47:01 There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and worshiped God.
- 49:18 God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: Luke 4:7; 4:8; 24:52)
proud, pride, prideful

Definition:
The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, joy)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 04:02 They were very proud, and they did not care about what God said.
- 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 1:51)
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:07 God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- 16:02 Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- 19:16 The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- 48:06 Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- 48:10 When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.
- 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- 49:11 Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be punished and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 23:16; 23:22)
pure, purify, purification

Definition:
To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, clean, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 2:22)
purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

• In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
• Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
• Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
• Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
• Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
• Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

• 2 Chronicles 02:13-14
• Daniel 05:7
• Daniel 05:29-31
• Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H710, H711, H713, G4209, G4210, G4211

(Go back to: Luke 16:19)
definition:
A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Athaliah, Esther, king, Persia ruler, Sheba)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- Acts 08:27
- Esther 01:17
- Luke 11:31
- Matthew 12:42

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

(Go back to: Luke 11:31)
rage

Facts:
The term "rage" refers to intense anger. Often, the term is used to describe an angry person who is out of control in some way.

- When used as a verb, the term "rage" can mean to move powerfully, such as in descriptions of a “raging” storm or ocean waves that “rage.”
- To be “filled with rage” means to have an overwhelming feeling of extreme anger.

(See also: self-control)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:25
- Daniel 03:13
- Luke 04:28
- Numbers 25:11
- Proverbs 19:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 6:11; 8:24)
raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The phrase “raise up” sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:14 The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also raise him from the dead.
41:05 “Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would!”
43:07 “Although Jesus died, God raised him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’ We are witnesses to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”
44:05 “You killed the author of life, but God raised him from the dead.”
44:08 Peter answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”
48:04 This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
49:02 He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
49:12 You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

rebels, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebels" means to refuse to submit to someone's authority. A “rebels" person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebels" could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebels" could also be translated as “continually disobedient" or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebels" means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience" or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion" or “a rebellion" can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 14:14 After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had rebelled against God were dead.
- 18:07 Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam.
- 18:09 Jeroboam rebelled against God and caused the people to sin.
- 18:13 Most of the people of Judah also rebelled against God and worshiped other gods.
- 20:07 But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against Babylon.
- 45:03 Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and rebellious people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: Luke 23:19; 23:25)
rebuke

**Definition:**

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

**Bible References:**

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

**Word Data:**


receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 05:09
- 1 Thessalonians 01:06
- 1 Thessalonians 04:01
- Acts 08:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 09:05
- Malachi 03:10-12
- Psalms 049:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- 45:05 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- 49:06 He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- 49:10 When Jesus died on the cross, he received your punishment.
- 49:13 God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G368, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562
**redeem, redeemer, redemption**

**Definition:**

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

**Bible References:**

- Colossians 01:13-14
- Ephesians 01:7-8
- Ephesians 05:16
- Galatians 03:13-14
- Galatians 04:05
- Luke 02:38
- Ruth 02:20

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G59, G629, G1805, G3084, G3085

(uploaded on: 2000-09-19)

(uploaded on: 2000-09-19)
reed

Facts:
The term “reed” refers to a plant with a long stalk that grows in the water, usually along the edge of a river or stream.

- The reeds in the Nile River where Moses was hidden as a baby were also called “bulrushes.” They were tall, hollow stalks growing in dense clumps in the river water.
- These fibrous plants were used in ancient Egypt for making paper, baskets, and boats.
- The stalk of the reed plant is flexible and is easily bent over by the wind.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Moses, Nile River)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:15
- Luke 07:24
- Matthew 11:07
- Matthew 12:20
- Psalm 068:30

Word Data:

- Strong's: H98, H100, H260, H5488, H6169, H7070, G2563

(Go back to: Luke 7:24)
reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(For back to: Luke 1:33; 3:1; 19:14; 19:27)
reject, rejected, rejection

Definition:

To “reject” someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing.

- The term “reject” can also mean to “refuse to believe in” something.
- To reject God also means to refuse to obey him.
- When the Israelites rejected Moses’ leadership, it means that they were rebelling against his authority. They did not want to obey him.
- The Israelites showed that they were rejecting God when they worshiped false gods.
- The term “push away” is the literal meaning of this word. Other languages may have a similar expression that means to reject or refuse to believe someone or something.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “reject” could also be translated by “not accept” or “stop helping” or “refuse to obey” or “stop obeying.”
- In the expression “stone that the builders rejected,” the term “rejected” could be translated as “refused to use” or “did not accept” or “threw away” or “got rid of as worthless.”
- In the context of people who rejected God’s commandments, rejected could be translated as “refused to obey” his commands or “stubbornly chose to not accept” God’s laws.

(See also: command, disobey, obey, stiff-necked)

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:12-14
- Hosea 04:6-7
- Isaiah 41:09
- John 12:48-50
- Mark 07:09

Word Data:


(See also: Luke 7:30; 9:22; 10:16; 17:25; 20:17)
repent, repentance

Definition:
The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:19-20
- Luke 03:3
- Luke 03:8
- Luke 05:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 03:03
- Matthew 03:11
- Matthew 04:17
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites repented and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not repent.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:05** “So now, repent and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

(Go back to: Luke 3:3; 3:8; 5:32; Notes; 10:13; Notes; 11:32; 13:3; 13:5; Notes; 15:7; 15:10; 16:30; 17:3; 17:4; 24:47)
report, reported, reputation

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don't talk about this with anyone” or “Don't tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- Acts 05:22-23
- John 12:38
- Luke 05:15
- Luke 08:34-35
- Matthew 28:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1834, G2036, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3377

(Go back to: Luke 4:14; 4:37; 5:15; 7:17; 7:18; 7:22; 8:20; 8:34; 8:36; 8:39; 8:47; 9:10; 9:36; 13:1; 14:21; 24:9)
rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 11:24; 12:19; 23:56)
resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person's “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: life, death, raise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:13
- 1 Peter 03:21
- Hebrews 11:35
- John 05:28-29
- Luke 20:27
- Luke 20:36
- Matthew 22:23
- Matthew 22:30
- Philippians 03:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:14 Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- 37:05 Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

(Go back to: Luke 14:14; 20:27; 20:33; 20:35; 20:36)
**return**

**Definition:**

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)

**Bible References:**

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(See also: turn)
reveal, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:1-2
- Ephesians 03:05
- Galatians 01:12
- Lamentations 02:13-14
- Matthew 10:26
- Philippians 03:15
- Revelation 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

(Go back to: Luke 2:26; 2:32; 2:35; 8:17; 10:21; 10:22; 12:2; 17:30)
reward, prize, deserve,

**Definition:**

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves. However, this is different than the concept of "wages," which refers to payment (often money) given in exchange for work performed.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, the term "reward" could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: punish)

**Bible References:**

- Deuteronomy 32:06
- Isaiah 40:10
- Luke 06:35
- Mark 09:40-41
- Matthew 05:11-12
- Matthew 06:3-4
- Psalms 127:3-5
- Revelation 11:18

**Word Data:**


(See back to: Luke 6:23; 6:35)
right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person's right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph's son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person's right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God's power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: parallelism)
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: accuse, evil, honor, mighty, punish, rebel)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:33
- Colossians 03:01
- Galatians 02:09
- Genesis 48:14
- Hebrews 10:12
- Lamentations 02:03
- Matthew 25:33
- Matthew 26:64
- Psalms 044:03
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

(Go back to: Luke 6:6; 20:42; 22:69)
**righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness**

**Definition:**

The term “righteousness” refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

**Translation Suggestions:**

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God's “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God's laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)
Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:


robe, robed

Definition:
A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 15:22; 20:46)
ruin, ruins, ruined

Definition:
To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to “ruin” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “spoil” or to “make useless” or to “break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- Acts 15:16
- Isaiah 23:13-14

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 6:49)
rule, ruler, ruling, overrules

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It is means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, king, synagogue)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:17-18
- Acts 07:35-37
- Luke 12:11
- Mark 10:42
- Matthew 09:32-34
- Matthew 20:25
- Titus 03:01

Word Data:


run, runner, rushed, quickly went, scattered, flows

Definition:

Literally the term “run” means “move very quickly on foot,” usually at a greater speed than can be accomplished by walking.

This main meaning of “run” is also used in figurative expressions such as the following: * To “run in such a way as to win the prize”– refers to persevering in doing God’s will with the same perseverance as running a race in order to win. * To “run in the path of your commands” – means to gladly and quickly obey God’s commands. * To “run after other gods” means to persist in worshiping other gods. * “I run to you to hide me” means to quickly turn to God for refuge and safety when faced with difficult things. * Water and other liquids such as tears, blood, sweat, and rivers are said to “run.” This could also be translated as, “flow.” The border of a country or region is said to “run along” a river or the border of a different country. This could be translated by saying that the country’s border “is next to” the river or other country or by saying that the country “borders” the river or other country.” * Rivers and streams can “run dry,” which means that they no longer have water in them. This could be translated as “have dried up” or “have become dry.” * The days of a feast can “run their course,” which means they “have passed by” or “are finished” or “are over.”*

(See also: false god, persevere, refuge, turn)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:18
- Galatians 02:02
- Galatians 05:07
- Philippians 02:16
- Proverbs 01:16

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 8:34; 15:20; 17:23; 19:4; 24:12)
Sabbath

Definition:
The term "Sabbath" refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God's day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: rest)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:05 “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- 26:02 Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the Sabbath, he went to the place of worship.
- 41:03 The day after Jesus was buried was a Sabbath day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

sackcloth

Definition:
Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: ash, camel, goat, humble, mourn, repent, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: Luke 10:13)
**sacrifice, sacrifices, offering**

**Definition:**

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

**sacrifice**

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

**offering**

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

**Translation Suggestions**

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
13:09 Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.

17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.

48:06 Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.

48:08 But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

49:11 Because Jesus sacrificed himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 2:24; 13:1)
Sadducee

**Definition:**

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: chief priests, council, high priest, hypocrite, Jewish leaders, Pharisee, priest)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 04:03
- Acts 05:17-18
- Luke 20:27
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 16:01

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: G4523

(Go back to: Luke 20:27)
**Samaria, Samaritan**

**Facts:**

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 10:33

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.
- **27:08** “The next person to walk down that road was a Samaritan. (Samaritans were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. Samaritans and Jews hated each other.)”
- **27:09** “The Samaritan then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him.”
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: Luke 9:52; 10:33; 17:11; 17:16)
sanctify, sanctification

Definition:

To sanctify is to set apart or to make holy. Sanctification is the process of being made holy.

- In the Old Testament, certain people and things were sanctified, or set apart, for service to God.
- The New Testament teaches that God sanctifies people who believe in Jesus. That is, he makes them holy and sets them apart to serve him.
- Believers in Jesus are also commanded to sanctify themselves to God, to be holy in everything they do.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “sanctify” can be translated as “set apart” or “make holy” or “purify.”
- When people sanctify themselves, they purify themselves and dedicate themselves to God’s service. Often the word “consecrate” is used in the Bible with this meaning.
- When its meaning is “consecrate,” this term could be translated as “dedicate someone (or something) to God’s service.”
- Depending on the context, the phrase “your sanctification” could be translated as “making you holy” or “setting you apart (for God)” or “what makes you holy.”

(See also: consecrate, holy, set apart)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Genesis 02:1-3
- Luke 11:2
- Matthew 06:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6942, G37, G38

(Go back to: Luke 11:2)
sandal

Definition:

A sandal is a simple shoe with a flat sole that is held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

• In ancient Israel, a sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property. One person would take off a sandal and give it to the other person to show that the transaction was legal and binding.
• John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus’ sandals, which was a normal task for the servant or slave with the lowest status in a Jewish household.

Bible References:

• Acts 07:33
• Deuteronomy 25:10
• John 01:27
• Joshua 05:15
• Mark 06:7-9

Word Data:

• Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

Satan, devil, evil one

Facts:

Although the devil is a spirit being that God created, he rebelled against God and became God's enemy. The devil is also called “Satan” and “the evil one.”

- The devil hates God and all that God created because he wants to take the place of God and be worshiped as God.
- Satan tempts people to rebel against God.
- God sent his Son, Jesus, to rescue people from Satan's control.
- The name “Satan” means “adversary” or “enemy.”
- The word “devil” means “accuser.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “devil” could also be translated as “the accuser” or “the evil one” or “the king of evil spirits” or “the chief evil spirit.”
- “Satan” could be translated as “Opponent” or “Adversary” or some other name that shows that he is the devil.
- These terms should be translated differently from demon and evil spirit.
- Consider how these terms are translated in a local or national language.

(See: How to Translate Unknowns)

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: demon, evil, kingdom of God, tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:08
- 1 Thessalonians 02:17-20
- 1 Timothy 05:15
- Acts 13:10
- Job 01:08
- Mark 08:33
- Zechariah 03:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:01 The snake who deceived Eve was Satan. The promise meant that the Messiah who would come would defeat Satan completely.
- 25:06 Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their glory and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- 33:06 So Jesus explained, “The seed is the word of God. The path is a person who hears God's word, but does not understand it, and the devil takes the word from him.”
- 38:07 After Judas took the bread, Satan entered into him.
- 48:04 God promised that one of Eve's descendants would crush Satan's head, and Satan would wound his heel. This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would raise him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- 49:15 God has taken you out of Satan's kingdom of darkness and put you into God's kingdom of light.
- 50:09 "The weeds represent the people who belong to the evil one. The enemy who planted the weeds represents the devil.”
• **50:10** "When the world ends, the angels will gather together all the people who belong to the devil and throw them into a raging fire, where they will cry and grind their teeth in terrible suffering."

• **50:15** When Jesus returns, he will completely destroy Satan and his kingdom. He will throw Satan into hell where he will burn forever, along with everyone who chose to follow him rather than to obey God.

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H7700, H7854, H8163, G1139, G1140, G1141, G1142, G1228, G4190, G4566, G4567

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:
The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm's way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God's rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** “You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!”
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:


Savior, savior

Facts:

The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: deliver, Jesus, save, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:10
- 2 Peter 02:20
- Acts 05:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 01:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3467, G4990

(Go back to: Luke 1:47; 2:11)
scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

scroll

Definition:

In ancient times, a scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

- After writing on a scroll or reading from it, people rolled it up by using the rods attached to its ends.
- Scrolls were used for legal documents and scripture.
- Sometimes scrolls that were delivered by a messenger were sealed with wax. If the wax was still present when the scroll was received, then the receiver knew that no one had opened the scroll to read it or write on it since it had been sealed.
- Scrolls containing the Hebrew Scriptures were read aloud in the synagogues.

(See also: seal, synagogue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 29:03
- Luke 04:17
- Numbers 21:14-15
- Revelation 05:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4039, H4040, H5612, G974, G975

(Go back to: Luke 4:17; 4:20)
Sea of Galilee, Sea of Kinnereth, lake of Gennesaret, Sea of Tiberias

Facts:

The “Sea of Galilee” is a lake in eastern Israel. In the Old Testament it was called the “Sea of Kinnereth.”

- The water of this lake flows south through the Jordan River down to the Salt Sea.
- Capernaum, Bethsaida, Gennesaret, and Tiberias were some of the towns located on the Sea of Galilee during New Testament times.
- Many events of Jesus’ life took place on or near the Sea of Galilee.
- The Sea of Galilee was also referred to as the “Sea of Tiberias” and the “lake of Gennesaret.”
- This term could also be translated as “lake in the region of Galilee” or “Lake Galilee” or “lake near Tiberias (Gennesaret).”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Capernaum, Galilee, Jordan River, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- John 06:1-3
- Luke 05:01
- Mark 01:16-18
- Matthew 04:12-13
- Matthew 04:18-20
- Matthew 08:18-20
- Matthew 13:1-2
- Matthew 15:29-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H3672, G1056, G1082, G2281, G3041, G5085

(Go back to: Luke 5:1; 5:2; 8:22; 8:23; 8:33)
seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: euphemism)

(See also: descendant, offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(See also: Luke 8:5; 8:11)
seek, search, look for

Definition:
The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:


seize, seizure

Definition:
The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

• When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
• When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
• In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
• This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
• The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: euphemism)

Bible References:
• Acts 16:19-21
• Exodus 15:14
• John 10:37-39
• Luke 08:29
• Matthew 26:48

Word Data:
• Strong’s: H270, H1497, H2388, H3027, H3920, H3947, H4672, H5377, H5860, H6031, H7760, H8610, G724, G1949, G2638, G2902, G2983, G4815, G4884

(See back to: Luke 5:9; 7:16; 8:29; 8:37; 22:54)
send, sent, send out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: appoint, redeem)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:33-34
- Acts 08:14-17
- John 20:21-23
- Matthew 09:37-38
- Matthew 10:05
- Matthew 10:40
- Matthew 21:1-3

Word Data:


serpent, snake, viper

Facts:
These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: curse, deceive, disobey, Eden, evil, offspring, prey, Satan, sin, tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 03:03
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Mark 16:17-18
- Matthew 03:07
- Matthew 23:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H660, H2119, H5175, H6620, H6848, H8314, H8577, G2191, G2062, G3789

(Go back to: Luke 3:7; 10:19; 11:11)
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term “serve” generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a “servant:” a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a “servant” and a “slave” than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

• A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
• In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
• In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
• In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
• The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
• In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
• To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
• In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
• To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
• People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
• The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
• Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law.)

Bible References:

• Acts 04:29-31
• Acts 10:7-8
• Colossians 01:7-8
• Colossians 03:22-25
• Genesis 21:10-11
• Luke 12:47-48
• Mark 09:33-35
• Matthew 10:24-25
• Matthew 13:27-28
• 2 Timothy 02:3-5
• Acts 06:2-4
• Genesis 25:23
• Luke 04:8
Examples from the Bible stories:

06:01 When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
08:04 The slave traders sold Joseph as a slave to a wealthy government official.
09:13 “I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
19:10 Then Elijah prayed, “O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant.”
29:03 “Since the servant could not pay the debt, the king said, ‘Sell this man and his family as slaves to make payment on his debt.’”
35:06 “All my father’s servants have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving.”
47:04 The slave girl kept yelling as they walked, “These men are servants of the Most High God.
50:04 Jesus also said, “A servant is not greater than his master.”

Word Data:

• (Servant) Strong’s: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

Seth

Facts:

In the book of Genesis, Seth was the third son of Adam and Eve.

- Eve said that Seth was given to her in place of her son Abel, who was murdered by his brother Cain.
- Noah was one of Seth's descendants, so everyone who has lived since the time of the Flood is also a descendant of Seth.
- Seth and his family were the first people to "call on the name of the Lord."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abel, Cain, call, descendant, ancestor, flood, Noah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:01
- Luke 03:36-38
- Numbers 24:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8352, G4589

(Go back to: Luke 3:38)
**shadow, overshadow, shade**

**Definition:**

The word “shadow” literally refers to the darkness that is caused by an object blocking the light. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The “shadow of death” means that death is present or near, just as a shadow indicates the presence of its object.
- Many times in the Bible, the life of a human being is compared to a shadow, which does not last very long and has no substance.
- Sometimes “shadow” is used as another word for “darkness.”
- The Bible talks about being hidden or protected in the shadow of God’s wings or hands. This is a picture of being protected and hidden from danger. Other ways to translate “shadow” in these contexts could include “shade” or “safety” or “protection.”
- It is best to translate “shadow” literally using the local term that is used to refer to an actual shadow.

(See also: darkness, light)

**Bible References:**

- 2 Kings 20:09
- Genesis 19:08
- Isaiah 30:02
- Jeremiah 06:04
- Psalms 017:08

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2927, H6738, H6751, H6752, H6754, H6757, G644, G1982, G2683, G4639

(Go back to: Luke 1:79)
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:
The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 02:26
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8
• Psalms 006:8-10
• Psalms 123:03
• 1 Timothy 05:7-8
• 1 Timothy 06:13-14
• Jeremiah 15:15-16
• Job 16:9-10
• Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 1:25; 6:22; 9:26; 13:17; 14:9; 16:3)
Shem

Facts:

Shem was one of Noah’s three sons, all of whom went with him into the ark during the worldwide flood described in the book of Genesis.

- Shem was the ancestor of Abraham and his descendants.
- The descendants of Shem were known as “Semitic”; they spoke “Semitic” languages such as Hebrew and Arabic.
- The Bible indicates that Shem lived nearly 600 years.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Arabia, ark, flood, Noah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 05:32
- Genesis 06:10
- Genesis 07:13-14
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 10:31
- Genesis 11:10
- Luke 03:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8035, G4590

(Go back to: Luke 3:36)
shepherd, chief shepherd

Definition:
A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people's spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: Metaphor)
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions
- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God's sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: believe, Canaan, church, Moses, pastor, sheep, spirit)

Bible References:
- Genesis 49:24
- Luke 02:09
- Mark 06:34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 25:32
- Matthew 26:31

Examples from the Bible stories:
- 09:11 Moses became a shepherd in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- 17:02 David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- 23:06 That night, there were some shepherds in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
• 23:08 The shepherds soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
• 30:03 To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a shepherd.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

(Go back to: Luke 2:8; 2:15; 2:18; 2:20; 17:7)
Sidon, Sidonians

Facts:

Sidon was the oldest son of Canaan. There is also a Canaanite city called Sidon, probably named after Canaan's son.

- The city of Sidon was located northwest of Israel on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is part of the present-day country of Lebanon.
- The "Sidonians" were a Phoenician people group who lived in ancient Sidon and the region surrounding it.
- In the Bible, Sidon is closely associated with the city of Tyre, and both cities were known for their wealth and for immoral behavior of their people.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Noah, Phoenicia, the sea, Tyre)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Acts 27:3-6
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Genesis 10:19
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721, H6722, G4605, G4606

(Go back to: Luke 4:26; 6:17; 10:13; 10:14)
sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
  - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
  - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
  - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.

- Signs can reveal or point to something:
  - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
  - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.

- Signs can prove that something is true:
  - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
  - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:


silver

Definition:
Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:
- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Christ, dedicate, Jacob, Judah, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33
- Genesis 34:25
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- Luke 02:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

(Go back to: Luke 2:25; 2:34)
Simon the Zealot

Facts:

Simon the Zealot was one of Jesus' twelve disciples.

- Simon is mentioned three times in the listing of Jesus' disciples, but little else is known about him.
- Simon was one of the Eleven who met to pray together in Jerusalem after Jesus went back up into heaven.
- The term "zealot" may mean that Simon was a member of "the Zealots," a Jewish religious party that was very zealous in upholding the Law of Moses while strongly opposing the Roman government.
- Or, "zealot" may simply mean "the zealous one," referring to Simon's religious zeal.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, disciple, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2208, G2581, G4613

(Go back to: Luke 6:15)
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:
The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God's will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 03:15 God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- 13:12 God was very angry with them because of their sin and planned to destroy them.
- 20:01 The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both sinned against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- 21:13 The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin.
- 35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.
- 38:05 Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- 43:11 Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- 48:08 We all deserve to die for our sins!
- 49:17 Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to sin. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against sin.

Word Data:


sister

Definition:
A sister is a female person who shares at least one biological parent with another person. She is said to be that other person's sister or the sister of that other person.

- In the New Testament, “sister” is also used figuratively to refer to a woman who is a fellow believer in Jesus Christ.
- Sometimes the phrase “brothers and sisters” is used to refer to all believers in Christ, both men and women.
- In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, “sister” refers to a female lover or spouse.

Translation Suggestions:
- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological sister, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- Other ways to translate this could include “sister in Christ” or “spiritual sister” or “woman who believes in Jesus” or “fellow woman believer.”
- If possible, it is best to use a family term.
- If the language has a feminine form for “believer,” this may be a possible way to translate this term.
- When referring to a lover or wife, this could be translated using a feminine form of “loved one” or “dear one.”

(See also: brother in Christ, spirit)

Bible References:
- 1 Chronicles 02:16-17
- Deuteronomy 27:22
- Philemon 01:02
- Romans 16:01

Word Data:
- Strong’s: H269, H1323, G27, G79

(Go back to: Luke 10:39; 10:40; 14:26)
skull

Definition:
The term “skull” refers to the bony, skeletal structure of the head of a person or animal.

- Sometimes the term “skull” means “head,” as in the phrase “shave your skull.”
- The term “Place of the Skull” was another name for Golgotha, where Jesus was crucified.
- This term could also be translated as “head” or “head bone.”

(See also: crucify, Golgotha)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:35-37
- Jeremiah 02:16
- John 19:17
- Matthew 27:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1538, H6936, H7218, G2898

(Go back to: Luke 23:33)
snare, ensnare, entrap, trap, trapped, pitfall

Definition:

The terms “snare” and “trap” refer to devices that are used to catch animals and keep them from escaping. To “snare” or “ensnare” is to catch with a snare, and to “trap” or “entrap” is to catch with a trap. In the Bible, these terms were also used figuratively to talk about how sin and temptation are like hidden traps that catch people and harm them.

- A “snare” is a loop of rope or wire that suddenly pulls tight when an animal steps into it, ensnaring its leg.
- A “trap” is usually made of metal or wood and has two parts that suddenly and powerfully close together, catching an animal so it can’t get away. Sometimes a trap can be a deep hole that has been made in order to get something to fall into it.
- Usually the snare or trap is hidden so that its prey is taken by surprise.
- The phrase “set a trap” means to get a trap ready to capture something.
- To “fall into a trap” refers to falling into a deep hole or pit that was dug and hidden in order to catch an animal.
- A person who is starting sinning and cannot stop can be described as “ensnared by sin” in a figurative reference to the way an animal can be ensnared and cannot escape.
- Just as an animal is endangered and hurt by being in a trap, so a person caught in the trap of sin is being harmed by that sin and needs to be set free.

(See also: free, prey, Satan, tempt)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 07:26
- Luke 21:34
- Mark 12:13
- Psalms 018:05

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 11:54; 21:35)
Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham's nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5467, G4670

(Go back to: Luke 10:12; 17:29)
soldier, warrior

Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: courage, crucify, Rome, tomb)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:05
- Acts 21:33
- Luke 03:14
- Luke 23:11
- Matthew 08:8-10

Word Data:


(See also: Luke 3:14; 7:8; 23:11; 23:36)
Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshipping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bathsheba, David, Israel, Judah, kingdom of Israel, temple)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:14 Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him Solomon.
- 18:01 After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule. God spoke to Solomon and asked him what he wanted most. When Solomon asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. Solomon learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- 18:03 But Solomon loved women from other countries....When Solomon was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- 18:04 God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: Luke 11:31; 12:27)
**son**

**Definition:**
The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

**Translation Suggestions:**
- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used. Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

**Examples from the Bible stories:**

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a son from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his son when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only son from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own son.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn sons.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the son of Joseph?” they said.
Word Data:


Son of God, the Son

Facts:

The term “Son of God” refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as “the Son.”

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God’s Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term “Son of God,” it is best to translate “Son” with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate “son” fits with the word used to translate “father” and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin “Son” may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase “the Son” is a shortened form of “the Son of God,” especially when it occurs in the same context as “the Father.”

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:10
- Acts 09:20
- Colossians 01:17
- Galatians 02:20
- Hebrews 04:14
- John 03:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 02:18
- Romans 08:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:05 The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”
- 24:09 God had told John, “The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is the Son of God.”
- 31:08 The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “Truly, you are the Son of God.”
- 37:05 Martha answered, “Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the Son of God.”
- 42:10 So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- 46:06 Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- 49:09 But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1121, H1247, G2316, G5207

Son of Man, son of man

Definition:

The title “Son of Man” was used by Jesus to refer to himself. He often used this term instead of saying “I” or “me.”

- In the Bible, “son of man” could be a way of referring to or addressing a man. It could also mean “human being.”
- Throughout the Old Testament book of Ezekiel, God frequently addressed Ezekiel as “son of man.” For example he said, “You, son of man, must prophesy.”
- The prophet Daniel saw a vision of a “son of man” coming with the clouds, which is a reference to the coming Messiah.
- Jesus also said that the Son of Man will be coming back someday on the clouds.
- These references to the Son of Man coming on the clouds reveal that Jesus the Messiah is God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When Jesus uses the term “Son of Man” it could be translated as “the One who became a human being” or “the Man from heaven.”
- Some translators occasionally include “I” or “me” with this title (as in “I, the Son of Man”) to make it clear that Jesus was talking about himself.
- Check to make sure that the translation of this term does not give a wrong meaning (such as referring to an illegitimate son or giving the wrong impression that Jesus was only a human being).
- When used to refer to a person, “son of man” could also be translated as “you, a human being” or “you, man” or “human being” or “man.”

(See also: heaven, son, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:56
- Daniel 07:14
- Ezekiel 43:6-8
- John 03:12-13
- Luke 06:05
- Mark 02:10
- Matthew 13:37
- Psalms 080:17-18
- Revelation 14:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H120, H606, H1121, H1247, G444, G5207

sons of God, children of God

Definition:

The term “sons of God” is a figurative expression that has several possible meanings.

- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between a human son and his father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- Some people interpret the term “sons of God” that appears in Genesis 6 to mean fallen angels—evil spirits or demons. Others think it may refer to powerful political rulers or to the descendants of Seth.
- In the New Testament, the term “sons of God” refers to all believers in Jesus and is often translated as “children of God” since it includes both males and females.
- This use of the term speaks of a relationship with God that is like the relationship between human sons and their father, with all the privileges associated with being sons.
- The title “Son of God” is a different term: it refers to Jesus, who is God’s only Son.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “sons of God” refers to believers in Jesus, it could be translated as “children of God.”
- In Genesis 6:2 and 4 ways to translate “sons of God” could include “angels,” “spirit beings,” “supernatural creatures,” or “demons.”
- Also see the link for “son.”

(See also: angel, demon, son, Son of God, ruler, spirit)

Bible References:

- Genesis 06:02
- Genesis 06:4
- Job 01:06
- Romans 08:14

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H1121, G5207, G5043

(Go back to: Luke 20:36)
soul, self

Definition:

The term "soul" can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person's awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms "soul" and "spirit" may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the "soul" can be spoken of as the part of a person that "relates to God."
- The word "soul" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, "the soul who sins" means "the person who sins" and "my soul is tired" means, "I am tired."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "soul" could also be translated as "inner self" or "inner person."
- In some contexts, "my soul" could be translated as "I" or "me."
- Usually the phrase "the soul" can be translated as "the person" or "he" or "him," depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts "soul" and "spirit."
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Acts 02:27-28
- Acts 02:41
- Genesis 49:06
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 01:21
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Jonah 02:7-8
- Luke 01:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 019:07
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

**spirit, spiritual**

**Definition:**

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27
Examples from the Bible stories:

- 13:03 Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- 40:07 Then Jesus cried out, “It is finished! Father, I give my spirit into your hands.” Then he bowed his head and gave up his spirit.
- 45:05 As Stephen was dying, he cried out, “Jesus, receive my spirit.”
- 48:07 All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a spiritual descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

staff, clubs

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: Pharaoh, power, sheep, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Exodus 04:1-3
- Exodus 07:09
- Luke 09:03
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:8-10
- Matthew 27:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4132, H4294, H4731, H4938, H6086, H6418, H7626, G2563, G3586, G4464

(Go back to: Luke 9:3)
stone, stoning

Definition:
A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, testimony)

Bible References:
- Acts 07:57-58
- Acts 07:59-60
- Acts 14:05
- Acts 14:19-20
- John 08:4-6
- Luke 13:34
- Luke 20:06
- Matthew 23:37-39

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 13:34; 20:6)
strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:
The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
  - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
  - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
  - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
  - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
  - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
  - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong.”
  - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
  - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong.”
  - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
  - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
  - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

**strong drink**

**Definition:**

The term “strong drink” refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
- Kinds of “strong drink” include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the “Nazirite vow” were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as “fermented drink” or “alcoholic drink.”

(See also: grape, Nazirite, vow, wine)

**Bible References:**

- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Leviticus 10:09
- Luke 01:14-15
- Numbers 06:03

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H5435, H7941, G4608

(Go back to: Luke 1:15)
stumble, reeling

Definition:
The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as, “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: believe, persecute, sin, stumbling block)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 02:08
- Hosea 04:05
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G679, G4348, G4350, G4417, G4624, G4625

(Go back to: Luke 17:2)
stumbling block, stone of stumbling

Definition:

The term “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” refers to a physical object that causes a person to trip and fall.

- A figurative stumbling block is anything that causes a person to fail in a moral or spiritual sense.
- Also figuratively, a “stumbling block” or “stone of stumbling” can be something that prevents someone from having faith in Jesus or that causes someone to not grow spiritually.
- Often it is sin that is like a stumbling block to oneself or to others.
- Sometimes God places a stumbling block in the way of people who are rebelling against him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a language has a term for an object that triggers a trap, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated as “stone that causes stumbling” or “something that causes someone to not believe” or “obstacle that causes doubt” or “obstacle to faith” or “something that causes someone to sin.”

(See also: stumble, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 01:23
- Galatians 05:11
- Matthew 05:29-30
- Matthew 16:23
- Romans 09:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4383, G3037, G4349, G4625

(Go back to: Luke 17:1)
subject, be subject to, subjection

Facts:

A person is the “subject” of another person if the second person rules over the first. To “be subject to” is to “obey” or to “submit to the authority of.”

- The phrase “put in subjection to” refers to causing people to be under the authority of a leader or ruler.
- To “subject someone to something” means to cause that person to experience something negative, such as punishment.
- Sometimes the term “subject” is used to refer to being the topic or focus of something, such as in, “you will be the subject of ridicule.”
- The phrase “be subject to” means the same as “be submissive to” or “submit to.”

(See also: submit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:14-16
- 1 Kings 04:06
- 1 Peter 02:18-20
- Hebrews 02:05
- Proverbs 12:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H3533, H3665, H4522, H5647, G350, G1379, G1396, G1777, G3663, G5292, G5293

(Go back to: Luke 2:51; 10:17; 10:20)
suffer, suffering

Definition:
The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- Acts 07:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 06:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 022:24
- Revelation 01:09
- Romans 05:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 09:13 God said, “I have seen the suffering of my people.”
- 38:12 Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of suffering.”
- 42:03 He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would suffer and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- 42:07 He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would suffer, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- 44:05 “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”
- 46:04 God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must suffer for my sake.”
- 50:17 He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.
Word Data:


sulfur, sulfurous

Definition:

Sulfur is a yellow substance that becomes a burning liquid when it is set on fire.

- Sulfur also has a very strong smell that is like the odor of rotten eggs.
- In the Bible, burning sulfur is a symbol of God's judgment on ungodly and rebellious people.
- During the time of Lot, God rained down fire and sulfur on the evil cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.
- In some English Bible versions, sulfur is referred to as “brimstone,” which literally means “burning stone.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of this term could include “yellow stone that burns” or “burning yellowish rock.”

(See also: Gomorrah, judge, Lot, rebel, Sodom, godly)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:24
- Isaiah 34:09
- Luke 17:29
- Revelation 20:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1614, G2303

(Go back to: Luke 17:29)
sweep

Facts:

To “sweep” usually means to remove dirt by making broad, quick movements with a broom or brush. “Swept” is the past tense of “sweep.” These words are also used figuratively.

- The term "sweep" is used figuratively to describe how an army attacks with swift, decisive, wide-reaching movements.
- For example, Isaiah prophesied that the Assyrians would “sweep through” the Kingdom of Judah. This means they would destroy Judah and capture its people.
- The term “sweep” can also be used to describe the manner in which rapidly flowing water pushes things and forces them away.
- When overwhelming, difficult things are happening to a person, it can be said that they are “sweeping over” him.

(See also: Assyria, Isaiah, Judah, prophet)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:03
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Genesis 18:24
- Proverbs 21:7-8
- Psalms 090:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H622, H857, H1640, H2498, H2894, H3261, H5500, H5595, H7857, G4216, G4563, G4951

(Go back to: Luke 11:25; 15:8)
sword, swordsmen

Definition:
A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

• In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
• Some swords have two sharp edges and are called “double-edged” or “two-edged” swords.
• Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
• Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

• A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
• One way to translate this figurative use would be, “God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin.”
• Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as “the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone.”
• If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
• A sword could also be described as a “sharp weapon” or “long knife.” Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

• Acts 12:02
• Genesis 27:40
• Genesis 34:25
• Luke 02:33-35
• Luke 21:24
• Matthew 10:34
• Matthew 26:55
• Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

• Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

**synagogue**

**Definition:**

A synagogue is a building where Jewish people meet together to worship God.

- Since ancient times, a synagogue's services have included times of prayer, scripture reading, and teaching about the scriptures.
- The Jews originally started building synagogues as places to pray and worship God in their own cities, because many of them lived far away from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Jesus often taught in synagogues and healed people there.
- The word “synagogue” can be used figuratively to refer to the group of people meeting there.

(See also: heal, Jerusalem, Jew, pray, temple, word of God, worship)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 06:09
- Acts 14:1-2
- Acts 15:21
- Acts 24:10-13
- John 06:59
- Luke 04:14
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 13:54

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H4150, G656, G752, G4864

Syria, Ashur

Facts:

Syria is a country located northeast of Israel. During the time of the New Testament, it was a province under the rule of the Roman Empire.

- In the Old Testament time period, the Syrians were strong military enemies of the Israelites.
- Naaman was a commander of the Syrian army who was cured of leprosy by the prophet Elisha.
- Many inhabitants of Syria are descendants of Aram, who was descended from Noah's son Shem.
- Damascus, the capital city of Syria, was mentioned many times in the Bible.
- Saul went to the city of Damascus with plans to persecute Christians there, but Jesus stopped him.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Aram, commander, Damascus, descendant, Elisha, leprosy, Naaman, persecute, prophet)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:23
- Acts 15:41
- Acts 20:03
- Galatians 01:21-24
- Matthew 04:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H758, H804, G4947, G4948

(Go back to: Luke 2:2; 4:27)
tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God's tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: altar, altar of incense, ark of the covenant, temple, tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 01:2-5
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 07:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

(Go back to: Luke 9:33; 16:9)
tax, taxed, taxation, taxpayers, tax collector,

Definition:

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them. A “tax collector” was a government worker whose job was to receive money that people were required to pay the government in taxes.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- In the time of Jesus and the apostles, the Roman government required taxes from everyone living in the Roman empire, including the Jews.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.
- The people who collected taxes for the Roman government would often demand more money from the people than the government required. The tax collectors would keep the extra amount for themselves.
- Because tax collectors cheated people in this way, the Jews considered them to be among the worst of sinners.
- The Jews also considered Jewish tax collectors to be traitors to their own people because they worked for the Roman government which was oppressing the Jewish people.
- The phrase, “tax collectors and sinners” was a common expression in the New Testament, showing how much the Jews despised tax collectors.

(See also: Jew, Rome, sin)

Bible References:

- Mark 02:13-14
- Matthew 09:7-9
- Numbers 31:28-29
- Romans 13:6-7
- Luke 03:12-13
- Matthew 05:46-48
- Matthew 09:10-11
- Matthew 11:18-19
- Matthew 17:26-27
- Matthew 18:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

34:06 He said, “Two men went to the Temple to pray. One of them was a tax collector, and the other was a religious leader.” 34:07 “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men—such as robbers, unjust men, adulterers, or even like that tax collector.’” 34:09 “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be
merciful to me because I am a sinner.” 34:10 Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous.” 35:01 One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other sinners who had gathered to hear him.

**Word Data:**

- **Tax:** Strong's: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G1323, G2778, G5055, G5411
- **Tax Collector:** Strong's: H5065, H5674, G5057, G5058

teach, teaching, untaught

Definition:

To “teach” someone is to tell him something he doesn't already know. It can also mean to “provide information” in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person's “teaching” is or his “teachings” are what he has taught.

- A “teacher” is someone who teaches. The past action of “teach” is “taught.”
- When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
- Jesus' disciples called him “Teacher” as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
- The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
- The term “doctrine” refers to a set of teachings from God about himself as well as God's instructions about how to live. This could also be translated as “teachings from God” or “what God teaches us.”
- The phrase “what you have been taught” could also be translated as, “what these people have taught you” or “what God has taught you,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate “teach” could include “tell” or “explain” or “instruct.”
- Often this term can be translated as “teaching people about God.”

(See also: instruct, teacher, word of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:03
- Acts 02:40-42
- John 07:14
- Luke 04:31
- Matthew 04:23
- Psalms 032:08

Word Data:


teacher, Teacher

Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

- In the Bible, the word “teacher” is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
- People who learn from a teacher are called “students” or “disciples.”
- In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized (“Teacher”) when it is used as a title for Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
- Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as “Sir” or “Rabbi” or “Preacher.”

(See also: disciple, preach)

Bible References:

- Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
- Ephesians 04:11-13
- Galatians 06:6-8
- Habakkuk 02:18
- James 03:02
- John 01:37-39
- Luke 06:40
- Matthew 12:38-40

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?”
- **28:01** One day a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?”
- **37:02** After the two days had passed, Jesus said to his disciples, “Let’s go back to Judea.” “But Teacher,” the disciples answered, “Just a short time ago the people there wanted to kill you!”
- **38:14** Judas came to Jesus and said, “Greetings, Teacher,” and kissed him.
- **49:03** Jesus was also a great teacher, and he spoke with authority because he is the Son of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3384, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

temple

Facts:
The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God's holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 17:06 David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- 18:02 In Jerusalem, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple. God came and was present in the Temple, and he lived there with his people.
- 20:07 They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures.
- 20:13 When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the Temple and the wall around the city of the city and the Temple.
- 25:04 Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the Temple and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- 40:07 When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the Temple was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485
tempt, temptation

Definition:

To tempt someone is to try to get that person to do something wrong.

- A temptation is something that causes a person to want to do something wrong.
- People are tempted by their own sinful nature and by other people.
- Satan also tempts people to disobey God and to sin against God by doing wrong things.
- Satan tempted Jesus and tried to get him to do something wrong, but Jesus resisted all of Satan's temptations and never sinned.
- Someone who is “tempting God” is not trying to get him to do something wrong, but rather, is continuing in stubborn disobedience of him to the point that God must respond by punishing him. This is also called “testing God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “tempt” can be translated as, “try to cause to sin” or “entice” or “cause a desire to sin.”
- Ways to translate “temptations” could include, “things that tempt” or “things that entice someone to sin” or “things that cause desire to do something wrong.”
- To “tempt God” could be translated as to “put God to the test” or to “test God” or to “try God’s patience” or to “cause God to have to punish” or to “stubbornly keep disobeying God.”

(See also: disobey, Satan, sin, test)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:4-5
- Hebrews 04:15
- James 01:13
- Luke 04:02
- Luke 11:04
- Matthew 26:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 25:01 Then Satan came to Jesus and tempted him to sin.
- 25:08 Jesus did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- 38:11 Jesus told his disciples to pray that they would not enter into temptation.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H5254, G551, G1598, G3985, G3986, G3987

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one's money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: believe, Israel, Levite, livestock, Melchizedek, minister, sacrifice tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- Isaiah 06:13
- Luke 11:42
- Luke 18:11-12
- Matthew 23:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

(Go back to: Luke 11:42; 18:12)
Terah

Facts:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Canaan, Haran, Lot, Mesopotamia, Nahor, Sarah, Shem, Ur)

Bible References:

Genesis 11:31-32
- 1 Chronicles 01:24-27

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8646, G2291

(Go back to: Luke 3:34)
terror, terrorize, terrify, frightened, panic

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: adversary, fear, judge, plague, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:25
- Exodus 14:10
- Luke 21:09
- Mark 06:48-50

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 21:9; 24:5; 24:37)
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(Go back to: Luke 4:12; 8:13; 10:25; 11:16; 14:19)
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

tetrarch

Definition:
The term “tetrarch” refers to a governing official who ruled over part of the Roman Empire. Each tetrarch was under the authority of the Roman emperor.

- The title “tetrarch” means “one of four joint rulers.”
- Starting under the Emperor Diocletian, there were four major divisions of the Roman Empire and each tetrarch ruled one division.
- The kingdom of of Herod “the Great,” who was king at the time of the birth of Jesus, was divided into four sections after his death, and ruled by his sons as “tetrarchs,” or “rulers of a fourth.”
- Each division had one or more smaller parts called “provinces,” such as Galilee or Samaria.
- “Herod the tetrarch” is mentioned several times in the New Testament. He is also known as “Herod Antipas.”
- The term “tetrarch” could also be translated as “regional governor” or “provincial ruler” or “ruler” or “governor.”

(See also: governor, Herod Antipas, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

- Luke 09:07
- Matthew 14:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G5075, G5076

(Go back to: Luke 3:1; 3:19; 9:7)
the twelve, the eleven

Definition:

The term “the twelve” refers to the twelve men that Jesus chose to be his closest disciples, or apostles. After Judas killed himself, they were called “the eleven.”

- Jesus had many other disciples, but the title “the twelve” distinguished those who were apparently closest to Jesus.
- The names of these twelve disciples are listed in Matthew 10, Mark 3, and Luke 6.
- Some time after Jesus had returned to heaven, “the eleven” chose a disciple named Matthias to take Judas’ place. Then they were called “the twelve” again.

Translation Suggestions:

- For many languages it may be clearer or more natural to add the noun and say, “the twelve apostles” or “Jesus’ twelve closest disciples.”
- “The eleven” could also be translated as “Jesus’ eleven remaining disciples.”
- Some translations may prefer to use a capital letter to show that it was used as a title, as in “the Twelve” and “the Eleven.”

(See also: apostle, disciple)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:5-7
- Acts 06:02
- Luke 09:01
- Luke 18:31
- Mark 10:32-34
- Matthew 10:07

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G1427, G1733

(Go back to: Luke 6:13; 8:1; 9:1; 9:12; 18:31; 22:3; 22:47; 24:9; 24:33)
thief, rob, robber, robbery, bandits

Facts:

The term “thief” refers to a person who steals money or property from other people. The plural of “thief” is “thieves.” The term “robber” often refers to a thief who also physically harms or threatens the people he is stealing from.

- Jesus told a parable about a Samaritan man who took care of a Jewish man who had been attacked by robbers. The robbers had beaten the Jewish man and wounded him before stealing his money and clothing.
- Both thieves and robbers come suddenly to steal, when people are not expecting it. Often they use the cover of darkness to hide what they are doing.
- In a figurative sense, the New Testament describes Satan as a thief who comes to steal, kill, and destroy. This means that Satan's plan is to try to get God's people to stop obeying him. If he succeeded in doing this Satan would be stealing from them the good things that God has planned for them.
- Jesus compared the suddenness of his return to the suddenness of a thief coming to steal from people. Just as a thief comes at a time when people are not expecting it, so Jesus will return at a time when people do not expect it.

(See also: bless, crime, crucify, darkness, destroyer, power, Samaria, Satan)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 03:10
- Luke 12:33
- Mark 14:48
- Proverbs 06:30
- Revelation 03:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H1215, H1416, H1589, H1590, H1980, H6530, H7703, G727, G2417, G2812, G3027

Thomas

Facts:

Thomas was one of twelve men whom Jesus chose to be his disciples and later, apostles. He was also known as “Didymus,” which means “twin.”

- Near the end of Jesus’ life, he told his disciples that he was going away to be with the Father and would prepare a place for them to be with him. Thomas asked Jesus how they could know the way to get there when they didn’t even know where he was going.
- After Jesus died and came back to life, Thomas said he would not believe that Jesus was really alive again unless he could see and feel the scars where Jesus had been wounded.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: apostle, disciple, God the Father, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:12-14
- John 11:15-16
- Luke 06:14-16
- Mark 03:17-19
- Matthew 10:2-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G2381

(Go back to: Luke 6:15)
thorn, thorn bush, thistle

Facts:

Thorn bushes and thistles are plants that have prickly branches or flowers. These plants do not produce fruit or anything else that is useful.

- A “thorn” is a hard, sharp growth on the branch or stem of a plant. A “thorn bush” is a type of small tree or shrub that has many thorns on its branches.
- A “thistle” is a plant with prickly stems and leaves. Often the flowers are purple.
- Thorn and thistle plants multiply quickly and can cause nearby plants or crops to not be able to grow. This is a picture of how sin keeps a person from producing good spiritual fruit.
- A crown made of twisted thorn branches was placed on Jesus’ head before he was crucified.
- If possible, these terms should be translated by the names of two different plants or bushes that are known in the language area.

(See also: crown, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- Hebrews 06:7-8
- Matthew 13:07
- Matthew 13:22
- Numbers 33:55

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H329, H1863, H2312, H2336, H3291, H5518, H6791, H6796, H6975, H7063, H7898, G173, G174, G4647, G5146

(Go back to: Luke 6:44; 8:7; 8:14)
throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

• A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
• The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
• In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
• Jesus said that heaven is God's throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, king, reign)

Bible References:

• Colossians 01:15-17
• Genesis 41:40
• Luke 01:32
• Luke 22:30
• Matthew 05:34
• Matthew 19:28
• Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

• Strong's: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: Luke 1:32; 1:52; 22:30)
time, untimely, date

Facts:

In the Bible the term “time” was often used figuratively to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to “age” or “epoch” or “season.”

- In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a “time” of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
- In the phrase “time, times, and half a time” the term “time” means “year.” This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
- “Time” can mean “occasion” in a phrase like “third time.” The phrase “many times” can mean “on many occasions.”
- To be “on time” means to arrive when expected, not late.
- Depending on the context, the term “time” could be translated as, “season” or “time period” or “moment” or “event” or “occurrence.”
- The phrase “times and seasons” is a figurative expression which states the same idea twice. This could also be translated as “certain events happening in certain time periods.” (See: doublet)

(See also: age, tribulation)

Bible References:

- Acts 01:07
- Daniel 12:1-2
- Mark 11:11
- Matthew 08:29
- Psalms 068:28-29
- Revelation 14:15

Word Data:


to minister, ministry

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

tongue, language

Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(Go back to: Luke 1:64; 16:24)
torment, tormented, tormentors

Facts:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: beast, everlasting, Job, Savior, spirit, suffer, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:08
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 01:11-12
- Luke 08:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3013, G928, G929, G930, G931, G2558, G2851, G3600

( Go back to: Luke 8:28; 16:23; 16:28)
tremble, stagger

Definition:
The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:
- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 8:47)
trial, proving

Definition:

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is “a testing” or “a temptation” is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, test, innocent, guilt)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 03:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G178, G1383, G2919, G3986

(Go back to: Luke 22:28)
tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: Luke 2:36; 22:30)
tribute, contribution, fined

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations. A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.

- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: gold, king, ruler, tax)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 2 Kings 17:03
- Luke 23:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1093, H4061, H4503, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G5411

(Go back to: Luke 20:22; 23:2)
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don't trouble her” could also be translated as “don't bother her” or “don't criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:


true, truth

Definition:
The term “truth” refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- “True” things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- “Truth” means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” means that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of “truth” includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, faithful, fulfill, obey, prophet, understand)

Bible References:
- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, “That is not **true**! You will not die.”
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, “It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!”
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, “**Truly**, you are the Son of God.”
- **39:10** “I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me.” Pilate said, “What is **truth**?”

Word Data:


trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, faith, faithful, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 12:12 When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- 14:15 Joshua was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- 17:02 David was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- 34:06 Then Jesus told a story about people who trusted in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: Luke 11:22; 16:11; 18:9)
tunic

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “tunic” referred to a garment that was worn next to the skin, under other clothing.

- A tunic reached from the shoulders down to the waist or knees and was usually worn with a belt. Tunics worn by wealthy people sometimes had sleeves and reached down to the ankles.
- Tunics were made of leather, haircloth, wool, or linen, and were worn by both men and women.
- A tunic was normally worn under a longer over-garment, such as a toga or outer robe. In warmer weather a tunic was sometimes worn with no outer garment.
- This term could be translated as “long shirt” or “long undergarment” or “shirt-like garment.” It could also be written in a similar way to “tunic,” with a note to explain what kind of clothing it was.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See Also: robe)

Bible References:

- Daniel 03:21-23
- Isaiah 22:21
- Leviticus 08:12-13
- Luke 03:11
- Mark 06:7-9
- Matthew 10:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2243, H3801, H6361, G5509

(Go back to: Luke 3:11; 6:29; 9:3)
turn, turn away, turn back, return

Definition:
To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:
- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake. It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: false god, leprosy, worship)

Bible References:
- 1 Kings 11:02
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 11:21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:17
- Malachi 04:06
- Revelation 11:06

Word Data:

1906 / 1953
twelve tribes of Israel, twelve tribes

Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham's grandson. God later changed Jacob's name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph's two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: inherit, Israel, Jacob, priest, tribe)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:07
- Genesis 49:28
- Matthew 19:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

(Go back to: Luke 22:30)
Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, cedar, Israel, the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:20
- Mark 03:7-8
- Matthew 11:22
- Matthew 15:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

(Go back to: Luke 6:17; 10:13; 10:14)
understand, understanding, thinking

**Definition:**

The term “understand” means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

- The term “understanding” can refer to “knowledge” or “wisdom” or realizing how to do something.
- To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
- While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
- Depending on the context, the term “understand” could be translated by “know” or “believe” or “comprehend” or “know what (something) means.”
- Often the term “understanding” can be translated by “knowledge” or “wisdom” or “insight.”

(See also: believe, know, wise)

**Bible References:**

- Job 34:16-17
- Luke 02:47
- Luke 08:10
- Matthew 13:12
- Matthew 13:14
- Proverbs 03:05

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Luke 1:22; 2:47; 2:50; 8:10; 9:45; 10:21; 18:34; 20:19; 20:23; 24:45)

1910 / 1953
unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106
vain, vanity

Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as "vain" things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose;” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty,” “useless,” “hopeless,” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: false god, worthy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 02:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 02:29-31
- Matthew 15:09

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G945, G1500, G2756, G2758, G2761, G3151, G3152, G3153, G3155

(Go back to: Luke 1:53; 20:10; 20:11)
vine

Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem." (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(Go back to: Luke 22:18)
vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

• A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
• God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
• Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:

• Genesis 09:20-21
• Luke 13:06
• Luke 20:15
• Matthew 20:02
• Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(Go back to: Luke 13:6; 20:9; 20:10; 20:13; 20:15; 20:16)
virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 21:09 The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- 22:04 She (Mary) was a virgin and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- 22:05 Mary replied, “How can this be, since I am a virgin?”
- 49:01 An angel told a virgin named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a virgin, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: Luke 1:27)
vision, envision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- Acts 09:10-12
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 10:11
- Acts 12:9-10
- Luke 01:22
- Matthew 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

(Go back to: Luke 1:22; 24:23)
voice

Definition:
The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

• The expression “to hear someone's voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
• The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
• The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: synecdoche)
• However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: metaphor)

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor.)

Bible References:

• John 05:36-38
• Luke 01:42
• Luke 09:35
• Matthew 03:17
• Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

• “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
• To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
• To “walk in” God's commands or God's ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
• When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
• To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
• To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

• It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
• Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
• The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
• To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
• The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

• 1 John 01:07
• 1 Kings 02:04
• Colossians 02:07
• Galatians 05:25
• Genesis 17:01
• Isaiah 02:05
• Jeremiah 13:10
• Micah 04:02

Word Data:


waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak

Definition:
To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a “wasteland” or a “waste” refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term “waste away” is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To “lay waste” to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a “wasteland” could be “desert” or “wilderness.” But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:
- Ezekiel 06:06
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:08
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

Word Data:

(Go back to: Luke 13:7; 15:13; 16:1)
**watch (biblical time)**

**Definition:**

In biblical times, a “watch” was a period of time at night during which a watchman or guard for a city would be on duty looking out for any danger from an enemy.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites had three watches which were called “beginning” (sunset to 10 p.m.), “middle” (10 p.m. to 2 a.m.), and “morning” (2 a.m. to sunrise) watches.
- In the New Testament, the Jews followed the Roman system and had four watches, named simply “first” (sunset to 9 p.m.), “second” (9 p.m. to 12 midnight), “third” (12 midnight to 3 a.m.), and “fourth” (3 a.m. to sunrise) watches.
- These could also be translated with more general expressions such as “late evening” or “middle of the night” or “very early in the morning,” depending on which watch is being referred to.

(See also: watch)

**Bible References:**

- Mark 06:48-50
- Matthew 14:25-27
- Psalms 090:3-4

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H821, G5438

(Go back to: Luke 12:38)
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 2:8; 6:7; 11:54; 12:37; 14:1; 20:20; 21:36)
watchtower, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: Metaphor)

(See also: adversary, watch)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- Mark 12:1-3
- Matthew 21:33-34
- Psalm 062:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H803, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6076, H6438, H6836, G4444

(Go back to: Luke 13:4; 14:28)
**water**

**Definition:**

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: life, spirit, Holy Spirit, power)

**Bible References:**

- Acts 08:36-38
- Exodus 14:21
- John 04:10
- John 04:14
- John 04:15
- Matthew 14:28-30

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

• The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
• After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
• After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
• People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

• Acts 27:36-38
• Exodus 34:21-22
• John 12:24
• Luke 03:17
• Matthew 03:12
• Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H1250, H2406, G4621

(Go back to: Luke 3:17; 16:7; 22:31)
wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(Go back to: Luke 1:15; 5:37; 5:38; 5:39; 7:33; 10:34)
**winnow, sift**

**Definition:**

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words can also be used to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chaff, grain)

**Bible References:**

- Isaiah 21:10
- Matthew 03:12
- Proverbs 20:08
- Ruth 03:02

**Word Data:**

- Strong's: H2219, H5128, H5130, G4425, G4617

(Go back to: Luke 22:31)
wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 02:05 She also wanted to be wise, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- 18:01 When Solomon asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world.
- 23:09 Some time later, wise men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- 45:01 He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of wisdom.

Word Data:


WOE

Definition:
The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression "Woe to (name of city)" could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, "Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- Jude 01:9-11
- Luke 06:24
- Matthew 23:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

wolf, wild dogs

Definition:

A wolf is a fierce, meat-eating animal that is similar to a wild dog.

- Wolves usually hunt in groups and stalk their prey in a clever and stealthy manner.
- In the Bible, the term "wolves" is used figuratively to refer to false teachers or false prophets who destroy believers, who are compared to sheep. False teaching causes people to believe wrong things that bring harm to them.
- This comparison is based on the fact that sheep are especially vulnerable to being attacked and eaten by wolves, because they are weak and cannot defend themselves.

Translation Suggestion

- This term could be translated as “wild dog” or “wild animal.”
- Other names for wild dogs could be “jackal” or “coyote.”
- When used figuratively to refer to people, this could be translated as “evil people who harm people like animals that attack sheep.”

(See also: evil, false prophet, sheep, teach)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:29
- Isaiah 11:07
- John 10:11-13
- Luke 10:03
- Matthew 07:15
- Zephaniah 03:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2061, H3611, G3074

(Go back to: Luke 10:3)
womb

Definition:
The term “womb” refers to where a baby grows inside its mother.

• This is an older term that is sometimes used in order to be polite and less direct. (See: euphemism)
• A more modern term for womb is “uterus.”
• Some languages use a word like “belly” to refer to a woman’s womb or uterus.
• Use a word for this in the project language that is well-known, natural, and acceptable.

Bible References:

• Genesis 25:23
• Genesis 25:24-26
• Genesis 38:27-28
• Genesis 49:25
• Luke 02:21
• Luke 11:27
• Luke 23:29
• Matthew 19:12

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H990, H4578, H7356, H7358, G1064, G2836, G3388

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:
In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:01
- 1 Kings 13:01
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11
- John 05:39
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 06:07
- Ephesians 01:13
- 2 Timothy 03:16

1931 / 1953
Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In God's word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the word of God.
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what God's word says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God's word must be fulfilled.” Then he opened their minds so they could understand God's word.
- **45:10** Philip also used other scriptures to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the Word of God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

(Go back to: Luke 1:2; 3:2; 4:21; 5:1; 8:11; 8:12; 8:13; 8:15; 8:21; 11:28; 21:33; 24:27; 24:32; 24:45)
work, works, deeds

Definition:

The term “work” refers generally either to the action of expending effort in order to accomplish something, or to the result of that action. The term “works” refers generally to actions as a whole (that is, things that have been done or that need to be done).

• In the Bible, these terms are commonly used both in reference to God and humans.
• When used in reference to God, the term “work” in the Bible often refers to God’s action of creating the universe or saving his people (either from enemies, from sin, or both).
• God’s works refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place.
• The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.

Translation Suggestions:

• Other ways to translate “works” could be “deeds” or “actions” or “things that are done.”
• God’s “works” or “deeds” or the “work of his hands” could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “things that God does.”
• The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “everything that God has accomplished.”
• The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
• When work is done for God or others, it can be translated as “service” or “ministry.”

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit, miracle)

Bible References:

• 1 John 03:12
• Acts 02:8-11
• Daniel 04:37
• Exodus 34:10-11
• Galatians 02:15-16
• James 02:17
• Matthew 16:27-28
• Micah 02:07
• Romans 03:28
• Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

(Go back to: Luke 6 General Notes; 11:48; 24:19)
**world, worldly**

**Definition:**

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

**Bible References:**

- 1 John 02:15
- 1 John 04:05
- 1 John 05:05
- John 01:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

(Go back to: Luke 2:1; 4:5; 9:25; 11:50; 12:30; 21:26)
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:
The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: honor)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:04
- 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
- Acts 13:25
- Acts 25:25-27
- Acts 26:31
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Jeremiah 08:19
- Mark 01:07
- Matthew 03:10-12
- Philippians 01:25-27

Word Data:


**wrath, fury**

**Definition:**

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, “wrath” often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

**Translation Suggestions:**

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: judge, sin)

**Bible References:**

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

**Word Data:**


(Go back to: Luke 3:7; 21:23)
wrong, wronged, wrongdoer, mistreat, hurt, hurtful

Definition:

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means to “cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Exodus 22:21
- Genesis 16:05
- Luke 06:28
- Matthew 20:13-14
- Psalms 071:13

Word Data:


(Go back to: Luke 6:28; 23:41)
year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

• A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
• In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
• In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

• 2 Kings 23:31
• Acts 19:8-10
• Daniel 08:01
• Exodus 12:02

Word Data:

• Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

yeast, leaven, unleavened

Definition:

“Leaven” is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. “Yeast” is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as “yeast,” which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn't have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term “leaven” or “yeast” is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person's life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term “leaven” is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God's kingdom spreads from person to person.

Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as “leaven” or “substance that causes dough to rise” or “expanding agent.” The word “rise” could be expressed as “expand” or “get bigger” or “puff up.”
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, “leavening,” this would be the best term to use.

(See also: Egypt, Passover, unleavened bread)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:08
- Galatians 05:9-10
- Luke 12:1
- Luke 13:21
- Matthew 13:33
- Matthew 16:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2556, H2557, H4682, H7603, G106, G2219, G2220

(Go back to: Luke 12:1; 13:21)
**Zacchaeus**

**Facts:**

Zacchaeus was a tax collector from Jericho who climbed a tree in order to be able to see Jesus who was surrounded by a large crowd of people.

- Zacchaeus was completely changed when he believed in Jesus.
- He repented of his sin of cheating people and promised to give half his possessions to the poor.
- He also promised that he would pay people back four times the amount that he had overcharged them for their taxes.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: believe, promise, repent, sin, tax, tax collector)

**Bible References:**

- Luke 19:02
- Luke 19:06

**Word Data:**

- Strong’s: G2195

(Go back to: Luke 19:2; 19:5; 19:8)
zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms "zeal" and "zealous" refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The "zeal of the Lord" or the "zeal of Yahweh" refers to God's strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "be zealous" could also be translated by, "be strongly diligent" or "make an intense effort."
- The term "zeal" could also be translated as "energetic devotion" or "eager determination" or "righteous enthusiasm."
- The phrase, "zeal for your house" could be translated, "strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:03
- Galatians 04:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 02:17-19
- Philippians 03:06
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7065, H7068, G2205, G2206, G2207, G6041

(Go back to: Luke 6:15)
Zebedee

Facts:
Zebedee was a fisherman from Galilee who is known because of his sons, James and John, who were Jesus’ disciples. They are often identified in the New Testament as the “sons of Zebedee.”

• Zebedee’s sons were also fishermen and worked with him to catch fish.
• James and John quit their fishing work with their father Zebedee and left to go follow Jesus.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)
(See also: disciple, fishermen, James (son of Zebedee), John (the apostle))

Bible References:

• John 21:1-3
• Luke 05:8-11
• Mark 01:19-20
• Matthew 04:21-22
• Matthew 20:20
• Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

• Strong’s: G2199

(Go back to: Luke 5:10)
Zechariah (NT)

Facts:

In the New Testament, Zechariah was a Jewish priest who became the father of John the Baptist.

- Zechariah loved God and obeyed him.
- For many years Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, prayed earnestly to have a child, but did not have one. Then when they were very old, God answered their prayers and gave them a son.
- Zechariah prophesied that his son John would be the prophet who would announce and prepare the way for the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, Elizabeth, prophet)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:5-7
- Luke 01:21-23
- Luke 01:39-41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- 22:01 Suddenly an angel came with a message from God to an old priest named Zechariah. Zechariah and his wife, Elizabeth, were godly people, but she had not been able to have any children.
- 22:02 The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him John.”
- 22:03 Immediately, Zechariah was unable to speak.
- 22:07 Then God allowed Zechariah to speak again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2197

Zerubbabel

Facts:

Zerubbabel was the name of two Israelite men in the Old Testament.

• One of these was a descendant of Jehoiakim and Zedekiah.
• A different Zerubbabel, son of Shealtiel, was the head of the tribe of Judah during the time of Ezra and Nehemiah, when Cyrus king of Persia released the Israelites from their captivity in Babylon.
• Zerubbabel and the high priest Joshua were among those who helped rebuild the temple and altar of God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Babylon, captive, Cyrus, Ezra, high priest, Jehoiakim, Joshua, Judah, Nehemiah, Persia, Zedekiah)

Bible References:

• 1 Chronicles 03:19-21
• Ezra 02:1-2
• Ezra 03:8-9
• Luke 03:27-29
• Matthew 01:12

Word Data:

• Strong's: H2216, H2217, G2216

(Go back to: Luke 3:27)
Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs

1945 / 1953
Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

1947 / 1953
John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wonda
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannahi Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

1948 / 1953
Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreicher
Paul Holloway

1949 / 1953
Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

**unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George “Drew” Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik “Henry” de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

1952 / 1953
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community